



23. 18.

HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

LIBRARY OF THE MASS. MED. COLLEGE.

*Rules and Regulations*

No.

3 B 183

**BOSTON  
MEDICAL LIBRARY  
ASSOCIATION,  
19 BOYLSTON PLACE,**

Received

Dec. 26, 1884

By Gift of

Harv. Med. Sch.

SURGEON GENERAL'S OFFICE

LIBRARY.

Section,

*Med*

No. 176771

the  
books  
ting  
s of  
ame  
r.  
oon  
de-  
  
and  
d.—  
each  
en a  
nore

fore  
fore  
the


e of  
the  
rom  
ount  
ases








THE  
*ANATOMY*  
OF THE  
HUMAN BODY.

——  
IN FOUR VOLUMES,  
ILLUSTRATED WITH ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY-FIVE ENGRAVINGS.

——  
VOLUME I.  
CONTAINING THE  
ANATOMY  
OF THE  
BONES, MUSCLES, AND JOINTS.

By *JOHN BELL*, Surgeon.

LIBRARY  
SURGEON GENERAL'S OFFICE

NOV. 20 - 1901

176771

FROM THE FOURTH LONDON EDITION, IMPROVED BY THE AUTHOR.

NEW-YORK:

PRINTED AND SOLD BY COLLINS AND CO. NO. 189.  
PEARL-STREET,

....  
1812.



TO  
ALEXANDER WOOD,  
SURGEON,  
WHOSE ABILITIES, AND SKILL, AND DISINTERESTED CONDUCT,  
HAVE RAISED HIM, BY COMMON CONSENT,  
TO THE FIRST RANK, IN A MOST USEFUL PROFESSION,  
CONDUCTING HIM, IN HONOUR, TO THAT PERIOD OF LIFE  
IN WHICH HE MUST FEEL, WITH PLEASURE, HOW  
COMPLETELY HE ENJOYS THE CONFIDENCE OF THE PUBLIC,  
AND THE ESTEEM OF ALL GOOD MEN,  
THIS BOOK OF ANATOMY IS PRESENTED BY HIS PUPIL

JOHN BELL,





## ADVERTISEMENT

*To the second American Edition.*

---

THE first American edition of this work being entirely sold, and the demand still existing and increasing, the Publishers are again induced to present the student of Anatomy with a new edition of this justly celebrated work ; and while acknowledging their past success, they would express the obligations under which they are laid by the Medical Profession in general, and particularly by the Professors of Anatomy throughout the United States, for their patronage and encouragement. In Great Britain, during a short period of time, four editions of the work were printed and sold in succession, which circumstance sufficiently proves its merit ; as no book, treating of so important a science, would experience such a rapid sale unless penned by professors of the greatest eminence.

A few of the numerous commendations bestowed on the work by the most respectable critics, are annexed ; many more might have been added, but it is presumed these are sufficient to satisfy every reasonable enquirer.

In regard to the advantages claimed by this American edition, the publishers believe that they have on no former occasion been more successful in accomplishing the two important objects—typographical

correctness, and great reduction in the price of the work.

With respect to the former of these advantages, the publishers can confidently claim a decided preference to the English editions. Seldom has a work been issued from the press more loaded with typographical errors, many of them of serious magnitude, than the different editions of this work, which have been published in London. Partly through the aid of a very competent medical friend, who generously offered his services to assist them, the publishers have been able to correct several hundred errors of the press. The custom of some authors in Great Britain, of submitting their manuscripts, not always very legible, entirely to the care of the printer, whose distance from their own place of residence precludes the possibility of their examining the proof-sheets, is the general, though unsatisfactory apology, offered for the numerous typographical mistakes, which are to be found in many valuable works imported from England.

The Publishers have the satisfaction to state that the price of this edition is reduced to less than half that of the London copy, as sold in this country. The Engravings are done by the best American Artists: the greater part of those executed on copper, especially in the second volume, are much superior to the original; and those on wood, introduced on the printed pages, are pronounced by competent judges, to answer the object in view better than the faint and obscure impressions of the English copy.

The artists who have produced these engravings, having both been regularly taught the Anatomy of the Human Body, may reasonably claim a reliance on their accuracy.

It is scarcely necessary to remark, that scrupulous care has been taken, not to omit a syllable of the letter-press nor a plate, but that the work should be presented entire.

It will be apparent to the Medical Profession, that in the execution of this work, the publishers have incurred a very heavy expense. If they shall find themselves encouraged in future, as they have been in several of their late offerings to the profession, they intend to pursue, with redoubled exertions, the business of reprinting, at greatly reduced prices, the best works of English Authors relating to the science of Medicine: and they are impressed with the hope that, besides receiving an equitable pecuniary remuneration, they will materially subserve the interests of Medical Science in the United States.

## CHARACTER OF THIS WORK,

*By Professional Critics.*

“IT would be injustice to confound this work with the ordinary compilations from the common stock of elementary writers, and the transcribed lectures of the class-room. It is obviously the result of very extensive study, both in books, and in the dissecting-room, and its completion now supplies a want which was much felt by the English reader. The description is clear and accurate, and the engraved sketches occasionally introduced, are also very

happily devised in assisting the reader to gain a full idea of the relative situation of important and complicated parts of anatomy. They add much to its sterling value, as a comprehensive and well-executed system."

*Aikin's Annual Review.*

"Anatomy, in common with every other branch of natural science, has been going on with progressive improvement ever since the arrival of letters in Europe. It therefore becomes necessary from time to time, that new systems should be formed, in which the essays of different professors who have exerted themselves in perfecting the description of particular parts of the body, or in meliorating the whole, should be collected." After enumerating many celebrated anatomists who have improved the art, the reviewers conclude: "Having said thus much with regard to the great men who have laboured and are labouring to improve the art which it seemed to demand, we shall readily acknowledge that the authors have collected their materials with industry, and have enriched their work with the principal improvements in physiology, which the present age has produced."

*British Critic.*

"In our account of the former part [the first two volumes by John Bell,] we bore a willing testimony to the ingenious and interesting manner in which the subject was handled. By judiciously blending the physiology, or doctrine of functions, with the anatomical descriptions, by frequent occasional references to pathology and practice, and by a manner peculiarly impressive and interesting, he was enabled to excite the attention of the student to a subject of the first importance to the healing art, but one which is rendered dry and disgusting by the ordinary mode of treating it. The latter volumes by Mr. Charles Bell, are respectably executed; and together they form a body of anatomy, greatly superior to any at present to be found in our language."

*London Medical and Chirurgical Review.*

The editors of the *New-York Medical Repository*, thus announce the first American edition.

"Our readers we are confident will universally participate the pleasure we feel in announcing that Messrs. Collins & Perkins

have undertaken to give an American edition of the *ANATOMY OF THE HUMAN BODY*, by JOHN and CHARLES BELL, in two large volumes, octavo, from the fourth London edition, in four volumes, octavo, corrected, and illustrated by one hundred and twenty five engravings. This grand work, embracing by far the most complete system of Anatomy and Physiology in the English language, and possessing a reputation which is extended by the approbation of every additional circle of readers, will thus be published at a price so greatly reduced as to circulate to a wide extent, be adopted as a standard authority in our Medical Seminaries, and eventually come into the hands of all practitioners of physic in the United States. We most sincerely congratulate the public on the prospect of acquiring this splendid improvement in the means of cultivating Anatomy and Physiology in every part of our country ; as we are confident that the general circulation of this work would be alone sufficient to advance, in a considerable degree, the respectability and usefulness of the Medical profession in this new world."

The editors of the *New-York Medical and Philosophical Journal and Review*, in announcing the same undertaking, dwell on the great importance to the profession of thus reducing the prices of imported books, and proceed as follows :

"It has been objected to the editions issued from our presses, particularly those in which there are plates, that though cheaper, they are likewise inferior to those imported. This we think will not be the case with the above edition of Bell's Anatomy ; for we have seen some of the plates, which are superior to those in the London copy. The extensive sale of the book, will, we hope, remunerate the activity and enterprize of the publishers."

The editor of the *Philadelphia Medical Museum*, has called the attention of his readers to the same subject, and informed them, that

"This highly useful and important work is to be printed in two volumes, 8vo. on a fine vellum paper, from the fourth London edi-



tion. A selection of reviews from English publications accompanies the prospectus, which cannot fail of evincing the high degree of estimation in which this interesting work is held; and as it is given at less than half the price of the English edition, must ensure the sanction of the Physicians of America, as a work in the highest degree worthy of a place in every medical library."

---

## MEDICAL BOOKS.

---

*COLLINS & CO.* announce to the Medical Profession, that they have been induced to turn their attention to the sale of

### MEDICAL, CHEMICAL, AND BOTANICAL BOOKS,

In consequence of the solicitations of many of the most respectable of the Faculty.

WHILST they respectfully solicit the further patronage of the Profession at large, the advertisers should, with gratitude, acknowledge the very extensive encouragement which they have already received. Their obligations are due, not only to the different medical professors and lecturers of the two Colleges in New-York, who in their private capacity, have recommended their establishment, but also to medical institutions, which have promoted their undertaking, by officially constituting the advertisers their printers and medical booksellers.

Their medical catalogue, which already contains more than double the number of medical books to be found in any book-store of the United States, will be constantly enlarged by the addition of every new work of merit which may appear either in Europe or



America ; the advertisers having established a correspondence in England, which will insure to them this important advantage, unless political differences between the two countries may operate to defeat it.

The several Medical Journals printed in Philadelphia and Baltimore, are also regularly received for delivery to subscribers and others.

With regard to charges, those for American books, must be regulated by the prices adopted by their publishers ; but foreign books are priced by the importer. To those of the Faculty who have already dealt with the advertisers, it may be sufficient to observe, that they pledge themselves to continue to sell on the same favourable terms as heretofore.

Upon *American* editions, (periodical publications and a few others excepted) liberal discounts will be allowed to wholesale purchasers ; but upon *imported* books, such are their present reduced retail prices, only a very small discount can be afforded. Did the advertisers adopt the practice of marking imported books as much above their *cost* as are those of American origin, the same large discounts could with equal propriety be allowed ; but they apprehend that such a system is not calculated to dispense equal justice to all, nor to enable the purchaser of a single book to possess himself of it at a price for which it can be fairly afforded.



## P R E F A C E.

---

TO those who are at all acquainted with books on anatomy, the appearance of a new one on the subject will not be surprising: to those who are not yet acquainted with such writings, I have only to say that I have written this book, because I believed that such a one was needed, and must be useful. I have endeavoured to make it so plain and simple as to be easily understood; I have avoided the tedious interlarding of technical terms (which has been too long the pride of anatomists and the disgrace of their science), so that it may read smoothly compared with the studied harshness, and, I may say, obscurity, of anatomical description. If an author may ever be allowed to compare his book with others, it must be in the mechanical part; and I may venture to say, that this book is full and correct in the anatomy, free and general in the explanations, not redundant, I hope, and yet not too brief.

If, in the course of this volume, I shall appear to have given to theories a place and importance far higher than they really deserve, my reader will naturally feel how useful they are in preserving the due balance between what is amusing and what is useful; between the looser doctrines of functions and the close demonstration of parts. He will be sensible how much more easily these things can be read in the closet than taught in any public course; he will, I think, be ready to

acknowledge, that I introduce such theories only as should connect the whole, and may be fairly distinguished as the physiology of facts ; and he will perceive, that in this, too, I feel a deference for the public opinion, and that respect for the established course of education which it is natural to feel and to comply with.

Thus, perhaps, it is less immodest for an author to put down what he thinks he may honestly say concerning his own book, than to omit those apologies which custom requires ; which give assurance that he has not entered upon his task rashly, nor performed it without some labour and thought ; which are the truest signs of his respect for the Public, and of his care for that science to which he has devoted his life.

With these intentions and hopes I offer this book to the Public ; and more particularly to those in whose education I have a chief concern : not without a degree of satisfaction at having accomplished what, I think, cannot fail to be useful ; and surely not without an apprehension of not having done (in this wide and difficult subject) all that may be expected or wished for.

Every book of this kind should form a part of some greater system of education : it should not only be entire in its own plan, but should be as a part of some greater whole ; without which support and connection a book of science is insulated and lost. This relation and subserviency of his own particular task to some greater whole, is first in an author's mind : he ventures to look forward to its connection with the general science and common course of education ; or he turns it to a correspondence and harmony with his own notions of study : and if these notions are to give the complexion and character to any book, it should be when it is designed for those who are entering upon their studies, as yet uncertain where to begin, or how to proceed.

Hardly any one has been so fortunate as to pursue the study of his own science under any regular and perfect plan ; and there are very few with whom a consciousness of this does not make a deep and serious impression at some future period, ac-

compained with severe regret for the loss of time never to be retrieved. In medicine, perhaps, more than in any other science, we begin our studies thoughtless and undecided, following whatever is delightful (as much is delightful), and neglecting the more severe and useful parts : but as we advance towards that period in which we are to enter upon a most difficult profession, and to take our place and station in life ; and when we think of the hesitation, anxiety, and apprehension, with which we must move through the first years of practice—we begin to look back with regret on every moment that is past ; with a consciousness of some idle hours ; and (what is more afflicting still) with an unavailing sense of much ill-directed, unprofitable labour :—for there is no study upon which a young man enters with a more eager curiosity ; but not instructed in what is really useful, nor seriously impressed with the importance of his future profession, he thinks of his studies rather as the amusement, than as the business, of life ; slumbers through his more laborious and useful tasks, and soon falls off to the vain pursuit of theories and doctrines.

If I were not persuaded of the important consequences, of the infinite gain or loss which must attend the first steps, in every profession, I should not feel, but, above all, I should not venture to express, an anxiety, which may be thought affected by those who cannot know how sincere it must be ; for, in our profession, this is the course of things, that a young man, who, by his limited fortune, or the will of his friends, by absence from his native country, or by the destination of his future life, is restricted to a few years of irregular, capricious, ill-directed study, throws himself at once into the practice of a profession, in which, according to his ignorance or skill, he must do much good or much harm. Here there is no time for his excursions into that region of airy and fleeting visions, and for his returning again to sedate and useful labour there is no time for his discovering, by the natural force of his own reason, how vain all speculations are.—In but a few years, at most, his education is determined ; the limited term is completed ere he have learnt that most useful of all lessons,

the true plan of study ; and his opportunities come to be valued (like every other happiness), only when they are lost and gone.

Of all the lessons which a young man entering upon our profession needs to learn, this is, perhaps, the first,—that he should resist the fascinations of doctrines and hypotheses, till he have won the privilege of such studies by honest labour, and a faithful pursuit of real and useful knowledge. Of this knowledge, anatomy surely forms the greatest share.—Anatomy, even while it is neglected, is universally acknowledged to be the very basis of all medical skill.—It is by anatomy that the physician guesses at the seat, or causes, or consequences, of any internal disease.—Without anatomy, the surgeon could not move one step in his great operations ; and those theories could not even be conceived, which so often usurp the place of that very science, from which they should flow as probabilities and conjectures only, drawn from its store of facts.

A consciousness of the high value of anatomical knowledge never entirely leaves the mind of the student. He begins with a strong conviction that this is the great study, and with an ardent desire to master all its difficulties : if he relaxes in the pursuit, it is from the difficulties of the task, and the seduction of theories too little dependent on anatomy, and too easily accessible without its help. His desire for real knowledge revives only when the opportunity is lost ; when he is to leave the schools of medicine ; when he is to give an account of his studies with an anxious and oppressed mind, conscious of his ignorance in that branch which is to be received as the chief test of his professional skill ; or when, perhaps, he feels a more serious and manly impression, the difficulty and importance of that art which he is called to practise.

Yet, in spite of feeling and reason, the student encourages in himself a taste for speculations and theories, the idle amusements of the day, which, even in his own short course of study, he may observe sinking in quick succession into neglect and oblivion, never to revive ; he aspires to the character of a physiologist, to which want of experience, and a youthful



fancy, have assigned a rank and importance which it does not hold in the estimation of those who should best know its weakness or strength. The rawest student, proud of his physiological knowledge, boasts of a science and a name which is modestly disclaimed by the first anatomist, and the truest physiologist of this or any age. Dr. Hunter speaks thus of his physiology, and of his anatomical demonstration: "Physiology, as far as it is known, or has been explained by Haller, and the best of the moderns, may be easily acquired by a student without a master, provided the student is acquainted with philosophy and chemistry, and is an expert and ready anatomist; for with these qualifications he can read any physiological book, and understand it as fast as he reads.

"In this age, when so much has been printed upon the subject, there is almost as little inducement to attend lectures upon physiology, as there would be for gentlemen to attend lectures upon government, or upon the history of England. Lectures upon subjects which are perfectly intelligible in print, cannot be of much use, except when given by some man of great abilities, who has laboured the subject, and who has made considerable improvements either in matter or in arrangement.

"In our branch, those teachers who take but little pains to demonstrate the parts of the body with precision and clearness, but study to captivate young minds with ingenious speculation, will not leave a reputation that will outlive them half a century.

"I always have studied, and shall continue my endeavours, to employ the time that is given up to anatomical studies as usefully to the students as I can possibly make it—and therefore shall never aim at showing what I know, but labour to show and describe, as clearly as possible, what they ought to know. This plan rejects all declamation, all parade, all wrangling, all subtilty: to make a show, and to appear learned and ingenious in natural knowledge, may flatter vanity; to know facts, to separate them from suppositions,

“to range and connect them, to make them plain to ordinary capacities, and, above all, to point out the useful applications—is, in my opinion, much more laudable, and shall be the object of my ambition\*.”

\* Introductory Lecture published by Dr. Hunter.

EDINBURGH, }  
SEPT. 1793. }

# CONTENTS.



## BOOK I.

### OF THE BONES.

#### CHAP. I.

#### OF THE FORMATION AND GROWTH OF BONES. 1.

	Page
<b>H</b> ISTORY of the Doctrines of Ossification, - - -	2
Phenomena of Ossification, - - -	4
Blood Vessels and Absorbents of Bones, and Proofs of the Deposition and Reabsorption of the Bony Matter, -	10
Nerves of Bones, and Proofs of the Sensibility of Bones,	11
The Process of Ossification described, - - -	12
1. The various Forms and numerous Points of Ossifica- tion, - - -	13
2. The heads and Processes of Long Bones, -	ib.
3. The Cavity of Long Bones, - - -	14
4. The Cancelli, - - -	15
5. The Marrow, - - -	ib.
6. The Lamellæ, or Bony Plates, - - -	ib.
7. The Holes of Bones, - - -	16
8. The Vessels, - - -	17
9. The Internal Periosteum, - - -	ib.
10. The External Periosteum, - - -	ib.
11. The Cartilages, - - -	18
The Callus and Regeneration of Broken Bones, -	20

## CHAP. II.—OF THE SKULL IN GENERAL. 22.

	Page
Importance of the Anatomy of the Skull, - -	22
The Tables and Diploe of the Bones of the Skull, -	ib.
Enumeration and short Description of the Bones of the Cranium, - - - - -	24
The Sutures, - - - - -	25
Remarks on the Formation, Nature, and Use of Sutures, -	26

## CHAP. III.—DESCRIPTION OF THE INDIVIDUAL BONES OF THE SKULL. 32.

Os FRONTALIS, - - - - -	32
1. Superciliary Ridge, - - - - -	ib.
2. ——— Artery and Nerve, - - - - -	33
3. Angular Processes, - - - - -	ib.
4. Nasal Process, - - - - -	ib.
5. Frontal Sinuses, - - - - -	ib.
6. Frontal Ridge or Spine, - - - - -	36
7. Orbital Process, - - - - -	ib.
Os PARIETALE, - - - - -	37
Os OCCIPITIS, - - - - -	38
i. External Surface, - - - - -	ib.
1. Transverse Spines, - - - - -	ib.
2. Crucial Spines, - - - - -	ib.
3. Posterior Tuberosity, - - - - -	39
ii. Internal Surface, - - - - -	ib.
1. Great Internal Ridge and Tentorium Cerebelli Superextensum, - - - - -	ib.
2. Hollows of the Occipital Bone, - - - - -	ib.
Processes of the Occipital Bone, - - - - -	ib.
1. Cuneiform, - - - - -	ib.
2. Condyles, - - - - -	ib.
Holes, - - - - -	40
1. Foramen Magnum, - - - - -	ib.
2. Hole for the ninth Pair of Nerves, - - - - -	ib.
3. ——— for the Cervical Vein of the Neck. - - - - -	ib.
4. Common Hole, - - - - -	ib.
Os TEMPORIS, - - - - -	ib.
Squamous part, - - - - -	41
Petrus part, - - - - -	ib.
Processes, - - - - -	ib.
1. Zygomatic, - - - - -	ib.
2. Styloid, - - - - -	ib.
3. Vaginal, - - - - -	ib.

	Page
4. Mastoid or Mamillary,	42
5. Auditory,	ib.
Holes,	
For the Ear,	
1. Meatus Auditorius Externus,	ib.
2. ————— Internus,	ib.
3. Small Hole receiving a Branch from the fifth Pair of Nerves,	43
4. Stylo-Mastoid Hole,	ib.
5. Hole for the Eustachian Tube,	ib.
For Blood Vessels,	
1. For the Carotid Artery,	44
2. For the Great Lateral Sinus, called the Common Hole, as formed partly by the Temporal, partly by the Occipital Bone,	ib.
3. Small Hole on the outside of the Temporal Bone,	45
Os ÆTHMOIDES,	ib.
1. Cribriform Plate,	ib.
2. Crista Galli,	ib.
3. Nasal Plate, or Azygous Process,	46
4. Spongy Bones,	ib.
5. Orbitaly Plate, or Os Planum,	ib.
6. Os Unguis,	47
7. Cells,	ib.
Os SPHÆNOIDES,	48
Processes,	ib.
1. Alæ,	ib.
2. Orbitaly process,	ib.
3. Spinous process,	ib.
4. Styloid process,	ib.
5. Pterygoid processes,	49
6. Azygous process,	ib.
7. Clypeoid processes,	ib.
Anterior,	50
Posterior,	ib.
Sella Turcica, and its Cells,	ib.
Holes,	
1. Foramen Opticum,	ib.
2. ——— Lacerum,	51
3. ——— Rotundum,	ib.
4. ——— Ovale,	ib.
5. ——— Spinale,	52
6. Pterygoid, or Vidian Hole,	ib.

## CHAP. IV.—BONES OF THE FACE AND JAWS. 52.

	Page
OSSA NASI,	53
OS UNGUIS,	ib.
OSSA MAXILLARIA SUPERIORA,	54
Processes,	
1. Nasal,	ib.
2. Orbitaly,	ib.
3. Malar,	ib.
4. Alveolar,	55
Antrum Maxillare, or Highmorianum,	ib.
Holes,	
1. Infra Orbitaly,	57
2. Foramen Incisivum, or Anterior Palatine Hole,	ib.
3. Posterior Palatine Hole,	ib.
OSSA PALATI,	58
Processes,	
1. Palatal Plate or Process,	ib.
Middle Palatal Suture,	ib.
Transverse Palatal Suture,	ib.
2. Pterygoid Process,	ib.
3. Nasal Plate or Process,	59
4. Orbitaly Process,	ib.
Palatine Cells,	ib.
OSSA SPONGIOSA, or TURBINATA INFERIORA,	ib.
VOMER,	60
OS MALÆ,	61
Processes,	
1. Upper Orbitaly,	ib.
2. Inferior Orbitaly,	ib.
3. Maxillary,	ib.
4. Zygomatic,	ib.
5. Internal Orbitaly,	ib.
OS MAXILLÆ INFERIORIS,	ib.
Processes,	62
1. Coronoid,	ib.
2. Condylod,	ib.
3. Alveolar,	63
Holes,	
1. Large Hole on the inner side for the entry of the lower Maxillary Nerve and Artery,	64
2. Mental Hole,	ib.



## CHAP. V.—OF THE TRUNK.

VIZ.

## OF THE SPINE, THORAX, AND PELVIS.

	Page
<b>I. OF THE SPINE</b> —General View of the Spine—its motions—and the Division of the Vertebræ,	64
General Description of a Vertebra,	65
1. Body of the Vertebra,	66
2. Articulating, or Oblique Processes,	ib.
3. Spinous Processes,	67
4. Transverse Processes,	ib.
Vertebræ of the Loins,	ib.
Vertebræ of the Back,	68
Vertebræ of the Neck,	ib.
Atlas,	70
Dentatus,	ib.
Medullary Tube and the Passage of the Nerves,	72
Intervertebral Substance,	ib.
Motions of the Vertebræ,	73
<b>II. OF THE THORAX,</b>	
i. Of the Ribs.	
General Description of a Rib—Division of the Ribs into true and false—Form of a Rib, and place of the Intercostal Artery,	ib.
The Parts of the Rib, as the Head, Neck—Surface for articulating with the Transverse Process—Nature of the Joint and Motion of the Rib—Angle of the Rib,	75, 76
Size and Length of the Ribs—The Cartilages of the Ribs,	76
ii. Of the Sternum, and its three Parts,	77
<b>III. OF THE PELVIS,</b>	79
i. Os SACRUM,	80
ii. Os COCCYGIS,	ib.
iii. OSSA INNOMINATA,	82
i. Os ILIUM, or HAUNCH BONE—1. Ala—Spine—Spinous Processes, anterior and posterior—2. Dorsum—3. Costa—4. Linea Innominata,	83, 84
ii. Os ISCHIUM, or HIP-BONE—1. Body—2. Tuber—3. Ramus,	84, 85
iii. Os PUBIS, or SHARE-BONE—Body—Crest—Ramus,	ib.

	Page
Recapitulation of the chief Points of the Anatomy of the Pelvis,	85
Size of the Pelvis in Man and Woman,	86
Remarks on the separation of the Bones of the pubes during labour,	87

## CHAP. VI.—BONES OF THE THIGH, LEG, AND FOOT.

I. FEMUR,	91
1. Body,	ib.
2. Head,	ib.
3. Neck,	92
4. Trochanter major,	ib.
5. Trochanter minor,	ib.
6. Linea aspera,	93
7. Condyles,	ib.
II. TIBIA,	94
1. Upper head,	ib.
2. Body,	ib.
3. Lower Head—Inner Ankle,	ib.
III. FIBULA,	96
1. Upper Head,	ib.
2. Lower Head—Outer Ankle,	ib.
IV. ROTULA, PATELLA, OR KNEE-PAN,	97
V. TARSUS, OR INSTEP,	98
1. Astragalus,	ib.
2. Os Calcis,	ib.
3. Os Naviculare,	ib.
4. } Cuneiform Bones,	ib.
5. }	
6. }	
7. Os Cuboides,	ib.
VI. METATARSUS and its five Bones,	101
VII. TOES,—Sesamoid Bones,	ib.

## CHAP. VII.—BONES OF THE SHOULDER, ARM, AND HAND.

SHOULDER,	
i. SCAPULA, OR SHOULDER-BLADE,	102
1. The flat side of the Scapula,	103
2. The upper flat Surface,	ib.
3. The Triangular Form of the Scapula—Costa—Basis,	ib.

	Page
4. The Glenoid, or Articulating Cavity,	104
5. The Neck,	ib.
6. The Spine,	ib.
7. The Acromion Process,	105
8. The Coracoid Process,	ib.
ii. CLAVICLE, or COLLAR BONE,	106
1. The Thoracic End and Joint,	ib.
2. The Outer End, and its union with the Scapula,	ib.
II. ARM,	
Os HUMERI,	ib.
1. Head,	107
2. Neck,	ib.
3. Tuberosities,	ib.
4. Groove for the Tendon of the Biceps Muscle,	ib.
5. Ridges leading to the Condyles,	ib.
6. Condyles,	108
7. Articulating Surface for the Elbow-joint, and general explanation of the Joint,	ib.
8. Hollows for the Olecranon and Coronoid Process of the Ulna,	109
III. ULNA AND RADIUS,	ib.
I. ULNA,	ib.
1. Greater Sigmoid Cavity, formed by	
1. Olecranon,	ib.
2. Coronoid Process,	ib.
2. Lesser Sigmoid Cavity for receiving the Head of the Radius,	110
3. Ridges,	ib.
4. Lower Head of the Ulna,	ib.
5. Styloid Process of the Ulna,	ib.
II. RADIUS,	111
1. Body,	ib.
2. Upper Head,	ib.
3. Neck,	ib.
4. Point for the Implantation of the Biceps Flexor Cubiti,	ib.
5. Lower Head,	ib.
IV. HAND AND FINGERS,	112
General Explanation of the Hand and Wrist, Carpus, Metacarpus, and Fingers,	ib.
I. CARPUS, or WRIST,	113
1. Row forming the Wrist,	ib.
1. Os Scaphoides,	ib.
2. Os Lunare,	114
3. Os Cuneiforme,	ib.
4. Os Pisiforme,	ib.

	Page
2. Row supporting the Metacarpal Bones,	114
1. Trapezium,	ib.
2. Trapezoides,	ib.
3. Os Magnum,	115
4. Os Unciforme,	ib.
II. Metacarpus,	ib.
III. Fingers,	116

## BOOK II.

### OF THE MUSCLES.

#### CHAP. I.—MUSCLES OF THE FACE, EAR, AND EYE

I. MUSCLES OF THE FACE,	118
1. Occipito Frontalis,	ib.
2. Corrugator Supercilii,	119
3. Orbicularis Oculi, or Palpebrarum,	120
4. Levator Palpebræ Superioris,	ib.
II. MUSCLES OF THE NOSE AND MOUTH,	121
5. Levator Labii Superioris et Alæ Nasi,	ib.
6. ————— proprius,	ib.
7. Levator Anguli Oris, or Levator Communis Labiorum,	122
8. Zygomaticus Major,	ib.
9. ————— Minor,	ib.
10. Buccinator,	ib.
11. Depressor Anguli Oris,	123
12. Depressor Labii Inferioris, or Quadratus Genæ,	ib.
13. Orbicularis Oris,	ib.
14. Depressor Labii Superioris, et Alæ Nasi,	125
15. Constrictor Nasi,	ib.
16. Levator Mentis,	ib.
III. MUSCLES OF THE EXTERNAL EAR,	ib.
17. Superior Auris,	126
18. Anterior Auris,	ib.
19. Posterior Auris,	ib.
20. Helicis Major,	ib.
21. Helicis Minor,	ib.

	Page
22. Tragicus,	126
23. Antitragicus,	ib.
24. Transversus Auris,	ib.
IV. MUSCLES OF THE EYE-BALL,	127
General Explanation of these Muscles,	ib.
25. Rectus Superior,	128
26. Rectus Inferior,	ib.
27. Rectus Internus,	ib.
28. Rectus Externus,	ib.
29. Obliquus Superior,	ib.
30. Obliquus Inferior,	129

## CHAP. II.—MUSCLES OF THE LOWER JAW, THROAT, AND TONGUE.

I. MUSCLES OF THE LOWER JAW,	130
31. Temporalis,	ib.
32. Masseter,	ib.
33. Pteregoideus Internus, or Major,	131
34. Pteregoideus Externus, or Minor,	ib.
II. MUSCLES OF THE THROAT AND TONGUE,	ib.
Explanation of certain Bones and Cartilages forming the basis of the Throat and Tongue, and the centre of their motions,	ib.
1. Os Hyoides,—Its Cornua,—Its Appendices, or perpendicular Processes,	ib.
2. Larynx, Trachea, or Windpipe,	133
1. Scutiform, or Thyroid Cartilage,	ib.
2. Cricoid Cartilage,	ib.
3. Arytenoid Cartilages, and Rima Glottidis formed by them,	ib.
4. Epiglottis,	134
Recapitulation and view of the constitution of the Larynx,	ib.
3. MUSCLES OF THE THROAT,	ib.
1. Muscles which pull the Throat down,	135
34. Sterno-hyoideus,	ib.
35. Sterno-thyroideus,	ib.
36. Omo-hyoideus,	ib.
Action of these Muscles,	ib.
2. Muscles which move the Throat upwards,	ib.
37. Mylo-hyoideus,	ib.
38. Genio-hyoideus,	136
39. Stylo-hyoideus,	ib.
40. Digastricus, or Biventer Maxillæ Inferioris,	ib.
3. Muscles moving the parts and cartilages of the	

	Page
Larynx upon each other, -	137
41. Hyo-thyroideus, -	ib.
42. Crico-thyroideus, -	ib.
43. Musculus Arytenoideus Transversus, -	ib.
44. Musculus Arytenoideus Obliquus, -	138
45. Crico-Arytenoideus Posticus, -	ib.
46. Crico-Arytenoideus Obliquus, -	ib.
47. Thyreo-Arytenoideus, -	ib.
4. Muscles of the Palate and Pharynx, -	ib.
48. Azygus Uvulæ, -	139
49. Levator Palati Mollis, -	ib.
50. Circumflexus Palati, or Tensor Palati Mollis, -	ib.
51. Constrictor Isthmi Fauschium, -	140
52. Palato-Pharyngeus, -	ib.
Pharynx explained, -	ib.
53. Stylo-pharyngeus, -	ib.
54. Constrictor Superior, -	141
55. Constrictor Medius, -	ib.
56. Constrictor Inferior, -	ib.
57. Vaginalis Gulæ, -	142
ii. MUSCLES OF THE TONGUE, -	ib.
58. Stylo-Glossus, -	ib.
59. Hyo-Glossus, -	ib.
60. Genio-glossus, -	ib.
61. Lingualis, -	ib.
Motions of the Tongue performed by these Muscles, -	143

### CHAP. III.—OF THE MUSCLES OF THE ARM, INCLUDING THE MUSCLES OF THE SCAPULA, ARM, FORE-ARM, AND HAND.

I. MUSCLES OF THE SCAPULA, . . .	ib.
i. Muscles moving the Scapula upwards and backwards, . . .	144
62. Trapezius, . . .	ib.
63. Levator Scapulæ, or Levator Proprius Angularis, . . .	145
64 & 65. Rhomboides, . . .	ib.
1. Minor, . . .	ib.
2. Major, . . .	ib.
ii. Muscles which move the Scapula downwards and forwards, . . .	146
66. Serratus Major Anticus, . . .	ib.
67. Pectoralis Minor, . . .	ib.
68. Subclavianus, . . .	ib.
Motions of the Scapula, . . .	147

	Page
II. MUSCLES MOVING THE OS HUMERI, OR ARM BONE,	147
69. Pectoralis Major,	ib.
70. Latissimus Dorsi,	148
71. Deltoides,	149
72. Coraco-brachialis,	150
73. Supra Spinatus,	ib.
74. Infra Spinatus,	151
75. Teres Minor,	ib.
76. Teres Major,	ib.
77. Subscapularis,	152
Motions of the Humerus, and Use and Effect of each of these Muscles in forming and strengthening the Joint,	ib.
III. MUSCLES MOVING THE FORE-ARM,	154
i. Muscles bending the Fore-arm,	ib.
78. Biceps Brachii Flexor,	ib.
79. Brachialis Internus,	ib.
ii. Muscles extending the Fore-arm,	155
80. Triceps Extensor,	ib.
81. Anconeus,	156
IV. MUSCLES SITUATED ON THE FORE-ARM, MOVING THE RADIUS, CARPUS, AND FINGERS,	ib.
Fascia of the Arm,	ib.
Arrangement of these Muscles, the points of origin and insertion, and the motions of pronation and supination, flexion, and extension explained,	ib.
i. FLEXORS, arising from the Inner Condyle,	157
82. Pronator Teres Radii,	159
83. Palmaris Longus,	ib.
84. Palmaris Brevis, or Cutaneus,	160
85. Flexor Carpi Radialis,	ib.
86. Flexor Carpi Ulnaris,	161
87. Flexor Digitorum Sublimis,	ib.
88. Flexor Digitorum Profundus, vel Perforans,	162
89. Lumbricales,	163
90. Flexor Longus Pollicis,	164
91. Pronator Quadratus,	ib.
ii. EXTENSORS arising from the Outer Condyle,	165
92. Supinator Radii Longus,	ib.
93. Extensor Carpi Radialis Longior,	166
94. Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevior,	ib.
95. Extensor Carpi Ulnaris,	167
96. Extensor Digitorum Communis,	ib.
97. Extensor Minimi Digiti, or Auricularis,	168
98. Extensor Primus Pollicis,	169
99. Extensor Secundus Pollicis,	170
100. Extensor Tertius Pollicis,	ib.



	Page
101. Indicator,	170
102. Supinator Brevis,	171
V. MUSCLES SEATED ON THE HAND,	ib.
Table of these Muscles,	172
103. Abductor Pollicis,	ib.
104. Opponens Pollicis,	173
105. Flexor Brevis Pollicis,	ib.
106. Adductor Pollicis,	174
107. Abductor Minor Digiti,	ib.
108. Flexor Parvus Minimi Digiti,	ib.
109. Adductor Minimi Digiti,	175
110. Abductor Indicis,	ib.
111. Interossei Interni,	ib.
112. Interossei Externi,	ib.

#### CHAP. IV.—MUSCLES OF RESPIRATION, OR OF THE RIBS.

General Explanation and Table of these Muscles,	176
113. Serratus Superior Posticus,	177
114. Serratus Inferior Posticus,	ib.
115. Levatores Costarum,	178
116. Intercostales,	ib.
117. Triangularis Sterni, or Sterno-Costalis,	179

#### CHAP. V.—MUSCLES OF THE HEAD, NECK, AND TRUNK.

I. MUSCLES OF THE HEAD AND NECK,	
118. Splenius,	180
119. Complexus,	ib.
120. Trachelo-mastoideus,	182
121. Rectus Minor,	ib.
122. Rectus Major,	ib.
123. Obliquus Superior,	183
124. Obliquus Inferior,	ib.
II. MUSCLES OF THE TRUNK,	
125. Quadratus Lumborum,	ib.
126. Longissimus Dorsi,	184
127. Sacro Lumbalis,	185
128. Cervicalis Descendens,	ib.
129. Transversalis Colli,	186

Arrangement of the intricate set of Muscles filling up the hollows and interstices among the Spines and Processes of the Vertebræ,		187
130. Spinalis Cervicis,	- - -	ib.
131. Spinalis Dorsi,	- - -	188
132. Semi-spinalis Dorsi,	- - -	ib.
133. Multifidus Spinæ,	- - -	ib.
134. Inter-spinales Colli, Dorsi, et Lumborum,	- - -	189
135. Inter-transversales,	- - -	ib.
III. MUSCLES ON THE FORE PART OF THE HEAD AND NECK, completing the Catalogue of those belonging to the Spine,		
136. Platysma Myoides,	- - -	ib.
137. Mastoideus,	- - -	ib.
138. Rectus Internus Capitis Major,	- - -	190
139. Rectus Internus Capitis Minor,	- - -	ib.
140. Rectus Capitis Lateralis,	- - -	ib.
141. Longus Colli,	- - -	191
142. Scalenus,	- - -	ib.

## CHAP. VI.—OF THE MUSCLES OF THE ABDOMEN, AND OF THE DIAPHRAGM.

I. MUSCLES OF THE ABDOMEN,	- - -	192
Importance of the Anatomy of the Abdominal Muscles,—General Explanation of these Muscles,— their Uses,—Arrangement,		
143. Obliquus Externus,	- - -	ib.
144. Obliquus Internus,	- - -	194
145. Transversalis Abdominis,	- - -	ib.
146. Recti,	- - -	195
147. Pyramidalis,	- - -	ib.
Explanation of the Lines, Rings, &c. of the Abdominal Muscles,		
1. Linea Alba,	- - -	196
2. Linea Semilunaris,	- - -	ib.
3. Sheath for the Rectus,	- - -	ib.
4. Umbilicus,	- - -	ib.
5. Ring of the Abdominal Muscles,	- - -	197
148. Cremaster Muscles of the Testicle,	- - -	ib.
6. Ligament of the Thigh,	- - -	198
Explanation of the different kinds of Hernia, and the points at which the bowels are pro- truded,		
Uses of the Abdominal Muscles,	- - -	ib.
		199

	Page
II. DIAPHRAGM, - - - - -	200
149. The Diaphragm, - - - - -	ib.
1. The Greater, or Upper Muscle of the Diaphragm, - - - - -	ib.
2. The Lesser Muscle of the Diaphragm, - - - - -	ib.
3. The Tendon in the centre of the Diaphragm, - - - - -	201
Vessels perforating the Diaphragm, - - - - -	ib.
1. Aorta, - - - - -	ib.
2. Oesophagus, - - - - -	ib.
3. The Great Vena Cava, - - - - -	202
The Tendon of the Diaphragm, - - - - -	ib.
Uses of the Diaphragm, - - - - -	ib.

## CHAP. VII.—THE MUSCLES OF THE PARTS OF GENERATION, AND OF THE ANUS AND PERINÆUM.

General idea of these Muscles, - - - - -	203
Structure of the Penis, - - - - -	204
150. Erector Penis, - - - - -	ib.
151. Transversalis Perinæi, - - - - -	ib.
152. Accelerator, - - - - -	ib.
153. Sphincter Ani, - - - - -	205
154. Levator Ani, - - - - -	ib.
155. Musculus Coccygæus, - - - - -	206
Perinæum,—the point where all these Muscles are united, - - - - -	ib.
Course of the Incision in Lithotomy, - - - - -	ib.

## CHAP. VIII.—MUSCLES OF THE THIGH, LEG, AND FOOT.

I. MUSCLES MOVING THE THIGH BONE, - - - - -	207
General Description of these Muscles,—Classification and Arrangement of them,—and Table of their Implantations, and of the Motions which they perform, - - - - -	208
Fascia of the Thigh, - - - - -	ib.
156. Musculus Fascialis, or Tensor Vaginæ Femoris, - - - - -	209
157. Psoas Magnus, - - - - -	210
158. Psoas Parvus, - - - - -	ib.
159. Iliacus Internus, - - - - -	ib.

	Page
160. Pectineus, or Pectinalis,	211
161. Triceps Femoris,	ib.
1. Adductor Longus,	212
2. Adductor Brevis,	ib.
3. Adductor Magnus,	ib.
162. Obturator Externus,	213
163. Glutæus Maximus,	214
164. Glutæus Medius, or Minor,	ib.
165. Glutæus Minimus,	ib.
166. } Gemini,	215
167. }	
168. Pyriformis,	ib.
169. Obturator Internus,	ib.
170. Quadratus Femoris,	216
Motions of the Thigh, and Action of these Muscles,	ib.
II. MUSCLES OF THE LEG,	
Arrangement of these Muscles,	217
i. EXTENSORS of the LEG,	218
171. Rectus Femoris, or Rectus Cruris,	ib.
172. Cruræus,	ib.
Sub-crural, being slips only of the Cruræus,	219
173. Vastus Externus,	ib.
174. Vastus Internus,	ib.
Uses of these Muscles,	220
ii. FLEXORS of the LEG,	ib.
175. Sartorius,	ib.
176. Gracilis, or Rectus Internus Femoris,	221
177. Semitendinosus,	222
178. Semimembranosus,	ib.
179. Poplitæus,	223
180. Biceps Cruris,	ib.
III. MUSCLES OF THE FOOT,	
Arrangement,	224
i. EXTENSORS,	ib.
181. Gastrocnemius,	ib.
182. Soleus,	ib.
183. Plantaris,	225
184. Peronæus Longus,	226
185. Peronæus Brevis,	ib.
186. Tibialis Posticus,	227
ii. FLEXOR,	228
187. Tibialis Anticus,	ib.
IV. MUSCLES OF THE TOES,	ib.
188. Flexor Longus Pollicis,	229
189. Flexor Longus Digitorum Pedis, Perforans,	ib.
190. Massa Carneæ J. Sylvii, or Plantæ Pedis,	230
191. Flexor Brevis Digitorum,	ib.
192. Lumbricales,	231

	Page
193. Extensor Longus Digitorum Pedis,	231
194. Peronæus Tertius, - - -	232
195. Extensor Digitorum Brevis, - - -	ib.
196. Extensor Pollicis Proprius, - - -	233
Crucial Ligament, - - -	234
197. Abductor Pollicis, } - - -	ib.
198. Flexor Brevis Pollicis, } - - -	ib.
199. Adductor Pollicis, } - - -	ib.
200. Transversalis Pedis, - - -	235
201. Abductor Minimi Digiti, - - -	ib.
202. Flexor Brevis Minimi Digiti, - - -	ib.
203. Interossei Interni, - - -	ib.
204. Interossei Externi, - - -	236
Plantaris Aponeurosis, - - -	ib.

### CHAP. IX.—OF THE MUSCULAR POWER.

### CHAP. X.—OF THE TENDONS, LIGAMENTS, BURSÆ, AND ALL THE PARTS WHICH BELONG TO THE BONES OR MUSCLES, OR WHICH ENTER INTO THE CONSTITUTION OF A JOINT.

General Explanation of the Tendons, Ligaments, &c.	248
Of the Forms of the Cellular Substance, - - -	250
1. Its Cells, and their use, - - -	ib.
2. Bursæ Mucosæ, - - -	ib.
3. Vaginæ or Fasciæ, - - -	251
4. Tendons, - - -	ib.
5. Periosteum, - - -	252
6. Vagina. or Sheaths of Tendons, - - -	ib.
7. Capsules of the Joints, - - -	253
8. Ligaments of Joints, - - -	ib.
Recapitulation and Review of the connections of these parts,	ib.
Constitution and Nature of those less feeling parts,—almost insensible in health,—slow to inflame,—their inflammation very violent, though slow,—diseases to which they are liable,	254



## BOOK III.

### OF THE JOINTS.

#### CHAP. I.—JOINTS OF THE HEAD AND TRUNK.

I. JOINTS of the HEAD and SPINE, - - -	258
The Motions of the Head and Spine, - - -	ib.

	Page
The Provisions for these Motions, -	259
i. Joint of the Head with the Neck, -	ib.
1. Articulation of the Occiput and Atlas, -	ib.
Form of the Joint and Capsules for the Condyles, -	ib.
Flat membranous Ligament from the Ring of the	
Atlas to the Ring of the Occipital Hole, -	ib.
2. Articulation of the Atlas with the Dentatus, -	ib.
Capsules betwixt the Condyles of the Vertebrae, -	ib.
Transverse Ligament embracing the Neck of the	
Tooth-like Process—Capsular Ligament, -	ib.
Ligament betwixt the Tooth-like Process and	
Occipital Hole, -	ib.
ii. Joints of the Common Vertebrae with each other, -	ib.
Intervertebral Substance, and Intervertebral Liga-	
ments, - - - - -	260
External or Anterior Vagina, or Ligament of the	
Spine, - - - - -	ib.
Internal Ligaments, - - - - -	261
Ligamenta Subflava Crurum Processuum Spi-	
nosorum—Membranæ Interspinales—Liga-	
menta Processuum Transversorum, -	ib.
Posterior or Internal Ligament of the Spine, -	ib.
Apparatus Ligamentosus Colli, -	ib.
II. JOINT of the LOWER JAW, - - - - -	262
III. JOINTS of the RIBS, - - - - -	263
Ligamenta Capitelli Costarum, - - - - -	ib.
Ligamentum Transversarium Externum, -	ib.
- - - - - Internum, -	ib.
Capsule and Ligaments belonging to the Cartilages, -	264

## CHAP. II.—JOINTS OF THE SHOULDER, ARM, AND HAND.

I. JOINTS of the CLAVICLE, - - - - -	ib.
With the Sternum, - - - - -	ib.
With the Scapula, - - - - -	265
II. JOINT of the SHOULDER, - - - - -	ib.
III. JOINT of the ELBOW, - - - - -	267
The General Capsule of the whole Joint, -	ib.
The Lateral Ligaments, External and Internal, -	ib.
The Coronary Ligament of the Ulna, -	268
Accessory Ligaments, - - - - -	ib.
IV. WRIST, - - - - -	ib.
Articulation of the Scaphoid and Lunated Bones with	
the Scaphoid Cavity of the Radius, -	269
Articulation of the Radius with the Ulna for the tur-	
ning Motions of the Hand, - - - - -	ib.
Articulation of the Bones of the Carpus with each other, -	ib.

Articulations of the Metacarpus,	-	-	270
V. JOINTS of the FINGERS,	-	-	ib.

### CHAP. III.—JOINTS OF THE THIGH, LEG, AND ANKLE.

I. The HIP-JOINT,	-	-	-	272
The Ligamentum Labri Cartilaginei Transversale,				ib.
The Capsule of the Joint,	-	-		ib.
The Internal Ligaments,	-	-	-	273
II. KNEE-JOINT,	-	-	-	274
1. The External Ligaments,	-	-	-	ib.
Capsule—and Ligamentum Posticum Winslowii,				275
Lateral Ligaments,	-	-		ib.
Ligamentum Laterale Internum,	-	-		ib.
Externum Longior,				ib.
Brevior,	-	-		ib.
2. The Internal or Crucial Ligaments of the Knee,				276
Posterior Crucial Ligament,	-	-	-	ib.
Anterior ————,	-	-	-	ib.
Semilunar, or moveable Cartilages,	-	-		ib.
Ligamentum Mucosum—and Ligamentum Alare				
Majus et Minus,	-	-	-	277
Bursæ Mucosæ of the Knee-joint,	-	-		278
Recapitulation, explaining the Constitution of this Joint,				
and uses of its several parts,	-	-		ib.
III. ARTICULATION of the FIBULA with the TIBIA,				280
IV. ANKLE-JOINT,	-	-	-	ib.
Ligamentum Superius Anticum,	-	-		ib.
Posticum,	-	-		ib.
Inferius Posticum,	-	-		ib.
Capsule,	-	-	-	281
Ligamentum Deltoides,	-	-	-	ib.
Fibulæ Anterius,	-	-	-	ib.
Perpendiculare,	-	-		ib.
Inter Fibulam et Astragalum Posterius,				ib.
V. JOINTS of the Foot,	-	-	-	ib.
Articulations of the Bones of the Tarsus with each other,				282
Joints of the Metatarsus and Toes,	-	-		ib.
Aponeurosis Plantaris Pedis,	-	-		ib.
Bursæ Mucosæ of the Ankle and Foot,	-	-		283
CONCLUSION and ENUMERATION of the JOINTS,	-	-		284



THE  
ANATOMY  
OF THE  
BONES, MUSCLES, AND JOINTS.

---

BOOK I.  
*OF THE BONES.*

---

CHAP. I.

OF THE FORMATION AND GROWTH OF BONES.

IT is not easy to explain, in their natural order, the various parts of which the human body is composed ; for they have that mutual dependence upon each other, that continual circle of action and re-action in their various functions, and that intricacy of connection, and close dependence, in respect to the individual parts, that, as in a circle there is no point of preference from which we should begin to trace its course, so in the human body there is no function so insulated from the other functions, no part so independent of other parts, as to determine our choice. We cannot begin without hesitation, nor hope to proceed in any perfect course ; yet, from whatever point we begin, we may so return to that point, as to represent truly this consent of functions, and connection of parts, by which it is composed into one perfect whole.

The bones are framed as a basis for the whole system ; fitted to support, defend, and contain the more delicate and noble organs. They are the most permanent and unchangeable of all parts of the body. We see them exposed to the seasons, without suffering the smallest change ; remaining for ages the memorials of the dead ; the evidence of a former race of men exceeding ours in strength and stature ; the only remains of creatures which no longer exist ; the proofs of such changes on our globe, as we cannot trace but by these uncer-

tain marks. Thus we are apt to conceive, that even in the living body, bones are hardly organized; scarcely partaking of life; not liable, like the soft parts, to disease and death. But minute anatomy, the most pleasing part of our science, unfolds and explains to us the internal structure of the bones; shows their myriads of vessels; and proves them to be as full of blood as the most succulent and fleshy parts; having, like them, their periods of growth and decay; being as liable to accidents, and as subject to internal disease.

The phenomena of fractured bones first suggested some indistinct notions of the way in which bone might be formed. It was observed, that in very aged men, a hard crust was often formed upon the surface of the bones; that the fluid exuding into the joints of gouty people, sometimes coagulated into a chalky mass; Le Dran had seen in a case of *spina ventosa*, or scrophulous bone, an exudation which flowed out like wax, and hardened into perfect bone; Daventer had seen the juice that exuded from a split in a bone, coagulate into a bony crust; and it was thought to be particularly well ascertained, that callus was but a coagulable juice, which might be seen exuding directly from the broken ends of a bone, and which gradually coagulated into hard bone. The best physiologists did not scruple to believe, that bones, and the callus of broken bones, were formed of a bony juice, which was deposited by the vessels of the part, and which passing through all the successive conditions of a thin uncoagulated juice, of a transparent cartilage, and of soft and flexible bone, became at last, by a slow coagulation, a firm, hard, and perfect bone; depending but little upon vessels or membranes, either for its generation or growth, or for nourishment in its perfect state. But this coagulation is a property of dead matter, which has no place in the living system; or if blood or mucus do ever coagulate within the body, it is only after it is separated from the system. Coagulation is a sort of accident in the living body; and it is not to be believed that the accidental concurrence of parts should form the perfect system of a living bone; nor that coagulation, an irregular uncertain process, should keep pace with the growth of the living parts; that a bone which is completely organized, and a regular part of the living system, should, in all its progress towards this perfect state, be merely inanimate, inorganized matter: yet this opinion once prevailed; and if other theories were at that time proposed, they did not vary in any very essential point from this first notion. De Heide, a surgeon of Amsterdam, believed that bone or callus was not formed from a coagulable juice, but from the blood itself. He broke the bones of ani-

imals, and, examining them at various points of time, he never failed (like other speculators) to find exactly what he desired to find. In "every experiment," he found a great effusion of blood among the muscles, and round the broken bone : and he as easily traced this blood through all the stages of its progress : on the first day red and fluid ; by and by coagulated ; then gradually becoming white, then cartilaginous, and at last (by the exhalation of its thinner parts) hardening into perfect bone.

It is very singular, that often those who abjure theory, and appeal to experiments, who profess only to deliver facts, are least of all to be trusted ; for it is theory which brings them to try experiments, and then the form and order ; and even the result of such experiments, must bend to meet the theories which they were designed to prove. It is by this deception that the authors of two rival doctrines arrive at opposite conclusions by facts directly opposed to each other. Du Hamel believed, that as the bark formed the wood of a tree, adding, by a sort of secretion, successive layers to its growth ; so the periosteum formed the bone at the first, renewed it when spoiled or cut away, and, when broken, assumed the nature of bone, and repaired the breach. He broke the bones of pigeons, and, allowing them to heal, he found the periosteum to be the chief organ for reproducing bone. He found that the callus had no adhesion to the broken bone, and was easily separated from the broken ends which remained rough and bare. And, in pursuing these dissections, he found the periosteum fairly glued to the external surface of the new bone ; or he found rather the callus or regenerated bone to be but a mere thickening of the periosteum, its layers being separated, and its substance swelled. On the first days he found the periosteum thickened, inflamed, and easily divided into many lamellæ, or plates ; but while the periosteum was suffering these changes, the bone was in no degree changed. On the following days, he found the tumour of the periosteum increased at the place of the fracture, and extending further along the bone ; its internal surface already cartilaginous, and always tinged with a little blood, which came to it through the vessels of the marrow. He found the tumour of the periosteum spongy, and divisible into regular layers, while still the ends of the bone were unchanged, or only a little roughened by the first layer of the periosteum being already converted into earth and deposited upon the surface of the bone : and in the next stage of its progress, he found the periosteum firmly attached to the surface of the callous mass. By wounding, not breaking, the bones, he had still a more flattering ap-

pearance of a proof; for having pierced them with holes, he found the holes filled up with a sort of tompion, proceeding from the periosteum, which was thickened all round them. In an early stage, this plug could, by drawing the periosteum, be pulled out from its hole: in a more advanced stage, it was inseparably united to the bone, so as to supply the loss.

Haller, doubting whether the periosteum, a thin and delicate membrane, could form so large a mass of bone or callus, repeated the proofs; and he again found quite the reverse of all this: that the callus, or the original bone, was in no degree dependent on the periosteum, but was generated from the internal vessels of the bone itself: that the periosteum did indeed appear as early as the cartilage which is to produce the bone, seeming to bound the cartilage, and give it form; but that the periosteum was at first but a loose tissue of cellular substance, without the appearance of vessels, or any mark of blood, adhering chiefly to the heads or processes, while it hardly touched the body of the bone. He also found that the bone grew, became vascular, had a free circulation of red blood, and that then only the vessel of the periosteum began to carry red blood, or to adhere to the bone. We know that the bones begin to form in small nuclei, in the very centre of their cartilage, or in the very centre of the yet fluid callus, far from the surface, where they might be assisted by the periosteum; and that ossification begins first in the middle of the long bones, where the periosteum does not adhere, and is formed much later in the heads and processes, whose connection with the periosteum is very close.

Thus has the formation of bone been falsely attributed to a gelatinous effusion, gradually hardened; or to that blood which must be poured out from the ruptured vessels round a fractured bone; or to the induration and change of the periosteum, depositing layer after layer, till it completed the form of the bone.

But when, neglecting theory, we set ourselves to examine, with an unbiassed judgment, the process of nature in forming the bones, as in the chick, or in restoring them, as in broken limbs, a succession of phenomena present themselves, the most orderly, beautiful, and simple, of any that are recorded in the philosophy of the animal body: for if bones were but condensed gluten, coagulated blood, or a mere deposition from the periosteum, they were then inorganized, and out of the system, not subject to change, nor open to disease; liable, indeed, to be broken, but without any means of being healed again: while they are, in truth, as fully organized, as permeable to the blood, as easily hurt, and as easily healed, as

sensible to pain, and as regularly changed as the softer parts are. We are not to refer the generation and growth of bone to any one part. It is not formed by that gelly in which the bone is layed ; nor by the blood which is circulating in it ; nor by the periosteum which covers it ; nor by the medullary membrane with which it is lined : but the whole system of the bone, of which these are parts only, is designed and planned, is laid out in the very elements of the body, and advances to ripeness by the concurring action of all its parts. The arteries, by a determined action, deposite the bone ; which is formed commonly in a bed of cartilage, as the bones of the leg or arm are ; sometimes betwixt two layers of membrane, like the bones of the skull, where true cartilage is never seen. Often the secretion of the bony matter is performed in a distinct bag, and there it grows into form, as in the teeth ; for each tooth is formed in its little bag, which, by injection, can be filled and covered with vessels. Any artery of the body may assume this action, and deposite bone, which is sometimes also formed where it should not be ; in the tendons and in the joints, in the great arteries, and in their valves, in the flesh of the heart itself, or even in the soft and pulpy substance of the brain.

All the bones of the body, both in the human fœtus, and in other animals, are merely cartilage before the time of birth. The whole fœtus is gelatinous ; the bones are a pure, almost transparent and tremulous gelly ; they are flexible, so that a long bone can be bent into a complete ring ; and no opacity, nor spot of ossification is seen.

This cartilage is never hardened into bone ; but, from the first, it is in itself an organized mass. It has its vessels ; which are at first transparent, but which soon dilate, and whenever the red colour of the blood begins to appear in them, ossification very quickly follows, the arteries being so far enlarged as to carry the coarser parts of the blood. The first mark of ossification is an artery, which is seen running into the centre of the gelly in which the bone is to be formed. Other arteries soon appear ; overtake the first ; mix with it, and form a net-work of vessels ; then a centre of ossification begins, stretching its rays according to the length of the bone, and then the cartilage begins to grow opaque, yellow, brittle ; it will no longer bend, and the small nucleus of ossification is felt in the centre of the bone, and when touched with a sharp point, is easily known by its gritty feel. Other points of ossification are successively formed ; the ossification being always foretold by the spreading of the artery, and by the arrival of red blood. Every point of ossification has its little arterics,



and each ossifying nucleus has so little dependence on the cartilage in which it is formed, that it is held to it by these arteries only; and when the ossifying cartilage is cut into thin slices, and steeped in water till its arteries rot, the nucleus of ossification drops spontaneously from the cartilage, leaving the cartilage like a ring, with a smooth and regular hole where the bone lay.

The colour of each part of a bone is proportioned exactly to the degree in which its ossification has advanced. When ossification begins in the centre of the bone, redness also appears; indicating the presence of those vessels by which the bony matter is to be poured out. When the bony matter begins to accumulate, the red colour of those arteries is obscured, the centre of the bone becomes yellow or white, and the colour seems be removed towards the ends of the bone. In the centre, the first colouring of the bone is a cloudy, diffused and general red, because the vessels are profuse. Beyond that, at the edges of the first circle, the vessels are more scattered, and distinct trunks are easily seen, forming a circle of radiating arteries, which point towards the heads of the bone. Beyond that, again, the cartilage is transparent and pure, being yet untouched with blood; the arteries have not reached it, and its ossification is not begun. Thus, a long bone, while forming, seems to be divided into seven variously coloured zones. The central point of most perfect ossification is yellow and opaque. On either side of that, there is a zone of red. On either side of that again, the vessels being more scattered, form a vascular zone,\* and the zone at either end is transparent or white. The ossification follows the vessels, burying and hiding those vessels by which it is formed: the yellow and opaque part expands and spreads along the bone: the vessels advance towards the heads of the bones: the whole body of the bone becomes opaque, and there is left only

\* It is curious to observe how completely vascular the bone of a chicken is before the ossification have fairly begun; how the ossification having begun, overtakes the arteries, and hides them, changing the transparent and vascular part of the bone into an opaque white; how, by peeling off the periosteum, bloody dots are seen, which shows a living connection and commerce of vessels betwixt the periosteum and the bone; how, by tearing up the outer layers of the tender bone, the vascularity of the inner layers is again exposed. But of all the proofs of the vascularity of bones and deposition of the bony matter, the most beautiful is that of our common preparations; where, after filling with injection the arteries of an adult bone. by its nutritious vessels, we, by corroding the bone with mineral acids, dissolve the earth, leaving nothing but the transparent gelly, and thus restore the bone to its original cartilaginous state; then the vessels appear in such profusion, that the bone may be compared in vascularity with the soft parts, and it is seen that its arteries were not annihilated, but its high vascularity only concealed by the deposition of the bony parts.

a small vascular circle at either end : the heads are separated from the body of the bone by a thin cartilage ; and the vessels of the centre, extending still towards the extremities of the bone, perforate that cartilage, pass into the head of the bone, and then its ossification also begins, and a small nucleus of ossification is formed in its centre. Thus the heads and the body are, at the first, distinct bones formed apart and joined by a cartilage ; and they are not united till the age of fifteen or twenty years.

The vessels are seen entering in one large trunk (the nutritious artery) into the middle of the bone : from that centre they extend in a radiated form towards either end, and the fibres of the bone are radiated in the same direction ; there are furrows betwixt the rays, and the arteries run along in the furrows of the bone, as if the arteries were forming these ridges, secreting and pouring out the bony matter, each artery piling it up on either side to form its ridge. The body of the bone is supplied by its own vessels ; the heads of the bone are supplied by the extremities of the same trunks which perforate the dividing cartilage like a sieve ; the periosteum adhering more firmly to the heads of the bone, it brings assistant arteries from without, which meet the internal trunks, and assist the ossification ; but with every help, the ossification is not accomplished in many years.

It is by the action of the vessels that all the parts of the human body are formed ; fluids and solids, each for its respective use. The blood is formed by the action of the vessels, and all the fluids are in their turn formed from the blood. We see in the chick, where there is no external source from which its red blood can be derived, that red blood is formed within its own system. Every animal system, as it grows, assimilates its food, and converts it to the animal nature, and so increases the quantity of its red blood : and as the red blood is thus prepared by the actions of the greater system, the actions of particular vessels prepare various parts : some to be added to the mass of solids, for the natural growth ; others to supply the continual waste ; others to be discharged from the body as effete, and hurtful, or to allow new matter to be received ; others again to perform certain offices within the body, as the secretion of semen, of saliva, of bile, or of urine. Thus the body is furnished with various apparatus for performing various offices, and for repairing the waste. These are the secretions, and the formation of bone is one of these. The plan of the whole body lies in the embryo, in perfect order, with all its forms and parts. Cartilage is laid in the place of bone, and preserves its form for the future bone, with all its appa-



tus of surrounding membranes, its heads, its processes, and its connection with the soft parts. The colourless arteries of this pellucid, but organized mass of cartilage keep up its growth ; extend, and yet preserve its form ; and gradually enlarging in their own diameter, at last receive the entire blood. Then the deposition of earthy matter begins. The bone is deposited in specks, which spread and meet, and form themselves into perfect bone. While the bone is laid by arteries, the cartilage is conveyed away by the absorbing vessels ; and while they convey away the superfluous cartilage, they model the bone into its due form ; shape out its cavities, cancelli, and holes ; remove the thinner parts of the cartilage, and harden it into due consistence.

If such organization of arteries to deposite bone, and of absorbents to take up the cartilage and make room for the osseous matter, be necessary in the formation and growth, it is no less necessary for the life and health of the full-formed bone. Its health depends on the regular deposition and re-absorption, moulding and forming the parts ; and by various degrees of action, bone is liable to inflame, to ulcerate, to rot and spoil, to become brittle by too much secreted earth, or to become soft by a greedy diseased absorption of its earthy parts. The earth, which constitutes the hardness, and all the useful properties of bone, is dead, inorganized, and lies in the interstices of the bone ; where it is united with mucus, to give it consistence and strength ; furnished with absorbents to keep it in health, and carry off its wasted parts ; and pervaded by vessels to supply it with new matter. The cartilage is itself a secretion, to which the full secretion of bone succeeds, as the arteries grow stronger in their secreting office : for in a broken limb there is first a thin effusion, then a tremulous gelly, then radiated vessels, then ossifying spots, and these running together form perfect bone. If the broken limb be too much moved during the cure, then the secreting arteries are interrupted in their office ; perfect bone is never formed ; it remains a cartilage ; and an unnatural joint is produced : but we cut the surface of these cartilages, and then the vessels are opened again, the process is renewed, and the bones unite : or even by rubbing, by stimulating, by merely cutting the surrounding parts, the vessels are made active, and their secretion is renewed. During all the process of ossification, the absorbents proportion their action to the stimulus which is applied to them ; they carry away the serous fluid, when gelly is to take its place ; they remove the gelly, as the bone is laid ; they continue removing the bony particles also, which (as in a circle) the arteries continually renew.

Nothing can be more curious than this continual renovation and change of parts, even in the hardest bones. We are accustomed to say of the whole body, that it is daily changed ; that the old particles are removed ; and new ones supply their place ; that the body is not now the same individual body that it was ; but it could not be easily believed that we speak only by guess concerning the softer parts, what we know for certain of the bones. It was discovered by chance, that animals fed upon the refuse of the dyer's vats, received so much of the colouring matter into the system, that the bones were tinged by the madder to a deep red, while the softer parts were unchanged ; no tint remaining in the ligaments nor cartilages ; in the membranes, vessels, nor nerves ; not even in the delicate vessels of the eye. It was easy to distinguish by the microscope, that such colour was mixed with the bony matter, and resided in the interstices only, but did not remain in the vessels of the bone, which like those of all the body had no tinge of red ; while our injections again fill the vessels of the bone, make all their branches red, but do not affect the colours of the bony part. When madder is given to animals, withheld for some time, and then given again, the colour appears in their bones ; is removed ; and appears again, with such a sudden change as proves a rapidity of deposition and absorption exceeding all likelihood or belief. All the bones are tinged in twenty-four hours : in two or three days their colour is very deep : and if the madder be left off but for a few days, the red colour is entirely removed.

This tinging of the bones with madder, was the great instrument employed by Du Hamel, for proving by demonstration, that it was by layers from the periosteum that the bone was formed ; and how very far the mind is vitiated by this vanity of establishing a doctrine on facts, is too easily seen here. As Du Hamel believed that the periosteum deposited successive layers, which were added to the bone, it was his business to prove that the successive layers would be deposited alternately red, white, and red again, by giving a young animal madder, withholding it for a little while, and then beginning again to give it. Now, it is easy to foresee that this tinging of the lamellæ should correspond with the successive times in which the periosteum is able to deposite the layers of its substance ; but Du Hamel very thoughtlessly makes his layers correspond only with the weeks or months in which his madder was given or withheld. It is easy to foresee also, that if madder be removed from the bones in a few days (which he himself has often told us,) then his first layer, viz. of red bone, could not have waited for his layer of white to

be laid above it, nor for a layer of red above that again, so as to enable him to show successive layers : and if madder can so penetrate, as to tinge all the bones that are already formed, then, though there might be first a tinged bone, then a white and colourless layer, whenever he proceeded to give madder for tinging a third layer, it would pervade all the bone, tinge the layer below, and reduce the whole to one tint. If a bone were thus to increase by layers, thick enough to be visible, and of a distinct tint ; and if such layers were to be continually accumulated upon each other every week, what kind of a bone should this grow to ? Yet such is the fascinating nature of a theory, that Du Hamel, unmindful of any interruptions like these, describes boldly his successive layers ; carrying us through regular details, experiment after experiment, till at last he brings up his report to the amount of five successive layers, viz. two red layers, and three white ones : nay, in one experiment he makes the tinge of the madder continue in the bones for six months, forming successive layers of red and white ; although, in an earlier experiment (which he must have forgotten in his hurry,) he tells us, that by looking through the transparent part of a cock's wing, he had seen the tinge of the madder gradually leave the bones in a few days.

These experiments are as gross and palpable as the occasion of them ; and should stand as a warning to us, showing how severely and honestly we ought to question our own judgment, when we aim at confirming our preconceived theories by experiments and facts.

Yet by these experiments with madder, one most important fact is proved to us ; that the arteries and absorbents, acting in concert, alternately deposite and reabsorb the earthy particles, as fast as can be conceived of the soft parts, or even of the most moveable and fluctuating humours of the body. The absorption of the hardest bones is proved by daily observation. When a carious bone disappears before the integuments are opened ; when a tumour, pressing upon a bone, destroys it ; when an aneurism of the temporal artery destroys the skull ; when an aneurism of the heart beats open the thorax, destroying the sternum and ribs ; when an aneurism of the ham destroys the thigh-bone, tibia, and joint of the knee ; when a tumour coming from within the head, forces its way through the bones of the skull ;—in all these cases, since the bone cannot be annihilated, what can happen, but that it must be absorbed and conveyed away ? If we should need any stronger proofs than these, we have mollities ossium ; a disease by which, in a few months, the bony system is entirely

broken up, and conveyed away, by a high action of the absorbents, with continual and deep-seated pain, a discharge of the earthy matter by the urine, and a gradual softening of the bones, so that they bend under the weight of the body ; the heels are turned up behind the head ; the spine becomes crooked ; the pelvis distorted ; the breast is crushed and bent in ; and the functions beginning to fall low, the patient, after a slow hectic fever, long and much suffering of pain and misery, expires ; with all the bones distorted in a shocking degree ; gelatinous, or nearly so, robbed of all their earthy parts ; and so thoroughly softened that they may be cut with the knife.

Thus every bone has, like the soft parts, its arteries, veins, and absorbent vessels. And every bone has its nerves too : we see them entering into its substance in small threads, as on the surfaces of the frontal and parietal bones ; we see them entering for particular purposes, by a large and peculiar hole, as the nerves which go into the jaws to reach the teeth : we find delicate nerves going into each bone along with its nutritious vessels ; and yet we dare hardly believe the demonstration, since bones seem quite insensible and dead. We have no pain when the periosteum is rasped and scraped from a bone : we have no feeling when bones are cut in amputation ; or when, in a broken limb, we cut off with pincers the protruding end of a bone ; we feel no pain when a bone is trepanned, or when caustics are applied to it ; and it has been always known, that the heated irons which the old surgeons used so much, made no other impression upon the bone than to excite a particular titillation and heat, rather pleasant than painful, running along the course of the bone. But there is a deception in all this. A bone may be exquisitely sensible, and yet give no pain ; a paradox which is very easily explained. A bone may feel acutely, and yet not send its sensation to the brain. It is not fit that parts should in this sense feel, which are so continually exposed to shocks and blows, and all the accidents of life ; which have to suffer all the motions which the other parts require. In this sense, the bones, the cartilages, ligaments, bursæ, and all the parts that relate to joints, are quite insensible and dead. A bone does not feel, or its feelings are not conveyed to the brain ; but with this single exception, it shows every mark of life. Scrape a bone, and its vessels bleed ; cut or bore a bone, and its granulations sprout up ; break a bone, and it heals ; or cut a piece of it away, and more bone will be readily produced ; hurt it in any way, and it inflames ; burn it, and it dies : take any proof of sensibility, but the mere feeling of pain, and it will answer



to the proof. In short, these parts have a sensibility which belongs to themselves, but have no feelings in correspondence with the general system.

A bone feels stimuli, and is excited to re-act ; injuries produce inflammation in the bones, as in the soft parts ; and then swelling and spongy looseness, and a fullness of blood, suppuration, ulcer, and the death and discharge of the diseased bone ensue. When the texture of a bone is thus loosened by inflammation, its feeling is roused ; and the hidden sensibility of the bone rises up like a new property of its nature : and as the eye, the skin, and all feeling parts, have their sensibility increased by disease, the bones, ligaments, bursæ, and all the parts whose feeling, during health, is obscure and hardly known, are roused to a degree of sensibility far surpassing the soft parts. The wound of a joint is indeed less painful at first, but when the inflammation comes, its sensibility is raised to a dreadful degree : the patient cries out with anguish. No pains are equal to those which belong to the bones and joints.

Thus ossification is a process of a truly animal nature : no coagulation will harden cartilage into bone ; no change of consistency will convert the blood into it ; no condensation of the periosteum can assimilate it to the nature of a bone. Bone is not the inorganic concrete which it was once supposed ; but it is a regularly organized part, whose form subsists from the first ; and which is perfected by its secreting arteries, balanced, as in every secretion, by the absorbents of the part : it lives, grows and feels ; is liable to accidents, and subject to disease. It is a process which, at first, appears so rapid, that we should expect it to be soon complete ; but it becomes in the end a slow and difficult process. It is rapid at first ; it advances slowly after birth ; it is not completed in the human body till the twentieth year ; it is forwarded by health and strength, retarded by weakness and disease. In scrofula it is imperfect ; and so children become rickety, the bones softening and swelling at their heads, and bending under the weight of the body. And why should we be surprised, that carelessness of food or clothing, bad air, or languid health, should cause that dreadful disease, when more or less heat, during the incubation of a chick, affects the growth of its bones ; when the sickness of a creature, during our experiments, protracts the growth of callus ; when, in the accidents of pregnancy, of profuse suppuration, or of languid health, the knitting of broken bones is delayed, or wholly prevented.

This process, so difficult and slow, is assisted by every provision of nature. The progress of the whole is slow, that as

long as the body increases in stature, the bones also may grow ; but it is assisted in the individual parts, where some are slow ; some rapid in their growth ; some delayed, as the heads of joints, that their bones may be allowed to extend ; and others hastened, as the pelvis, that they may acquire their perfect size early in life. Ossification is assisted by the softness of the cartilaginous bed in which the bone is formed ; by those large and permeable vessels which carry easily the grosser parts of the blood ; by a quick and powerful absorption, which all along is modelling the bone ; and, most of all, by being formed in detached points, multiplied and crowded together, wherever much bone is required.

There is one central ring first ossified in a long bone, as of the leg or arm ; the heads or ends of the bone are at first mere cartilage, but they also soon begin to ossify ; the body stretches in a radiated form towards either head ; the heads ossifying each in its centre, also stretch towards the bone ; the heads meet the body, and join to it ; a thin cartilage only is interposed, which grows gradually thinner till the twentieth year, and then disappears ; the body, heads, and processes, becoming one bone. In flat bones, as in the skull, ossification goes from one or more central points, and the radiated fibres meet the radii of other ossifying points, or the edges of the next bone. The thick round bones which form the wrist and foot, have one ossification in their centre, which is bounded by cartilage all round. The processes are often distinct ossifications joined to the bones, like their heads, and slowly consolidated with them into firm bones.\*

While the bone is forming, various parts, essential to its system, gradually rise into view. At first, we cannot in the long bone perceive any heads, processes, cavities, or cells ; these parts are very slowly formed, and are perfected only in the adult bone.

At first, the whole length of a long bone is represented by a transparent gelly ; where there is no distinction of heads nor processes, it is all of one mass. After the red blood has begun to tinge this cartilage, the ossification begins, and one ring is formed in the middle of the bone : from this ring, the fibres stretch towards either end, and stop there ; then it begins to appear that the heads and body are distinct parts ; the fibres of the growing bone have extended till the cartilage is annihilated, and only a small plate remains, separating the knobs of the heads from the long body of the bone. Thus, there is no distinction betwixt the heads and the body, while the bone is

\* The processes and heads are named the epiphysis and apophysis of bones.

cartilaginous ; they begin to appear, as distinct parts, at that stage in which the body of the bone is ossified, and each of the heads is beginning to form : they continue three distinct bones, during all the early part of life, and are easily separated, by soaking the bone in water ; when they are separated, there is seen a rough hollow on the surface of the epiphysis, or separated head, and a rough convexity on the end of the body : they are finally united into one bone, about the twentieth year.

In the original cartilage, there is no hollow, nor cavity ; it is all one solid mass. When the ossification first appears, the cavity of the bone also begins, and extends with the ossification. At first, the cavity is confined chiefly to the middle of the bone, and extends very slowly towards the ends. This cavity, in the centre of the bone, is at first smooth, covered by an internal membrane, containing the trunks and branchings of the nutritious vessels, which enter by a great hole, in the middle of the bone ; and the cavity is traversed, with divisions of its lining membrane, which, like a net-work of partitions, conduct its branches to all parts of the internal surface of the bone ; and its nets, or meshes, are filled with a reddish and serous fluid, in the young bone, but secrete and contain a perfect marrow in the adult bone.

The whole substance of a bone is not only fibrous, as appears outwardly, but is truly lamellated, consisting of many distinct and delicate plates of bone ; which lie over each other in regular order, and might suggest the notion that successive ossifications of the periosteum form the bone. These lamellæ, or plates, are more condensed and firmer towards the outer surface ; and are more loose, separate, and spongy, towards the internal surface of the bone : and it is easily seen, during the growth of a young bone, that the inner and more delicate plates are separating from the walls of the bone, and receding towards its cavity ; and these plates, being again crossed by small bony partitions, form a net-work, or spongy mass, which fills the whole cavity of the bone. In the middle of the bone, the cavity is small, the walls are thick, and have all their bony plates ; the cells of net-work are few, and large : but towards the ends, the bone swells out ; the cavity also is large, but it is not like that in the middle, a large tubular cavity ; it is so crossed with lattice-work, with small interstices and cells, that it seems all one spongy mass of bone ; and so many of the inner layers are separated, to form this profusion of cells, that the whole substance of the bone has degenerated into this



lattice-work, leaving only a thin outward shell.\* This reticular form is what anatomists call the cancelli, lattice-work, net-work, or alveolar part of the bone : it is lined throughout with one delicate membrane ; and inward partitions of the same lining membrane cover each division of the lattice-work, forming each cell into a distinct cavity. In these cavities or cells the marrow is secreted. The secretion is thin and bloody in children ; it thickens as we advance in years ; it is a solid oil, or marrow, in the adult. The marrow is firmer, and more perfect in the middle of the bone ; more thin and serous towards the spongy ends. The whole mass, when shaken out of the bone, is like a bunch of grapes, each hanging by its stalk. The globules, when seen with the microscope, are neat, round, and white, seeming like small pearls, and each stalk is seen to be a small artery, which comes along the membrane of the cancelli, spreads its branches beautifully on the surface of the bag, and serves to secrete the marrow, each small twig of artery filling its peculiar cell. To this, an old anatomist added, that they had their contractile power, like the urinary bladder, for expelling their contents ; that they squeezed their marrow, by channels of communication, through and among the bony layers ; and that their oil exuded into the joint, by nearly the same mechanism by which it got into the substance of the bone.

While the constitution of a bone was not at all understood, anatomists noted with particular care, every trifling peculiarity, in the forms or connections of its parts, and these lamellæ attracted particular notice. That a bone is formed in successive plates, is easily seen, as in whalebone ; or in the horns and bones of the larger animals ; in church-yard bones, which have been long buried, or long exposed to the air. It is demonstrated by a careful picking, and separation of the scales, in a young bone, or by burning a bone, which melts and consumes its gelly, and leaves the bony parts entire. It is seen in the common diseases of bones ; for they cast off by successive plates, or leaves, whence the process is named exfoliation ; and one plate is thoroughly spoiled and cast off, whilst another is entire, and sound. Malpighi had first observed the lamellated structure of bones, likening them to the leaves of a book. Gagliardi, who, like Hippocrates, went among the burial pla-

\* That it is merely an expansion of the layers that forms the cancelli, and a mere swelling and sponginess of the same quantity of bony substance, that makes the ends so much thicker than the middle, is proved by this, that an inch of the smaller bony tube, cut from the middle, weighs equally with an inch of the large spongy tube, cut out from the ends.

ces of the city, to observe the bones there, found in a tomb, where the bones had been long exposed, a skull, the os frontis of which he could dissect into many layers, with the point of a pin. He afterwards found various bones, from all parts of the body, thus decomposed; and he added to the doctrine of plates, that they were held together by minute processes, which going from plate to plate, performed the offices of nails: these appeared to his imagination to be of four kinds, straight and inclined nails, crooked or hook-like, and some with small round heads, of the forms of bolts or pins.\*

Another notable discovery, was the use of the holes which are very easily seen through the substance of bones, and among their plates. They are, indeed, no more than the channels by which the vessels pass into the bones; but the older anatomists imagine them to be still more important, allowing the marrow to transude through all the substance of the bone, and keep it soft. Now this notion, of lubricating the earthy parts of a bone, like the common talk about fomentations to the internal parts of the body, is very mechanical, and very ignorant; for the internal parts of the body, are both hot and moist of themselves, and neither heat nor moisture can reach them from without: the bone is already fully watered with arteries; it is moist in itself, and cannot be further moistened nor lubricated, unless by a fuller and quicker circulation of its blood. It must be preserved by that moisture alone which exists in its substance, and must depend for its consistence upon its own constitution; upon the due mixing up of its gluten and earth. Every part is preserved in its due consistence by the vessels which form its subsistence; and I should no more suppose fat necessary for preserving the moistness of a bone, than for preventing brittleness in the eye. This marrow is, perhaps, more an accidental deposition, than we at first sight believe. We indeed find in it such a regularity of structure, as seems to indicate some very particular use; but we find exactly the same structure in the common fat of the body. When, as we advance in years, more fat is deposited in the omentum, or round the heart, we cannot entertain the absurd notion of fat being needed in our old age, to lubricate the bowels or the heart; no more is the marrow (which is not found in the child,) accumulating in old age for preventing brittleness of the bones.

\* These nails, which Gagliardi imagined, were no more than the little irregularities, risings, and hollows of the adjoining plates, by which they are connected.

The blood vessels of a bone are large, in proportion to the mass of the bone: for first one great trunk enters commonly about the middle of the bone, as in the thigh-bone, leg or arm, and is called the nutritious or medullary artery; it penetrates into the central cavity of the bone, spreads upwards and downwards, supplying all the substance of the bone itself, and giving those delicate arteries which secrete the marrow. Other arteries enter from without, at the spongy ends of the bones, where the holes are not visible only, but very large in the adult; particularly large arteries enter into the heads of the bones, as of the shoulder, or of the thigh-bones; and there the periosteum adheres very strongly: and every where on its surface the bone is supplied by numerous vessels from the periosteum (and this seems, indeed, to be the chief use of that membrane;) so that in tearing off the periosteum, the surfaces of the membrane, and of the bone, are seen covered with bloody points; all the vessels are conducted to the substance of the bone by its two membranes: the internal vessels by the membrane which lines the cavity, and which is known by the absurd name of internal periosteum; the external one by the outer membrane, the proper or external periosteum.

The internal periosteum is that membrane which surrounds the marrow, and in the bags of which the marrow is formed and contained. It is more connected with the fat than with the bone; and in animals, can be drawn out entire from the cavity of the bone: but its chief use is to conduct the vessels which are to enter into the substance of the bone; and this connection and office is so essential to the life and health of the bone, that the spina ventosa, or scrophulous bone, is merely a failure of the internal circulation, a total corruption of the marrow, and a consequent loss of the medullary vessels; by which the whole bone dies, is thrown out by nature, or more frequently the limb must be cut off. The same effect is produced in our experiments, where, by piercing into the medullary cavity, and destroying the marrow, the shaft of the bone dies, while the heads and processes live, merely because they are supplied more fully by their external vessels.

The periosteum, which was once referred to the dura mater, is merely condensed cellular substance; of which kind of matter we now trace many varied forms and uses; for, so close is the connection of the periosteum, tendons, ligaments, fasciæ, and bursæ, and so much are these parts alike in their nature and properties, that we reckon them but as varied forms of one common substance, serving for various uses in different parts. The periosteum consists of many layers, accumulated and condensed one above another: it adheres to the body of

the bone by small points or processes, which dive into the substance of the outer layer, giving a firm adhesion to it, so that it may bear the pulling of the great tendons, which are fixed rather into the periosteum, than into the bone.\* It is also connected with the bone, by innumerable vessels. It is not in itself vascular; but it is the medium by which vessels are transmitted to the bone; and our injections do not easily colour the periosteum itself, while they make the bone which belongs to it thoroughly red. The layers of the periosteum nearest to the bone, are condensed and strong, and take a strong adhesion to the bone, that the vessels may be transmitted safely, and the fibres of this inner layer follow the longitudinal directions of the bony fibres. The periosteum is looser in its texture outwardly, where it is reticulated and lax, changing imperceptibly into the common cellular substance. There the fibres of the periosteum assume the directions of the muscles, tendons, or other parts which run over it. The office of the periosteum is not to generate bone; and therefore it adheres but slightly to the growing bone: it is to nourish the external plates; and therefore as the bone grows, and as the external plates are further removed from the medullary vessels, the adhesion of the periosteum becomes closer, its arteries are enlarged, and the dependence of the outer layers on the periosteum is as well proved as the dependence of the body of the bone upon its medullary artery; for as piercing the medulla kills the whole bone, hurting the periosteum kills the outer layers of the bone. Any accident which robs the bone of its periosteum has this effect; accidental wounds of the periosteum, deep ulcers of the soft parts, as on the shin, the beating of aneurisms, the growth of tumours, the pressure even of any external body, will, by hurting the periosteum, cause exfoliation, which is, in plain terms the death of the external layer, by the injury of the outward vessels; and an active inflammation of the deeper layers, which being fully nourished by the internal arteries, inflame, swell, become porous and spongy, form granulations, and these granulations push off the mortified plate, and form themselves into new bone, which supplies its place.

The cartilages are also part of the living system of the bone: and we see too well, in the question of the bones themselves, how unphilosophical it must be, to deny organization and feeling to any part of the living body, however dead or

\* It would appear that the arteries are convertible through time into these root-like processes, by which the periosteum is fixed into the bone; for in youth, the vessels are numerous, the adhesion slight, and the separation bloody; but in the older subject, the separation is more difficult, and less blood is seen.



insulated it may appear ; for every part has its degree of life : the eye, the skin, the flesh, the tendons, and the bones, have successive degrees of feeling and circulation. We see, that where even the lowest of these, the bone, is deprived of its small portion of life, it becomes a foreign body, and is thrown off from the healthy parts, as a gangrened limb is separated from the sound body ; and we speak as familiarly of the death of a bone, as of the gangrene of soft parts. How, then, should we deny organization and life to the cartilages, though surely, in respect of feeling, they must stand in the very last degree ?

The periosteum goes from the bone over the surface of the cartilage also, where it is named perichondrium : it still preserves its own vascular nature ; the vessels can be injected ; and it is not to be believed that the perichondrium has these vessels, without communicating them to the cartilage to which it belongs. We see red arteries in the centre of an ossifying cartilage ; and therefore we know that the trunk of the artery may be red, as in the ossifying part of the cartilage, and yet the extremity of the same artery be pellucid, as in the unossified part. Since vessels run through the cartilage to generate bone, we cannot, in reason, suppose that these vessels are produced in the instant in which they appear : they had existed before ; they are but dilated now : the increasing action dilates them, and the dilatation makes them red : this enables them to secrete bone, and, in many cases, as in the accidental joint formed by a fracture ill cared for, we can, by paring the cartilage, set the vessels free again, and make them begin to secrete.

Wherever we find a vascular membrane surrounding and nourishing any part, as the vitreous or crystalline humours in the eye, we must not suppose that such are insulated parts, maintained there by mere adhesion ; but must consider them as parts regularly organized, their vascular membrane being part of their living system ; and though the transparent humours of the eye, the cartilages and ligaments over all the body, and all the system of the bones, have been considered as mere concretes, and insulated parts, they are now known to be regular parts of the living whole. The cartilages have no very active circulation ; it is such as to keep them in life, but not so active as to endanger inflammation ; in the continual shocks which they must endure, their feeling must be very obscure ; for feeling also would have been inconsistent with their offices, which is to cover and defend the bones ; to yield to the weight of the body, and to restore themselves when that weight is removed ; to bear all the shocks of leaps or falls ; to

perform all the motions of the body, and the continual workings of the joints where they rub, and even grate upon each other, without danger or pain.

We now understand the constitution of a bone, and can compare it fairly with the soft parts in vascularity, and in feeling ; in quickness of absorption ; in the regular supply of blood necessary to the life of the bony system ; in the certain death of a bone, when deprived of blood by any injury of its marrow, or of its periosteum, as a limb dies of gangrene, when its arteries are cut or tied ; in the continual action of its absorbents, forming its cavity, shaping its processes and heads, keeping it sound and in good health, and regulating the degree of bony matter, that the composition may neither be too brittle nor too soft. From this constitution of a bone, we can easily foresee how the callus for uniting broken bones must be formed ; not by a mere coagulation of extravasated juice, but by a new organization resembling the original bone.

The primordium of all the parts of the body is a thin gelatinous mucus, in which the forms of the parts are laid ; and the preparation for healing wounds, and for every new part that needs to be formed, is a secretion of mucus which is soon animated by vessels coming into it from every point. In every external wound, in every internal inflammation, wherever external parts are to be healed, or internal viscera are about to adhere, a mucous matter is secreted, which serves as a bed or nidus, in which the vessels spread from point to point, till the mucus is animalized and converted into a membrane : and thus the heart, the intestines, the testicle, and other parts, adhere by inflammation to the coats which surround them, and which are naturally loose. It is a mucus of the same form which unites the ends of a broken bone ; and, by breaking the bones of animals, and attending to the progress of the callus, we find first a thin mucus ; then that thickened into a transparent gelly ; that gelly growing vascular, and these vessels gradually depositing nuclei of ossification in the centre of the mass : and by madder, or by fine injections, we can make the gelly appear vascular, and the nuclei of ossification quite red. The colours of our injections begin to tinge the cartilage as it begins to ossify, and as soon as the ossification is general, it receives a general tinge.

Now when we find the substance of the oldest bone thus full of vessels, why should we doubt of its being able, from its own peculiar vessels, to heal a breach, or to repair any loss ? We have no reason to refer the generation of callus to the marrow, to the periosteum, nor to the substance of the bone itself ; for they are but parts of the common system of a

bone ; and each part of this system is of itself capable of regenerating the whole. How little the constitution of a bone has been understood, we may know from the strange debates which have subsisted so long about the proper organ for generating callus. Some have pronounced it to be the periosteum ; others the medullary vessel, and internal membrane ; others the substance of the bone itself : but I have been employed in explaining, that not only any part of the bone, periosteum, or marrow, but even any artery in all the system, may assume that action which generates bone. In the heat of this dispute, one of the most eminent anatomists produced a diseased bone, where a new bone had been formed surrounding a carious one, and the spoiled bone rattled within the cavity of the sound one. Here we should have been ready to pronounce, that bone could be formed by the periosteum alone. But presently another anatomist produced the very reverse, viz. a sound young bone, forming in the hollow cylinder of a bone which had been long dead ; where, of course, the callous matter must have been poured into the empty cavity of the spoiled bone, from the ends which still remained sound, or must have been secreted by the medullary vessels. But the truth is, that callus may be thus produced from any part of the system of a bone ; from its periosteum, from its medulla, or from the substance of the bone itself. If we pierce the bone of any animal, and destroy the marrow, the old bone dies, and a new one is formed from the periosteum : if we kill the creature soon, we find the new bone to be a mere secretion from the inner surface to the periosteum ; and if we wait the completion of the process, we find the new bone beautiful, white, easily injected, and thick, loose in its texture, and vascular and bloody, but still firm enough for the animal to walk upon ; and in the heart of it, we find the old bone dead and black. If we reverse this operation, and destroy the periosteum only, leaving the nutritious vessels entire, then the new bone is formed fresh and vascular by the medullary vessels, and the old one surrounds it quite black and dead ; and in fractures of the patella, or knee-pan, where there are no medullary vessels, the pieces are united by a callus, which is secreted from the vessels of the bone itself.

The diseases of the bones are the most frequent in surgery ; and it is impossible to express how much the surgeon is concerned in obtaining true ideas of the structure, constitution, and diseases of bones ; how tedious, how painful, and how loathsome these diseases are ; how often the patient must lose his limb, or endanger his life ; how very useful art is ; but, above all, what wonders nature daily performs in recovering bones from their diseased state.



## CHAP. II.

OF THE SKULL IN GENERAL—THE BONES OF WHICH IT IS COMPOSED—THEIR TABLES—DIPLOE—SUTURES—THEIR ORIGINAL CONDITION, AND THEIR PERFECT FORM, REPRESENTED AND EXPLAINED.

**W**HILE the bones in general serve as a basis for the soft parts, and for supporting and directing the motions of the body, certain bones have a higher use in containing those organs whose offices are the most essential to life. The skull defends the brain; the ribs and sternum defend the heart and lungs; the spine contains that prolongation of the brain which gives out nerves to all the body: and the injuries of each of these are important in proportion to the value of those parts which they contain.

How much the student is interested in obtaining a correct and perfect knowledge of the skull, he must learn by slow degrees. For the anatomy of the skull is not important in itself only; it provides for a more accurate knowledge of the brain; explains, in some degree, the organs of sense; instructs us in all those accidents of the head which are so often fatal, and so often require the boldest of all our operations. The marks which we take of the skull, record the entrance of arteries; the exit of veins and nerves; the places and uses of those muscles which move the jaws, the throat, the spine. Indeed, in all the human body, there is not found so complicated and difficult a study, as this anatomy of the head; and if this fatiguing study can be at all relieved, it must be by first establishing a very regular and orderly demonstration of the skull.

For this end, we distinguish the face, where the irregular surface is composed of many small bones, from the cranium or skull cap, where a few broad and flat shaped bones form the covering of the brain. It is these chiefly which inclose and defend the brain, which are exposed to injuries, and are the subject of operation. It is these also that transmit the nerves. So that the cranium is equally the object of attention with the anatomist and with the surgeon.

All the bones of the cranium are of a flattened form, consisting of two tables, and an intermediate diploë, which answers to the cancelli of other bones. The tables of the skull are two flat and even plates of bone: the external is thought to be thicker, more spongy, less easily broken; the thinner

table, again, is dense, thin and brittle, very easily broken, and is sometimes fractured, while the external table remains entire : thence it is named *tabula vitrea*, or the glassy table. These tables are parted from each other by the distance of a few lines ;\* and this space is filled up with the *diploë*, or *cancelli*. The *cancelli*, or lattice work, is a net of membranes, covered with vessels, partly for secreting marrow, and partly for nourishing the bone ; and by the *dura mater* adhering to the internal surface, and sending in arteries, which enter into the *cancelli* by passing through the substance of the bone, and by the *pericranium* covering the external plate, and giving vessels from without, which also enter into the bone, the whole is connected into one system of vessels. The *pericranium*, *dura mater*, and skull, depend so entirely, one upon the other, and are so fairly parts of the same system of vessels, that an injury of the *pericranium* spoils the bone ; separates the *dura mater*, and causes effusion upon the brain ; a separation of the *dura mater* is, in like manner, followed by separation of the *pericranium*, which had been sound and unhurt ; and every disease of the *cancelli*, or substance of the bone, is communicated both ways ; inward to the brain, so as to occasion very imminent danger ; outward towards the integuments, so as to warn us that there is disease. The general thickness of the skull, and the natural order of two tables, and an intermediate *diploë*, is very regular, in all the upper parts of the head. In perforating with the *trepan*, we first cut with more labour, through the external table ; when we arrive at the *cancelli*, there is less resistance, the instrument moves with ease ; there is a change of sound, and blood comes from the tearing of these vessels, which run in the *cancelli*, betwixt the tables of the skull. Surgeons thought themselves so well assured of these marks, that it became a rule, to cut freely, and quickly, through the outer table ; to expect the change of sound, and the flow of blood, as marks of having reached the *cancelli* ; and then to cut more deliberately, and slowly, through the inner table of the skull. But this shows an indiscreet hurry, and unpardonable rashness in operation. The patient, during this sawing of the skull, is suffering neither danger nor pain ; and many additional reasons lead us to refuse, altogether, this rule of practice. For the skull of a child consists properly of one table only : or tables are not

\* In anatomy there is occasion in almost every description, for a scale of smaller parts. The French divide their inch into twelve parts, each of which is a line. The French line, or twelfth of an inch, is a measure which I shall often have occasion to use.

yet distinguished, nor the cancelli formed : in youth, the skull has its proper arrangement of cancelli and tables ; but still, with such irregularities, and exceptions, as make a hurried operation unsafe : in old age, the skull declines towards its original condition ; the cancelli are obliterated ; the tables approach each other, or are closed and condensed into one ; the skull becomes irregularly thick, at some points, and at others thin, or almost transparent :—so that there can hardly be named any period of life, in which this operation may be performed quickly and safely at once. But, besides this gradual progress of a bone, increasing in thickness and regularity as life advances, and growing irregular and thinner in the decline of life, we find dangerous irregularities, even in younger skulls. There are often at uncertain distances, upon the internal surface of the skull, hollows and defects of the internal table, deep pits, or foveæ, as they are called, produced perhaps by the impression of contorted veins. These foveæ increase in size and in number as we decline in life ; they are more frequent on the inner surfaces of the parietal and frontal bones ; so that in those places where the skull should be most regular, we are never sure, and must, even in the safest places, perforate gradually and slowly.

**BONES.**—The bones of which the cranium, or skull-cap, is formed, are eight in number. 1. The **FRONTAL BONE**, or bone of the forehead, forms the upper and fore part of the head,—extends a little towards the temples, and forms also the upper part of the socket for the eye. 2. The **PARIETAL BONES**, are the two large and flat bones which form all the sides, and upper part of the head ; and are named parietalia, as they are the walls or sides of the cranium. 3. The **OS OCCIPITIS**, is named from its forming all the occiput or back of the head ; though much of this bone lies in the neck, and is hidden in the basis of the skull. 4. The **OSSA TEMPORUM** form the lower parts of the sides of the cranium : they are called temporal, from the hair that covers them being the first to turn grey, marking the time of life. 5. The **OS ÆTHMOIDES**, and, 6. the **OS SPHENOIDES**, are quite hidden in the basis of the skull : they are very irregular and very difficultly described, or explained. The **OS ÆTHMOIDES**, is a small square bone, hollow, and with many cells in it ; it hangs over the nose, and constitutes a great and important part of that organ, and at the same time supports the brain. The olfactory nerves, by passing through it at many points, perforate it like a sieve ; and it takes its name from this perforated or æthmoid plate. The **OS SPHENOIDES**, is larger and more irregular still ; placed further back locked in betwixt the occipi-

tal and æthmoidal bones ; lies over the top of the throat, so that its processes form the back of the nostrils and roof of the mouth ; and it is so placed, as to support the very centre of the brain, and transmit almost all its nerves.

**SUTURES.**—All these bones are joined together by seams, which, from their indented, or dove-tailed appearance, are named sutures.

1. The **CORONAL SUTURE**, is that which joins the frontal to the parietal bones ; extends almost directly across the head, from ear to ear ; descends behind the eye, into the deep part of the temple ; and there losing its serrated appearance, becomes like the squamous or scaly suture, which joins the temporal bones. It is named coronal, because the ancients wore their garlands on this part of the head. But the suture had been better intitled to this name, had it surrounded the head, than as it crosses it.

2. The **LAMBDODIAL SUTURE**, is that which joins the parietals to the occipital bone. It begins behind the one ear, ascends, and arches over the occiput, and descends behind the other ear. It thus strides over the occiput, in a form somewhat resembling the letter lambda ( $\Delta$ ) of the Greeks ; whence its name.

3. The **SAGITTAL SUTURE**, joins the parietal bones to each other ; runs on the very top of the head ; extends forwards from the lambdoidal suture, till it touches, or sometimes passes, the coronal suture ; and from lying betwixt these two sutures, like an arrow betwixt the string and the bow, it has been named sagittal.

4. The **TEMPORAL SUTURES**, join the temporal bones to the parietal, occipital, and frontal bones ; the sphenoid bone also enters into the temporal suture, just behind the eye. The temporal suture makes an arch corresponding almost with the arch of the external ear ; it meets the coronal suture, an inch before the ear, and the lambdoidal an inch behind it. This back part belongs as much to the occipital as to the temporal bone ; and so has been named sometimes *additamentum suturæ lambdoidalis* ; sometimes *additamentum suturæ squamosæ* : for this temporal suture is, on account of the edge of the temporal and occipital bones being thin, and like scales of armour laid over each other, often named the squamous, or scaly suture.

5. The **SPHENOIDAL and ÆTHMOIDAL SUTURES**, are those which surround the many irregular processes of these two bones, and join them to each other, and to the rest.

6. The **TRANSVERSE SUTURE**, is one which, running across the face, and sinking down into the orbits, joins the bones of



the skull to the bones of the face ; but with so many irregularities and interruptions, that the student will hardly recognize this as a suture.

7. The ZYGOMATIC SUTURE, is one which joins a branch of the temporal bone to a process of the cheek-bone ; forming an arch, zygoma, or yoke ; but this suture has little extent ; it is a serrated appearance at one single point only.

To mark and know these sutures, and to be able to trace them in imagination, upon the naked head, to foresee where a suture will present, and how far it runs, may be a matter of great importance to the surgeon. Hippocrates, who has had more to praise his honesty than to follow his example, acknowledges his having mistaken a suture for a fracture of the skull ; and since this warning, various contrivances and marks have been thought of, for preventing the like mistake. It may be useful to remember that the suture has its serræ or indentations ; is firmly covered by the pericranium ; is close, and does not bleed : but that a fissure, or fracture of the skull, runs in one direct line ; is larger and broader at the place of the injury ; grows smaller, as you recede from that, till it vanishes by its smallness ; and that it always bleeds. Indeed the older surgeons, observing this, poured ink upon the suspected part, which, if the skull was hurt, sunk into the fissure, and made it black and visible ; but left the suture untouched. They also directed to make the patient take a wire betwixt his teeth, which being struck, like the string of an instrument, he would feel the twang produce a painful and peculiar sensation in the fractured part of the head. But after all these observations, in place of any true and certain marks, we find a number of accidents which may lead us into a mistake.

Sutures cannot be distinguished by their serræ or teeth, for the temporal sutures want this common character, and rather resemble capillary fractures of the skull ;\* nor even by their places, for we know that there are often insulated bones (*ossa Wormiana*) surrounded with peculiar joinings, which so derange the course of the common sutures, that the joinings may be mistaken for fractures of the skull, and the *ossa Wormiana* for broken parts. Sometimes the squamous suture is double, with a large arch of bone intercepted betwixt the true and the false suture ; or the sagittal suture, descending beyond its usual extent, and quite to the nose, has been mistaken for a fracture, and trepanned ; and often in older skulls, the sutures are entirely obliterated, all over the head.

\* Viz. Fractures as small as a hair, thence named capillary.

If the surgeon should pour ink upon the skull, he would have reason to be ashamed of an experiment so awkward and unsuccessful ; and for the old contrivance of a wire or cord held in the mouth, it cannot be done, since the patient is commonly insensible ; and even, though less hurt, his feelings, after such an accident, must be very confused ; he must be too liable to be deceived ; and we cannot, on such slender evidence as this, perform so cruel an operation as cutting up the scalp, or so dangerous a one as the trepan.

For various reasons we are careful to trace the bones from their original soft and gristly state, to their perfect condition of hard bone ; and most of all, we are concerned to do so in the head, where, in childhood, the appearances are not singular and curious only, but have always been supposed to indicate some wise and useful purpose. It is in this original condition of the soft and growing bones, that anatomists have sought to find a theory of the sutures, how they are formed, and for what uses. It has been remarked, that the number of pieces in the skull, is infinitely greater in the child than in the man. These bones ossifying from their centre towards their circumference, it happens, of course, that the fibres are close at the centre of ossification, and are more scattered at the extremities of the bone : when these scattered fibres of opposite bones meet, the growing fibres of one bone shoot into the interstices of that which is opposed : the fibres still push onwards, till they are stopped at last, and the perfect suture, or serrated line of union is formed.

In dilating this proposition, we should observe, that in the boy, all the bones in the head are membranous and imperfect. The membranous interstices begin to be obliterated ; the sutures are beginning to close ; the distinction of two tables is not yet established ; the cancelli are not yet interposed betwixt the plates ; the sinuses, or caverns of the bones, as in the forehead, the nose, and the jaw are not formed ; and each bone is not only incomplete towards its edges and sutures, but consists often of many parts. The *OS FRONTIS* is formed of two pieces, which meet by a membranous union in the middle of the bone. The *OSSA PARIETALIA* have one great and prominent point of ossification in the very centre of each, from which diverging rays of ossification extend towards the edges of the bone. The *OS OCCIPITIS* is formed in four distinct pieces ; and the *TEMPORAL BONES* are so fairly divided into two, that their parts retain in the adult the distinct names of petrous and squamous bones. Although these are all the regular points of ossification, yet sometimes there occur small and distinct points, which form irregular bones, uncertain in

number or size, found chiefly in the lambdoid suture, sometimes numerous and small, more commonly they are few in number, and sometimes of the full size of a crown, always distorting more or less the course of the suture, and being thus a subject of caution to the surgeon: these are named *ossa TRIQUETRA*, or, *TRIANGULARIA*, from their angular shape, or, *WORMIANA*, from Olaus Wormius, who observed them first. Now the *os frontis* being formed in two larger pieces, their edges meet early in life, and they form a suture; but the bones continuing to grow, their opposite points force deeper and deeper into each other, till at last the suture is entirely obliterated, and the bones unite; and so this suture is found always in the child, seldom in the adult, almost never in old age. The occipital bone having four points, they are closer upon each other, they meet early, as soon united; and, although very distinct in the child, no middle suture has ever been found in the adult, but always the four pieces are united into one firm and perfect bone. The parietal bones have their rays most of all scattered; the rays of ossification run out to a great distance, and diverge from one single point, so that at their edges they are extremely loose, and they never fail to form sutures, by admitting into their interstices the points and edges of the adjoining bones. The surest and most constant sutures are those formed by the edges of the parietal bones; the sagittal in the middle, the coronal over the forehead, the lambdoidal behind, and the squamous suture, formed by their lower edges. But another phenomenon results at the same time, from this meeting and opposition of the fibres and interstices of the growing bones: that when the opposite fibres meet too early, they are not fairly admitted into the open spaces of the opposite bone: but the fibres of each bone being directly opposed point to point, they both turn inwards, and form a ridge or spine, such as is seen on the inner surfaces of the frontal and occipital bones. Such is the common theory, which I suspect is imperfect, and which should be received with some reserve, for all the phenomena are not yet explained; we find each suture always in its appointed place: we find nothing like a suture formed betwixt the head and body of a long bone, though they are formed in distinct points, and are not united till after the years of manhood; we find no sutures when bones are broken and reunited; when they have been spoiled, and are replaced; when a piece of spoiled bone has been cut away; or when a new shaft of a bone is formed by the secreting vessels, and is united to the heads of the old bone. These are accidents which hold us at least in doubt.

It has been supposed, and with much appearance of truth,



that the sutures limit the extent of fractures ; leave a free communication of the internal with the external parts ; that they must serve as drains from the brain ; that they are even capable of opening at times, so as to give relief and ease in the most dreadful diseases of the head. But I fear we are not yet able to see the meaning of this peculiarity of structure ; for the sutures are regular and uniform to a wonderful degree, while these uses of them are far from being proved.

The sutures surely were not intended by nature for limiting the extent of fractures : for fractures traverse the skull in all directions ; cross the sutures with ease ; and very often passing all the sutures, descend quite to the basis of the skull, where we dare not follow them with the knife, nor apply the trepan. Indeed we do not even know that limiting the extent of fractures could be a gracious provision of nature, since it would rather appear by the common accidents, that the more easily the bone yields, the less is the injury to the brain ; and that where the fracture is wide and large, the symptoms are milder, and the danger less.

Neither were they intended as drains ; for surely it is a bold position to assume, that nature has carefully provided for our making issues upon the sutures. When the original openness of the head and the membranous condition of the sutures was first observed, it was thought to be an observation of no small importance. The ancients believed that the membranes of the brain came out by the sutures, to form the pericranium, and going from that over the several joints, formed the periosteum for all the bones. They saw a close connexion betwixt the external and internal membranes of the skull ; and they thought that nature had intended there a freer communication, and an occasional drain. They found the sutures particularly wide and membranous in a child, which they attributed to the watery state of its brain, requiring a freer outlet than in the adult ; and accordingly they named the opening of the child's head the *bregma*, *fons*, *fontanelle*, the fountain, by which they believed there was a continual exudation of moisture from the brain.

We might have expected these notions to have vanished with the doctrines of humours and revulsion which gave rise to them ; but both the doctrines and the practice, have been revived of late years ; and a surgeon of some eminence has been at pains to examine various skulls, trying to find which of all the sutures remains longest open, and which should form the readiest and surest drain ; and after a curious examination of each, he decidedly condemns the *fontanelle* ; finds the *aditamentum* of the squamous suture always open, and expects

this superior advantage from placing his issues there, that he will command at once a drain both from the cerebellum and from the brain. But these notions, so much cherished by the ancients, of derivation and revulsion, of serous humours falling upon the brain, of drains of pituita by the nose and through the sutures, have been long forgotten, and have not been effectually revived by this attempt.

It cannot be denied, that, in some instances, the sutures have continued quite open in persons grown in years, or have opened after a most wonderful manner, in some diseases of the head.

A young man having been brought into an hospital ill of a fever, the physicians observing with surprise a very strong pulsation behind the ear : upon applying the finger, a strong beating was felt ; the part was soft and yielding ; and upon opening his head, after death, there was found a large membranous space. Diemorbrock found the fontanelle open in a woman of forty years of age. Bauhin says, that in his own wife, twenty-six years of age, the sutures were not yet closed.

This fontanelle, or opening at the meeting of the coronal and sagittal sutures, was once thought to be a sure mark for the accoucher to judge by, both of the life of the child, and the direction in which its head presented. It is large and soft in a child ; and the good women lay a piece of firm cloth upon it, and defend it with particular care. It begins to contract from the time of birth ; and in the second and third year, it is entirely closed. Its closing is delayed by weakness, scrofulous complaints, and indeed by any lingering disease ; it closes very late in rickets ; and in hydrocephalic children the bones never close, but continue soft, yield to the watery swelling of the brain, and separate in a wonderful degree, so as to hold ten or twelve pounds.

As the sutures continue open in a hydrocephalic child, they are said to open again in the few instances where adults are seized with the same disease. We are told that it opens in those dreadful headaches which are sometimes fatal, and that the celebrated Paschal having died after terrible torments, was found to have the sutures opened again. It is even said that they open during disease, and close after the cure : " That a man of forty years of age being in the dog-days seized with a raging fever, delirium, watching, and dreadful pains of the head, his sutures, opened on the seventh day, were as wide as in a child ; not only so as to be distinguished by the finger, but that the attendants could see the pulsations of the brain : the fever, after some time, abated ; the pains ceased ; the sutures closed, and this man lived many years in

"perfect health." So Hildanus reports the case ; and he also says, in another instance, that the sutures had parted in a violent hemicrania, with an audible noise.

Yet, if this were a regular design of nature, the relief should be perfect ; perhaps the opening of the sutures should be more easy, and the accident almost as common as diseases of the head : or perhaps it had been the more merciful order, to have determined a quick and sudden period for such dreadful and incurable diseases as these.

The sutures of the cranium are accidental merely, and of little use. The result, perhaps, of this well-known law, that nature seeks to facilitate ossification, by beginning the process in many points ; and she establishes as many distinct points, in healing a broken limb as in forming the skull. But however they may be formed, their uses cannot be of that importance which has been supposed : for there are twenty separate bones, and twenty sutures in the face, where they can neither stop fractures, nor serve as drains, nor open so as to give relief.

But if the sutures of the cranium have any thing peculiar and different from those of the face, in that, perhaps, their peculiar uses may be found. We cannot pass unnoticed their looseness and flexibility in the new-born child ; how wonderfully the head of the child is increased in length, and reduced in breadth in the time of delivery, and how much this conduces to an easy and happy labour.

The most eminent anatomists have condescended to remark, that in the various nations of Europe the head has various forms ; which they ascribe to so slight a pressure as that which dress, or even the posture of the head, might produce. But how very far Vesalius was deceived in calculating thus, is easily proved. The Turks, says he, have their heads flattened by wearing the turban. But the turban is an eastern dress : the Turks or Tartars are a northern people, who assume this dress only when conquest brings them into a warmer climate ; and the prominent cheek-bones, parted eyes, and flat heads, continue in the Tartars, who have but newly assumed the turban, while the conquered nations who have worn it long, are distinguished by their regular and beautiful features. Perhaps by contrivance and force, we may distort the head of a child ; and we may almost believe what is told of the negroes of the Caribbee islands, who had contrived, by pressure, to flatten their children's heads, that their race might be in future distinguished from those who had submitted to the Spanish yoke ; or of what is told so often of eastern nations, that they sometimes mould the heads of children into monstrous and uncouth forms, to extort charity, or as an act

of religion. Were I to assign a reason for the flexible bones, and wide sutures, and the yielding condition of the head of the child, I should say that it were meant by nature to stand in the place of that separation of the bones of the pelvis which has been supposed, but which cannot exist; for the child's head is moulded with little injury, is evolved again without help; and it seems a provision of nature, since the child scarcely feels the change: but no woman has been known to have the joinings of the pelvis relaxed or dissolved without pain and danger, confinement for many months, a temporary lameness; and sometimes she is rendered unable for life.



### CHAP. III.

#### DESCRIPTION OF THE INDIVIDUAL BONES OF THE SKULL.

**OS FRONTIS.** This bone is compared with a clamshell. It is of a semicircular shape, hollowed like a shell, and very equal in its thickness. It is marked on the inside by a spine, or prominent line, which divides the hollow of the bone into two equal parts, and gives rise to a membranous partition, which divides and supports the hemispheres of the brain. It is marked on its external surface by those high ridges on which the eyebrows are placed; and by two prominences, under which are hollow caverns, named the *SINUSES* (or cavities) of the frontal bone. It is irregular only in its orbitary plates, which are the two thin and delicate lamellæ that depart from the general direction of the bone, and stand out horizontally so as to form a part of the socket for the eye, or, as it were, a roof defending the upper part of the eye, and a floor for supporting the lower part of the brain; and these two orbitary plates leave an open space, in which is incased the chief part of the æthinoid bone.

The first point to be remarked, is the *SUPERCILIARY RIDGE*, on which the eyebrows are placed: it is a prominent arched line, corresponding in size and length with the eyebrow which it supports. It is the origin of the frontal muscles. In this line, the integuments adhere very strongly, by many arteries which perforate the bone, and which are properly the nutritious arteries of this part of the bone; and we find all over the superciliary ridge many small holes through which these ar-



teries had passed. Among these, there is one hole which is larger, and which is distinguished from the rest ; for its use is not like the others to transmit arteries to the bone, but to give passage to a small artery which comes out from the orbit, to mount over the forehead. Sometimes this artery turns freely over the border of the orbit, and makes no mark, or but a slight one : often laying closer upon the bone, it forms a notch ; but most commonly, in place of turning fairly over the edge of the orbit, it passes obliquely through the superciliary ridge, and, by perforating the bone, makes a hole. This hole is named the **SUPERCILIARY HOLE**. The artery which comes from the eye to go out upon the forehead is named, where it passes the ridge, the **superciliary artery** ; and higher up upon the forehead, the **frontal artery**. It establishes a communication betwixt the internal arteries of the eye, and the external arteries of the forehead and temple ; and it carries along with it a small nerve from the eye, which going also out upon the forehead, is named the **superciliary or frontal nerve**. We are always warned of the danger of wounding arteries where they pass through bones ; and strange stories are told of the terrible bleedings which have arisen from this artery when wounded near its hole ; and of the convulsions, palsies, and loss of sight, which have arisen from the accidents, wounds, or lacerations of this frontal nerve : these stories are delivered on authorities which we dare not refuse, and yet they are such as we cannot easily believe.

This orbitary, or superciliary ridge, ends by two processes, which, forming the angles of the eye, are named the **ANGULAR PROCESSES**. The frontal bone has therefore four angular processes : 1. The two internal angular processes, forming the internal angles of the eyes ; and, 2. The two external angular processes which form the external angles of each eye. Behind each external angular process, the bone lays flat, and sunk into a hollow which lodges the temporal muscles ; and betwixt the two internal angular processes there is the **NASAL POINT OR PROCESS**. This nasal process is a small sharp projecting point, which is exactly in the middle of the bone, occupying that space which is betwixt the two internal angular processes. It is very irregular and rough all round its root, for supporting the two small nasal bones ; and this gives them a firm seat, and such a hold upon the root of the forehead, that they will be sooner broken than displaced.

At the inner end of the superciliary ridge, is that bump which marks the place of the frontal sinuses : it also in some degree indicates their size ; for where this rising is not found, the sinuses are wanting, or are very small, but this is no sure,

nor absolute mark of the presence of these sinuses, which often, in the flattest foreheads, are not entirely wanting.

The sinuses\* of the os frontis are two in number, one on either side above the root of the nose : they are formed by a receding of the two tables of the skull from each other : they are formed at first with the common cancelli, and at first they resemble the common cancelli, as if they were only larger cells : gradually they enlarge into two distinct cavities, often of very considerable size ; going down into the orbital plate, or sideways into the orbital ridge, or upwards through one half of the frontal bone ; and Ruisch had in a giantess (*puella gigantica*), seen them pass the coronal suture, and extend some way into the parietal bones.

The sinuses of either side are separated by a partition ; but still they communicate by a small hole : sometimes the partition is almost wanting, and there are only crossings of the common lamellated substance ; and though the communication with one another is not always found, they never fail to communicate with the nose. This indeed seems to be their chief use ; for the frontal sinuses are the beginning of a great train of cells, which, commencing thus in the frontal bone, extend through the æthmoidal, sphenoidal, and maxillary bones, so as to form an organ of great extent and use belonging to the nose ; but perhaps not so much for extending the organ of smelling, as for making a more sonorous voice. For we have no proof that the sinuses are part of the organ of smell ; unless we should accept of this as a proof, that by the smelling of strong volatiles, pain shoots upwards into the forehead ; though, by this rule, the eyes should be also a part of the same organ, since from the same cause, they are pained, and tears begin to flow : but we do know that the sinuses belong to the voice, and raise its tone, for we feel the trembling note resound through all the cells ; so that the voice is sonorous while they are free ; is damped when the sinuses are oppressed by their membranes being thickened by cold ; or is almost suppressed when the sinuses are entirely closed ; or when, by venereal ulcers, the curtain of the palate is consumed, no part of the voice passing upwards into the nose, it is almost lost.

This has given rise to a very common mistake : that as these sinuses are wanting in the child whose forehead is flat, as

\* The word Sinus is used in two senses : we call the cavities or cells within the substance of a bone, the sinuses of that bone ; as the sinuses of the forehead, of the sphenoid, æthmoid, or maxillary bones : we call also certain great veins by the same name of sinuses. Thus the great veins being enlarged where they approach the heart, and the veins being particularly large in the brain and the womb, we call them the sinuses of the heart, of the brain, and of the womb.



they enlarge gradually, and are fully formed about the fifteenth year, the *vox rauca*, the breaking of the voice, which is observed about that time, must be owing to the evolution of these cells. But the female voice does not undergo the same change by the evolution of these cells; and castration, which surely can have no effect on these cavities, keeps down the eunuch's to the treble key of the female voice. The mistake lies in supposing these cavities to raise the tone or note in which we speak, while they only add clearness and strength. The membrane which lines these cavities is thin, and exquisitely sensible, and is a continuation of the common membrane of the throat and nose. A thin humour is poured out upon its surface to moisten it and keep it right. This the ancients did not consider as merely a lubricating fluid, but as a purgation of the brain, drawn from the pituitary gland; which could not be diminished without danger, and which it was often of consequence to promote.

These sinuses are subject to one accident chiefly, viz. insects, which nestle there, and produce inconceivable distress; and it is particular, that insects more frequently lodge in the frontal sinuses, than in the cavities of any of the other bones. In sheep and dogs, such insects are very frequent, as, in seeking their food, they carry their nose upon the ground; and it has been proved, or almost proved, that in man they arise from a like cause. Indeed what can we suppose, but that they get there by chance? Thus, a man having slept in barns, was afflicted with dreadful disorders in the forehead, which were relieved upon discharging from the nose a worm of that kind which is peculiar to spoiling corn; while others have had the complaint, by sleeping upon the grass. But there is something very particular in this, that by far the greater number of these worms have been of the centipede kind; generally long, an inch in length, with one hundred, or according to Linnæus, one hundred and twelve feet, and not unfrequently covered with hair. There are reports which seem to prove, that some have died of this complaint, and in a very miserable way. In many cases it has been attended with delirium; and in almost every instance it has continued for years. No wonder, then, that the trepanning of these sinuses has been often proposed; but I have never read of a well marked case, so that we could be assured beforehand of finding worms; they have, in most cases, been discovered rather by chance. The patient might be relieved on easier terms, by the injection of aloes, assafœtida, myrrh, the use of snuff or smooking, and pressing the fumes upwards into the nose. Much

should be tried, before undertaking a dangerous operation on such slender proofs.

It may be right, in cases of fractures, to decline applying the trepan above the sinuses, unless a fracture cannot be raised in any easier way; and we must be, especially, careful to distinguish a fracture of the outer table only, from entire fractures of this bone. For Palfin says, that the outer table being broken, and the natural mucus of the sinus being corrupted and flowing out, has been mistaken for the substance of the brain itself. And Paréc, who first gives this caution, affirms, "that he had seen surgeons guilty of this mistake, "applying the trepan, and so killing their unhappy patients."

THE SPINE OR RIDGE which runs upon the internal surface of the frontal bone, is to be observed, as it gives a firm hold to the falx, or that perpendicular membrane, which, running in the middle of the head, divides and supports the brain. This is more or less prominent in different skulls, and according to the age. The spine is more prominent at its root; but as it advances up the forehead, it decreases, and often ends in a groove. The spine gives firm hold for the falx, and the groove lodges the great longitudinal sinus, or, in other words, the great vein of the brain, which runs along the head, in the course of the perpendicular partition or falx. At the root of this spine, there is a small blind hole, which will just admit a pin; it is named blind, because it does not pass quite through the bone, and the beginning of the falx, dipping down into this hole, gets a firmer hold. The ancients thinking that this hole descended through both tables into the nose, believed, that the dangerous and ungovernable bleedings at the nose, must be through this hole, and from the fore end, or beginning of the longitudinal sinus.

THE ORBITARY PROCESS is the last remarkable point of the frontal bone. The orbitary processes are two thin plates, departing from the general direction of the bone, and standing inwards at right angles: they cover the eye, and support the brain. By the continual rolling of the eye, and the pressure of the brain, they are extremely thin and transparent; the rolling of the eye makes them exquisitely smooth below, and on their upper surfaces they are impressed with the frequent convolutions of the brain: so that a wound through the eye endangers more than the eye; for it passes easily forward into the brain, and is instantly fatal: it is the aim of a fencer; and we have known, in this country, a young man killed by the push of a foil which had lost its guard.

Upon the orbitary plate, and just under the superciliary ridge, there are two depressions in the socket of each eye:

the one is very small, and deeper at the inner corner of the eye, under the orbitary hole, which is the mark of the small cartilaginous pulley, in which the tendon of one of the muscles of the eye plays ; the other, a more gentle and diffused hollow, lies under the external angular process, is not deep, but is wide enough to receive the point of a finger, and is the place where the lachrymal gland lies ; that gland which secretes the tears, and keeps the eye moist.

**OSSA PARIETALIA.**—The parietal bones form by much the greater share of the cranium : they are more exposed than any others ; they are the most frequently broken, and the most easily trepanned ; for the parietal bones are more uniform in their thickness, and more regular in their two tables and diploë, than any others. But the accidental varieties of pits and depressions are very frequent in them ; and the sinus or great vein, and the artery which belongs to the membranes of the brain, both make their chief impressions upon this bone.

Each parietal bone is very nearly of a square form, surrounded by deeply serrated edges, which unite them with each other, and with the occipital and frontal bones. All the corners of this bone are obtuse, except that one which lies in the temple, and which, running out to a greater length than the other corners, is sometimes named the **SPINOUS PROCESS** of the parietal bone ; though there can be no true process in a bone so regular and flat. The lower edge of the bone is a neat concave semicircle, which joins the parietal to the temporal bone ; and the edge of each is so slanted off, that the edge of the temporal overlaps the edge of the parietal, with a thin scale, forming the squamous suture. About an inch above the squamous suture, there is a semicircular ridge, where the bone is particularly white and hard ; and rays extend downwards from this, converging towards the jugum, or arch of the temple. The white semicircular line represents the origin of the temporal muscle ; and the converging lines express the manner in which the fibres of the muscle are gathered into a smaller compass, to pass under the jugum. The sagittal suture, or meeting of the two parietals, is marked on the inside with a groove as big as the finger, which holds the longitudinal sinus, or great vein of the brain : but the groove is not so distinctly seen, unless the two bones be put together ; for one half of this flat groove belongs to each bone.

The great artery of dura mater touches this bone at that angle of it which lies in the temple. It traverses the bone from corner to corner, spreading from the first point, like the

branches of a tree, it beats deep into the bone where it first touches it; but where it expands into branches, its impressions are very slight; commonly it makes a groove only, but sometimes it is entirely buried in the bone; so that at the lower corner of the parietal bone we cannot escape cutting this vessel, if we are forced to operate with the trepan.

There is but one hole in the parietal bone: it is small and round, is within one inch of the meeting of the lambdoidal and sagittal sutures, and gives passage to a small external vein, which goes inwards to the sinus; and to a small artery which goes also inwards to the dura mater, or rather to the falx.

The meeting of the frontal and parietal bones, being imperfect in the child, leaves that membranous interstice, which by some is named folium or folliolum, from its resembling a trefoil leaf; and was named by the ancients hypothetically, bregma, fons,\* or fountain; they thinking it a drain of moisture from the brain: and so the parietal bones are named ossa bregmatis.

**OS OCCIPITIS.**—This bone has also the names of os memorie, and os nervosum. It is the thickest of the cranial bones, but is the least regular in its thickness, being transparent in some places, and in others swelling into ridges of very firm bone. It gives origin or insertion to many of the greatest muscles, which move the head and neck; it supports the back part of the brain; contains the cerebellum or lesser brain; transmits the spinal marrow, and is marked with the conflux of the chief sinuses, or great veins of the brain.

The **EXTERNAL SURFACE** is exceedingly irregular, by the impressions of the great muscles of the neck: for first the trapezius and complexus, two great external muscles of the neck and head, have their chief hold upon the occipital bone, by which there is formed one great **TRANSVERSE SPINE**. Below these again, the recti muscles, two small and deep muscles of the head and neck, make another transverse spine below the first: so that there is a double transverse spine; and the interstice betwixt the muscles of the opposite sides leaves, of course, a prominent ridge or spine, which, running from above downwards, crosses the first ridges, and makes a cross called the **CRUCIAL SPINE**; and in a strong man advanced in years, where the ridges and hollows are strongly marked, the

\* The word *pulfatilis*, or *fons pulfatilis*, or beating fountain, was added, because we feel the beating of the arteries of the brain there.



point where these ridges cross, is so very prominent, as to be named the **POSTERIOR TUBEROSITY** of the occipital bone.

**THE INTERNAL SURFACE.** Opposite to these ridges, there are similar crucial ridges within ; but more regular, smooth, and equal, and making only one transverse line. The **TENTORIUM CEREBELLO SUPER-EXTENSUM**, is a diaphragm or transverse partition, which crosses the skull at its back part ; cuts off from the rest of the cranium the hollow of the occipital bone ; appropriates that cavity for the cerebellum, and defends the cerebellum from the weight and pressure of the brain. This tentorium, or transverse membrane, is attached to the **GREAT INTERNAL RIDGE** of the occipital bone. In the angle where this membrane is fixed to the ridge, lies the great sinus or vein ; which is called longitudinal sinus, while it is running along the head ; but the same sinus, dividing in the back of the head, into two great branches, changes its name with its direction ; and the forkings of the vessel are named the right and left lateral sinuses, which go down through the basis of the skull ; and being continued down the neck, are there named the great or internal jugular veins. This forking of the longitudinal, into the lateral sinuses, makes a **TRIANGULAR OR TRIPOD-LIKE GROOVE**, which follows the internal ridges of the occipital bone : and above and below the transverse ridge, there are formed four plain and smooth hollows. The two upper ones are above the tentorium, and contain the backmost lobes of the brain ; the two lower ones are under the tentorium, and hold the lobes of the cerebellum or little brain.

**PROCESSES.** The processes or projections of the occipital bone are few and simple. 1. There is a part of the bone which runs forward from the place of the foramen magnum ; lies in the very centre of the base of the skull ; and joins the occipital to the sphenoidal bone : and which, both on account of its place (wedged in the basis of the skull,) and of its shape, which is rather small, and somewhat of the form of a wedge, is named the **CUNEIFORM, OR WEDGE-LIKE PROCESS** of the occipital bone. And, 2. There are two small oval processes, or button-like projections, which stand off from the side, or rather from the forepart of the foramen magnum, or great hole, and which, being lodged in joints belonging to the upper bone of the neck, form the hinge on which the head moves. These two processes are named the **CONDYLES** of the occipital bone. They are not very prominent, but rather flattened ; are of an oval form, and have their fore-ends turned a little towards each other ; so that by this joint the head moves directly backwards or forwards, but cannot turn or roll. The

turning motions are performed chiefly by the first bones of the neck. Round the root of each condyle, there is a roughness, which shows where the ligament ties this small point to the corresponding bone of the neck.

**HOLES.**—1. These condyles stand just on the edge of the **FORAMEN MAGNUM**, or great hole of the head, which transmits the spinal marrow, or continuation of the brain; and the edges of this hole (which is almost a regular circle) are turned and smoothed; a little thicker at the lip, and having a roughness behind that, giving a firm hold to a ligament, which, departing from this hole, goes down through the whole cavity of the spine, forming at once a sheath for the spinal marrow, and a ligament for each individual bone. There passes down through this great hole the spinal marrow, and the vertebral vein. There come up through it the vertebral arteries, which are of great importance and size; and a small nerve, which, from its coming backwards from the spine to assist certain nerves of the brain, is named the spinal accessory nerve.

2. The second hole is placed a little behind the ring of the foramen magnum, and just at the root of either condyle, is round, and large, easily found, and sometimes it is double; it transmits the ninth pair, or great lingual nerve.

3. There is another hole smaller, and less regular than this last. It is exactly behind the condyle, while the lingual hole is before it. It is for permitting a small vein, the cervical vein of the neck, to enter and drop its blood into the great lateral sinus; but often it is not formed, and this trifling vein gets in by the great occipital hole.

4. We shall describe with the temporal bone that wide hole which is common to the temporal and occipital bones, and which transmits the great lateral sinus.

**OS TEMPORIS.**—The temporal bone is, in the child, two bones; which retain their original names of *pars petrosa* and *pars squamosa*. The whole bone is very irregular in its thickness, and hollows, and processes. The **PARS SQUAMOSA** is a thin or scaly part; rises like a shell over the lower part of the parietal bone, and is smoothed and flattened by the rubbing of the temporal muscle. The **PARS PETROSA**, often named **OS LAPIDOSUM**, or stony bone, is hard, irregular, rocky; juts inward towards the basis of the skull; contains the organ of hearing, and, of course, receives and transmits all the nerves which are connected with the ear. There is a third portion of this bone, viz. the occipital angle, which is thick and hard; is divided into cells, and forms those caverns which are supposed to be chiefly useful in reverberating the sound.



The squamous part is grooved, to make the squamous suture ; is scolloped or fringed ; and exceedingly thin on its edge ; it is radiated, in consequence of its original ossification shooting out in rays. The petrous part again is triangular, unequal by the cavities of the ear ; it has a very hard, shining, polished-like surface ; exceeded in hardness by nothing but the enamel of the teeth. Where it projects into the base, it has several open points, which are filled up with cartilaginous or ligamentous substance ; and its occipital angle is connected with the other bones by the *additamentum suturæ squamosæ*.

PROCESSES. 1. The ZYGOMATIC PROCESS rises broad and flat before the ear ; grows gradually smaller as it stretches forward to reach the cheek bone : forms with a process of that bone the zygoma, yoke, or arch of the temple, under which the temporal muscle plays. The temporal muscle is strengthened by a firm covering of tendon, which stretches from the upper edge of this zygoma to the white line on the parietal bone ; and several muscles of the face arise from the lower edge of the zygoma, particularly one named *masseter*, which moves the jaw ; and one named *zygomaticus*, or *distortor oris*, because it draws the angle of the mouth. The zygomatic process is united by a short suture to the cheek-bone.

2. The STYLOID PROCESS, is so named from a slight resemblance to the stylus, or point with which the ancients engraved their writings on tables of wax. It is cartilaginous long after birth ; even in the adult, it is not completely formed ; it is exceedingly delicate and small ; and when its cartilaginous point is fairly ossified, as in old men, it is sometimes two inches long. It stands obliquely out from the basis of the head, and is behind the jaw ; so that it gives convenient origin to a ligament which goes downwards to support the *os hyoides*, or bone of the tongue ; and it is the origin of many curious muscles, chiefly of the throat and jaws. One slender muscle going downwards from the styloid process, and expanding over the pharynx, is called *stylo-pharyngeus* ; one going to the *os hyoides*, is the *stylo-hyoideus* ; one going to the tongue, is the *stylo-glossus* ; and since the process is above and behind these parts, the muscles must all pull backwards and upwards, raising according to their insertions, one the pharynx, another the *os hyoides*, another the tongue.

3. The VAGINAL PROCESS will not be easily found, nor acknowledged as a process ; for it is only a small rising of a ridge of the bone, with a rough and broken-like edge, on the middle of which the styloid process stands : it is, in short, the root of the styloid process ; and anatomists have chosen to observe it, though it gives origin to no particular part ; and they

have named it vaginalis, as if it resembled a sheath for the styloid process.

4. The **MASTOID OR MAMMILLARY PROCESS**, is a conical nipple-like bump, like the point of the thumb ; it projects from under the ear, and is easily felt with the finger without ; it is hollow, with many cells which enlarge the tympanum, or first cavity of the ear, and are thought to reverberate and strengthen the sound. Under its root, there is a deep and rough rut which gives a firm hold to the first belly of the digastric muscle ; and the point or nipple of this process is the point into which the mastoid muscle is inserted from before, and the complexus, obliquus, and trachelo-mastoidæus muscles from behind. It has been proposed of late years, that, in certain cases of deafness, we should open this part with the trepan.

5. The **AUDITORY PROCESS** is just the outer margin of the hole of the ear. It is in a child a distinct ring, which is laid upon the rest of the bone. The membrane of the ear is extended upon this ring, like the head of a tambour upon its hoop, whence this is named the circle of the tambour by the French, and by us the drum of the ear. In the adult this ring is fairly united to the bone, and is named the *processus auditorius* ; and may be defined a circle, or ring of bone, with a rough irregular edge ; the drum or membrane of the ear is extended upon it, and the cartilaginous tube of the ear is fixed to it ; and this ring occupies the space from the root of the mammillary to the root of the zygomatic process.

**HOLES.** The temporal bone is perforated with many holes, each of which relates to the organ of hearing ; some for permitting nerves to enter ; others for letting them out ; and others for the free passage of air to the internal ear.

1. The **MEATUS AUDITORIUS EXTERNUS** (the circle of which has been described,) is covered with the membrane of the drum, and communicates the vibratory motion of the air for moving and exciting the internal organs.

2. The **MEATUS AUDITORIUS INTERNUS**, is that hole by which the auditory nerves have access to the ear. It is a very large hole, seated upon the back of the *pars petrosa*, which is of a triangular form. The hole is at first large, smooth, almost a regular circle, with a sort of round lip. Within this there are seen many small holes, the meaning of which is this : the auditory nerve is double from its very origin in the brain : it consists, in fact, of two distinct nerves, the *portio dura*, and the *portio mollis*. The *portio mollis* is a large soft and delicate nerve, which constitutes the true organ of hearing ; and when it is admitted into the ear, it is expanded into a thin web which spreads over all the cavities of the ear, as the *cochlæa*, semi-

circular canals, &c. The portio dura, the smaller part of the nerve, passes indeed through the ear, but it is quite a foreign nerve; it is not distributed within the ear; it keeps the form of a distinct cord, and passing through the temporal bone, it comes out upon the cheek, where it is expanded: so that the portio dura is a nerve of the face, passing through the ear, but forming no part of that organ. Thus the two nerves, the portio dura and the portio mollis, enter together; they fill the greater hole, and then they part; the portio dura, entering by one distinct hole, takes its course along a distinct canal, the aqueduct of Fallopius, from which it comes out upon the cheek; while the portio mollis entering by many smaller holes into the cochlæa, semicircular canals, and other internal parts of the ear, is expanded in these cavities to form the proper organ of hearing.

3. There is upon the fore part of the petrous bone a small hole which will admit the point of a pin. This hole receives a small twig reflected from the fifth pair of nerves: the nerve is as small as a sewing thread; it can be traced along the petrous bone by a small groove which conducts it to the hole; and when it enters the ear, it goes into the same canal with the portio dura, and joins itself to it.

4. The hole by which the portio dura passes out upon the cheek, is found just before the mastoid, and behind the styloid process; and being betwixt the two, it is named the **STYLO-MASTOID** hole, and is so small, as just to admit a pin.

5. The hole for the Eustachian tube is very irregular. No air can pass through the membrane of the drum; and as air is necessary within the ear, it is conveyed upwards from the palate by the **ITER A PALATO AD AUREM**, or as it is commonly called, the **EUSTACHIAN TUBE**. This tube is long, and of a trumpet form; its mouth, by which it opens behind the nostril, is wide enough to receive the point of the finger; it grows gradually smaller as it advances towards the ear; it is cartilaginous in almost its whole length; very little of it consists of firm bone; so that the student, in examining the skull, will hardly find the Eustachian tube; for the cartilage being rotten away, nothing is left but that end of the canal that is next the ear, and which is open both above and below, ragged, irregular, and broken.

When we have a sore throat, the pain extends up along this tube into the ear; when we have a cold, both our voice and our hearing is hurt; the one by the stuffing of the sinuses, the other by the stuffing of the Eustachian tube. When we shut the nose and mouth, and blow strongly, we feel a crackling in the ear, as in the place of the Eustachian tube; when we dive,

we feel the same, by the condensation of the air : and sometimes by forcing the air strongly upwards through the ear, or by vomits, obstruction of the Eustachian tube, and the deafness which attends that accident, are very suddenly, and we may say, violently removed ; or sometimes the cure is attempted by syringing, or by cleaning the mouth of this tube with a probe, just as we do the external ear.

The other holes do not relate to the ear, and are chiefly for transmitting the great blood-vessels of the brain.

1. The CAROTID ARTERY, the chief artery of the brain, enters into the skull near the point of the petrous bone, and just before the root of the styloid process. The artery goes first directly upwards, then obliquely forwards through the bone, and then again upwards, to emerge upon the inside of the skull ; so that the carotid makes the form of an Italic *S*, when it is passing through the substance of the bone ; and in place of a mere hole, we find a sort of short canal, wide, a little crooked, and very smooth within. There seems to be a particular design in this angle, which the artery is forced to make : perhaps it is designed to abate the violence with which the blood would drive forwards into the brain ; for in many of the lower animals, there are still more particular provisions than this, the artery being prevented from entering the brain in one great trunk, by a curious division, into many branches, which meet again. It is at this particular point that we are sensible in our own body of the beating of these two great arteries ; and Haller is at pains to inform us, that, during a fever, he felt this beating in a very distressing degree.

2. The GREAT LATERAL SINUS comes out through the temporal bone, to form the internal jugular vein. The course of the sinus may be easily traced by the groove of the occipital bone downwards, behind the pars petrosa : there also it makes a deep groove, and ends with a large intestine-like turn, which makes a large cavity in the temporal bone, big enough to receive the point of the finger. The sinus passes out, not by any particular hole in the temporal bone, but by what is called a COMMON HOLE, viz. formed one half by the temporal, and one half by the occipital bone. This hole is very large ; is lacerated or ragged-like. It is sometimes divided into two openings, by a small point, or spine of bone. The larger opening on one side of that point transmits the great sinus, where it begins to form the jugular vein ; and the smaller opening transmits the eighth nerve of the skull, or par vagum which goes down towards the stomach, along with the jugular vein.

There is a small furrow upon the very angle or ridge of the petrous bone, which is made by a small vein of the brain going towards the end of the lateral sinus.



3. There is a small hole on the outside of this bone, in the occipital angle ; or rather the hole is oftener found in the line of the suture (the *additamentum suturæ squamosæ*.) Sometimes it is in the occipital bone ; or sometimes it is wanting : it transmits a trifling vein from without, into the great sinus, or a small artery going to the *dura mater*.

That hollow under the root of the zygomatic process, which lodges the hinge of the jaw-bone, must be described along with the lower jaw.

**The ÆTHMOID BONE.**—This is perhaps one of the most curious bones of the human body. It appears almost a cube, not of solid bone, but exceedingly light, spongy, and consisting of many convoluted plates, which form a net-work like honey-comb. It is curiously inclosed in the *os frontis*, betwixt the orbital processes of that bone. One horizontal plate receives the olfactory nerves, which perforate that plate with such a number of small holes, that it resembles a sieve ; whence the bone is named *cribriform*, or *æthmoid* bone. Other plates dropping perpendicularly from this one, receive the divided nerves, and give them an opportunity of expanding into the organ of smelling ; and these bones, upon which the olfactory nerves are spread out, are so much convoluted, as to extend the surface of this sense very greatly, and are named *spongy bones*. Another flat plate lies in the orbit of the eye ; and being very smooth by the rolling of the eye, it is named the *os planum*, or *smooth bone*. So that the *æthmoid* bone supports the forepart of the brain, receives the olfactory nerves, forms the organ of smelling, and makes a chief part of the orbit of the eye ; and the *spongy bones*, and the *os planum*, are neither of them distinct bones, but parts of this *æthmoid* bone.

The **CRIBRIFORM PLATE** is exceedingly delicate and thin ; lies horizontally over the root of the nose ; and fills up neatly the space betwixt the two orbital plates of the frontal bone.

The olfactory nerves, like two small flat lobes, lie out upon this plate, and adhering to it, shoot down like many roots through this bone, so as to perforate it with numerous small holes, as if it had been dotted with the point of a pin, or like a nutmeg grater.

This plate is horizontal ; but its processes are perpendicular, one above, and three below.

1. The first perpendicular process is what is called **CRISTA GALLI** ; a small perpendicular projection, somewhat like a cock's comb, but exceedingly small, standing directly upwards from the middle of the *cribriform* plate, and dividing that



plate into two ; so that one olfactory nerve lies upon each side of the crista galli ; and the root of the falx or septum betwixt the two hemispheres of the brain, begins from this process. The foramen cæcum, or blind hole of the frontal bone, is formed partly by the root of the crista galli, which is very smooth, and sometimes, it is said, hollow or cellular.

2. Exactly opposite to this, and in the same direction with it, *i. e.* perpendicular to the æthmoid plate, stands out the NASAL PLATE of the æthmoid bone. It is sometimes called the azygous, or single process of the æthmoid, and forms the beginning of that septum or partition which divides the two nostrils. This process is thin, but firm, and composed of solid bone ; it is commonly inclined a little to one side, so as to make the nostrils of unequal size. The azygous process is united with the vomer, which forms the chief part of the partition ; so that the septum, or partition of the nose, consists of this azygous process of the æthmoid bone above, of the vomer below, and of the cartilage in the fore or projecting part of the nose ; but the cartilage rots away, so that whatever is seen of this septum in the skull, must be either of the æthmoid bone or the vomer.

3. Upon either side of the septum, there hangs down a SPONGY BONE, one hanging in each nostril. They are each rolled up like a scroll of parchment : they are very spongy ; are covered with a delicate and sensible membrane ; and when the olfactory nerves depart from the cribriform plate of the æthmoid bone, they attach themselves to the septum, and to these upper spongy bones, and expand upon them so, that the convolutions of these bones are of material use in expanding the organ of smelling, and detaining the odorous effluvia till the impression be perfect. Their convolutions are more numerous in the lower animals, in proportion as they need a more acute sense. They are named spongy, or turbinated bones, from their convolutions, resembling the many folds of a turban.

The spongy bones have a great many honey-comb-like cells connected with them, which belong also to the organ of smell, and which are useful perhaps by detaining the effluvia of odorous bodies, and also by reverberating the voice. Thus, in a common cold, while the voice is hurt by an affection of these cells, the sense of smelling is almost lost.

4. The ORBITARY PLATE of the æthmoid bone is a large surface ; consisting of a very firm plate of bone, of a regular square form ; exceedingly smooth and polished : it forms a great part of the socket for the eye, lying on its inner side.

When we see it in the detached bone, we know it to be just the flat side of the æthmoid bone ; but while it is incased in the socket of the eye, we should believe it to be a small square bone ; and from this, and from its smoothness, it has got the distinct name of OS PLANUM.

5. The OS UNGUIS should also, perhaps, be counted as a part of this bone ; for though the os unguis, when observed in the orbit, seems to be a small detached bone, thin like a scale, and of the size of the finger nail (whence it has its name,) yet in the adult, the os unguis is firmly attached to the æthmoid bone ; comes along with it when we separate the pieces of the skull : and when the os unguis is pared off from the æthmoid bone, the cells are exposed.

This os unguis, then, is a small scaly-like plate, in the inner corner of the orbit just over the nose. We find in it that groove which holds the lachrymal sac, and conducts it to the nose ; and it is this thin bone that we perforate in making the new passage into the nose, when there is an obstruction in the natural duct.

6. The CELLS of the æthmoid bone, which form so important a share of the organ of smell, are arranged in great numbers, along the spongy bone. They are small neat cells, much like a honey-comb, and regularly arranged in two rows, parted from each other by a thin partition ; so that the os planum seems to have one set of cells attached to it, while another regular set of cells belongs in like manner to the spongy bones. The cells are thus twelve in number,\* opening into each other, and into the nose.

These cells are frequently the seat of venereal ulcers, and the spongy bones are the surface where polypi often sprout up. And from the general connections and forms of the bone, we can easily understand how the venereal ulcer, when deep in the nose, having got to these cells, cannot be cured, but undermines all the face ; how the venereal disease, having affected the nose, soon spreads to the eye, and how even the brain itself is not safe. We see the danger of a blow upon the nose, which, by a force upon the septum, or middle partition, may depress the delicate cribriform plate, so as to oppress the brain with all the effects of a fractured skull, and without any operation which can give relief. And we also see much danger in pulling away polypi, which are firmly attached to the upper spongy bone.

\* The number is commonly twelve, but not regularly so.

**SPHENOIDAL BONE.**—The sphenoidal bone completes the cranium, and closes it below. It is named **SPHENOID**, **CUNEIFORM**, or **WEDGE-LIKE** bone, from its being incased in the very basis of the skull; or it is named **os MULTIFORME**, from its irregular shape. It is much the shape of a bat, whence it is often named the **PTERYGOID BONE**, its temporal processes being like extended wings; its pterygoid processes like feet; its middle like the body and head of a bat. Its wing-like processes are in the hollow of the temple, forming a part of the squamous suture, and also composing a part of the orbit of the eye: its pterygoid processes hang over the roof of the mouth, forming the back of the nostrils. The body is in the very centre of the skull, and transmits almost all the nerves of the brain; but still the body bears so small a proportion to the bone, that we have not a regular centre to which all the processes can be referred; so that we are always, in describing this bone, moving forwards from point to point, from one process or hole to the next.

**PROCESSES.**—1. The **ALÆ**, or **WINGS**, often named temporal processes, rise up in the temple, to form part of the hollow of the temple; and these wings of the sphenoid bone meeting the frontal, parietal, and temporal bones, by a thin scaly edge, they make part of the squamous suture, and give a smooth surface for the temporal muscle to play upon.

2. The other side of this same process looks towards the socket of the eye, and has a very regular and smooth surface; it is exactly opposite to the **os planum**. As the **æthmoid** bone forms part of the inside of the orbit; the wing of the sphenoid bone forms part of the outside of the orbit; and so the surface turned towards the eye is named the **ORBITARY PROCESS** of the sphenoid bone.

3. The lower, or back part of this bone runs out into a narrow point, which sinks in under the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and being sharp pointed, it is named the **SPINOUS PROCESS**. It is very remarkable for a small hole which permits the great artery of the **dura mater** to enter.

4. The point of this spinous process projects in the form of a very small peak, which will hardly be found by the student. It projects from the basis of the skull just within the condyle of the lower jaw; and being a small point, like the point of the **stilus**, or **iron pen**, it also is named **STYLOID PROCESS**, and gives rise to a curious muscle of the palate.

5. The **PTERYGOID PROCESSES\*** are four in number, two on either side. They are those processes, upon which (with the spinous process) the bone naturally stands, and which, when we compare it with a bat, represent the legs; one of each side is named external pterygoid; the other is named the internal pterygoid process.

1. Each **EXTERNAL PTERYGOID PROCESS**, is thin, flat, and broad, and extends further backwards. Each **INTERNAL PTERYGOID** process is taller and more slender; not so flat nor broad. It has its end rising higher than the other, and tipped with a small neat hook; named the hook of the pterygoid process. The inner pterygoid processes form the back of the nostrils. The Eustachian tube comes downwards in a wide groove betwixt the two processes, and then turning its wide mouth towards the nostril, it opens just behind the internal process, viz. behind the nostril, and over the back of the palate. The hook of the pterygoid process is called the hook of the palate, of which it forms the backmost point. The *musculus circumflexus vel tensor palati*, rising from the mouth of the Eustachian tube, turns with a small tendon round this hook, like a rope over its pulley; and the great muscles of the lower jaw, the only ones for moving it sidewise, or for its grinding motions, arise from the pterygoid processes, so as to be named the external and internal pterygoid muscles, according to the processes from which they arise.

6. The **AZYGOUS PROCESS†**, is so named, from its being single, because it is seated in the centre of the bone, so that it can have no fellow. It stands perpendicularly downwards and forwards, over the centre of the nose, and its chief use is to give a firm seat or insertion for the vomer, or bone, which forms the septum. This with the æthmoid bone united, forms the upper and back parts of the septum; and the vomer, or proper bone of the partition, stands, with a split edge, astride over these two processes, so as to have a very firm seat.

7. The **CLYNOID PROCESSES**, have, like many parts of the human body, a very whimsical name, very ill suited to express their form; for it is not easy, in this instance, to ac-

\* There is some confusion in this name, since pterygoid signifies aliform, or wing-like processes.

† Azygous is a term, which is applied to such parts as have no fellow; because almost always the parts on one side of the body are balanced by similar and corresponding parts on the other side. When they stand in the centre of the body, or are otherwise single, we call them azygous; and so the azygous process of the æthmoid and sphenoid, and other bones; or the azygous vein, which runs in the centre of the thorax, and is single.



knowledge the likeness of four little knobs to bed-posts; yet the clymoid processes are very remarkable. The two ANTERIOR CLYMOID PROCESSES are small bumps, rather sharp, projecting backwards, and terminating in two flat projecting points. The POSTERIOR CLYMOID PROCESSES, rise about an inch further backwards, and are, as it were, opposed to the others. They rise in one broad and flat process, which divides above into two points, small and round, or knobby at their points; and they look forwards towards the anterior clymoid processes.

The SELLA TURCICA EPHIPIUM, or Turkish saddle, is the space inclosed by these four processes, and is well named. The sella turcica supports the pituitary gland, an appendage of the brain, the use of which is unknown. The carotid arteries rise up by the sides of the sella turcica, and mark its sides with a broad groove. The optic nerves lie upon a groove at the fore part of the sella turcica, betwixt the two anterior clymoid processes; and sometimes the two anterior processes stretch backwards, till they meet the posterior ones, and form an arch, under which the carotid artery passes. Often the posterior clymoid knobs cannot be fairly distinguished; since, in many skulls, they form but one broad process.

This bone has also its cells, for all that part which we call the body of the bone, all the sella turcica, that space which is betwixt the clymoid processes within and the azygous process without, is hollowed into one large cell, divided with a middle partition. It is indeed less regular than the other cells; it is sometimes very large, sometimes it is not to be found; it has other trifling varieties, which it were idle to describe. As it communicates with the æthmoid cells, it probably performs one office with them; is almost a continuation of them, so that when any one is less or wanting, the others are proportionally larger.

**HOLES.**—The sphenoid bone is so placed in the very centre of the skull, that its holes transmit the principal nerves of the skull, and it bears the marks of the chief arteries.

1. The OPTIC HOLES, are large, round holes, just under each anterior clymoid process. We trace the optic nerves, by a large groove into each optic hole; and an artery goes along with them, named the ophthalmic artery, about the size of a crow-quill, twisting round the optic nerve, and giving arteries to the eyelids, muscles, and lachrymal gland, but most especially to the ball and humours of the eye itself. This ocular or ophthalmic artery comes off from the great carotid, while it lies by the side of the sella turcica; and it is a branch again of



this ocular artery, which goes out upon the forehead, forming the superciliary notch, or hole.

2. The FORAMEN LACERUM is next in order, and is so named, because it is a wide slit. The foramen lacerum is wide near the sella turcica, grows gradually narrower as it goes out towards the temple, till it terminates almost in a slit. The upper line of the foramen lacerum is formed by the anterior clinoid process, extending outwards, sharp and flat : And this is what some have chosen to distinguish by the name of TRANSVERSE SPINOUS PROCESS, or the little wing of Ingrassias, who had observed it.

The nerves of the skull are counted from before backwards. There are nine nerves proper to the skull ; the first, or olfactory nerve, perforates the cribriform bone ; the 2d, or optic nerve, passes through the optic hole ; the 3d, the 4th, part of the 5th, and the whole of the 6th pairs of the nerves, pass through this foramen lacerum, or wide hole, to go also into the eye. The optic nerve forms the proper organ of vision. The smaller nerves of the 3d, 4th, 5th, and 6th pairs, go to animate its muscles, with the trifling exception of some small twigs, which, passing through the orbit, mount upon the forehead, or go downwards into the nose.

3. The FORAMEN ROTUNDUM, is named from its round shape. The foramen opticum is indeed round, but it has already got an appropriated name. Now to give the young anatomist a regular notion of this, and of the next hole, we must enumerate the branches of the 5th pair. The fifth nerve of the brain is as broad as the little finger, and lies by the side of the sella turcica, where it divides into the three lesser nerves, which are called branches of the 5th pair. The first branch of the 5th pair is destined for the eye ; the second branch of the 5th pair for the upper jaw ; the third branch of this 5th pair for the lower jaw : so the first branch of the 5th pair passes through the foramen lacerum to the eye ; the second branch of the 5th pair passes through the foramen rotundum to the upper jaw ; the third branch of this great nerve passes through the foramen ovale to the lower jaw ; and if we had any faith in the doctrines of nervous sympathy, we should say, here is a wide sympathy provided among the nerves of the eye, the face, and the lower jaw.

The foramen rotundum, then, is a hole exactly round, pretty large, opening immediately under the inner end of the foramen lacerum, and transmitting the second branch of the 5th pair of nerves to the upper jaw.

4. The FORAMEN OVALE, is an oval hole, larger than the

foramen rotundum ; about half an inch behind it ; and transmitting the third branch of the 5th pair to the lower jaw.

5. The FORAMEN SPINALE, or SPINOUS HOLE, is a very small round hole, as if made with a large pin ; is in the very point of the spinous process ; is one third of an inch behind the oval hole, and transmits the small artery, less than a crow-quill, which constitutes the chief artery of the dura mater, viz. that artery which makes its impression upon the parietal bone.

6. There is still another hole, which transmits a nerve, curious in this respect, that it is not going out from the skull, but returning into it ; for the second branch of the 5th pair, or the superior maxillary nerve, sends a small branch backwards, which having come within the skull, enters the temporal bone, and goes to join itself to the portio dura of the 7th pair, and in its way gives a small branch, to help out the slender beginning of the great sympathetic nerve. This retrograde branch of the maxillary nerve gets back again into the skull, by a hole which is found, just under the root of each pterygoid process, whence it is named PTERYGOID HOLE\* ; or by many, is named after its discoverer, the VIDIAN HOLE†. This hole is almost hidden under the point of the petrous bone, is not to be seen, but in the separated bones, and is nearly of the size of the spinous hole.

If there are found some minute holes about the sella turcica, they are only the marks of some blood-vessels, entering the bone to nourish it.



## CHAP. IV.

### OF THE BONES OF THE FACE AND JAWS.

THE face is composed of a great number of small bones, which are grouped together, under the common name of upper jaw. There are six bones on either side of the face ; but as their names could convey no distinct notion of the uses, forms, or places of these bones, to enumerate them were but waste of time : they have indeed sutures, and their sutures

\* This retrograde twig, is the little nerve which perforates the os petrosum on its fore part. *Vide* page 43.

† Vidus Vidius, a professor of Paris, and physician to Francis the first.

have been very regularly enumerated ; but these bones meet each other by such thin edges, that no indention nor proper suture is formed. None of these sutures run for any length, or are of any note ; therefore I have only this to say concerning the sutures of the face, that they are acknowledged to be purely a consequence of the ossification having begun in many points : no particular design of nature has been supposed. The sutures, if they require names, are to be named after the bones which they unite.

**OSSA NASI.**—The ossa nasi are small bones, rather thin, having no cancelli, being merely firm and condensed plates. They are convex outwardly, so that the two together form nearly an arch. They are opposed to each other by a pretty broad surface, so that their thin arch is firm. They have a flat rough surface, by which they are laid upon the rough surface of the frontal bone ; so that there also their connection is strong. They are inclosed by a branch of the upper jaw-bone, which stretching upwards, is named its nasal process : and they lie with their edges under it in one part, and above it in another, in such a way, that they cannot easily be forced in. Lastly, their lower edge is rough, for the firm attachment of the cartilages of the nose ; and their lowest point, or that where the bones of the nose and the gristles of the nose are joined, is the most prominent point (or as it is vulgarly called the bridge) of the nose ; from which connection, notwithstanding its firmness, the cartilages are sometimes luxated.

**OS UNGUIS**, so named from its being of the size and shape of a nail ; or sometimes named the **OS LACHRYMALE**, from its holding the duct which conveys the tears, is that thin scale of bone which I have described as belonging to the **os æthmoides**. It is commonly described as a distinct bone ; it is a thin flat bone, a single scale, without any cancelli ; it is found in the inner angle of the eye, at its forepart, and just touching the top of the nose ; it has a large groove in it for holding the lachrymal sac and duct. One half of this bone is behind the groove, and there the eye rolls upon it. One half of it is occupied by the groove for the nasal duct ; and the other side of the groove is formed by the rising branch, or nasal process, as it is called, of the upper jaw-bone. The **os unguis** is delicate, and easily broken, being as thin as a sheet of paper. It is this bone which is pierced in the operation for the fistula lachrymalis ; which is easily done, almost with a blunt steel or probe ; and the chief caution is to keep forwards, so as to perforate in the place of the groove, as that will lead into the nose, and not behind it, which would carry the perforating in-

strum into the æthmoidal sinuses, and perhaps wound the spongy bone.

This bone seems peculiarly liable to caries, which is perhaps the nature of all these thin bones; for as they have no marrow, they must depend entirely on their periosteum, which they are no sooner robbed of than they die.

*OSSA MAXILLARIA SUPERIORA.*—The upper jaw-bones are particularly worthy of notice; for here we find all that is curious in the face, even to its size and shape. The upper jaw-bones are of very great size, forming as it were the foundation or basis of the face. They send a large branch upwards, which forms the sides of the nose; a broad plate goes backwards, which forms the roof of the palate; there is a circular projection below, which forms the alveoli, or sockets of the teeth. The upper jaw-bones are quite hollow within, forming a very large cavity, which is capable of containing an ounce of fluid or more. The size of this cavity seems to determine the height of the cheek-bone, and the form of the face; and the diseased enlargement of this cavity raises the cheek bone, lessens the eye, and deforms the face in a very extraordinary degree.

These processes, and this cavity of the bone, are what deserve most particular notice.

1. The first is the *NASAL PROCESS*, which extends upwards, to form the side of the nose. It is arched outwards, to give the nostrils shape. Its sides support the nasal bones; and the cartilages of the *alæ nasi*, or wings of the nose, are fixed to the edges of this process.

2. A plate of this bone is called the *orbital process*. This thin plate is the roof of the great cavity, which occupies this bone entirely. It is at once as a roof to the *antrum maxillare*, and as a floor for the eye to roll upon. There is a wide groove along the upper surface of this plate, in which the chief branch of the upper maxillary nerve lies; and this branch, named *infra orbital nerve* from its lying thus under the eye, comes out by a hole of the jaw-bone under the eye, which is named *infra orbital hole*. And thus the nerve appearing upon the cheek, is the chief nerve of the face.

3. This great bone is the basis upon which the cheek-bone stands; and that it may have a firm place, there is a rough and (as anatomists call it) scabrous surface, which makes a very firm suture with the cheek-bone; and as this surface rises a little, it is named the *malar process*.

4. From the lower circle of this bone, there projects a semi-circle of bone, which is for lodging the teeth of the upper jaw. This circle of bone is as deep as the fangs of the teeth are



long. And it may be very truly named a process (*PROCESSUS ALVEOLARIS*;) since it does not exist in the fœtus, nor till the teeth begin to be formed; since it grows along with the teeth and is absorbed and carried clean away when in old age the teeth fall out. The sides of the sockets in which the teeth are lodged are extremely thin, and surround them closely. The teeth are so closely embraced by their sockets, and we are so far from being possessed of any instrument by which they can be pulled perpendicularly out, that the sockets can seldom escape; they are broken or splintered in perhaps one of four extractions, even by the most dexterous artists in that line.

5. The *PALATE PROCESS* is a plate of bone which divides the nose from the mouth, constituting the roof of the palate, and the floor or bottom of the nostrils. This plate is thinner in its middle, and thicker at either edge: thus, it is thick where it first comes off from the alveolar process; it is thin in its middle; and it is again thick where it meets its fellow of the opposite side. For at the place where the two upper jaw-bones meet, the palate plate is turned upwards, so that the two bones are opposed to each other in the middle of the palate, by a broad flat surface, which cannot be seen but by separating the bones. This surface is so very rough, that the middle palate suture almost resembles the sutures of the skull; and the maxillary bones are neither easily separated, nor easily joined again. This meeting of the palate plates by a broad surface, makes a rising spine, or sharp ridge towards the nostrils; so that the broadness of the surface by which these bones meet, serves a double purpose; it joins the bones securely, and it forms a small ridge upon which the split edge of the vomer, or partition of the nose, is planted. Thus we find the palate plate of the maxillary bones conjoined; forming almost the whole of the palate, while what are properly called the palate bones form a very small share of the back part only. As these thinner bones of the face have no marrow, they are nourished by their periosteum only; they are of course perforated with many small holes. A great many minute holes are found along the palate plate, about the place of the sockets, and indeed all over the maxillary bones; and this is particular in the palate, that the hard membrane or covering of it, is fixed to the bony plate by many rough tubercles, and even by small hooks, which are easily seen in the dried bone.

6. The *ANTRUM MAXILLARE*, or cavity of the jaw-bone, is commonly named *ANTRUM HIGHMOREANUM*, after its discover Highmore. We have gone round the antrum, on all its sides, in describing these processes of the bone: the palate plate makes the floor of the antrum; the orbitary process



makes its roof; the cheek, quite up from the socket of the teeth to the lower part of the eye, forms its walls, or sides; so that when the antrum enlarges, it is the cheek that becomes deformed; and when we design to open the antrum, we either perforate the cheek, or pull one of the teeth. The antrum is concave towards the cheek, but it has a flat side towards the nose; it is divided from the cavity of the nostril by a flat and very thin plate of bone; it seems in the naked skull to have a very wide opening, and the lower spongy bone is hung by a small hook upon the edge of this thin septum, which divides the antrum from the nose; but in the skull, covered with its soft parts, we find the antrum almost closed by a membrane which stretches over the opening, and leaves but one or two very small holes of the size of the smallest pea, by which, perhaps, the reverberation of sound in the antrum is more effectual in raising the voice, and by which small hole, the mucus, which is secreted in the antrum, drops out into the nose. The cavity of the antrum, like the inner surfaces of the nostrils, is covered with a membrane, and is bedewed with mucus; and the mucus drops more or less freely in various positions of the head. Sometimes by cold or other accidents; inflammations and swellings of the membrane come on; the holes are closed; the drain of matter is suppressed and confined within, and the cheek swells. Perhaps there may be some particular disease of the membrane with which the cavity is lined, or of the bone itself; in one way or other, diseases of this cavity, and collections of matter, dreadful pain and caries of the bone are very frequent; then the cheek rises; the face is irrecoverably deformed; sometimes the matter makes its way by the sides of the teeth, or at last, it bursts through the bones, makes an ulcer in the cheek; and then there is a natural cure, but slow and uncertain. There is no very sure mark of this disease; it may be known by an attentive retrospect of all the circumstances. The disease is not to be easily nor certainly discovered; but a very long continued toothach, an uncommon degree of pain, or greater affection of the eye, with a swelling and redness, and gradual rising of the cheek, are very suspicious signs. The pulling of the second or third of the grinding teeth, often brings a splinter away with it, which opens a road for the matter to flow; or though there be no breach of the socket, often the confined matter follows the teeth, because not unfrequently the longer fangs of the grinders naturally penetrate quite into this cavity of the jaw: if the matter should not flow, the floor of the antrum is easily perforated, by introducing a sharp stilet by the socket of the tooth that is pulled. The flow of the matter

gives relief, and injections of various medicines, complete the cure. But as this opening is sometimes a cure, it is sometimes also a disease; for the breaking of a socket, sometimes opening a way into this antrum, there follows inflammation of its internal surface, a running of matter, and sometimes caries of the bone.

**HOLES.**—The holes of the jaw-bone are two only: 1. The **INFRA-ORBITARY** hole, for transmitting the infra-orbitary nerve from the bottom of the eye, comes along under the eye in a bony groove, and makes generally one large round hole on the cheek, just under the margin of the orbit, or sometimes the nerve divides and makes two smaller holes in its passage upon the cheek; and, 2. A hole in the palate plate, which belongs equally to each of the palate bones; for it is betwixt the two bones in the forepart, or beginning of the palate suture behind the two first cutting teeth. This hole is named **FORAMEN INCISIVUM**, as opening just behind the incisive or cutting teeth; or it is named **ANTERIOR PALATINE HOLE**, to distinguish it from one in the back of the palate: this hole is large enough to receive the point of a quill; it is single towards the mouth; but towards the nose, it has two large openings, one opening distinctly into each nostril.

3. But it will be well to explain here a third hole, which is common to the maxillary with the proper palate bones. It is formed on the back part of the palate (one on either side), in the suture which joins the palate bones to the jaw-bones: it is named **POSTERIOR PALATINE HOLE**: it is as large as the interior palatine hole, but it serves a much more important purpose; for the upper maxillary nerve sends a large branch to the palate, which branch comes down behind the back of the nostril, perforates the back of the palate, by the posterior palatine hole, and then goes forward in two great branches along the palate. Thus the chief, or, we might say, the only nerves of the palate come down to it through these posterior palatine holes; but the use of the anterior palatine hole is a problem still; for we cannot believe that so great a hole, so very regular, and so curiously divided, so as to open into the two nostrils, can be quite useless; yet the meaning of this hole has never been explained. It looks almost as if it were merely designed for giving the soft palate a surer hold upon the bone; for no ducts have been found opening into the palate from the nose; nor any glands with their ducts seated here; nor any nerves passing either from the nose to the palate, or from the palate to the nose; nor any artery, except one of the most trifling size. In short, anatomists having sought with care for

any thing that might explain its use, have still found nothing but the hard membrane filling up the anterior hole.

The whole surface of the bone which forms the antrum, is perforated with frequent small holes, especially towards its back part, transmitting small arteries and nerves to the teeth; and the back of the antrum forms with the orbitary part of the sphenoid bone a second foramen lacerum for the eye; an irregular opening towards the bottom of the socket, which is for the accumulation of fat, not for the transmission of nerves; and it is from the wasting of this fat, taken back into the system, that the eye sinks so remarkably in fevers, consumptions, and such other diseases as waste the body.

The **OSSA PALATI**, or **PALATE BONES**—are very small, but have such a number of parts, and such curious connections as are not easily explained. They seem to cke out the superior maxillary bones, so as to lengthen the palate, and complete the nostrils behind: they even extend upwards into the socket, so as to form a part of its circle; although, in looking for them upon the entire skull, all these parts are so hidden, that we should suppose the palate bones to be of no greater use nor extent than to lengthen the palate a little backwards.

The parts of the palate bone are these:

1. The **PALATAL PLATE**, or process of the palate bone, whence it has its name, lies horizontal in the same level with the palatal process of the jaw-bone, which it resembles in its rough and spinous surface; in its thinness; in its being thinner in the middle, and thicker at either end; in its being opposed to its fellow by a broad surface, which completes the **MIDDLE PALATE SUTURE**; and it is connected with the palate process of the jaw, by a suture resembling that by which the opposite bones are joined; but this suture going across the back part of the palate, is named the **TRANSVERSE PALATE SUTURE**. Where the two palate bones are joined, they run backwards into an acute point; on either side of that middle point, they make a semicircular line, and again run out into two points behind the grinding teeth of each side. By this figure of the bones, the back line of the palate has a scalloped or waved form. The **velum palati**, or curtain of the palate, is a little arched, following the general line of the bones; the uvula or pap hangs exactly from the middle of the velum, taking its origin from the middle projecting point of the two bones; and a small muscle, the **azygus uvulæ**, runs down in the middle of the velum, taking its origin from the middle point.

2. The small projecting point of the palate bone, just behind the last grinding tooth, touches the pterygoid process of

the sphenoid bone ; it is therefore named the **PTERYGOID PROCESS** of the palate bone ; but it is so joined with the pterygoid process of the sphenoidal bone, that they are not to be distinguished in the entire skull. The posterior pterygoid hole, or third hole of the palate, is just before this point.

3. The **NASAL PLATE** or **PROCESS**, is a thin and single plate ; rises perpendicularly upwards from the palate ; lies upon the side and back part of the nostrils, so as to form their opening backwards into the throat ; it is so joined to the upper jaw-bone, that it lies there like a sounding-board upon the side of the antrum Highmorianum, and completes that cavity forming the thin partition betwixt it and the nose.

4. This nasal process extends thus up from the back arch of the palate to the back part of the orbit ; and though the nasal plate is very thin and delicate in its whole length, yet, where it enters into the orbit, it is enlarged into an irregular kind of knob of a triangular form. This knob is named its **ORBITARY PROCESS** ; or, as the knob has two faces looking two ways in the orbit, it is divided sometimes (as by Monro the father) into two orbitary processes, the anterior and posterior ; the anterior one is the chief. This orbitary process, or point of the palate bone, being triangular, very small, and very deep in the socket, is not easily discovered in the entire skull.

5. This orbitary process is most commonly hollow or cellular, and its cells are so joined to those of the sphenoid bone, that it is the palate bone that shuts the sphenoid cells, and the sphenoid and **PALATINE CELLS** of each side constitute but one general cavity.

The **OSSA SPONGIOSA**, or **TURBINATA, INFERIORA**, are so named to distinguish them from the upper spongy bones, which belong to the os æthmoides ; but these lower spongy bones are quite distinct, formed apart, and connected in a very slight way with the upper jaw-bones.

The **OSSA SPONGIOSA INFERIORA**, are two bones, much rolled or convoluted ; very spongy ; of a light and scaly appearance, with holes and an appearance of net-work resembling the sponginess of puffed paste, so that they are exceedingly light. They lie rolled up in the lower part of the nose ; are particularly large in sheep ; are easily seen either in the entire subject, or in the naked skull. Their point forms that projection, which is touched with the finger in picking the nose ; and from that indecent practice, very often serious consequences arise, for in many instances, polypi of the lower spongy



bones, which can be fairly traced to hurts of this kind, grow so, as to extend down the throat, causing suffocation and death.

One membrane constitutes the universal lining of the cavities of the nose, and the coverings of all the spongy bones. This continuity of the membrane, prevents our seeing in the subject, how slightly the spongy bones are hung; but in the bare and dissected skull, we find a neat small HOOK upon the spongy bone, by which it is hung upon the edge of the antrum maxillare; for this lower spongy bone is laid upon the side of the antrum so as to help the palate bone, in closing or covering that cavity from within. One END of the spongy bone, rather more acute, is turned towards the opening of the nostril, and covers the end of the lachrymal duct: the other END of the same bone, points backwards towards the throat. The curling plate, hangs down into the cavity of the nostril, with its arched side towards the nose. This spongy bone differs from the spongy process of the æthmoid bone, in being less turbinated or complex; in having no cells connected with it; and perhaps it is less directly related to the organ of smell. If polypi arise from the upper spongy bone, we can use less freedom, and dare hardly pull them away, for fear of injuring the cribriform plate of the æthmoid bone: we are indeed not absolutely prohibited from pulling the polypi from the upper spongy bone: but we are more at ease, in pulling them from the lower one, since it is quite an insulated bone. When peas, or any such foreign bodies, are detained in the nose, it must be from their swelling and being detained among the spongy bones.

The spongy bones are not absolutely limited in their number: there is sometimes found betwixt these two, a third set of small turbinated bones, commonly belonging to the æthmoid bone.

**VOMER.**—The nose is completed by the vomer, which is named from its resemblance to a ploughshare, and which divides the two nostrils from each other. It is a thin and slender bone, consisting evidently of two plates much compressed together; very dense and strong; but still so thin as to be transparent. The two plates of which the vomer is composed, split or part from each other at every edge of it, so as to form a groove on every side. 1. On its upper part, or as we may call it, its base, by which it stands upon its skull, the vomer has a **WIDE GROOVE**, receiving the projecting point of the æthmoid and sphenoid bones: thus it stands very firm and secure, and capable of resisting very violent blows. 2 Upon its lower part, its groove is narrower, and receives the rising line in the middle of the palate plate, where the bones meet, to form the



palate suture. At its forepart, it is united by a ragged surface, and by something like a groove, to the middle cartilage of the nose; and as the vomer receives the other bones into its grooves, it is, in a manner, locked in on all sides: it receives support and strength from each; and if the vomer and its cartilage should seem too slender a support for the fabric of the nose, let it be remembered, that they are all firmly connected, and covered by one continuous membrane, which is thick and strong, and that this is as a periosteum, or rather like a continued ligament, which increases greatly the thickness and the strength of every one of these thin plates. The vomer, in almost every subject, bends much towards one or other nostril, so as sometimes to occasion no small apprehension, when it happens to be first observed.

**OS MALÆ**, or the bone of the cheek, is easily known, and is a very unimportant one. It is that large square bone which forms the cheek: it has four distinct points, which anatomists have chosen to demonstrate, with a very superfluous accuracy. 1. The **UPPER ORBITARY** process stands highest, running upwards to form part of the socket, the outer corner of the eye, and the sharp edge of the temple. 2. The **INFERIOR ORBITARY** PROCESS, which is just opposite to this, forming the lower part of the orbit, and the edge of the cheek. 3. The **MAXILLARY** PROCESS, is that broad and rough surface, by which it is joined to the upper jaw-bone. 4. There is another process, the best entitled to the name of process, because it stands out quite insulated, and goes outwards and backwards to unite with the temporal bone, in forming the zygoma or temporal arch; it is named the **ZYGOMATIC** PROCESS. 5. That plate, which goes backwards to form the floor of the orbit, is named the **INTERNAL ORBITARY** PROCESS. This bone has no holes, except such minute ones as transmit arteries, merely for the nourishment of the bone itself.

**OS MAXILLÆ INFERIORIS**.—The lower jaw-bone, is likened to a horse-shoe, or to a crescent, or to the letter U, though we need be under no anxiety about resemblances for a form so generally known. There is such an infinite complication of parts surrounding the jaw, of glands, muscles, blood-vessels, and nerves, that it were endless to give even the slightest account of these. They shall be reserved each for its proper place, while I explain the form of the lower jaw, in the most simple and easy way.

1. The forepart, or chin, is, in a handsome and manly face, very square; and this portion is marked out by this square-

ness, and by two small holes, one on either side, by which the nerves of the lower jaw come out upon the face.

2. The base of the jaw, is a straight and even line, terminating the outline of the face. It is distinctly traced all along, from the first point of the chin, backwards to the angle of the jaw. Fractures of this bone are always more or less transverse, and are easily known by the falling down of one part of this even line, and by feeling the crashing bones when the fallen part is raised. Such fractures happen from blows or falls; but not by pulling teeth, for the sockets of the teeth bear but a small proportion to the rest of the jaw: even in children this cannot happen, for in them the teeth have no roots, and have no hold nor dangerous power over the jaw. Though (as I have said) the sockets often suffer, the jaw itself never yields.

3. The angle of the jaw, is that corner where the base of the jaw ends, where the bone rises upwards, at right angles, to be articulated with the head. This part also is easily felt, and by it we judge well of the situation of veins, arteries, and glands, which might be in danger of being cut, in wounds or in operations. There are two processes of the jaw, of particular importance, the coronoid or horn-like process, for the insertion of its strong muscles, especially of the temporal muscle, and the condyloid or hinge process, by which it is jointed with the temporal bone.

4. The CORONOID PROCESS, named from its resemblance to a horn, is, like the rest of the jaw-bone, flat on its sides, and turned up with an acute angle, very sharp at its point, and lying exactly under the zygoma, or temporal arch. The temporal muscle runs under this arch, and lays hold on the coronoid process; not touching it on one point only, but grasping it on every side, and all round. And the process is set so far before the articulation of the jaw, that it gives the muscle great power. This process is so defended by the temporal arch, and so covered by muscles, that it cannot be felt without.

5. The CONDYLOID PROCESS, or the articulating process of the jaw, is behind this, and is formed by the body of the bone turned up at its angle. This also is of the same flat form with the rest of the jaw. The condyle, or joint of the jaw-bone, is placed upon the top of this rising branch. The condyle, or articulating head, is not round, but flat, of a long form, and set across the branch of the jaw. This articulating process is received into a long hollow of the temporal bone, just under the root of the zygomatic process; so that by the long form of the condyles, and of the cavity into which it is received, this joint is a mere hinge, not admitting of lateral nor rotatory motions,

at least of no wider lateral motions than those which are necessary in grinding the food ; but the hinge of the jaw is a complex and very curious one, which shall be explained in its proper place.

6. The ALVEOLAR PROCESS, or the long range of sockets for the teeth, resembles that of the upper jaw. The jaw, as the body grows, is slowly increasing in length, and the teeth are added in proportion to the growth of the jaws. When the jaws have acquired their full size, the sockets are completely filled ; the lips are extended, and the mouth is truly formed. In the decline of life, the teeth fall out, and the sockets are re-absorbed, and carried clean away, as if they had never been ; so that the chin projects, the cheeks become hollow, and the lips fall in, the surest marks of old age.

The successive changes of the form of the jaw are worthy of being mentioned once more ; first, That in the child, the jaw consists of two bones, which are joined slightly together in the chin. This joining, or symphysis, as it is called, is easily hurt, so that in preternatural labours it is, according to the common method of pulling by the chin, always in danger, and often broken. During childhood the processes are blunt, and short, do not turn upwards with a bold and acute angle, but go off obliquely from the body of the bone. The teeth are not rooted, but sticking superficially in the alveolar process ; and another set lies under them, ready to push them from the jaws.

Secondly, That in youth, the alveolar process is extending, the teeth are increasing in number. The coronoid and articulating processes are growing acute and large, and are set off at right angles from the bone. The teeth are now firmly rooted ; for the second set has come up from the substance of the jaw.

Thirdly, In manhood, the alveolar process is still more elongated. The dentes sapientiæ are added to the number of the teeth ; but often, by this, the jaw is too full, and this last tooth coming up from the backmost part of the alveolar process in either jaw, it sometimes happens, that the jaw cannot easily close ; the new tooth gives pain ; it either corrupts, or it needs to be drawn.

Fourthly, In old age, the jaw once more falls flat ; it shrinks according to the judgment by the eye, to half its size ; the sockets are absorbed, and conveyed away ; and in old age the coronoid process rises at a more acute angle from the skull, and by the falling down of the alveolar process, the coronoid process seems increased in length.

**HOLES.**—The holes of the lower jaw-bone are chiefly two.

1. A **LARGE HOLE** on the inner side, and above the angle of the jaw, just at the point where these two branches, the condyloid and the coronoid processes part. A wide groove from above downwards, leads to the hole; and the hole is, as it were, defended by a small point, or pike of bone, rising up from its margin. This is the **GREAT HOLE** for admitting the **LOWER MAXILLARY NERVE** into the hollow of the jaw, where it goes round within the circle of the jaw, distributing its nerves to all the teeth. But at the point where this chief branch of the nerve goes down into the jaw, another branch of the nerve goes forward to the tongue. And as nerves make an impression as deep as that of arteries in a bone, we find here two grooves, first, One marking the place of the great nerve, as it advances towards its hole; and, secondly, A smaller groove, marking the course of the lesser branch, as it leaves the trunk, and passes this hole to go forward to the tongue.

Along with this nerve, the lower maxillary artery, a large branch, enters also by the hole; and both the nerve and artery, after having gone round the canal of the jaw, emerge again upon the chin.

2. The second hole of the lower jaw is that on the side of the chin, about an inch from the point which permits the remains of the great nerve and artery (almost expended upon the teeth) to come out upon the chin; it is named the **MENTAL HOLE**.



## CHAP. V.

### *OF THE TRUNK.*

OR,

THE SPINE, THORAX, AND PELVIS.



#### THE SPINE.

**T**HE spine is so named from certain projecting points of each bone, which standing outwards in the back, form a continued ridge; and the appearance of continuity is so com-



plete, that the whole ridge is named spine, which, in common language, is spoken of as a single bone. This long line consists of twenty-four distinct bones, named *vertebræ*, from the Latin *vertere*, to turn. They conduct the spinal marrow, secure from harm, the whole length of the spine; and support the whole weight of the trunk, head and arms; they perform at certain points, the chief turnings and bendings of the body; and do not suffer under the longest fatigue, or the greatest weight which the limbs can bear. Hardly can any thing be more beautiful or surprising than this mechanism of the spine, where nature has established the most opposite and inconsistent functions in one set of bones; for these bones are so free in motion, as to turn continually, yet so strong as to support the whole weight of the body; and so flexible as to turn quickly in all directions, yet so steady within, as to contain and defend the most material and the most delicate part of the nervous system.

The *vertebræ* are arranged according to the neck, back, and loins, and the number of pieces corresponds with the length of these divisions. The *vertebræ* of the LOINS are five in number, very large and strong, and bearing the whole weight of the body. Their processes stand out very wide and free, not entangled with each other; and perform the chief motions of the trunk. The *vertebræ* of the back are twelve in number. They also are big and strong, yet smaller than those of the loins; their processes are laid over each other; each bone is locked in with the next, and embarrassed by its connection with the ribs; this is therefore the steadiest part of the spine, a very limited motion only is allowed. The *vertebræ* of the NECK are seven in number; they are more simple, and like rings; their processes hardly project; they are very loose and free; and their motions are the widest and easiest of all the spine.

The seven *vertebræ* of the neck, twelve of the back, and five of the loins, make twenty-four in all, which is the regular proportion of the spine. But the number sometimes varies according to the proportions of the body; for where the loins are long, there are six *vertebræ* of the loins, and but eleven in the back; or the number of the pieces in the back is sometimes increased to thirteen; or the neck, according as it is long or short, sometimes has eight pieces, or sometimes only six.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF A VERTEBRA.—The general form, processes, and parts of the vertebra, are best exemplified in a vertebra of the loins; for in it the body is large, the



processes are right lined, large, and strong; the joint is complete, and all its parts are very strongly marked. Every vertebra consists of a body, which is firm for supporting the weight of the body, and hollow behind, for transmitting the spinal marrow; of two articulating processes above, and two below, by which it is jointed with the bones which are above and below it; of two transverse processes, which stand out from either side of the bone, to give hold and purchase to those muscles which turn the spine; and of one process, the spinous process, which stands directly backwards from the middle of the bone; and these processes being felt in distinct points all the way down the back, give the whole the appearance of a ridge; whence it has the name of spine.

1. The BODY of the VERTEBRA is a large mass of soft and spongy bone; it is circular before, and flat upon the sides. It is hollowed into the form of a crescent behind, to give the shape of that tube in which the spinal marrow is contained. The body has but a very thin scaly covering for its thick and spongy substance. It is tipped with a harder and prominent ring above and below, as a sort of defence, and within the ring the body of the vertebra is hollowed out into a sort of superficial cup, which receives the ligamentous substance by which the two next vertebræ are joined to it; so that each vertebra goes upon a pivot, resembles the ball and socket-joints; and in many animals it is distinctly a joint of this kind.

1. The BODY is the main part of the vertebra to which all the other processes are to be referred; it is the centre of the spine, and bears chiefly the weight of the body: it is large in the loins, where the weight of the whole rests upon it, and where the movements are rather free: it is smaller in the vertebræ of the back, where there is almost no motion, and less weight; and in the vertebræ of the neck, there is hardly any body; the vertebræ being joined to each other chiefly by the articulating processes.

2. The ARTICULATING PROCESS is a small projection, standing out obliquely from the body of the vertebra, with a smooth surface, by which it is joined to the articulating process of the next bone; for each vertebra has a double articulation; with that above and with that below. The bodies of the vertebræ are united to each other by a kind of ligament, which forms a more fixed, and rather an elastic joining; and they are united again by the articulating processes; which makes a very moveable joint of the common form. The articulating processes are sometimes named oblique processes, because they stand rather obliquely. The upper ones are named the ascending oblique processes, and the two lower ones are named the inferior or descending oblique processes.

3. The **SPINOUS PROCESSES** are those which project directly backwards, whose points form the ridge of the back, and whose sharpness gives the name to the whole column. The body of each vertebra sends out two arms, which, meeting behind, form an arch or canal for the spinal marrow; and from the middle of that arch, and opposite to the body, the spinous process projects. Now these spinous, and the transverse processes, are so many handles and levers by which the spine is to be moved: which, by their bigness, give a firm hold to the muscles; and, by their length, give them a powerful lever to work their effects by. The spinous processes, then, are for the insertion of these muscles which extend and raise the spine.

4. The **TRANSVERSE PROCESSES** stand out from the sides of the arms or branches which form this arch. They stand out at right angles, or transversely from the body of the bone; and they also are as levers, and long and powerful ones for moving and turning the spine. Perhaps their chief use is not for turning the vertebræ; for there is no provision for much of a lateral motion in the lower part of the spine, but the muscles which are implanted into these are more commonly used in assisting those which extend and raise the spine.

These, and all the processes, are more distinct, prominent, and strong, more direct, and larger in the loins, and more easily understood, than in the vertebræ of any other class. But this prepares only for the description of the individual vertebræ, where we find a variety proportioned to the various offices, and to the degrees of motion which each class has to perform.

**OF THE VERTEBRÆ OF THE LOINS.**—I have chosen to represent the general form of a vertebra, by describing one from the loins, because of the distinctness with which all its parts are marked. In the lumbar vertebræ, the perpendicular height of the body is short; the intervertebral substance is thicker than in the other parts of the spine: and the several processes stand off from each other distinct and clear; all which are provisions for a freer motion in the loins.

The **BODY** of a lumbar vertebra is particularly large, thick, and spongy; and its thin outer plate is perforated by many arteries going inwards to nourish this spongy substance of the bone. The length of the body is an inch, and the interstitial cartilage is nearly as long: so that the vertebræ of the loins present to the eye, looking from within the body, a large thick and massy column, fit for supporting so great a weight.

The **SPINOUS PROCESS** is short, big, and strong. It runs horizontally and directly backwards from the arch of the spinal marrow. It is flattened, and about an inch in breadth ; and it is commonly terminated by a lump or knob, indicating the great strength of the muscles which belong to it, and the secure hold which they have.

The **TRANSVERSE PROCESS** is also short, direct, and very strong ; going off horizontally from the side of the bone ; terminated like the spinous, by a knotty point, where large muscles are implanted.

The **ARTICULATING PROCESSES** of the lumbar vertebræ stand so directly upwards and downwards, that the name of oblique processes cannot be applied here.

Of the **VERTEBRÆ OF THE BACK**.—The character of the vertebræ of the back is directly opposite to that of the loins. The **BODIES** of the vertebræ are still large to support the great weight of the trunk ; but they are much longer than in the loins, and their intervertebral substance is thin, for there is little motion here. The **SPINOUS PROCESSES** in the vertebræ of the back, are very long and aquiline. They are broad at their basis, and very small or spinous at their further end ; and in place of standing perpendicularly out from the body, they are so bent down, that they do not form a prominent nor unsightly spine, but are ranged almost in a perpendicular line ; that is, laid over each other, like the scales of armour, the one above touching the one below, by which the motions of these vertebræ are still further abridged. And, lastly, the **TRANSVERSE PROCESSES**, which are short and knobby, in place of standing free and clear out, like those of the loins, are trammelled and restricted from motion, by their connexion with the ribs ; for the ribs are not merely implanted upon the bodies of the dorsal vertebræ, but they are further attached firmly by ligaments, and by a regular joint to the transverse process of each vertebra. Now the rib being fixed to the body of one vertebra, and to the transverse process of the vertebra below, the motions of the vertebræ are much curbed. And we also get another mark by which the dorsal vertebræ may be known, viz. that each vertebra bears two impressions of the rib that was joined to it, one on the flat side of its body, and the other on the forepart of its transverse process.

Of the **VERTEBRÆ OF THE NECK**.—The vertebræ of the neck depart still farther from the common form. Their **BODIES** are flattened on their foreparts, so as to make a flat surface on which the windpipe and gullet lie smooth. The body is very

small in all the vertebræ of the neck. In the uppermost of the neck there is absolutely no body ; and the next to that has not a body of the regular and common form. There is not in the vertebræ of the neck, as in those of the loins, a cup or hollow for receiving the intervertebral substance, but the surfaces of the body are flat or plain, and the articulating processes are oblique, and make as it were one articulation with the body ; for the lower surface of the body being not hollow, but plain, and inclined forwards, and the articulating processes being also plain, and inclined backwards, the two surfaces are opposed to each other, and the one prevents the vertebræ from sliding forwards, and the other prevents it from sliding backwards, while a pretty free and general motion is allowed. The **SPINOUS PROCESSES** of the neck are for the insertion of many muscles, and therefore they are split. This bifurcation of the spinous process is not absolutely peculiar to the cervical vertebræ ; for sometimes, though rarely, the others are so : and it is only in the middle of the neck that even they are forked ; for the first vertebra is a plain ring, without any transverse process, because there are few muscles attached to it ; and the last vertebra of the neck is scarcely bifurcated, approaching to the nature of the dorsal vertebræ ; for it is long and aquiline ; is depressed towards the back, and is so much longer than the others, as to be distinguished by the name of **VERTEBRA PROMINENS**.

The **TRANSVERSE PROCESSES** of the neck are also bifurcated, because there are a great many small muscles inserted into them also. But the most curious peculiarity of the transverse processes is, that each of them is perforated for the transmission of the great artery, which is named **VERTEBRAL ARTERY**, because it passes through these holes in the vertebræ which form altogether a bony canal for the artery. This artery, which is defended with so much care, is one of the chief arteries of the brain, for there are two only ; and often when the other, the carotid, has been obstructed, this continues to perform its office.

So that the character of these cervical vertebræ is, that they are calculated for much free motion : and the marks by which they are distinguished are, that the bodies are particularly small ; the articulating processes oblique, with regard to their position, and almost plain on their surface : the spinous process, which is wanting in the uppermost vertebra, is short and forked in all the lower ones ; the transverse process also is forked ; and the transverse processes of all the vertebræ, except perhaps the first, are perforated near their extremities with the large hole of the vertebral artery.



**ATLAS AND DENTATUS.**—But among these vertebræ of the neck, two are to be particularly distinguished, as of greater importance than all the rest ; for though the five lower vertebræ of the neck be ossified and fixed, if but the two uppermost remain free, the head, and even the neck, seems to move with perfect ease.

The first vertebra is named **ATLAS**, perhaps, because the globe of the head is immediately placed upon it ; the second is named **DENTATUS**, or **axis**, because it has an axis or tooth-like process upon which the first turns.

The **ATLAS** has not the complete form of the other vertebræ of the neck, for its processes are scarcely distinguishable : it has no body, unless its two articulating processes are to be reckoned as a body : it is no more than a simple ring ; it has no spinous process ; and its transverse process is not forked. The **BODY** is entirely wanting : in its place, the vertebra has a flat surface looking backwards, which is smooth and polished by the rolling of the tooth-like process ; there is also a sharp point rising perpendicularly upwards towards the occipital bone, and this point is held to the edge of the occipital hole by a strong ligament. The smooth mark of the tooth-like process is easily found ; and upon either side of it there projects a small point from the inner circle of the ring. These two points have a ligament extended betwixt them, called the transverse ligament ; which, like a bridge, divides the ring into two openings ; one, the smaller, for lodging the tooth-like process, embracing it closely ; the greater opening is for the spinal marrow : the ligament confines the tooth-like process ; and when the ligament is burst by violence, (as has happened,) the tooth-like process, broken loose, presses upon the spinal marrow ; the head, no longer supported by it, falls forward, and the patient dies.

The **ARTICULATING PROCESS** may be considered as the body of this vertebra ; for it is at once the only thick part, and the only articulating surface. This broad articulating substance is in the middle of each side of the ring : it has two smooth surfaces on each side, one looking upwards, by which it is joined to the occiput ; and one looking directly downwards, by which it is joined to the second vertebra of the neck. The two upper articulating surfaces are oval, and slightly hollow to receive the occipital condyles : they are also oblique, for the inner margin of each dips downwards ; the outer margin rises upwards ; and the fore end of each oval is turned a little towards its fellow. Now, by the obliquity of the condyles, and this obliquity of the sockets which receive them, all rotatory motion is prevented ; and the head performs, by its articulations with



the first vertebra or atlas, only the nodding motions ; and when it rolls, it carries the first vertebra along with it, moving round the tooth-like process of the dentatus. The articulation with the head is a hinge joint in the strictest sense : it allows of no other motion than that backwards and forwards. The nodding motions are performed by the head upon the atlas ; the rotatory motions are performed by the atlas moving along with the head, turning upon the tooth-like process of the dentatus.

Now the upper articulating surface of the atlas is hollowed to secure the articulation with the head ; but the lower articulation, that with the dentatus, being secured already by the tooth-like process of that bone, no other property is required in the lower articulating surface of the atlas, than that it should glide with perfect ease : for which purpose it is plain and smooth ; it neither receives, nor is received into the dentatus by any hollow, but lies flat upon the surface of that bone. It is also evident, that since the office of the atlas is to turn along with the head, it could not be fixed to the dentatus, in the common way, by a body and by intervertebral substance : and since the atlas attached to the head moves along with it, turning as upon an axis, it must have no **SPINOUS PROCESS** : for the projection of a spinous process must have prevented its turning upon the dentatus, and would even have hindered, in some degree, the nodding of the head, therefore the atlas has a simple ring behind, and has only a small knob or button where the spinous process should be. The **TRANSVERSE PROCESS** is not forked, but it is perforated with a large hole for the vertebral artery ; and the artery to get into the skull makes a wide turn, lying flat upon the bone, by which there is a slight hollow or impression of the artery, which makes the ring of the vertebra exceedingly thin.

But the form of the dentatus best explains these peculiarities of the atlas, and this turning of the head.

The **DENTATUS** or **AXIS**, is so named from its projecting point, which is the chief characteristic of this bone. When the dentatus is placed upright before us, we observe, 1. That it is most remarkably conical ; rising all the way upwards, by a gradual slope, to the point of its tooth-like process. 2. That the ring of the vertebra is very deep, that is, very thick in its substance ; and that the opening of the ring for transmitting the spinal marrow is of a triangular form. 3. That its spinous process is short, thick, and forked ; and that it is turned much downwards, so as not to interfere, in any degree, with the rotation of the atlas. 4. That its tooth-like process, from which the bone is named, is very large, about an inch in length ; very

thick, like the little finger ; that it is pointed ; and that from this rough point a strong ligament goes upwards, by which the tooth is tied to the great hole of the occipital bone. We also observe a neck or collar, or smaller part, near the root of the tooth-like process, where it is grasped by the ring of the atlas ; while the point swells out a little above ; so that without the help of ligaments it is almost locked in its place : we find this neck particularly smooth, for it is indeed upon this collar that the head continually turns. And, 5. We see on either side of this tooth-like process a broad and flat articulating surface, one on either side. These articulating surfaces are placed like shoulders ; and the atlas being threaded by the tooth-like process of the dentatus, is set flat down upon the high shoulders of this bone, and there it turns and performs all the rotatory motions of the head.

**OF THE MEDULLARY TUBE, AND THE PASSAGE OF THE NERVES.**—All the vertebræ conjoined make a large canal of a triangular or roundish form, in which the spinal marrow lies, giving off and distributing its nerves to the neck, arms, and legs : and the whole course of the canal is rendered safe for the marrow, and very smooth by lining membranes ; the outermost of which is of a leather-like strength and thickness, and serves this double purpose, that it is at once a hollow ligament, the whole length of the spine upon which the bones are threaded, and by which each individual bone is tied and fixed to the next ; and it is also a vagina or sheath which contains the spinal marrow, and which is bedewed on its internal surface with a thin exudation, keeping the sheath moist and soft, and making the enclosed marrow lie easy and safe.

All down the spine this spinal medulla is giving off its nerves. One nerve passes from it at the interstice of each vertebra ; so that there are twenty-four nerves of the spine ; or rather forty-eight nerves, twenty-four being given towards each side. These nerves pass each through an opening or small hole in the general sheath, and then they pass through the interstice of each vertebra ; so that there is no hole in the bone required, but the nerve escapes by going under the articulating process. This, indeed, is converted into something like a hole when the two contiguous vertebræ is joined to each other.

**THE INTERVERTEBRAL SUBSTANCE.**—The intervertebral substance is that which is interposed betwixt the bodies of two adjoining vertebræ, and which is (at least in the

loins) nearly equal in thickness to the body of the vertebra to which it belongs. We give it this undefined name, because there is nothing in the human system to which it is entirely similar; for it is not ligament, nor is it cartilage, but it is commonly defined to be something of an intermediate nature. It is a soft and pliant substance, which is curiously folded and returned upon itself, like a rolled bandage with folds, gradually softer towards the centre, and with the rolled edges as if cut obliquely into a sort of convex. The cut edges are thus turned towards the surface of the vertebra, to which the intervertebral substance belongs: it adheres to the face of each vertebra, and it is confined by a strong ligament all round. And this substance, though it still keeps its hold on each of the two vertebræ to which it belongs; though it permits no true motion of one bone on another, but only by a twisting of its substance; yields, nevertheless, easily to whichever side we incline, and returns in a moment to its place by a very powerful resiliency. This perfect elasticity is the chief characteristic and virtue of this intervertebral substance; whose properties indeed are best explained by its uses; for in the bendings of the body, it yields in a very considerable degree, and rises on the moment that the weight or the force of the muscles is removed. In leaping, in shocks, or in falls, its elasticity prevents any harm to the spine, while other less important joints are luxated and destroyed. During the day, it is continually yielding under pressure; so that we are an inch taller in the morning than at night; we are shorter in old age than in youth; and the aged spine is bended forwards by the yielding of this part. These curious facts were first observed by a sort of chance, and have since been ascertained with particular care.

Since pressure, in length of years, shortens the forepart of the column of the spine, and makes the body stoop, any undue inclination to either side will cause distortion: the substance yields on one side, and rises on the other; and at last the same change happens in the bones also, and the distortion is fixed, and not to be changed. This is peculiarly apt to happen with children whose bones are growing, and whose gristles and intervertebral substances are peculiarly soft; so that a tumour on the head or jaw, which makes a boy carry his head on one side, or constant stooping, such as is used by a girl in working at the tambour, or the carrying of a weakly child always on one arm by a negligent or awkward nurse, will cause in time a fixed incurable distortion.

We are now qualified to understand the motions of the vertebræ, and to trace the degree of motion in each individual

class. The degrees of motion vary with the forms of the vertebra in each part of the spine: the motion is freest in the neck; more limited in the loins; and in the back (the middle part of the spine) scarcely any motion is allowed. The head performs all the nodding motions upon the first vertebra of the neck: the first vertebra of the neck performs again all the quick and short turnings of the head, by moving upon the densatus: all the lower vertebræ of the neck are also tolerably free, and favour these motions by a degree of turning; and all the bendings of the neck are performed by them. The dorsal vertebræ are the most limited in their movements; bending chiefly forwards by the yielding of their intervertebral substance. The vertebræ of the loins again move largely, for their intervertebral substance is deep, and their processes quite unentangled and free. To perform these motions, each vertebra has two distinct joints, as different in office as in form: first, each vertebra is fixed to those above and below by the intervertebral substance, which adheres so to each that there is no true motion: there is no turning of any one vertebra upon the next; but the elasticity of the intervertebral substance allows the bones to move a little, so that there is a general twisting and gentle bending of the whole spine. The second joint is of the common nature with the other joints of the body, for the articulating processes are faced with cartilage, surrounded with a capsule, and lubricated with a mucus. And I conceive this to be the intention of the articulating processes being produced to such a length, that they may lap over each other to prevent luxations of the spine; and they must, of course, have these small joints, that they may yield to this general bending of the spine.

## THORAX.

OF THE RIBS.—The ribs, whose office it is to give form to the thorax, and to cover and defend the lungs, also assist in breathing; for they are joined to the vertebræ by regular hinges, which allow of short motions, and to the sternum by cartilages, which yield to the motion of the ribs, and return again when the muscles cease to act.

Each rib, then, is characterised by these material parts: a great length of bone; at one end of which there is a head for articulation with the vertebræ, and a shoulder or knob for articulation with its transverse process; at the other end there is a point, with a socket for receiving its cartilage, and a cartilage joined to it, which is implanted into a similar socket



in the side of the sternum, so as to complete the form of the chest.

The ribs are twelve in number, according to the number of the vertebræ in the back. Of these seven are named true ribs, because their cartilages join directly with the sternum; and five are named false ribs, because their cartillages are not separately nor directly implanted into the sternum, but are joined one with another; the cartilage of the lower rib being joined, and lost in that of the rib above, so that all the lower ribs run into one greater cartilage: But there is still another distinction, viz. that the last rib, and commonly also the rib above, is not at all implanted in the sternum, but is loosely connected only with the muscles of the abdomen, whence it is named the loose or floating rib.

The ribs are, in general, of a flattened form, their flat sides being turned smooth towards the lungs. But this flatness of the rib is not regular; it is contorted, as if the soft rib had been seized by either end, and twisted betwixt the hands: the meaning of which is, to accommodate the flatness of the rib to the form which the thorax assumes in all its degrees of elevation; for when the rib rises, and during its rising through all the degrees of elevation, it still keeps its flat side towards the lungs. Though of a flattened form, the rib is a little rounded at its upper edge; is sharp and cutting at its lower edge; and its lower edge seems double, for there is a groove made there by the intercostal artery and nerve. They are named intercostal, from lying betwixt the ribs. The artery being rather within the rib, is defended in some degree by its groove; the lip of which forms the lower edge of the rib: but still this artery is not without reach of the knife, in some surgical operations. We are careful, therefore, to mark, that it runs on the lower edge of the rib, and is of the size of a crow-quill; and that, if it be wounded, it will bleed largely, from its nearness to the greatest artery of the body; that it is easily shunned, by keeping the knife nearer to the rib below.

On each rib we find the following parts: 1. The HEAD, or round knob by which it is joined to the spine. The head of each rib has indeed but a small articulating surface; but that smooth surface is double, or looks two ways. For the head of the rib is not implanted into the side of one vertebra; it is rather implanted into the interstice betwixt two vertebræ; the head touching both vertebræ; and each vertebra bearing the mark of two ribs, one above, and one below. The mark of the rib is on the edge of either vertebra, and the socket may be said to lie in the intervertebral substance betwixt them.



2. The **NECK** of the rib is a smaller part, immediately before the head. Here the rib is particularly small and round.

3. About an inch from the head, there is a second rising, or bump, the articulating surface, by which it touches and turns upon the transverse process. These two articulations have each a distinct capsule or bag; each is a very regular joint; and the degree of motion of the rib, and direction in which it moves, may be easily calculated, from the manner in which it is jointed with the spine. For the two articulating surfaces of the rib are on its back part; the back of the rib is simply laid upon the side of the spine; the joints, with the body of the vertebræ, and with its transverse process, are in one line, and form as if but one joint; so that the rib being fixed obliquely, and at one end only, that end continues firm, except in turning upon its axis; the two heads roll upon the body of the vertebræ, and upon the transverse process; and so its upper end continues fixed, while its lower end rises or falls; and as the motion is in a circle, the head being the central point, moves but little, while the lower end of the rib has the widest range.

4. Just above the second articulating surface, there is a third tubercle, which has nothing to do with the joints, but is intended merely for the attachment of the ligaments and muscles from the spine, which suspend and move the rib.

5. The **angle** of the rib is often mentioned, being a common mark for the place of surgical operations. There is a flatness of the thorax behind, forming the breadth of the back; the sharpness where this flatness begins to turn into the roundness of the chest, is formed by the angles of the ribs. Each rib is round in the place of its head, neck and tubercles: it grows flatter a little, as it approaches the angle; but it is not completely flattened till it has turned the angle which is the proper boundary betwixt the round and the flat parts of the rib.

It is very evident that this anatomy of the ribs is neither difficult nor important. It is in some degree useful, in the more advanced parts of anatomy, to remember the names; and it is necessary, even in speaking the common language of surgeons, to know these parts, viz. the head of the rib; the tubercle, or second articulating surface; the angle, or turning forward of the rib; the upper round, and the lower flat edge; and especially to remember the place and dangers of the intercostal artery. But there are some peculiarities in individual ribs; the chief of which are these: the size or length of the ribs gradually decreases from the first to the last, the first being exceedingly short and circular, the lower ones longer, and almost right-lined; so that the thorax is altogether of a conical shape, the upper opening so small, as just to per-

mit the trachea, œsophagus, and great vessels, to pass; the lower opening so large, that it equals the diameter of the abdomen: the first rib is consequently very short; it is thick, strong, and of a flattened form; of which flatness one face looks upwards, and another downwards: and the great axillary artery and vein lie upon its flat upper surface. It is also particularly circular, making more than half a circle from its head to the extremity, where it joins the sternum; it has, of course, no angle, and wants the distorted twisting of the other ribs. The second rib is also round, like the first rib. The eleventh and twelfth, or the floating ribs, are exceedingly small and delicate; and their cartilage terminates in an acute point, unconnected with the sternum. And, lastly, the heads of the first, and of the eleventh and twelfth ribs, are rounder than any of the others; for these three have their heads implanted into the flat side of one vertebra only; while all the others have theirs implanted betwixt the bodies of two vertebræ.

The cartilages of the ribs complete the form of the thorax, and form all the lunated edge of that cavity; and it is from this cartilaginous circle that the great muscle of the diaphragm has its chief origin, forming the partition betwixt the thorax and the abdomen. The farther end of each rib swells out thick and spongy, and has a small socket for lodging the cartilage; for these cartilages are not joined like the intervertebral substances with their bones; but there is a sort of joint very little moveable indeed, but still having a rude socket, and a strong capsular ligament, and being capable of luxation by falls and blows; and the implantations into the sternum are evidently by fair round sockets, which are easily distinguished upon the two edges of that bone. These cartilages may be enumerated thus: The cartilages of the first and second ribs descend to touch the sternum. The cartilage of the third rib is direct. The cartilages of the fourth, fifth and sixth ribs rise upwards, in proportion to their distance from this central one. The first five ribs have independent cartilages; the eighth, ninth and tenth ribs run their cartilages into the cartilage of the seventh rib; and the eleventh and twelfth ribs have their cartilages small, unconnected, and floating loose.

**THE STERNUM.**—The sternum is that long and squared bone, which lies on the forepart of the breast over the heart, and which being joined by the cartilages of the ribs, completes the cavity of the chest; it is for completing the thorax, and defending the heart; for a medium of attachment to the ribs; and for a fulcrum or point, on which the clavicles may roll.

We find the sternum consisting in the child of eight distinct

pieces ; which run together in the progress of life ; and which in old age are firmly united into one : but in all the middle stage of life, we find three pieces in the sternum, two of which are properly bone, the third remains a cartilage till very late in life, and is named the ensiform cartilage, from its sword-like point.

It is found to have eight pieces, even in the child of six years old ; some years after, it has but five or six ; at last but two only ; and the salient white lines, which traverse the bone, mark where the intermediate cartilages have once been.

1. The upper piece of the sternum is very large, roundish, or rather triangular, resembling the form of the heart on playing cards. It is about two inches in length, and an inch and a half in breadth ; and these marks are easily observed ; the APEX, or point of the triangle, is pointed downwards, to meet the second bone of the sternum : the BASE OF THE TRIANGLE, which is uppermost, towards the root of the throat seems a little hollowed, for the trachea passing behind it : on each upper corner, it has a large articulating hollow, into which the ends of the collar bones are received ; (for this bone is the steady fulcrum upon which they roll). A little lower than this, and upon its side, is the socket for receiving the short cartilage of the first rib ; and the second rib is implanted in the interstice between the first and second bone of the sternum ; so that one half of the socket for its cartilage is found in the lower part of this bone, and the other half in the upper end of the next.

2. The second piece of the sternum is of a square form ; very long and flat ; and composing the chief length of the sternum : for the first piece receives only the cartilage of the first rib, and one half of the second ; but this long piece receives, on each side or edge of it, the cartilages of eight ribs ; but as three of the lower cartilages are run into one, there are but five sockets or marks. The sockets for receiving the cartilages of the ribs are on the edges of the sternum ; they are very deep in the firm substance of the bone, and large enough to receive the point of the finger with ease : and whoever compares the size and deepness of these sockets, with the round heads of the cartilages which enter into them, will no more doubt of distinct joints here, than of the distinct articulation of the vertebræ with each other.

3. This is in truth the whole of the bony sternum ; and what is reckoned the third piece, is a cartilage merely, and continues so down to extreme old age. This cartilage, which ckes out and lengthens the sternum, and which is pointed like a sword, is thence named CARTILAGO MUCRONATA, the pointed

cartilage ; or *CARTILAGO ENSIFORMIS*, or *XIPHOIDES*, the sword-like cartilage. This cartilaginous point extending downwards over the belly, gives a sure origin, and greater power to the muscles of the abdomen ; and that without embarrassing the motions of the body. But this cartilage, which is commonly short and single pointed, is sometimes forked ; sometimes bent inwards, so (it has been thought) as to occasion sickness and pain ; and in one case was found of such a length, as to reach the navel, and ossified at the same time, so as to hinder the bending of the body, and occasion much distress.

The sternum, and the ribs, and all the chest, stand so much exposed, that did we not naturally guard them with the hands, fractures must be very frequent ; but indeed when they are broken and beaten in, they hurt the heart or lungs, and not unfrequently the most dreadful consequences ensue. I have already explained, that to this class of bones, defending the most noble viscera (next to the brain), the injuries are almost as fatal as injuries of the brain. Often by a wheel passing over the body, the sternum is broken ; its pieces press inwards upon the heart, which is sometimes burst ; but more commonly the patient dies a slow and miserable death ; for the inflammation, which begins in the place of the wound, is extended to the lungs ; is propagated still onwards to the heart ; and the heart being once inflamed, there comes anxiety, oppression, faintings, and palpitations ; anxious breathing ; quick and interrupted pulse ; still more frequent faintings, and then death. The ribs cover more properly the lungs ; where the wound or inflammation is not always fatal : for the wound by the point of the rib is no deeper than just to puncture the lungs ; yet through this small wound on their surface, the lungs breathe out their air into the cavity of the chest, and at last it escapes under the cellular substance of the skin ; the man is blown up to a prodigious degree, with continually increasing anxiety : his breathing becomes more and more interrupted ; and if not assisted, he must die.

## PELVIS.

To give a steady bearing to the trunk, and to connect it with the lower extremities, by a sure and firm joining, the *PELVIS* is interposed. It is a circle of large and firm bones, standing as an arch betwixt the lower extremities and the trunk. Its arch is wide and strong, so as to give a firm bearing to the body ; its individual bones are large, so as to give a deep and sure socket for the implantation of the thigh-bone ;



its motions are free and large bearing the trunk above, and rolling upon the thigh-bones below ; and it is so truly the centre of all the great motions of the body, that when we believe the motion to be in the higher parts of the spine, it is either the last vertebra of the loins bending upon the top of the pelvis, or the pelvis itself rolling upon the head of the thigh-bones.

The PELVIS is named partly, perhaps, from its resembling a basin in its form ; or perhaps, from its office of containing the urinary bladder, rectum, vagina, and womb. It consists, in the child, of many pieces ; but in the adult, it is formed of four large bones, of the os sacrum behind, the ossa innominata, one either side, and the os coccygis below.

OS SACRUM. The names os sacrum, os basilare, &c. seem to relate rather to the greater size of this bone, than to its ever having been offered in sacrifice. This bone, with its appendix the os coccygis, is called the false spine, or the column of the false vertebræ ; authors making this distinction, that the true vertebræ are those of the back, neck, and loins, a column which grows gradually smaller upwards ; the false vertebræ are those of the sacrum and coccyx, which are conical with the apex or point downwards, and the base, viz. the top of the sacrum, turned upwards to meet the true spine.

The bones of which the sacrum is composed, have originally the form of distinct small vertebræ. These distinctions are lost in the adult, or are recognized only by the marks of former lines ; for the original vertebræ are now united into one large and firm bone, which is named the column of false vertebræ ; because, having no motion, it wants the chief character and use of the true ones.

We can recognise the original vertebræ even in the adult bone, for we find it regularly perforated with holes for the transmission of the spinal nerves ; we find these holes regularly disposed in pairs ; we see a distinct white and rising line which crosses the bone, in the interstice of each of the original vertebræ, and marks the place where the cartilage once was ; and by these lines being five in number, with five pairs of holes, we know this bone to have consisted once of five pieces, which are now joined into one. The remains of former processes can also be distinguished ; and the back of the bone is rough and irregular from the old spines.

The os sacrum, thus composed, is among the lightest bones of the human body ; with the most spongy substance ; the thinnest tables ; the most easily broken : and its injuries of the most formidable nature : but then it is a bone the best cemented : and confirmed by strong ligaments ; and the best covered by thick and cushion-like muscles. The os sacrum is



of a triangular shape ; the base of the triangle turned upwards to receive the spine ; its inner surface is smooth, to permit the head of the child in labour to glide easily along ; and its outer surface is irregular and rough, with the spines of former vertebræ, giving rise to the great glutæi muscles (which form the contour of the hip,) and to all the strongest muscles of the back and loins.

It has in it a triangular cavity under the arch of its spinous processes ; which cavity is continued from the canal in the vertebræ of the spine ; and this cavity of the sacrum contains the continuation and the end of the spinal marrow ; which being in this place divided into a great many thread-like nerves, has altogether the form of a horse's tail, and is therefore named *cauda equina*.

From this triangular cavity, the nerves of the *cauda equina* go out by the five great holes on the forepart of the sacrum ; holes large enough to receive the point of the finger. The three first nerves of the sacrum, joining with the last nerve of the loins, form the sacro-sciatic nerve ; the largest in the body ; which goes downward to the leg ; while the two lower nerves of the sacrum supply the contents of the pelvis alone.

The back of the sacrum is also perforated with holes, whose size is nearly equal to those on its forepart, but whose uses are not so distinctly known ; for the small nerves which pass outwards by them to the muscles of the loins or hips, are in no degree proportioned to the size of the holes.

All the edges of this triangle form articulating points, by which it is joined to other bones. The base, or upper part of the sacrum, receives the last vertebra of the loins on a large broad surface, which makes a very moveable joint ; and indeed, the joining of the last true vertebra, with the top of the sacrum, is a point where there is more motion than in the higher parts of the spine. The apex, or point of the sacrum, has the *os coccygis* joined to it ; and this joining is moveable till the age of twenty in men, and till the age of forty-five in women :—the meaning of its continuing longer moveable in women is very plain, since we distinctly feel the lower point of the coccyx in women, yielding in the time of labour, so as to enlarge greatly the lower opening of the pelvis. The sides of the *os sacrum* form a broad, rough, and deeply indented surface, which receives the like rough surface of the haunch bones ; and here the surfaces are so rough, and the cartilage so thin, that it resembles more nearly a suture ; and by the help of the strong ligaments, and of the large muscles which arise in common from either bone, makes a joining absolutely immoveable, except by such violent force as is in the end fatal.

Thus the original state of this bone is easily recognised and traced by many marks ; it stands in a conspicuous place of the pelvis, and its chief office is to support the trunk ; to which we may add, that it defends the cauda equina ; transmits its great nerves ; forms chiefly the cavity of the pelvis ; and that it is along the hollow of this bone that the accoucheur calculates the progress of the child's head in labour.

The *os coccygis*, so named from its resemblance to the beak of a cuckow, is a small appendage to the point of the sacrum ; terminating this inverted column with an acute point, and found in very different conditions in the several stages of life. In the child it is merely cartilage, and we can find no point of bone ; during youth it is ossifying into distinct bones, which continue moveable upon each other till manhood ; then the separate bones gradually unite with each other, so as to form one conical bone, with bulgings and marks of the pieces of which it was originally composed ; but still the last bone continues to move upon the joint of the sacrum, till in advanced years it is at last firmly united ; later in women than in men, with whom it is often fixed at twenty or twenty-five. It is not like the *os sacrum*, flat, but of a roundish form, convex without and concave inwards ; forming with the sacrum the lowest part of the pelvis behind. It has no holes like the sacrum ; has no communication with the spinal canal ; and transmits no nerves ; but points forwards to support the lower parts of the rectum : thus, it contracts the lower opening of the pelvis, so as to support effectually the rectum, bladder, and womb, and yet continues so moveable in women, as to recede in time of labour, allowing the head to pass.

The *ossa innominata*, are the two great irregular bones, forming the sides of the pelvis ; and they have a form so difficult to explain by one name, that they are called *ossa innominata*, the nameless bones. But these bones having been in the child formed in distinct and separate pieces, these pieces retain their original names, though united into one great bone ; we continue to explain them as distinct bones by the names of *os ilium*, *os ischium*, and *os pubis*. The *os ilium*, the haunch-bone, is that broad and expanded bone on which lie the strong muscles of the thigh, and which forms the rounding of the haunch. The *os ischium*, the hip-bone, is the lowest point of the pelvis, that on which we rest in sitting. The *os pubis*, or share-bone, on which the private parts are placed. All these bones are divided in the child ; they are united in the very centre of the socket for the thigh-bone ; and we find in the child a thick cartilage in the centre of the socket, and a pro-

minent ridge of bone in the adult ; which ridge, far from incommoding the articulation with the thigh-bone, gives a firmer hold to the cartilage which lines that cavity, and is the point into which a strong ligament from the head of the thigh-bone is implanted.

The *OS ILIUM*, or haunch-bone, is named from its forming the flank. It is the largest part of the *os innominatum*. It rises upwards from the pelvis in the broad expanded wing, which forms the lower part of the cavity of the abdomen, and supports the chief weight of the impregnated womb (for the womb commonly inclines to one side.) The *os ilium* is covered with the great muscles that move the thighs, and to its edge are fixed those broad flat muscles which form the walls of the abdomen. This flat upper part is named the *ALA*, or *WING*, while the lower, or rounder part, is named the *BODY* of the bone, where it enters into the socket, and meets the other bones.

The *ALA*, or flat expanded wing, has many parts, which must be well remembered, to understand the muscles which arise from them. 1. The whole circle of this wing is tipped with a ridge of firmer bone, which encircles the whole. This is a circular cartilage in the child, distinct from the bone, and is ossified and fixed only at riper years. All this ridgy circle is called the spine, and is the origin for the lower oblique and transverse muscles of the abdomen. 2. The two ends of this spine are abrupt, and the points formed upon it are consequently named spinous processes ; of which there are two at its fore, and two at its back end. The two *POSTERIOR SPINOUS PROCESSES* are close by each other, and are merely two rough projecting points near the rough surface, by which the *os ilium* is joined to the *os sacrum* ; they jut out behind the articulation, to make it firm and sure ; and their chief uses seem to be the giving a firm hold to the strong ligaments which bind this joint. 3. The two anterior spinous processes are more distinct and more important marks ; for the *ANTERIOR SUPERIOR SPINOUS PROCESS* is the abrupt ending of the spine or circle of the *ilium*, with a swelling out ; from which jutting point the sartorius muscle, the longest and amongst the most beautiful in the human body, goes obliquely across the thigh, like a strap, down to the knee ; another, which is called the *tensor vaginæ femoris*, also arises here ; and from this point departs the ligament, which passing from the *os ilium* to the pubes, or fore point of the pelvis, is called the ligament of the thigh. How necessary it is to mark this point, may be easily deduced, from knowing that it is under the arch of this femoral ligament that the great artery passes down to the thigh,

and that the femoral hernia is formed. The LOWER ANTERIOR spinous process is a small bump, or little swelling, about an inch under the first one which gives rise to the rectus femoris muscle, or straight muscle of the thigh, which lies along its forepart.

The back, or DORSUM of the os ilium, is covered with the two great glutæi muscles; and the COSTA, as it is absurdly called, or the inner concave surface, gives rise to the internal iliac muscle.

This bone (the os ilium) has a broad rough surface, by which it is connected with the os sacrum at its side; the very form of which declares the nature of this joining, and is sufficient argument and proof that the joinings of the pelvis do not move.

The acute line which is named LINEA INNOMINATA, is seen upon the internal surface of the bone, dividing the ala, or wing, from that part which is in the socket for the thigh. This line composes part of the brim of the pelvis; distinguishes the cavity of the pelvis from the cavity of the abdomen; and marks the circle into which the head of the child descends at the commencement of labour.

The os ISCHIIUM, or hip-bone, is placed perpendicularly under the os ilium, and is the lowest point of the pelvis, upon which we sit. It forms the largest share of the socket; whence the socket is named Acetabulum Ischii, as peculiarly belonging to this bone. The bump or round swelling upon which we rest, is named the Tuber Ischii; and the smaller part which extends upwards to meet the os pubis, is named the Ramus, or branch, which meets a similar branch of that bone, to form the thyroid hole.

The BODY is the uppermost, and thicker part of the bone, which helps in forming the socket; and among the three bones this one forms the largest share of it; nearly one half. From the body, a sharp pointed process, named SPINOUS PROCESS of the ischium, is projected backwards; and this spinous process pointing towards the lower end of the sacrum, receives the uppermost of two long ligaments, which, from their passing betwixt the ischium and sacrum, are named sacro-sciatic. By this ligament a semicircle of the os ilium, just below the joining of the ilium with the sacrum, is completed into a large round hole; which is in like manner named the sacro-sciatic hole, and gives passage to the great nerve of the lower extremity, named the great sacro-sciatic nerve.

The TUBER, or round knob, being the point upon which we rest, this bone has been often named OS SEDENTARIUM. The bump is a little flattened when we sit upon it. It is the mark by which the lithotomist directs his incision; cutting exactly in



the middle betwixt the anus and this point of bone. It is remarkable as the point towards which the posterior or lower sacro-sciatic ligament extends ; and as a point which gives rise to several of the strong muscles on the back of the thigh, and especially to those which form the hamstrings.

The RAMUS, or branch, rises obliquely upwards and forwards to join a like branch of the pubes. This branch, or arm as it is called, is flat, and its edges are turned a little forwards and backwards, so that one edge forms the arch of the pubes, while the other edge forms the margin of the thyroid hole.

The OS PUBIS, or SHARE-BONE, is the last and smallest piece of the os innominatum ; and is named from the mons veneris being placed upon it, and its hair being a mark of puberty. It forms the upper or forepart of the pelvis, and completes the brim ; and, like the ischium, it also is divided into three parts, viz. the BODY, ANGLE, and RAMUS.

The BODY of the pubes is thick and strong, and forms about one-fifth of the socket for the thigh-bone. It is not only the smallest, but the shallowest part of the socket. The bone grows smaller as it advances towards its angle, the joining of the ossa pubis. There it grows again broad and flat, and the two bones meet with rough surfaces, but with two cartilages interposed. Over the middle of this bone, two great muscles, the iliac and psoas muscles, pass out of the pelvis to the thigh ; and where they run under the ligament of the thigh, they make the pubes very smooth. Along this bone there is a little edge, or sharp ridge, which marks the brim of the pelvis : and the part which is over the symphysis, or joining of the bones, rising higher than the rest of the ridge, is named the crest of the pubes ; and from this point the small pyramidal muscles of the abdomen rise. The RAMUS, or branch, is that more slender part of the pubes, which, joining with the branch of the ischium, forms with it the arch of the pubes, and the edge of the thyroid hole.

This completes the strict anatomy of the pelvis : but when we consider the whole, it is further necessary to repeat, in short definitions, certain points which are oftener mentioned as marks of other parts.

The PROMONTORY of the sacrum is the projection formed by the lowest vertebra of the loins and the upper point of that bone. The HOLLOW of the sacrum is all that smooth inner surface which gives out the great nerves for the legs and pelvis. The LESSER ANGLE, in distinction from the greater angle or



promontory of the sacrum, is a short turn in the bone near where it is joined with the coccyx. The CREST of the PUBES is a sharper ridge or edge of the bone over the joining or symphysis pubis. The POSTERIOR SYMPHYSIS of the pelvis is the joining of the sacrum with the ilium, while the symphysis pubis is distinguished by the name of ANTERIOR SYMPHYSIS of the pelvis. The SPINE, the TUBER, and the RAMUS of the ischium are sufficiently explained. The ALA, or wing, the SPINE, the SPINOUS PROCESSES, and the LINEA INNOMINATA of the ilium, are also sufficiently explained. The ACETABULUM, so named from its resemblance to a measure which the ancients used for vinegar, is the hollow or socket for the thigh-bone, composed of the ilium, ischium and pubes ; the ridge in its centre shows the place of its original cartilage, and points out what proportion belongs to each bone ; that it is made, two-fifths by the os ilium, two-fifths by the os ischium, and one-fifth only by the os pubis : but the ischium has the greatest share ; the ischium forming more than two fifths, and the ilium less. The BRIM of the PELVIS is that oval ring which parts the cavity of the pelvis from the cavity of the abdomen : it is formed by a continued and prominent line along the upper part of the sacrum, the middle of the ilium, and the upper part or crest of the pubes. This circle of the brim supports the impregnated womb ; keeps it up against the pressure of the labour pains ; and sometimes this line has been “ as sharp as a “paper-folder, and has cut across the lower segment of the “womb ;” and so, by separating the womb from the vagina, has rendered the delivery impossible ; and the child escaping into the abdomen among the intestines, the woman has died. The OUTLET of the PELVIS is the lower circle again, composed by the arch of the pubes, and by the sciatic ligaments, which is wide and dilatable, to permit the delivery of the child ; but which, being sometimes too wide, permits the child’s head to press so suddenly, and with such violence, upon the soft parts, that the perineum is torn. The THYROID HOLE is that remarkable vacancy in the bone which perhaps lightens the pelvis, or perhaps allows the soft parts to escape from the pressure during the passage of the head of the child.

The marks of the female skeleton have been sought for in the skull, as in the continuation of the sagittal suture ; but the truest marks are those which relate to that great function by which chiefly the sexes are distinguished : for while the male pelvis is large and strong, with a small cavity, narrow openings, and bones of greater strength ; the female pelvis is very shallow and wide, with a large cavity and slender bones, and with every peculiarity which may conduce to the easy passage of the

child. And this occasions that peculiar form of the body which the painter is at greater pains to mark, and which is indeed very easily perceived : for the characteristic of the manly form is firmness and strength ; the shoulders broad, the haunches small, the thighs in a direct line with the body, which gives a firm and graceful step. The female form again is delicate, soft and bending ; the shoulders are narrow ; the haunches broad ; the thighs round and large ; the knees, of course, approach each other, and the step is unsure ; the woman, even of the most beautiful form, walks with a delicacy and feebleness, which we come to acknowledge as a beauty in the weaker sex.

The bones of the pelvis compose a cavity which cannot be fairly understood in separate pieces, but which should be explained as a whole. Though perhaps its chief office is to support the spine, still its relation to labour deserves to be observed ; for this forms at least a curious inquiry, though it should not be allowed a higher place in the order of useful studies.

We know, from much experience, that where the pelvis is of the true size, we have an easy and natural labour : that where the pelvis is too large, there is pain and delay ; but not that kind of difficulty which endangers life : that where, by distortion, the pelvis is reduced below the standard size, there comes such difficulty as endangers the mother, and destroys the child, and renders the art of midwifery still worthy of serious study, and an object of public care.

There was a time when it was universally believed, that the joinings of the pelvis dissolved in every labour ; that the bones parted, and the openings were enlarged ; that the child passed with greater ease ; and “that this opening of the basin was “no less natural than the opening of the womb.” By many accidents, this opinion has been often strengthened and revived ; and if authority could determine our opinion, we should acknowledge, that the joinings of the pelvis were always dissolved, as a wise provision of nature for facilitating natural, and preventing lingering, labour, compensating for the frequent deviations, both in the head and pelvis, from their true and natural size. This unlucky opinion has introduced, at one time, a practice the most reprehensibly simple ; as fomentations to soften these joinings of the pelvis in circumstances which require very speedy help ; while, at another time, it has been the apology for the most cruel, unnatural operations of instruments, not merely intended for dilating and opening the soft parts, but for bursting up these joinings of the bones. And those also, of late years, who have invented and per-

formed (too often, no doubt) this operation of cutting the symphysis pubis to hasten the labour, say, that they do not perform an unnecessary cruel operation, but merely imitate a common process of nature.

How very far nature is from intending this, may be easily known from the very forms of these joinings, but much more from the other offices which these bones have to perform ; for if the pelvis be, as I have defined it, an arch standing betwixt the trunk and the lower extremities, on which the body rolls, its joinings could not part without pain and lameness, perhaps inability for life.

One chief reason drawn from anatomy is this : that in women dying after labour, the gristles of the pelvis are manifestly softened ; the bones loosen ; and though they cannot be pulled asunder, they can be shuffled or moved upon each other in a slight degree : all which is easily accounted for. The gristle that forms the symphysis pubis is not one gristle only, as was once supposed, but a peculiar gristle covers the end of each bone, and these are joined by a membranous or ligamentous substance : this ligamentous substance is the part which corrupts the soonest ; it is often spoiled, and in the place of it a hollow only is found ; that hollow of the corrupted ligament may be called a separation of the bones ; but it is such a separation as “equals only the back of a common knife in breadth, “and will not allow the bones to depart from each other ;” the joining is still strong, for it is surrounded by a capsular ligament, not like the loose ligament of a moveable joint, but adhering to every point of each bone : and this ligament does perform its office so completely, that while it remains entire, though the bones shuffle sidewise upon each other, no force can pull them asunder : “Even when the fore part of the pelvis “is cut out, and turned and twisted betwixt the hands, still, “though the bones can be bent backwards and forwards, they “cannot be pulled from each other the tenth part of an inch.” These inquiries were made by one, who, though partial to the other side of this question, could not allow himself to disguise the truth, whose authority is the highest, and by whose facts I should most willingly abide.

Now, it is plain, that since a separation, amounting only to the 12th of an inch, occasions death, this cannot be a provision of nature ; and since the separation in such degree could not enlarge the openings of the basin, there again it cannot be a provision of nature. I know that tales are not wanting of women whose bones were separated during labour ; but what is there so absurd, that we shall not find a precedent or parallel case in our annals of monstrous and incredible facts ? Or

rather, where is there a fact of this description which is not balanced and opposed by opposite authorities and facts? I have dissected several women who had died in lingering labour, where I found no disunion of the bones. I have seen women opened, after the greatest violence with instruments, and yet found no separation of the bones. We have cases of women having the mollities ossium, a universal softness and bending of the bones, who have lived in this condition for many years, with the pelvis also affected; its openings gradually more and more abridged; the miserable woman suffering lingering labour, and undergoing the delivery by hooks, with all the violence that must be used in such desperate cases, and still no separation of the bones happening. How, indeed, should there be such difficult labours as these, if the separation of the bones could allow the child to pass?

If it be said, "the joinings of the pelvis are sometimes dissolved," I acknowledge that they are, just as the joint of the thigh is dissolved; that is, sometimes by violence, and sometimes by internal disease; but if it be affirmed, that "the joinings of the pelvis are dissolved to facilitate labour," I would observe, that wherever separation of the bones has happened, it has both increased the difficulties of the labour, and been in itself a very terrible disease; for proofs of which, I must refer to Hunter, Denman, and others, to whose peculiar province such cases belong. But surely these principles will be universally acknowledged: that the pelvis supporting the trunk is the centre of its largest motions: that if the bones of the pelvis were loosened, such motions could no longer be performed: that when, by violence or by internal disease, or in the time of severe labour, these joinings have actually been dissolved or burst, the woman has become instantly lame, unable to sit, stand, or lie, or support herself in any degree; she is rendered incapable of turning, or even of being turned in bed; her attendants cannot even move her legs, without intolerable anguish, as if torn asunder.\* There sometimes follows a collection of matter within the joint (the matter extending quite down to the tuber ischii,) high fever, delirium, and death;† or in case of recovery (which is indeed more frequent,) the recovery is slow and partial only; a degree of lameness remains, with pain, weakness, and languid health; they can stand on one leg more easily than on both; they can walk more easily than they can stand; but it is many months before they can walk without crutches; and long after they

\* Denman.

† Hunter.



come to walk upon even ground, climbing a stair continues to be very difficult and painful. In order to obtain even this slow re-union of the bones, the pelvis must be bound up with a circular bandage very tight; and they must submit to be confined long: by neglect of which precautions, sometimes, by the rubbing of the bones, a preternatural joint is formed, and they continue lame for years, or for life;\* or sometimes the bones are united by ossification; the callus or new bone projects towards the centre of the pelvis, and makes it impossible for the woman to be delivered again of a living child.†

Now this history of the disease leads to reasons independent of anatomy, and surer than it; which prove, that this separation of the bones (an accident the existence of which cannot be questioned) is not a provision of nature, but a most serious disease. For if these be the dreadful consequences of separation of the bones, how can we believe that it happens, when we see women walking during all their labour, and, in place of being pained, rather relieved by a variety of postures, and by walking about their room? when we see them often walk to bed after being delivered on chairs or couches? rise up on the third day; and often resume the care and fatigues of a family in a few days more? or can we believe, that there is a tendency to separation of the bones in those who, following the camp, are delivered on one day, and walk on the following? or in those women who, to conceal their shame, have not indulged in bed a single hour? or can we believe, that there is even the slightest tendency to the separation of the bones in those women whose pelvis resists the force of a lingering and severe labour; who suffer still further all the violence of instruments; who yet recover as from a natural delivery, and who also rise from bed on the third or fourth day?

\* Denman says twenty-five or thirty years.

† Spence's cases.



## CHAP. VI.

## BONES OF THE THIGH, LEG, AND FOOT.

**T**HE THIGH-BONE is the greatest bone of the body, and needs to be so, supporting alone, and in the most unfavourable direction, the whole weight of the trunk ; for though the body of this bone is in a line with the trunk, in the axis of the body, its neck stands off almost at right angles with the body of the bone ; and in this unfavourable direction must it carry the whole weight of the trunk ; for the body is seldom so placed as to rest its weight equally upon either thigh-bone ; commonly it is so inclined from side to side alternately, that the neck of one thigh-bone bears alone the whole weight of the body and limbs, or is still loaded with greater burdens than the mere weight of the body itself.

The thigh-bone is one of the most regular of the cylindrical bones. 1. Its BODY is very thick and strong ; of a rounded form ; swelling out at either end into two heads. In its middle it bends a little outwards, with its circle or convex side turned towards the forepart of the thigh. This bending of the thigh-bone has been a subject of speculation abundantly ridiculous, viz. whether this be an accidental or a natural arch. There are authors who have ascribed it to the nurse carrying the child by the thighs, and its soft bones bending under the weight. There is another author, very justly celebrated, who imputes it to the weight of the body and the stronger action of the flexor muscles ; affirming, that it is straight in the child, and grows convex by age. This could not be, else we should find this curve less in some, and greatest in those who had walked most, or whose muscles had the greatest strength ; and if the muscles did produce this curve, a little accident giving the balance to the flexor muscles should put the thigh-bone in their power to bend it in any degree, and to cause distortion. But the end of all such speculations is this, that we find it bended in the fœtus not yet delivered from the mother's womb, or in a chicken while still enclosed in the shell ; it is a uniform and regular bending, designed and marked in the very first formation of the bone, and intended, perhaps, for the advantage of the strong muscles in the back of the thigh, to give them greater power, or more room.

2. The HEAD of the thigh-bone is likewise the most perfect of any in the human body ; for its circumference is a very re-

gular circle, of which the head contains nearly two-thirds : it is small, neat, and completely received into its socket, which is not only deep itself, and very secure, but is further deepened by the cartilage which borders it ; so that this is naturally, and without the help of ligaments, the strongest joint in all the body ; but among other securities which are superadded, is the round ligament, the mark of which is easily seen, being a broad dimple in the centre of its head.

3. The **NECK** of this bone is the truest in the skeleton ; and indeed it is from this neck of the thigh-bone that we transfer the name to other bones, which have hardly any other mark of neck than that which is made by their purse-like ligament being fixed behind the head of the bone, and leaving a roughness there. But the neck of the thigh-bone is an inch and a half in length, thick and strong, yet hardly proportioned to the great weights which it has to bear ; long, that it may allow the head to be set deeper in its socket ; and standing wide up from the shoulder of the bone, to keep its motions wide and free, and unembarrassed by the pelvis ; for without this great length of the neck, its motions had been checked even by the edges of its own socket.

The **TROCHANTER** are the longest processes in the human body for the attachment of muscles, and they are named trochanter (or processes for turning the thigh) from their office, which is the receiving of those great muscles which not only bend and extend the thigh, but turn it upon its axis ; for these processes are oblique, so as to bend and turn the thigh at once.

4. The **TROCHANTER MAJOR**, the outermost and longer of the two, is that great bump which represents the direct end of the thigh-bone, while the neck stands off from it at one side ; therefore the great trochanter stands above the neck, and is easily distinguished outwardly, being that great bump which we feel so plainly in laying the hand upon the haunch. This process receives the *glutæi* muscles, and all the great muscles which move the thigh outwards.

5. The **TROCHANTER MINOR**, or lesser trochanter, is smaller and more pointed ; rising on the inner side of the bone ; lower than the trochanter major, and placed under the root of the neck, as the greater one is placed above it. It is deeper in the thigh, and never to be felt, not even in luxations. Its muscles also, by the obliquity of their insertion into it, turn the thigh, and bend it towards the body ; such as the *psoas* and *iliacus internus*, which passing out from the pelvis, sink deep into the groin, and are implanted into this point. From the one trochanter to the other, there is a very conspicuous roughness,

which marks the place of the capsule or ligamentary bag of the joint ; for it encloses the whole length of the neck and of the thigh-bone. This roughness begins the great rough line, and is what is regularly named the *linea aspera*.

6. The *LINEA ASPERA* is a rising or prominent line, very ragged and unequal, which runs all down the back part of the thigh : it begins at the roots of the two trochanters, and the rough lines from each trochanter meet about four inches down the bone ; thence the *linea aspera* runs down the back of the bone a single line, and forks again into two lines, one going towards each condyle, and ending in the tubercles at the lower end of the bone ; so that the *linea aspera* is single in the middle, and forked at either end.

7. The *CONDYLES* are the two tubers into which the thigh-bone swells out at its lower part. There is first a gentle and gradual swelling of the bone ; then an enlargement into two broad and flat surfaces, which are to unite with the next bone in forming the great joint of the knee. The two tuberosities, which, by their flat faces, form the joint, swell out above the joint, and are called the *CONDYLES*. The *INNER CONDYLE* is larger, to compensate for the oblique position of the thigh-bone ; for the bones are separated at their heads by the whole width of the pelvis, but are drawn towards a point below, so as to touch each other at the knees. On the fore part of the bone, betwixt the condyles, there is a broad, smooth surface, upon which the rotula, or pulley-like bone glides ; and on the back part of the thigh-bone, in the middle betwixt the condyles, there is a deep notch, which contains the great artery, vein, and nerve of the leg.

The great nutritious artery enters below the middle of this bone, and smaller arteries enter through its porous extremities : as may be known by many small holes near the head of the bone.

The *HEAD* of the thigh-bone is round, and set down deeply in its socket, to give greater security to a joint so important, and so much exposed as the hip is. The *NECK* stands off from the rest of the bone, so that by its length, it allows a free play to the joint, but is itself much exposed by its transverse position, as if nature had not formed in the human body any joint at once free, moving and strong. The neck is not formed in the boy, because the socket is not yet deep, nor such as to hinder the motions of the thigh ; and the head is formed apart from the bone, and is not firmly united with it till adult years, so that falls luxate or separate the head in young people, but they break the neck of the bone in those that are advanced in years. The *TROCHANTERS*, or shoulders, are large to receive

the great muscles which are implanted in them, and oblique, that they may at once bend and turn the thigh. The **SHAFT** or **BODY** is very strong, that it may bear our whole weight, and the action of such powerful muscles; and it is marked with the rough line behind, from which a mass of flesh takes its rise, which wraps completely round the lower part of the thigh-bone, and forms what are called the vasti muscles, the greatest muscles for extending the leg. The **CONDYLES** swell out to give a broad surface, and a firm joining for the knee. But of all its parts, the great trochanter should be most particularly observed, as it is the chief mark in luxations or fractures of this bone: for when the greater trochanter is pushed downwards, we find the thigh luxated downwards; when the trochanter is higher than its true place, and so fixed that it cannot roll, we are assured that it is luxated upwards; but when the trochanter is higher than its true place, with the thigh rolling freely, we are assured its neck is broken, the trochanter being displaced, and the broken head remaining in its socket; but when the trochanter remains in its place, we should conclude that the joint is but little injured, or that it is only a bruise of those glands or mucous follicles which are lodged within the socket for lubricating the joint.

The **TIBIA** is named from its resemblance to a pipe; the upper part of the tibia, representing the expanded or trumpet-like end, the lower part representing the flute end of the pipe. The tibia, on its upper end, is flat and broad, making a most singular articulation with the thigh-bone; for it is not a ball and socket like the shoulder or hip, nor a hinge joint guarded on either side with projecting points like the ankle. There is no security for the knee joint by the form of its bones, for they have plain flat heads: they are broad indeed, but they are merely laid upon each other. It is only by its ligaments that this joint is strong; and by the number of its ligaments it is a complex and delicate joint, peculiarly liable to disease.

1. The **UPPER HEAD** of the tibia is thick and spongy, and we find there two broad and superficial hollows, as if impressed while soft, with the marks of the condyles of the thigh-bone; and these slight hollows are all the cavity that it has for receiving the thigh-bone. A pretty high ridge rises betwixt these two hollows, so as to be received into the interstice betwixt the condyles; and at the back part, which is the highest point of the ridge, an internal ligament ties the tibia to the thigh-bone. This spongy head has also a rough margin, to which the capsular ligament is tied; on the fore part of this bone, just below the knee, there is a bump for receiving the



great ligament of the patella, or, in other words, the great tendon of all the extensor muscles of the leg ; and lastly, there is upon the outer side of this spongy head, just under the margin of the joint, a smooth articulating surface, (like a dimple impressed with the finger,) for receiving the head of the fibula. It is under the margin of the joint, for the fibula does not enter at all into the knee joint ; it is only laid upon the side of the tibia, fixed to it by ligaments, but not received into any thing like a cavity.

2. The BODY of the bone is of a prismatic or triangular form, and its three edges or acute angles are very high lines running along its whole length ; one line a little waved, and turned directly forwards, is what is called the shin. At the top of this ridge is that bump into which the ligament of the rotula or patella is implanted ; and the whole length of this acute line is so easily traced through the skin, that we can never be mistaken about fractures of this bone. Another line less acute than this is turned directly backwards ; and the third acute line, which completes the triangular form, is turned towards the fibula, to receive a broad ligament, or interosseous membrane, which ties the two bones together.

3. The lower head of the tibia composes the chief parts of the ankle-joint. The lower head of the tibia is smaller than the upper, in the same proportion that the ankle is smaller than the knee. The pointed part of this head of the tibia represents the mouth-piece, or flute part of the pipe, and constitutes the bump of the INNER ANKLE. The lower end of the fibula lies so upon the lower end of the tibia, as to form the outer ankle ; and there is on the side of the tibia a deep hollow, like an impression made with the point of the thumb, which receives the lower end of the fibula. The acute point of the tibia, named the process of the inner ankle, passes beyond the bone of the foot, and by lying upon the side of the joint, guards the ankle, so that it cannot be luxated outwards, without this pointed process of the maleolus internus, or inner ankle, being broken.

The tibia is a bone of great size, and needs to be so, for it supports the whole weight of the body. It is not at all assisted by the fibula in bearing the weight, the fibula, or slender bone, being merely laid upon the side of the tibia, for uses which shall be explained presently. The tibia is thick, with much cancelli or spongy substance within ; has pretty firm plates without ; is much strengthened by its ridges, and by its triangular form : its ridges are regular with regard to each other, but the whole bone is twisted as if it had been turned betwixt the hands when soft : this distortion makes the process of the inner ankle lie not regularly upon the side of that joint, but



a little obliquely forwards, determining the obliquity of the foot; which must be of much consequence, since there are many provisions for securing this turning of the foot, viz. the oblique position of the trochanters; the oblique insertion of all the muscles, and this obliquity of the ankles; the inner ankle advancing a little before the joint, and the outer ankle receding in the same degree behind it.

The FIBULA, which is named so from its resemblance to the Roman clasp, is a long, slender bone, which is useful partly in strengthening the leg, but chiefly in forming the ankle joint; for the tibia only is connected with the knee, while the fibula, which has no place in the knee joint, goes down below the lower end of the tibia, forming the long process of the outer ankle.

The fibula is a long and slender bone, the longest and slenderest in the body. It lies by the side of the tibia like a splint; so that when at any time the tibia is broken without the fibula, or when the tibia having spoiled, becomes carious, and a piece of it is lost, the fibula maintains the form of the limb till the last piece be replaced, or till the fracture be firmly reunited. It is, like the tibia, triangular, and has two heads, which are knots, very large, and disproportioned to so slender a bone. The sharpest line of the fibula is turned to one sharp line of the tibia, and the interosseous membrane passes betwixt them. The bone lies in a line with the tibia, on the outer side of it, and a little behind it. The upper head of the fibula is laid upon a plain, smooth surface, on the side of the tibia, a little below the knee; and though the fibula is not received deep into the tibia, this want is compensated for by the strong ligaments by which this little joint is tied by the knee, being completely wrapped round with the expanded tendons of those great muscles which make up the thigh, by the knee being still farther embraced closely by the fascia, or tendinous expansion of the thigh; but above all, by the tendons of the outer hamstrings being fixed into this knot of the fibula, and expanding from that over the fore part of the tibia.

The lower head of the fibula is let pretty deep into a socket on the side of the tibia; together, they form the ankle joint for receiving the bones of the foot. The ankle joint is one of the purest hinge joints, and is very secure; for there is the tibia, at the process of the inner ankle, guarding the joint within; there is the fibula passing the joint still further, and making the outer ankle still a stronger guard without. These two points, projecting so as to enclose the bones of the foot, make a pure hinge; prevent all lateral motion; make the joint firm and strong; and will not allow of luxations till one

or both ankles be broken. We know that there is little motion betwixt the tibia and fibula ; none that is sensible outwardly, and no more in truth than just to give a sort of elasticity, yielding to slighter strains. But we are well assured, that this motion, though slightest and imperceptible, is very constant ; for these jointings of the fibula with the tibia are always found smooth and lubricated ; and there are no two bones in the body so closely connected as the tibia and fibula are, which are so seldom anchylosed, *i. e.* joined into one by disease.

The fibula may be thus defined : it is a long slender bone, which answers to the double bone of the fore arm, completes the form, and adds somewhat to the strength of the leg : it gives a broader origin for its strong muscles ; lies by the side of the tibia like a splint ; and, being a little arched towards the tibia, supports it against those accidents which would break it across, and maintains the form of the leg when the tibia is carious or broken ; the fibula, though it has little connection with the knee, passes beyond the ankle joint, and is its chief guard and strength in that direction in which the joint should be most apt to yield ; and in this office of guarding the ankle, it is so true, that the ankle cannot yield till this guard of the fibula be broken.

ROTULA or PATELLA, or KNEE-PAN, is a small thick bone, of an oval, or rather triangular form. The basis of this rounded triangle is turned upwards to receive the four great muscles which extend the leg, the pointed part of this triangle is turned downwards, and is tied by a very strong ligament to the bump or tubercle of the tibia, just under the knee. This ligament is called the ligament of the patella, or of the tibia, connecting the patella so closely, that some anatomists of the first name choose to speak of the patella as a mere process of the tibia, (as the olecranon is a process of the ulna), only flexible and loose ; an arrangement which I think so far right and useful, as the fractures of the olecranon and of the patella are so much alike, especially in the method of cure, that they may be spoken of as one case ; for these two are the only exceptions to the common rules and methods of setting broken bones.

The patella is manifestly useful, chiefly as a lever ; for it is a pully, which is a species of lever, gliding upon the forepart of the thigh-bone upon the smooth surface which is betwixt the condyles. The projection of this bone upon the knee removes the acting force from the centre of motion, so as to increase the power ; and it is beautifully contrived, that while the knee is bent, and the muscles at rest, as in sitting, the patella sinks down concealed into a hollow of the knee. When the muscles begin to act, the patella begins to rise from this hollow ; in

proportion as they contract, they lose their strength, but the patella gradually rising, increases the power; and when the contraction is nearly perfect, the patella has risen to the summit of the knee, so that the rising of the patella raises the mechanical power of the joint in exact proportion as the contraction expands the living contractible power of the muscles. What is curious beyond almost any other fact concerning the fractures of bones, the patella is seldom broken by a fall or blow; in nine of ten cases, it is rather torn, if we may use the expression, by the force of its own muscles, while it stands upon the top of the knee, so as to rest upon one single point; for while the knee is half-bended, and the patella in this dangerous situation, the leg fixed, and the muscles contracting strongly to support the weight of the body, or to raise it as in mounting the steps of a stair, the force of the muscles is equivalent at least to the weight of the man's body; and often, by a sudden violent exertion, their power is so much increased, that they snap the patella across, as we would break a stick across the knee.

The TARSUS, or INSTEP, is composed of seven large bones, which form a firm and elastic arch for supporting the body; which arch has its strength from the strong ligaments with which these bones are joined, and its elasticity from the small movements of these bones with each other; for each bone and each joint has its cartilage, its capsule or bag, its lubricating fluid, and all the apparatus of a regular joint; each moves, since the cartilages are always lubricated, and the bones are never joined by ankylosis with each other; but the effect is rather a diffused elasticity, than a marked and perceptible motion in any one joint.

The seven bones of which the tarsus is composed are, 1. The ASTRAGALUS, which, united with the tibia and fibula, forms the ankle joint: 2. The OS CALCIS, or heel bone, which forms the end or back point of that arch upon which the body stands: 3. The OS NAVICULARE, or boat-like bone, which joins three smaller bones of the forepart of the tarsus to the astragalus: 4. The OS CUBOIDES, which joins the smaller bones of the forepart to the os calcis: The 5th, 6th, and 7th, are the smaller bones making the forepart of the tarsus; they lie immediately under the place of the shoe-buckle, and are named the three CUNEIFORM BONES, from their wedge-like shape; and it is upon these that the metatarsal bones, forming the next division of the foot are implanted.

These bones of the tarsus form, along with the next rank or metatarsal bones, a double arch; first from the lowest point of the heel to the ball of the great toe, is one arch; the arch of

the sole of the foot which supports the body : and again, there is another arch within this, formed among the tarsal bones themselves, one within another, *i. e.* betwixt the astragalus, calcis, and naviculare ; through which hole, in my drawing, there is passed a pencil. It is this second arch which gives a perfect elasticity to the foot, and must prevent the bad effects of leaping, falls, and other shocks, which would have broken a part less curiously adapted to its office.

1. The **ASTRAGALUS** is the greatest and most remarkable bone of the tarsus ; and which the surgeon is most concerned in knowing. The semicircular head of this bone forms a curious and perfect pulley. The circle of this pulley is large ; its cartilage is smooth and lubricated ; it is received deep betwixt the tibia and fibula ; and rolls under the smooth articular surface of the latter, which being suited to this pulley of the astragalus, with something of a boat-like shape, is often named the scaphoid cavity of the tibia. 1. We remark in the astragalus its articulating surface, which is arched, high, smooth, covered with cartilage, lubricated, and in all respects a complete joint. Its form is that of a pulley, which, of course, admits of but one direct motion, *viz.* forwards and backwards. 2. We observe its sides, which are plain, smooth, and flat, covered with the same cartilage, forming a part of the joint, and closely locked in by the inner and outer ankles, so as to prevent luxations or awkward motions to either side. 3. We observe two large irregular articulating surfaces backwards, by which it is joined to the *os calcis*. 4. There is on the fore-part, or rather the fore end of the astragalus, a large round head, as regular as the head of the shoulder bone, by which it is articulated with the scaphoid bone.

2. The *os CALCIS* is the large irregular bone of the heel ; it is the tip or end of the arch formed by the tarsal and metatarsal bones. There is a large scabrous point on which we stand ; which is rough, for the insertion of the great *Achillis* tendon, the rope by which the muscles of the bran act. The roughness of the heel-bone gives the tendon a firm hold, and its projection backwards gives it the power of a very long lever. The points to be observed are, 1. The great backward projection, which is properly called the heel ; scabrous and rough, for the insertion of the great back tendon ; the point upon which we walk and stand. 2. An irregular articular surface, or rather two surfaces covered with cartilage, by which it is joined with the astragalus. 3. Another articulating surface by which it is joined with the *os cuboides*. And, 4. A sort of arch downwards, under which the vessels and nerves and the tendons also pass on safely into the sole of the foot.



3. NAVICULARE is named OS NAVICULARE, or OS SCAPHOIDES, from a fanciful resemblance to a boat. But this is a name of which anatomists have been peculiarly fond, and which they have used with very little discretion or reserve ; the student will hardly find any such resemblance ; it is rather like the dies with which we play at drafts ; that is, a flattened circular body, with its borders rising up a little ; and each flat side forms an articulating surface. That concave side which looks backwards, is pretty deep, and receives the head of the astragalus : that flat side which looks forwards, has not so deep a socket, but receives the three cuneiform bones upon a surface rather plain and irregular.

The CUNEIFORM BONES are so named, because they resemble wedges, being laid to each other like the stones of an arch. The most simple and proper arrangement is, 1. 2. and 3. ; counting from the side of the great toe towards the middle of the foot ; but they are commonly named thus : the first cuneiform bone on which the great toe stands, has its cutting edge turned upwards ; is much larger than the others, and so is called OS CUNEIFORME MAGNUM. The second cuneiform bone, or that which stands the middle of the three cuneiform bones, is much smaller, and is therefore named OS CUNEIFORME MINIMUM. The third in order of the cuneiform bones is named OS CUNEIFORME MEDIUM\* : These cuneiform bones receive the great toe, and the two next to it. The fourth and fifth toes are implanted upon the last bone in the row, the os cuboides.

OS CUBOIDES.—The os cuboides is named from its cubical figure ; and is next to the astragalus in size ; greater than the scaphoid bone. The three cuneiform bones are laid regularly by the side of each other ; and this os cuboides is again laid on the outer side of the third cuneiform bone, and joins it to the os calcis. The place and effect of the cuboid bone is very curious ; for as it is wedged in betwixt the third cuneiform bone and the os calcis, it forms a complete arch within an arch, which gives at once a degree of elasticity and of strength which no human contrivance could have equalled. There is first a great arch on which the body rests, and the heel and the

\* The confusion in these names arises from sometimes counting them by their place, and sometimes reckoning according to their size. It is only in relation to its size that we call one of these bones os cuneiforme medium ; for the os cuneiforme medium is not in the middle of the three ; it is the middle bone with respect to size ; it is the smallest of the cuneiform bones that stands in the middle betwixt the other two.



great toe are the horns of that bow : and, secondly, there is a complete circle among the metatarsal bones, leaving an opening betwixt the astragalus and the os calcis.

**THE TOES.**—The last division of the foot consists of three distinct bones ; and as these bones are disposed in rows, they are named the first, second and third phalanges or ranks of the toes.

The great toe has but two phalanges ; the other toes have three ranks of bones, which have nothing particular, only the joints are round and free ; formed by a round head on one bone, and by a pretty deep hollow for receiving it, in the one above it ; they are a little flattened on their lower side, or rather they have a flattened groove which lodges the tendons of the last joint of the toes.

The **SESAMOID BONES** are more regularly found about the toes than any where else. They are small bones, like peas, found in the hearts of tendons, at any point where they suffer much friction ; or rather they are like the seeds of the sesamum, whence their name. They are found chiefly at the roots of the great toe, and of the thumb ; at each of these places we find two small sesamoid bones, one on each side of the ball of the great toe, and one on each side of the ball of the thumb ; but these bones do not enter into the joint ; they are within the substance of the tendons ; perhaps, like the patella, they remove the acting force from the centre of motion ; and so, by acting like pulleys, increase the power ; perhaps also by lying at the sides of the joint in the tendons of the shorter muscles of the toes, they make a safe gutter for the long tendons to pass in. They are not restricted to the balls of the great toe and thumb, but sometimes are also found under the other toes and fingers, and sometimes behind the condyles of the knee ; or in the peronæi tendons, which run under the sole of the foot. In short, they are so far from being regular bones, that they are found only in adults, and are so often found in irregular places, that they almost seem to be produced by chance, or by the effect of friction.

**METATARSUS.**—The metatarsus, so named from its being placed upon the tarsus, consists of five bones, which differ so little from the first bones of the fingers, that they need not be minutely demonstrated. It is sufficient to mark, that they are five in number, having a general resemblance to the joints of the finger ; that they are rather flattened, especially on their lower sides, where the tendons of the toes lie ; that they are very large at their ends next the tarsus, where they have broad flat heads, that they may be implanted with great security ; that

they grow smaller towards the toes, where again they terminate in neat, small, round heads, which receive the first bones of the toes, and permit of a very free and easy motion, and a greater degree of rotation than our dress allows us to avail ourselves of; the toes being cramped together, in a degree that fixes them all in their places, huddles one above another, and is quite the reverse of that free and strong-like spreading of the toes, which the painter always represents. Lastly, it should be remarked, that the metatarsal bone of the little toe makes a salient angle, projecting over the tarsus, in a point which is easily felt outwardly, at the place where the side seam of the shoe crosses: for this and all the other marks of the metatarsal bones are chiefly useful, as directing us where to cut in amputating these bones; and the surgeon will save the patient much pain, and himself the shame of a slow and confused operation, by marking the places of the joints.



## CHAP. VII.

### BONES OF THE SHOULDER, ARM AND HAND.



#### OF THE SCAPULA, OR SHOULDER-BLADE.

**T**HIS is the great peculiarity of the superior extremity, that it is connected not directly with the trunk, like the thigh-bone with the haunch, but is hung by a moveable intermediate bone; which not only is not immediately joined to the trunk by ligaments, or any other form of connection, but is parted from it by several layers of muscular flesh, so that it lies flat, and glides upon the trunk.

The SCAPULA is a thin bone; which has originally, like the skull, two tables, and an intermediate diploë; but by pressure, and the action of its own muscles, it grows gradually thinner; its tables are more and more condensed; till in old age it has become perfectly transparent, and is supported only by its processes, and by its thicker edges. For its SPINE is a ridge of firm and strong bone, which rises very high, and gives a broad origin and support for its muscles: the ACROMION in which the spine terminates, is a broad and flat process, a sure guard for

the joint of the shoulder: the CORACOID process is a strong but shorter process, which stands out from the neck of the bone; and the COSTA, or borders of the bone are also rounded, firm and strong: so that the processes and borders support the flat part of the bone, which is as thin as a sheet of paper, and quite transparent.

There is no part nor process of the scapula which does not require to be very carefully marked; for no accidents are more frequent than luxations of the shoulder; and the various luxations are explained best by studying in the skeleton, and being able to recognize on the living body all the processes and projecting points.

1. The FLAT SIDE of the scapula is smooth, somewhat concave, and suited to the convexity of the ribs. The scapula connected with no bone of the trunk; tied by no ligaments; is merely laid upon the chest, with a large mass of muscular flesh under it, upon which it glides; for there are below it two layers of muscles, by one of which the shoulder bone is moved upon the scapula, while by the other the scapula itself is moved upon the ribs. The muscle lying in the hollow of the scapula marks it with many smooth hollows and wave-like risings, which are merely the marks of the origin of its muscles, but which were mistaken even by the great Vesalius for the impressions of the ribs.

2. The outer flat surface is like the inner one, but that it is traversed by the SPINE, which is a very acute and high ridge of bone. Now the spine, thus traversing the bone from behind forwards, divides its outer surface into two unequal parts, of which the part above the spine is smaller, and that below the spine larger. Each of these spaces has its name, one supra spinatus, and the other infra spinatus; and each of them lodges a muscle, named, the one the musculus supra-spinatus scapulæ, as being above the spine; the other, musculus infra-spinatus scapulæ, as being below the spine. A third muscle is named sub-scapularis, as lying under the shoulder-blade, upon that concave surface which is towards the ribs; so that the whole scapula is covered with broad flat muscles, whose offices are to move the shoulder-bone in various directions, and which impress the scapula with gentle risings and hollows on its outer as well as on its inner surface.

3. The TRIANGULAR form of the scapula must be next observed. The upper line of the triangle is the shortest; it is named the COSTA or border. This superior costa of the scapula receives those strong and flat muscles that raise the shoulder upwards. The lower border, which is named the COSTA INFERIOR, or the lower border of the scapula, receives

no muscles, because it must be quite free, to move and glide as the scapula turns upon its axis, which is indeed its ordinary movement. But it gives rise to two smaller muscles, which, from being a little rounded, are named the *musculi teres*; which round muscles being implanted into the arm bone, pull it downwards.

The long side of the scapula, which bounds its triangular form backwards, is named the *BASIS* of the *SCAPULA*, as it represents the base of the triangle. This line is also like the two borders, a little thicker, or swelled out; and this edge receives many powerful muscles, which lie flat upon the back, and coming to the scapula in a variety of directions, can turn it upon its axis, sometimes raising, sometimes depressing the scapula; sometimes drawing it backwards; and sometimes fixing it in its place, according to the various sets of fibres which are put into action.

4. The *GLENOID*, or *ARTICULATING CAVITY* of the scapula, is on the point or apex of this triangle. The scapula is more strictly triangular in a child, for it terminates almost in a point or apex; and this articulating surface is a separate ossification, and is joined to it in the adult. The scapula towards this point terminates in a flat surface, not more than an inch in diameter, very little hollowed, and scarcely receiving the head of the shoulder bone, which is rather laid upon it than sunk into it; it is indeed deepened a little by a circular gristle, which tips the edges or lips of this articulating surface, but so little, that it is still very shallow and plain, and luxations of the shoulder are infinitely more frequent than of any other bone.

5. This head, or *glenoid cavity* of the scapula, is planted upon a narrower part, which tends towards a point, but is finished by this flat head; this narrower part is what is named the *NECK* of the *SCAPULA*, which no doubt sometimes gives way, and breaks. A rough line bordering the *glenoid cavity* receives the capsular ligament, or rather the capsule arises from that bordering gristle, which I have said tips the circle.

6. The *SPINE* of the *SCAPULA* is that high ridge of bone, which runs the whole length of its upper surface, and divides it into two spaces for the origin of *supra* and *infra spinatus* muscles. It is high, and very sharp, standing up at one place to the height of two inches. It is flattened upon the top, and with edges, which turning a little towards either side, give rise to two strong fasciæ, *i. e.* tendinous membranes; which go from the spine, the one upwards to the upper border of the scapula, the other downwards to the lower border; so that by these strong membranes the scapula is formed into two trian-



gular cavities, and the supra and infra spinatus muscles rise not only from the back of the scapula, and from the sides of its spine, but also from the inner surface of this tense membrane. The spine traverses the whole dorsum, or back of the scapula ; it receives the trapezius muscle, that beautiful triangular muscle which covers the neck like a tippet, whence it has its name ; and the spine beginning low at the basis of the scapula, gradually rises as it advances forwards, till it terminates in that high point or promontory which forms the tip of the shoulder, and overhangs and defends the joint.

7. This high point is named the **ACROMION PROCESS**. It is the continuation and ending of the spine, which at first rises perpendicularly from the bone, but by a sort of turn or distortion it lays its flat side towards the head of the shoulder-bone. At this place, it is thickened, flat and strong ; overhangs and defends the joint ; and is not merely a defence, but almost makes a part of the joint itself ; for without this process, the shoulder-bone could not remain a moment in its socket ; every slight accident would displace it. The acromion prevents luxation upwards, and is so far a part of the joint, that when it is full under the acromion, the joint is safe ; but when we feel a hollow, so that we can push the points of the fingers under the acromion process, the shoulder is luxated, and the socket empty. The point of the acromion, forming the apex of the shoulder, a greater projection of this point, and a fullness of the deltoid muscle which arises from it, is a chief cause, and of course a chief mark, of superior strength.

8. But there is still another security for the joint ; for there arises from the neck of the scapula, almost from the border of the socket, and its inner side, a thick, short, and crooked process, which stands directly forwards, and is very conspicuous ; and which turning forwards with a crooked and sharp point, somewhat like the beak of a crow, is thence named the **CORACOID PROCESS**. This also guards and strengthens the joint ; though it cannot altogether prevent luxations, it makes them less frequent ; and most probably when the arm is luxated inwards, it is by starting over the point of this defending process. A muscle named coracoid, comes down from the joint of this process, and is inserted into the middle of the shoulder-bone, to draw the arm towards the side.

Now the glenoid surface, and these two processes, form the cavity for receiving the shoulder-bone. But still as if nature could not form a joint at once strong and free, this joint, which performs quick, free, and easy motions, is too superficial to be strong. Yet there is this compensation, that the shoulder-joint, which could not resist, if fairly exposed to



shocks and falls, belongs to the scapula, which, sliding easily upon the ribs, yields, and so eludes the force. Falls upon the shoulder do not dislocate the shoulder ; that accident almost always happens to us in putting out the hand to save ourselves from falls ; and the shoulder is luxated by a twisting of the arm, not by the force of a direct blow.

The **CLAVICLE**.—The clavicle, or collar bone, named clavicle from its resemblance to an old fashioned key, is to the scapula a kind of hinge or axis on which it moves and rolls ; so that the free motion of the shoulder is made still freer by the manner of its connection with the breast.

The clavicle is placed at the root of the neck, and at the upper part of the breast. It extends across from the tip of the shoulder to the upper part of the sternum ; it is a round bone, a little flattened towards the end which joins the scapula ; it is curved like an *Italic S* ; having one curve turned out towards the breast ; it is useful as an arch supporting the shoulders, preventing them from falling forwards upon the breast, and making the hands strong antagonists to each other ; which, without this steadying, they could not have been.

1. The thoracic end, that next the sternum, or what may be called the inner head of the clavicle, is round and flat, or button-like ; and it is received into a suitable hollow on the upper piece of the sternum. It is not only like other joints surrounded by a capsule or purse ; it is further provided with a small moveable cartilage, which (like a friction-wheel in machinery) saves the parts, and facilitates the motion, and moves continually as the clavicle rolls.

2. But the outer end of the clavicle is flattened as it approaches the scapula, and the edge of that flatness is turned to the edge of the flattened acromion, so that they touch but in one single point. This outer end of the clavicle, and the corresponding point of the acromion, are flattened and covered with a crust of cartilage : but the motion here is very slight and quite insensible ; they are tied firmly by strong ligaments ; and we may consider this as almost a fixed point ; for there is little motion of the scapula upon the clavicle ; but there is much motion of the clavicle upon the breast : for the clavicle serves as a shaft or axis, firmly tied to the scapula, upon which the scapula moves and turns, being connected with the trunk only by this single point, viz. the articulation of the clavicle with the breast bone.

The **OS HUMERI** is one of the truest of the cylindrical bones ; it is round in the middle ; but it appears twisted and flattened towards the lower end ; and this flatness makes the elbow-joint

a mere hinge, moving only in one direction. It is again regular and round towards the upper end; dilating into a large round head, where the roundness forms a very free and moveable joint, turning easily in all directions.

1. The HEAD of this bone is very large; it is neat and regularly circular; but it is a very small portion of a large circle, so that it is flat; and this flatness of the head, with the shallowness of its glenoid cavity, makes it a very weak joint, easily displaced, and nothing equal to the hip joint for security and strength.

2. The NECK of this bone cannot fairly be reckoned such; for, as I have explained in speaking of the neck of the thigh-bone, this neck of the humerus and the necks of most bones (the thigh-bone still excepted) are merely a rough line close upon the head of the bone, without any straitening or intermediate narrowness, which we can properly call a neck. The roughness round the head of the shoulder-bone is the line into which the capsular ligament is implanted.

3. The TUBEROSITIES of the os humeri are two small bumps of unequal size, (the one called the greater, the other the smaller, tuberosity of the os humeri,) which stand up at the upper end of the bone, just behind the head: they are not very remarkable. Though much smaller than the trochanter of the thigh-bones, they serve similar uses, viz. receiving the great muscles which move the limb. The GREATER TUBEROSITY is higher towards the outer side of the arm, and receives the supra spinatus muscle; while the infra spinatus and teres minor muscles, which come from the lower part of the scapula, are implanted into the bone a little lower. The LESSER TUBEROSITY has also a great muscle fixed into it, viz. the sub-scapularis muscle.

4. The two tuberosities form betwixt them a groove, which is pretty deep; and in it the long tendon of the biceps muscle of the arm runs; and as it runs continually, like a rope in the groove of a pulley, this groove is covered, in the fresh bones, with a thin cartilage, smooth, and like the cartilages of joints.

The os humeri, at its lower part, changes its form, is flattened and compressed below, and is spread out into a great breadth of two inches or more; where there is formed, on each side, a sharp projecting point, (named condyle,) for the origin of great muscles; and in the middle, betwixt the two condyles, there is a grooved articulating surface, which forms the hinge of the elbow.

1. At the lower end of the bone, there are two ridges, one leading to either condyle, which it is of some consequence to observe; for the elbow-joint is a mere hinge, the most strictly

so of any joint in the body ; it has, of course, but two motions, viz. flexion and extension ; and it has two muscles chiefly, one for extending, the other for bending the arm. The flexor muscle lies on the fore part, and the extensor on the back part of the arm ; and so the whole thickness of the arm is composed, at this place, of these two muscles and of the bone ; but that the fore and back parts of the arm might be thoroughly divided, the bone is flattened betwixt them ; and that the division might extend beyond the mere edges of the bone, there are two fasciæ or tendinous webs which go off from either edge of the humerus, and which continue to divide the fore from the back muscles, giving these muscles a broader origin ; they are named, from their office, intermuscular membranes ; and this is the meaning of the two ridges which lead to the two condyles.

2. The two projections in which these edges end are named **CONDYLES**. The condyles of the thigh-bone are the broad articulating surfaces by which that bone is joined with the tibia ; while the condyles of the shoulder-bone are merely two sharp projecting points for the origin of muscles, which stand out from either side of the joint, but which have no connection with the joint. The chief use of the condyles of the shoulder-bone is to give a favourable origin, and longer fulcrum, for the muscles of the fore arm, which arise from these points. The outer tubercle being the smaller one, gives origin to the extensor muscles, where less strength is required. But the inner tubercle is much longer, to give origin to the flexor muscles with which we grasp ; which require a bolder and more prominent process to arise from ; for greater power is needed to perform such strong actions as grasping, bending, pulling ; while the muscles which extend the fingers need no more power than just to antagonise or oppose the flexors ; their only business being to unfold or open the hand when we are to renew the grasp.

It is further curious to observe, that the inner tubercle is also lower than the other, so that the articulating surface of the elbow-joint is oblique, which makes the hand fall naturally towards the face and breast, so that by being folded merely without any turning of the *os humeri*, the hands are laid across.

3. The articulating surface which stands betwixt these condyles, forms a more strict and limited hinge than can be easily conceived, before we explain the other parts of the joint. The joint consists of two surfaces ; first, a smooth surface, upon which the ulna moves only backwards and forwards ; and, secondly, of a small knob upon the inner tuber-

cle, which has a neat round surface, upon which the face or socket belonging to the button-like end of the radius rolls. These two surfaces are called the small head, and the cartilaginous pulley of the humerus.

4. Belonging to the joint, and within its capsular ligament, there are two deep hollows, which receive certain processes of the bones of the fore arm. One deep hollow on the fore part of the humerus, and just above its articulating pulley, receives the horn-like or coronoid process of the ulna, the other receives the olecranon, or that process of the ulna which forms the point of the elbow.

## RADIUS AND ULNA.

The radius and ulna are the two bones of the fore arm. The radius, named from its resemblance to the ray or spoke of a wheel; the ulna, from its being often used as a measure. The radius belongs more peculiarly to the wrist, being the bone which is chiefly connected with the hand, and which turns along with it in all its rotatory motions: the ulna, again, belongs more strictly to the elbow-joint; for by it we perform all the actions of extending or bending the arm.

The ulna is in general of a triangular or prismatic form, like the tibia, and the elbow is formed by the ulna alone; for there is a very deep notch or hinge-like surface, which seems as if it had been moulded upon the lower end of the humerus, embraces it very closely; and takes so sure a hold upon the humerus, that it allows not the smallest degree of lateral motion, and almost keeps its place in the dry skeleton without the help of ligaments or muscles; it presents, in profile, somewhat of the shape of the letter S, and therefore is named the SIGMOID CAVITY of the ulna. 2. But this sigmoid cavity were a very imperfect hinge without the two processes by which it is guarded before and behind; the chief of these is the OLECRANON or large bump, which forms the extreme point upon which we rest the elbow. It is a big and strong process, which, checking into a deep hollow in the back of the humerus, serves two curious purposes; it serves as a long lever for the muscles which extend or make straight the fore arm; and when by the arm being extended, it checks into its place, it takes so firm a hold upon the hinge or joint of the os humeri, as to secure the joint in pulling, and such other actions as might cause a luxation forwards. 3. The other process which guards the elbow-joint is named the CORONOID PROCESS, from its horn or pointed form; it stands up perpendicularly from the upper or



fore part of the bone ; it forms the fore part of the sigmoid cavity, and completes the hinge. It is useful, like the olecranon, in giving a fair hold and larger lever to the muscles, and in securing the joint ; for the arm being extended, as in pulling, the olecranon checks into its place, and prevents luxation forwards ; and the arm again being bent, as in striking, pushing, or saving ourselves from falls, the coronoid process prevents luxation backwards. So the joint consists of the olecranon and the coronoid process as the two guards ; and of the sigmoid cavity or hollow of articulation betwixt them ; but the smaller or upper head of the radius also enters into the joint, and lying upon the inner side of the coronoid process, it makes a small hollow there, in which it rolls ; and this second hollow, touching the edge of the sigmoid cavity, forms a double sigmoid cavity ; of which the first, or GREATER SIGMOID CAVITY, is for receiving the lower end of the humerus ; and the second, or LESSER SIGMOID CAVITY, for receiving the upper head of the radius. 4. The form of the bone being prismatic or triangular, it has, like the tibia, three ridges ; one of which is turned towards a corresponding ridge in the radius, and betwixt them the interosseous ligament is stretched ; and this interosseous ligament fills all the arch or open space betwixt the radius and ulna, and saves the necessity of much bone ; gives as firm an origin to the muscles as bone could have done, and binds the bones of the fore arm together so strongly, that though the ulna belongs entirely to the elbow-joint, and the radius as entirely to the wrist, they have never been known to depart from each other, nor to yield to any force, however great.\*

5. The ulna, bigger at the elbow, grows gradually smaller downwards, till it terminates almost in a point. It ends below in a small round head, which is named the LOWER HEAD of the ulna, which scarcely enters into the joint of the wrist ; but being received into a hollow on the side of the radius, the radius turns upon the lower head of the ulna, like an axis or spoke.

6. Below this little head, the bone ends towards the side of the little finger in a small rounded point, which is named the STYLOID PROCESS of the ulna, and which is chiefly useful in giving a strong adhesion to the ligament which secures the wrist there. And as the styloid process and the olecranon, the two extremities of the ulna, are easily and distinctly felt,

\* Sometimes the radius is luxated from the lower head of the ulna ; but this diastasis, as it is called, is quite of another kind.



the length of this bone has been used as a measure ; and so it was named cubitus by the ancients, and is named ulna by us.

**RADIUS.** The radius is the second bone of the fore arm, has its position exactly reversed with that of the ulna : for the ulna belonging to the elbow has its greater end upwards ; the radius belonging to the wrist has its greater end downwards ; and while the ulna only bends the arm, the radius carries the wrist with a rotatory motion ; and so entirely belongs to the wrist, that it is called the *manubrium manus*, as if the handle of the hand.

1. The **BODY** of the radius is larger than that of the ulna. The transverse strength of the arm depends more upon the radius, which has more body and thickness ; is more squared ; and is arched, in some degree, so as to stand off from the ulna, without approaching it, or compressing the other parts. The radius lies along the upper edge of the fore arm, next to the thumb, and being, like the ulna, of a prismatic or triangular form, it has one of its angles or edges turned towards the ulna to receive the interosseous ligament.

2. The **UPPER HEAD** of the radius is smaller ; of a round, flattish, and button-like shape, and lies so upon the lower end of the shoulder-bone, and upon the coronoid process of the ulna, that it is articulated with either bone ; for, 1st, The hollow of its head is directly opposed to the little head of the *os humeri* ; and 2dly, The flat side of its button-like head rubs and turns upon the side of the coronoid process of the ulna, making a socket there, which is called the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna.

3. Immediately behind the round flat head, is a narrowness or straitening, called the **NECK** of the radius. Round this neck there is a collar or circular ligament (named the coronary ligament of the radius), which keeps the bone securely in its place, turning in this ligamentous band like a spindle in its bush or socket : for the radius has two motions, one accompanying the ulna in its movements of flexion and extension ; and, secondly, its own peculiar rotation ; in which it is not accompanied in return by the ulna, but the ulna continuing steady, the radius moves, and turns the wrist.

4. Immediately under this neck, and just below the collar of the bone, there is a prominent bump, like a flat button, soldered upon the side of the bone ; which is the point into which the *biceps flexor cubiti*, or bending muscle of the fore arm, is inserted.

5. The upper head is exceedingly small and round, while the **LOWER HEAD** swells out, broad and flat, to receive the bones of the wrist. There are two greater bones in the wrist,

which form a large ball, and this ball is received into the lower end of the radius : the impression which these two bones make there is pretty deep, and somewhat of a boat-like shape ; whence it is called (like the articulating surface of the tibia) the scaphoid cavity of the radius ; and on the edge of the radius, next to the thumb, the bone ends in a sort of peak or sharper point, which is named (though with very little meaning) the *STYLOID PROCESS* of the radius.

So the scaphoid cavity of the radius forms the joint with the wrist ; but there is another small cavity, on the side of the radius, near to the little head of the ulna, into which this lesser head of the ulna is received ; and this is inclosed in a proper and distinct capsule. The little head of the ulna does not descend so low as to have any share in forming the wrist. There are properly two distinct joints ; the great joint of the wrist, moving upon the radius, the other a little joint within this of the radius, rolling upon the ulna, and carrying the wrist along with it.

#### OF THE HAND AND FINGERS.

The wrist is the most complex part of all the bony system, and is best explained in a general way, by marking the three divisions of the hand, into the carpus or wrist bones ; the metacarpus, or bones that stand upon the wrist ; and the fingers, consisting each of its three joints. 1. The carpus or wrist is a congeries of eight small bones ; grouped together into a very narrow space ; very firmly tied together by cross ligaments ; making a sort of ball or nucleus, a solid foundation or centre for the rest of the hand. 2. The metacarpus is formed of five long bones, founded upon the carpal bones ; and which, departing from that centre, in somewhat of a radiated form, give, by their size and strength, a firm support to each individual finger, and, by their radiated or spoke-like form, allow the fingers freer play. 3. The fingers, consisting each of three very moveable joints, are set free upon the metacarpus ; so as to show a curious gradation of moving in all these parts ; for the carpal bones are grouped together into a small nucleus, firm, almost immoveable, and like the nave of a wheel ; then the metacarpal bones, founded upon this, are placed like the spokes or fellys of the wheel, and have a freer motion ; and lastly, the fingers by the advantage of this radiated form in the bones upon which they are placed, move very nimbly, and have a rotatory as well as a hinge-like motion. So that the motion is graduated and proportioned in

each division of the hand ; and even where there is no motion, as in the carpus, there is an elasticity, which, by gentle bendings, accommodates itself to the more moveable parts.

The CARPUS, or WRIST.—Looking upon the external surface of the carpus, we count eight small bones disposed in two rows, with one bone only a little removed from its rank ; and we observe that the whole is arched outwards, to resist injuries, and to give strength ; and that the bones lie like a pavement, or like the stones of an arch, with their broader ends turned outwards. On the internal surface again, we find the number of bones not so easily counted ; for their smaller ends are turned towards the palm of the hand, which being a concave surface, the narrow ends of the wedges are seen huddled together in a less regular form, crowded, and lapped over each other ; but in this hollow, the four corner bones are more remarkable, projecting towards the palm of the hand, so as to be named processes : and they do indeed perform the office of processes ; for there arises from the four corner points a strong cross ligament, which binds the tendons down, and makes under it a smooth floor or gutter for them to run in.

The individual bones of the carpus are small, cornered, and very irregular bones ; so that their names do but very poorly represent their form. To describe them without some help of drawing, or of demonstration, is so very absurd, that a description of each of them seems more like a riddle than like a serious lesson : it cannot be understood, and indeed it need hardly be remembered ; for all that is useful is but to remember the connection and place, and the particular uses, of each bone ; in reading of which the student should continually return to the plates, or he must have the bones always in his hand.

#### 1. ROW FORMING THE WRIST.

1. OS SCAPHOIDES—The boat-like bone. This name of boat-like bone, or boat-like cavity, has been always a favourite name, though a very unmeaning one. The scaphoid bone is not worthy of notice merely from its being the largest, but also as it forms a chief part of the joint of the wrist ; for it is this bone which is received into the scaphoid cavity of the radius. It is a very irregular bone ; in which we need remember only these two points ; the large round surface covered with cartilage, smooth, and answering to the cavity in the head of the radius ; and the hook-like, or projecting process, which forms one of the corner points of the carpus, and

gives a hold to one corner of the ligament which binds down the tendons of the wrist.

2. The *OS LUNARE* is named from one of its sides being somewhat of the shape of a half moon; it is next in size to the scaphoid bone, and is equal to it in importance; for they are joined together, to be articulated with the radius. This bone takes an equal share in the joint with the scaphoid bone; and together they form a great ball, fitting the socket of the radius, and of a long form, so that the wrist is a proper hinge. The lunated edge of the *os lunare* is turned towards the second row of bones, and therefore is not seen. And the chief marks of this bone are its greater size; its lunated edge, turned towards the second row; and its round head forming the ball of the wrist-joint.

3. The *OS CUNEIFORME*, or wedge-like bone, is named rather perhaps from its situation, locked in among the other bones, than strictly from its form. Its side forming the convex of the hand, is broader; its point towards the palm of the hand is narrower; and so far, we may say, it is a wedge-like bone: but it is chiefly so from its situation, closely wedged in betwixt the unciform and pisiform bones.

4. The *OS PISIFORME* is a small neat and round bone, named sometimes *ORBICULAR*, or round bone, but oftener *pisiform*, from its resemblance to a pea. It is placed upon the *cuneiform* bone, and stands off from the rest into the palm of the hand, so as to be the most prominent of all the corner bones; of course it forms one of the corner points or pillars of that arch, under which the tendons pass. The *pisiform* bone is a little out of its ranks; is very moveable; and projects so into the palm, as to be felt outwardly, just at the end of the styloid process of the ulna; it can be easily moved and rolled about; and is the point into which is implanted one of the strong muscles for bending the wrist.

## 2. ROW SUPPORTING THE METACARPAL BONES.

5. The second row begins with the *TRAPEZIUM*; a pretty large bone, which, from its name, we should expect to find of a regular squared form; while it has, in fact, the most irregular form of all, especially when detached from the other bones. The chief parts to be remarked in the bone, are the great socket for the thumb; and as the thumb stands off from one side of the hand, this socket is rather on one side. There is also a little process which makes one of the corner points.

6. The *TRAPEZOIDES* is next to the *trapezium*; is some-



what like the trapezium ; from which it has its name. It also resembles the cuneiform bone of the first row in its shape and size, and in its being wedged in betwixt the two adjoining bones.

7. The *OS MAGNUM* is named from its great size ; not that it is the largest of all, nor even the largest bone of the second row, for the cuneiform bone is as big ; but there is no other circumstance by which it is well distinguished. It is placed in the centre of the upper row, has a long round head, which is jointed chiefly with the lunated hollow of the *os lunare* ; and this big head, and lunated hollow, make together a sort of socket, by which the second row moves upon the first.

8. The *OS UNCIFORME*, or hook-like bone, is named from a flat hook-like process, which projects towards the palm of the hand. This is one of the corner bones, and standing in the end of the row, it is wedged betwixt the *os magnum* of its own row, and the *os cuneiforme* of the first row. It is large and squared ; but the thing chiefly remarkable is that process from which it takes its name ; a long and flat process of firm bone, fairly unciform, or hook-like, and projecting far into the palm of the hand, which being the last and highest of the corner points, gives a very firm origin to the great ligament by which the tendons of the wrist are bound down.

All these bones of the carpus, when they are joined to each other, are covered with a smooth articulating cartilage ; are bound to each other by all forms of cross ligaments ; and are consolidated, as it were into one great joint. They are, in general, so firm as to be scarcely liable to luxation ; and although one only is called cuneiform, they are all somewhat of the wedge-like form, with their broader ends outwards, and their smaller ends turned towards the palm of the hand ; they are like stones in an arch, so that no weight nor force can beat them in ; if any force do prevail, it can beat others in only by forcing one out. A bone starting outwards, and projecting upon the back of the hand, is the only form of luxation among these bones, and is extremely rare.

**METACARPUS.**—The metacarpus is composed of five bones, upon which the fingers are founded. They are big strong bones ; brought close together at the root, but wider above ; for the lower heads are small and flat, and grouped very closely together, to meet the carpal bones ; but they swell out at their upper ends into big round heads, which keep the bones much apart from each other. Nothing of importance can be said concerning the individual bones. To speak of them individually is a mere waste of time. We may observe



of the metacarpal bones in general, 1. That their lower heads being flat and squared, gives them a firm implantation upon their centre or nucleus, the carpus ; and that they have scarcely any freer motion upon the carpal bones, than the carpal bones have upon each other. 2. That their upper heads being larger, keeps the bones apart from each other ; and in the interstices between them lie the interosseous muscles. 3. That their divergence regulates the radiated or spreading form of the fingers, and gives them free play. And, 4. That they still preserve the arched form of the carpal bones, being, with the carpal bones, convex outwardly, and concave inwardly, to form the hollow of the hand ; and though they have little motion of flexion or extension, they bend towards a centre, so as to approach each other, increasing the hollowness of the hand, to form what is called Diogenes's cup. It is farther necessary to observe, into how small a space the carpal bones are compressed ; how great a share of the hand the metacarpal bones form ; and how far down they go into the hollow of the hand. For I have seen a surgeon, who, not having the smallest suspicion that their lower ends were so near the wrist as they really are, has, in place of cutting the bone neatly in its articulation with the carpus, broken it, or tried to cut it across in the middle.

**FINGERS.**—We commonly say, that there are five metacarpal bones ; in which reckoning we count the thumb with the rest : but what is called the metacarpal of the thumb is properly the first phalanx, or the first proper bone of the thumb ; so that the thumb, regularly described, has, like the other fingers, three joints.

**THUMB.**—The first bone of the thumb resembles the metacarpal bones in size and strength, but it differs widely in being set upon the carpus with a large and round head ; in being set off from the line of the other fingers, standing out on one side, and directly opposed to them. It rolls widely and freely, like other ball and socket joints ; it is opposed to the other fingers in grasping, and, from its very superior strength, the thumb is named *Polex*, from *polere*.

The **FINGERS** have each of them three bones. 1. The first bone is articulated with the metacarpal bones by a ball and socket ; the socket, or hollow on the lower part of the first finger bone, being set down upon the large round head of the metacarpal bone. 2. The second and third joints of the fingers are gradually smaller, and though their forms do a good deal resemble the first joint, they are quite limited in their motions ; have no rolling ; are as strictly hinge-joints as the knee

or ankle are. 3. Here, as in other hinge-joints, the capsule is so particularly strong at the sides, as to be named lateral ligaments. When these lateral ligaments are burst or cut, the finger turns in any direction, so that the motions of the fingers are limited rather by their lateral ligaments, than by any thing peculiar in the forms of the bones. 4. The face of each finger bone is grooved, so that the tendons, passing in the palm of the hand, run upwards along this groove or flatness of the fingers; and from either edge of this flatness, there rises a ligament of a bridge-like form, which covers the tendons like a sheath, and converts the groove into a complete canal. 5. The last joint or phalanx of each finger is flattened, rough, and drawn smaller gradually towards the point of the finger; and it is to this roughness that the skin and nail adhere at the point.

BOOK II.  
*OF THE MUSCLES.*

---

CHAP. I.

MUSCLES OF THE FACE, EYE, AND EAR.

---

MUSCLES OF THE FACE.

**I. THE OCCIPITO FRONTALIS** is a broad and thin muscular expansion, which covers all the upper part of the cranium. It consists of two bellies, with an intermediate sheet of flat tendon. The one belly covers the occiput; the other covers the forehead; and the tendinous expansion covers all the upper part of the head: by which it has happened that the most eminent anatomists, as Cowper (p. 29.) have misnamed its tendon, pericranium: many have reckoned it two distinct muscles, viz. the **OCCIPITAL** and **FRONTAL**; while others (because of a sort of rapha, or line of division in the middle of each belly) have described four muscles, viz. two frontal and two occipital muscles. But it is truly a double bellied muscle; and the broad thin tendon, which belongs equally to both bellies, lies above the true pericranium, and slides upon it. The muscle is therefore named, with strict propriety, **OCCIPITO-FRONTALIS**, sometimes **EPICRANEUS**, sometimes **BIVENTER** or **DIGASTRICUS CAPITIS**.

**ORIGIN.**—The occipital portion is the fixed point of this muscle; arising from the upper ridge of the occipital bone, and covering the back part of the head, from the mastoid process of one side, round to that on the opposite side of the head. And by the perpendicular ridge of the occiput, it is marked with a slight division in the middle.

**INSERTION.**—The fore belly of the muscle which covers the forehead, is fixed more into the skin and eyebrows than into the bone; it is slightly attached to the bone, near the inner end of the orbitary ridge, and especially about the inner corner of the eye, and the root of the nose, by a smaller and acute

pointed process ; but still its chief attachment is to the eye-lids and skin.

The TENDON or thin MEMBRANEOUS expansion which joins the two bellies, is exceedingly thin : it has on its inner side much loose cellular substance, by which, though attached to the true pericranium, it slides easily and smoothly upon it ; but its outer surface is so firmly attached to the skin, and its fore belly adheres so firmly to the eyebrows, that it is very difficult to dissect it clean and fair.

I consider the occipital belly as the fixed point, having a firm origin from the ridge of the bone ; its frontal belly has the loose end attached, not to the os frontis, but to the eyebrow and skin ; and its office is to raise the eyebrows, wrinkle the forehead, and corrugate the whole of the hairy scalp, like that muscle under the skins of animals which shrinks when they are cold or rudely touched, and by which they shake off flies or insects. But it is a muscle employed more in expressing passions than in performing useful motions ; and it is often so thin as hardly to be perceived. In some it is entirely wanting ; and many who have the muscle, have no command nor power over it.

There is a small, neat and pointed slip of the occipito-frontalis, which goes down with a peak towards the nose, and is inserted into the small nasal bone. This process, being much below the end of the eyebrow, must pull it downwards ; so that while the great muscle raises the eyebrow and skin of the forehead, this small nasal slip pulls the eyebrow downwards again, restoring it to its place, and smoothing the skin. It may be considered as the antagonist of the great occipital and frontal bellies, and might almost be described as a distinct muscle.

II. The CORRUGATOR SUPERCILII is another slip which might be fairly enough referred, like this, to the occipital muscle ; but being in many subjects particularly strong, it is best described as distinct. The lower end of the nasal slip of the occipito-frontalis is fixed to the nasal bone ; the lower end of the little slip, the corrugator supercilii, is fixed into the internal angular process ; and from the inner angle of the eye, the fibres sweep round the edge of the orbit, and going obliquely upwards and outwards, are so mixed with the fibres of the frontal muscle, and of the orbicularis oculi, where these two touch each other, that it is doubtful to which of those greater muscles this little one might be most properly referred. So this slip of oblique fibres, rising from the inner angle of the eye, and being fixed into the eyebrow, also antagonizes the occipito-frontalis : and drawing the eyebrows together, and

wrinkling the space betwixt them, is very rightly named *CORRUGATOR SUPERCILII*.

**III. ORBICULARIS OCULI, or PALPEBRARUM,** is a neat and regular muscle, surrounding the eye, and covering the eyelids in a circular form. It is exceedingly flat and thin; is about an inch in breadth; lies immediately under the skin of the eyelids; and is immediately attached to them, and but little connected with the bone. It has one small tendon in the inner corner of the eye, which is both its origin and insertion; for it begins and ends in it. This small tendon is easily felt through the skin in the inner corner of the eye. It arises by a little white knot from the nasal process of the upper jaw-bone. Its fibres immediately become muscular, and spread out thin over the upper eyelid. They pass over it to the outer corner of the eye, where they cross a little, and having covered just the edge of the temple with their thin expanded fibres, they return in a circular form round by the lower eyelid to the point from whence they had set out. This is, in all its course, a very thin muscular expansion, with regular orbicular fibres. It is rather a little broader over the lower eyelid; extends itself a little upon the face beyond the brim of the socket, both at the temple and upon the cheek; and its fibres cross each other a little at the outer angle; so that some, understanding this crossing as a meeting of fibres from the upper and from the lower muscle, have described it as two semicircular muscles. And those fibres which are next to the tarsus or cartilaginous circle of the eyelids, were distinguished by Riolan under the title of *MUSCULUS CILIARIS*. Our name expresses the common opinion, that it is a circular muscle, whose chief point or fulcrum is in the inner corner of the eye, and which serves as a sphincter for closing the eye. It squeezes with spasmodic violence when the eye is injured, as by dust. And by its drawing down the eyelids so firmly, it presses the ball of the eye down into the socket, and forces the lachrymal gland that is within the socket, so as to procure a flow of tears. Perhaps the corrugator supercilii belongs strictly to this muscle, since its fibres follow the same course.

**IV. LEVATOR PALPEBRÆ SUPERIORIS.** This small muscle arises deep within the socket, from the margin of that hole which gives passage to the optic nerve. It begins by a small flat tendon in the bottom of the optic cavity; becomes gradually broader as it goes over the eyeball; it ends in the eyelid by a broad expansion of muscular fibres, which finally terminate in a short flat tendon. It lies under the orbicularis palpebræ; is inserted into the whole length of the cartilage of the tarsus; and raises and opens the upper eyelid. And the division of



the orbicularis oculi into two, by the older anatomists, was a consequence of their not knowing of the true levator palpebræ, and their not being able to describe any muscle by which the upper eyelid could be raised, except the upper half of the orbicularis.

The occipito-frontalis, but especially its occipital belly, raises the eyebrows; the pointed slip of the same muscle pulls them downwards; the corrugator pulls them directly inwards, and knits the brows; the levator palpebræ opens the eyelid; and the orbicularis oculi closes the eye. Whether certain fibres from the platysma-myoides (a thin flat muscle which mounts from the neck over the cheek) may not pull down the lower eyelid; or whether some straggling fibres, arising from the zygoma, may not have the appearance of a depressor of the lower eyelid, it is not necessary to determine, since there is no regularly appointed muscle; and the lower eyelid is almost immoveable, at least in man.

#### MUSCLES OF THE NOSE AND MOUTH.

V. *LEVATOR LABII SUPERIORIS ET ALÆ NASI*. Cowper describes the levator labii superioris as an irregular production of the frontalis, extending along the nostrils. But it is a neat and delicate muscle, which arises, by a small double tendon, from the nasal process of the upper jaw-bone, close by the tendon of the orbicularis oculi. It is one little fasciculus of muscular fibres above; but as it approaches the nose, it spreads out broader, dividing into two small fasciculi; one of which is implanted into the wing or cartilage of the nose, and the other passing the angle of the nose, goes to the upper lip. Thus it is pyramidal with its base downwards, and was named pyramidalis by Caserius, Winslow, and others. It is called by Cowper dilator alæ nasi. It raises the upper lip, and spreads the nostrils wide, as is observed in a paroxysm of rage, or in asthmatics.

VI. The *LEVATOR LABII SUPERIORIS PROPRIUS*, is distinguished by the name of levator proprius, because there are two others; one belonging to the angle of the mouth, and consequently to both lips; and one common to the lip and nostril.

The levator proprius is often named musculus incisivus, because it arises from the upper-jaw, just above the incisores or cutting teeth, and consequently just under the edge of the orbit: it is broad at its origin; it lies flat, and runs downwards, and obliquely inwards, to the middle of the lip, till it

meets its fellow just in the *filtrum*.\* It pulls the upper lip and the septum of the nose directly upwards.

VII. The *LEVATOR ANGULI ORIS*, is called also *LEVATOR COMMUNIS LABIORUM*, because it operates equally on both lips. It is named *CANINUS* ; for as the last named muscle rises from the upper jaw-bone above the incisores or cutting teeth, this arises above the canini or dog teeth, or above the first grinder, by a very short double tendon. The exact place of its origin is half-way betwixt the first grinder and the infra orbitary hole : it is mixed with the *orbicularis oris* at the corner of the mouth, so that it raises the angle of the mouth upwards.

VIII. The *ZYGOMATICUS MAJOR* has nearly the same direction and use with this one : for it arises from the cheek-bone near the zygomatic suture ; runs downwards and inwards to the corner of the mouth ; is a long and slender muscle, which ends by mixing its fibres with the *orbicularis oris* and the depressor of the lip.

IX. The *ZYGOMATICUS MINOR* arises a little higher upon the cheek-bone, but nearer the nose ; it is much slenderer than the last, and is often wanting.

It is the zygomatic muscle that marks the face with that line which extends from the cheek-bone to the corner of the mouth, and which is so strong in many. The zygomatic muscles pull the angles of the mouth upwards as in laughter ; or distort the mouth ; whence the zygomatic muscle has gotten the name of *distortor oris* ; and the strong action of the muscle is particularly seen in laughter, rage, grinning.

X. *BUCCINATOR*. The buccinator was long thought to be a muscle of the lower jaw, arising from the upper alveoli, and inserted into the lower alveoli to pull the jaw upwards ; but its origin and insertion, and the direction of its fibres, are quite the reverse of this. For this large flat muscle, which forms, in a manner, the walls of the cheek, arises chiefly from the coronoid process of the lower jaw-bone, and partly also from the end of the alveoli or socket process of the upper jaw, close by the pterygoid process of the sphenoid bone : it goes forwards with direct fibres to be implanted into the corner of the mouth : it is thin and flat, covers in the mouth, and forms the walls of the cheek, and is perforated in the middle of the cheek by the duct of the parotid gland. These are its principal uses : that it flattens the cheek, and so assists in swallowing liquids : that it turns, or helps to turn, the morsel in the mouth

\* The *filtrum* is the superficial gutter along the upper lip from the partition of the nose to the tip of the lip.

while chewing, and prevents it from getting without the line of the teeth : in blowing wind instruments, it both receives and expels the wind : it dilates like a bag, so as to receive the wind in the cheeks ; and it contracts upon the wind, so as to expel the wind, and to swell the note. In blowing the strong wind instruments, we cannot blow from the lungs, for it stresses the breathing, but reserve the air in the mouth, which we keep continually full ; and from this it is named, from blowing the trumpet, the *BUCCINATOR*.

**XI. DEPRESSOR ANGULI ORIS.**—The depressor anguli oris is a neat small triangular muscle, and is indeed very commonly named *MUSCULUS TRIANGULARIS LABIORUM*, from its shape. The base of the triangle is at the line of the lower jaw, where the muscle rises with a flat fleshy head about an inch in breadth. It grows smaller gradually as it rises towards the corner of the mouth, where it is implanted, small, almost in a point, and directly opposite to the zygomatic and levator muscles ; and as the zygomatic muscle makes a line from the cheek down to the angle of the mouth, this makes a line from the chin up to the corner of the mouth. It is chiefly active in expressing the passions, and gives form to the chin and mouth. In cheerful motions, as laughter, smiling, &c. the zygomatics and levators pull the angles of the mouth upwards. In fear, hatred, revenge, contempt, and the angry passions, the triangulares pull the corners of the mouth downwards. And, at the place where these meet, there is formed a sort of rising at the angle of the mouth : for a great many tendons are crowded into this one point ; the zygomatic levator, depressor, and orbicularis oris muscles meeting and crossing each other at this place.

**XII. The DEPRESSOR LABII INFERIORIS** is a small muscle, the discovery of which Cowper claims for himself. It is a small muscle, lying on each side of the chin, which, with its fellow, resembles very much the levators of the upper lip. The depressor labii inferioris arises on each side of the chin, from the lower jaw-bone, under the line of the triangular muscle. It goes obliquely upwards and inwards, till it meets its fellow in the middle of the lip ; and where the muscles of the opposite side meet, there is a little filtrum or furrow on the lower lip, as on the upper one. It mixes its fibres with the orbicularis, and its use is to pull the lip downwards. Each muscle is of a square form, and thence has been often named *QUADRATUS GENÆ*, the square muscle of the chin.

**XIII. The ORBICULARIS ORIS**, or muscle round the mouth, is often named *CONTRACTOR ORIS*, *SPHINCTER*, or *OSCULATOR*. It is very regular : it is an inch in breadth, and con-

stitutes the thickness of the lips : it lies in the red part of the lips, and is of a circular form, surrounding the mouth after the same manner that the orbicularis oculi encircles the eye. We see a degree of crossing in the fibres at the angles of the mouth, whence it has been considered by many, not as a circular muscle, but as one consisting of two semicircular muscles, the SEMI-ORBICULARIS SUPERIOR, and SEMI-ORBICULARIS INFERIOR. Its fixed points are the two angles of the mouth ; at that swelling which is formed by the union of the zygomatic, triangular, and other muscles : and its chief use is to contract the mouth, and to antagonize the other muscles which I have just described. Often a small slip runs up from the middle of the upper lip to the tip of the nose ; it is the NASALIS LABII SUPERIORIS of Albinus ; it lies exactly in the furrow of the filtrum, and is occasionally a levator of the upper lip, or a depressor of the tip of the nose.

These muscles of the nose and lips are not useful merely in expressing the passions ; that is but a secondary and accidental use, while their great office is to perform those continual movements which breathing, speaking, chewing, swallowing, require. There are muscles for opening the mouth in various directions, which are all antagonized by this one, the orbicularis oris. The levator labii superioris, and the depressor labii inferioris, separate the lips, and open the mouth. The levator anguli oris, along with the zygomatic muscles, raises the cheek and dilates the corners of the mouth. The buccinator pulls the corner of the mouth directly backwards, opening the mouth. The angularis oris also dilates the mouth ; pulls the angles of the mouth downwards and backwards, and forms it into a circle, if the others act at the same time ; but the orbicularis oris is the largest and strongest (formed, as it were, by the fibres of all these taking a new direction, and turning round the lips), shuts the mouth, and antagonizes them all : and from an opening as wide as the mouth can require, shuts the mouth at pleasure, so closely as to retain the very breath against all the force of the lungs. It is the true antagonist of all the other muscles ; and they and the orbicularis mutually react on each other, in alternately opening and closing the mouth. This phenomenon of the orbicularis muscle dilating to such a wideness, and in an instant closing the mouth again with such perfect accuracy as to retain the breath, puts to nought all the vain calculations about the contraction of muscles ; as that they can contract no more than one third of their length ; for here is an infinite contraction, such as no process can measure. It is a paralysis of these muscles, that so often occasions a hideous distortion of the face ; for when the one side of the body



falls into palsy, the muscles of one cheek cease to act; the muscles of the other cheek continue to act with their usual degree of power. This contraction of the muscles of one cheek excites also the orbicularis oris to act, and so the mouth is pursed up, and the lips and angles of the mouth are drawn towards one side.

There are some smaller muscles which, lying under these, could not be described without danger of confusion; as—

XIV. The *DEPRESSOR LABII SUPERIORIS ALÆ ET NASI*, which is very small, and lies concealed under the other muscles. It rises from the gum or socket of the fore teeth, and thence is named by Winslow *incisivus medius*. It goes into the rising of the nose, and pulls it, and of course the upper lip down; and is named by Albinus and Cowper *constrictor vel compressor alæ nasi*.

XV. The *CONSTRUCTOR NASI*, or compressor of the nose, is a small scattered bundle of muscular fibres, which crosses the wings, and goes to the very point of the nose; for one arises from the wing of the nose on each side, and meets its fellow in the middle ridge, where both are fixed into the middle cartilage, or into the lower point of the *NASAL* bones; meeting with the peak of the frontal muscle, or its scattered fibres. But this muscle is so difficultly found, that when Cowper saw it distinctly marked in Bidloe's 12th table, he considered it as a fiction, having sought for it very carefully, but in vain.

And XVI. The *LEVATOR MENTI*, which arises from the lower jaw, at the root of the cutting teeth, has been named *INCISIVUS INFERIOR*. It is inserted into the skin, on the very centre of the chin: by its contraction it draws the centre of the chin into a dimple; and from its moving under the lip at the same time, it is named *LEVATOR LABII INFERIORIS*.

## MUSCLES OF THE EXTERNAL EAR.

THOUGH perhaps not one of ten thousand has the power of moving the outward ear, yet there are many thin and scattered fibres of muscles about the root of the cartilage of the ear, to which we cannot refuse the name and distinction of muscles; and which serve, indeed, to indicate that nature had intended a degree of motion, which, perhaps by the manner of covering the heads of children, we may have lost. But in a few these fasciculi of fibres have not the form only, but the uses also, of muscles. The celebrated Mr. Mery was wont, when lecturing on this subject, to amuse his pupils, saying, pleasantly, "that in one thing, he surely belonged to the long-eared tribe;"



upon which he moved his ears very rapidly backwards and forwards.\*

**XVII. SUPERIOR AURIS** is named **ATTOLLENS**, because it lifts the ear upwards: it is a very thin, flat expansion, which can hardly be distinguished from the fascia of the temporal muscles, upon which it lies; it arises broad and circular from the expanded tendon of the occipito-frontalis, and is inserted narrow into the root of the cartilaginous tube of the ear.

**XVIII. ANTERIOR AURIS** is a very delicate, thin and narrow expansion; arising about the zygoma, or rather from the fascia with which the zygoma is covered; it is implanted round the cartilaginous tube, at its root.†

**XIX. The POSTERIOR AURIS** is also a small muscle, very delicate and thin; but the anterior rises in one small and narrow slip only, while this, the posterior, rises commonly in three narrow and distinct slips, from about the place of the mastoid process;‡ whence it is often named **TRICEPS AURIS**. It goes directly forwards to be implanted into the concha. It is named **RETRAHIENS AURIS** from its office.

But there are still other muscles enumerated, which are not for moving the outward ear upon the head, but for moving or rather bending the individual parts of the ear upon each other. Those fibres, which are misnamed muscles, are merely muscular membranes, which have none of the marks nor offices of true muscles; they have seldom fleshy fibres, and the parts upon which they lie are fixed. Heister denies them the title of muscles, and calls them muscular membranes only.

The ring and other bendings of the outward ear are called helix and antihelix, tragus and antitragus; and this determines the names of these ambiguous fibres, which are sometimes found lying upon these circles of the outward cartilage, just under the skin.

**XX. The MUSCULUS HELICIS MAJOR** lies upon the upper or sharp point of the helix, or outward ring.

**XXI. HELICIS MINOR** rises lower than the former, upon the part of the helix.

**XXII. The TRAGICUS** lying upon the concha, and stretching to the tragus.

**XXIII. The ANTITRAGICUS** lies in the antitragus.

**XXIV. And lastly, There is the TRANSVERSUS AURIS** of Albinus.

\* Vide Palfin, who was his pupil. The celebrated Albinus could move his ears.

† We seldom find an anterior auris, or any thing different from the anterior fibres of the attollens.

‡ Fibrae carnae transversae, a nobis descriptae VALSALVA.

## MUSCLES OF THE EYEBALL.

THE eyeball is entirely surrounded by muscles, which turn it in all directions. There is one muscle on either side; one above, and one below; these arise from the very bottom of the socket, spread out upon the ball of the eye, and are implanted into its fore part, where the expansions of their colourless tendons form what is called the white of the eye. Now, these four muscles being directly above, below, and on either side of the eye, are called the recti, or straight muscles; for their pulling is from the bottom of the socket. But there are other two muscles which are named the oblique muscles, because they pull from the edges of the socket, and turn the eye obliquely; for they go in a direction exactly opposite to the recti. The recti come directly forwards from the bottom of the orbit; these go obliquely backwards from the edge of the orbit; one rises from the lower edge of the socket, and goes backwards under the eyeball; the other rises indeed, along with the recti, in the bottom of the socket, but it has a cartilaginous pulley on the very edge of the socket at its upper part; and its small round tendon first runs through this pulley, and then turns down upon the eye, and goes backwards; so that the straight muscles press down the eyeball deep into the socket, while the oblique muscles bring the eyeball forwards, pulling it outwards from the socket.

The truest description of the recti is as of one muscle, since their only variety is that of difference of place, which is expressed by the name of each. They all agree in these chief circumstances, that they arise by flat, but small tendons, round the margin of the optic hole, arising from the circle of that hole, or rather from the periosteum there; and there being one above, one below, and one on either side, they completely surround the optic nerve, and adhere to it. They are neat and delicate muscles, gradually expanding each into a fleshy belly, which surrounds and covers the middle of the ball of the eye. They still go on expanding, till they at last terminate, each in a broad, flat, and very white tendon, which covers all the fore part of the eye, up to the circle of the lucid cornea or window; and their white and shining tendons form that enamelled-like part which lies behind the coloured circle, which is, from its colour, named the white of the eye, or the *TUNICA ALBUGINEA*, as if it were absolutely a distinct coat.

Now, the only difference in these straight muscles is in respect of length; for the optic nerve enters the eye, not regularly in the centre, but a little towards the inner side, so that the

rectus internus, or muscle nearest the nose, is a little shorter. The rectus externus, or muscle nearest to the temple, is a little longer; while the rectus superior and the rectus inferior are nearly of equal length. The uses of these muscles are exceedingly plain.

XXV. The RECTUS SUPERIOR, lifting the eye directly upwards, is named the MUSCULUS ATTOLLENS; the LEVATOR OCULI, or SUPERBUS, as expressive of haughtiness and pride.

XXVI. And the RECTUS INFERIOR, which is directly opposite to it, is named DEPRIMENS OCULI, or HUMILIS, as expressing modesty and submission.

XXVII. The RECTUS INTERNUS is called ADDUCENS, as carrying the eye towards the nose; or BIBITORIUS, because it directs the eye to the cup.

And (XXVIII.) The RECTUS EXTERNUS, the outer straight muscle, as it turns the eye away, is named ABDUCTOR OCULI, or INDIGNABUNDUS, expressing anger or scorn. Such is the effect of these muscles, that when they act in succession, they roll the eye; but if they act all at once, the power of each is balanced by the action of its opposite muscle, and the eye is immovably fixed. So that sometimes in our operations, when the couching needle approaches the eye, fear comes upon the patient, and the eye is fixed by a convulsive action, more firmly than it could be by the instruments, or by the finger; so that the speculum oculi is after such an accident of no use: the eye continues fixed during all the operation, but it is fixed in a most dangerous way, by a power which we cannot controul, and which sometimes, when our operation is for extracting one of the humours only, squeezes out the whole.

XXIX. The OBLIQUUS SUPERIOR arises along with the recti in the bottom of the eye, above and towards the inner side; directing its long tendon towards the inner angle of the eye; and there it passes its tendon through that pulley, whose hollow I have marked in describing the os frontis, as under the superciliary ridge, and near to the inner corner of the eye. It arises by a small tendon, like one of the recti; it goes over the upper part of the eyeball, along and slender muscle, whence it is often named LONGISSIMUS OCULI, the longest muscle of the eye. It forms a small smooth round tendon, which passes through the ring of the cartilaginous pulley, which is in the margin of the socket. The pulley is above the eye, and projects farther than the most prominent part of the eyeball, so that the tendon returns at an acute angle, and bends downwards before it can touch the eyeball. And it not only returns backwards in a direction opposite to the recti muscles, but it slips flat under the body of the rectus superior, and is spread

out under it upon the middle, or behind the middle of the eye, viz. about half way betwixt the insertion of the rectus and the entrance of the optic nerves.

XXX. The *OBLIQUUS INFERIOR* is, with equal propriety, named the *MUSCULUS BREVISSIMUS OCULI*. It is directly opposite to the *obliquus superior*, in form, place, office, &c. ; for it arises from the nasal process of the jaw-bone, in the lower edge of the orbit, at the inner corner of the eye ; it is short, flat, and broad, with a strong fleshy belly : it goes obliquely backwards and outwards, lying under the ball of the eye ; and it is inserted broad and flat into the ball, exactly opposite to the insertion of the *obliquus superior* muscle.

These two muscles roll the eye, whence they are named *MUSCULI CIRCUMAGENTES*, or *AMATORII*. But they have still another important office, viz. supporting the eyeball, for the operation of its straight muscles ; for when these (the *obliqui*) act, they pull the eye forwards ; the straight muscles resist ; and the insertion of the oblique muscles at the middle of the eyeball becomes, as it were, a fixed point, a centre or axis round which the eyeball turns under the operation of the *recti* muscles. The conjoined effect of the oblique muscles is to bring the eyeball forwards from the socket, as in straining the eye to see some distant point. The particular effect of the upper oblique muscle is not to bring the eye forward, but to roll the eye so as to turn the pupil downwards, and towards the nose. And the particular effect of the lower oblique muscle is to reverse this action, to turn the eye again upon its axis, and to direct the pupil upwards and outwards ; but the successive actions of all these muscles move the eye in circles, with gradations so exquisitely small, and with such curious combinations as cannot be explained by words.



## CHAP. II.

## MUSCLES OF THE LOWER JAW, THROAT, AND TONGUE.

## MUSCLES OF THE LOWER JAW.

THE lower jaw requires muscles of great power to grind the food ; and accordingly it is pulled upwards by the strong temporal, masseter, and pterygoid muscles. But in moving downwards, the jaw almost falls by its own weight ; and having little resistance to overcome, any regular appointment of muscles for pulling down the jaw is so little needed, that it is pulled downwards by muscles of such ambiguous office, that they are equally employed in raising the throat, or pulling down the jaw, so that we hardly can determine to which they belong ; for the chief muscles of the throat, coming from the lower jaw, must, when the jaw is fixed, pull up the throat ; or, when the throat is fixed, depress the jaw.

XXX. The TEMPORAL MUSCLE is the great muscle of the jaw. It arises from all the flat side of the parietal bone, and from the sphenoid, temporal, and frontal bones, in that hollow behind the eye where they meet to form the squamous suture. It arises also from the inner surface of that strong tendinous membrane which is extended from the jugum to the semicircular ridge of the parietal bone. The fibres are bundled together and pressed into a small compass, so that they may pass under the jugum ; there they take a new hold upon the inner surface of the jugum, and the muscle is of course pyramidal, its rays converging towards the jugum. Its muscular fibres are intermixed with strong tendinous ones ; it is particularly tendinous where it passes under the jugum ; and it has both strength and protection from that tendinous plate which covers it in the temple. Its insertion is into the horn of the lower jaw-bone ; not merely into the tip of the horn, but embracing it all round, and down the whole length of the process, so as to take the firmest hold.

XXXI. The MASSETER is a short, thick, and fleshy muscle, which gives the rounding of the cheek at its back part. It arises from the upper jaw-bone, at the back of the antrum, and under the cheek-bone, and from the lower edge of the



zygoma. It lies upon the outside of the coronoid process, covering the branch of the jaw quite down to its angle. It is particularly strong; has many massy bundles of flesh interspersed with tendinous strings; the parotid gland lies on its upper part, and the duct of the gland (as it crosses the cheek) lies over this muscle. The jaw is very firmly pulled up by these two, which are its most powerful muscles; and when we bite, we can feel the temporal muscle swelling on the flat part of the temple, and this the masseter upon the back part of the cheek.

**XXXII. XXXIII.** The two **PTERYGOID MUSCLES** (of which there are four in all, two on either side) are named from their origin in the pterygoid processes of the sphenoid bone. The **PTERYGOIDEUS INTERNUS** is that one which rises from the internal or flatter pterygoid process, and which goes downwards and outwards to the angle of the jaw on its inside. The **PTERYGOIDEUS EXTERNUS** arises from the external pterygoid process; and goes not downwards, but almost directly outwards, and is implanted high in the jaw-bone, just under its neck, and connected with its capsular ligament. Now the pterygoideus internus descending to be fixed to the angle of the jaw, is longer and bigger, and is named **PTERYGOIDEUS MAJOR**. The internal one going directly across, and rather backwards, has less space to traverse, is shorter, and is named **PTERYGOIDEUS MINOR**.

The jaw is moved chiefly by these muscles; the temporalis acting upon the coronoid process like a lever; the masseter acting upon the angle, and before it; and the pterygoideus internus balancing it within, like an internal masseter fixed to the inside of the angle. All these pull strongly upwards for biting, holding, and tearing with the teeth. And the external or lesser pterygoid muscle going from within outwards, pulls the jaw from side to side, and performs all the motions of chewing and grinding, *i. e.* of rotation, so far as the lower jaw possesses that kind of motion.

## MUSCLES OF THE THROAT AND TONGUE.

The **MUSCLES** of the **THROAT** and **TONGUE** cannot be understood without a previous acquaintance with certain cartilages and bones, which form the basis of the throat and tongue, and the centre of those motions which we have next to describe.

The **OS HYOIDES** is a small bone resembling, in shape at least, the jaw-bone. It has a middle thicker part, named its basis, which is easily felt outwardly; it corresponds in place

with the chin, and is distinguished about an inch below the chin ; the uppermost of the hard points which are felt in the forepart of the throat. Next, it has two long horn like processes, which go backwards along the sides of the throat, called the cornua, or horns of the os hyoides ; and which are tied by a long ligament, which comes down from the styloid process of the temporal bone. And, lastly, It has small cartilaginous pieces or joinings, by which the horns are united to the basis ; and often in the adult this joining is converted into bone. At this point where the two horns go backwards, like the legs of the letter V, there are commonly at the gristly part of the os hyoides two small perpendicular processes which stand up from the joining of the horns to the body ; and these are named the appendices of the os hyoides or the lesser cornua.

Now this os hyoides forms by its basis the root of the tongue ; thence it is often named the bone of the tongue. It forms at the same time the upper part of the trachea, or windpipe ; and it carries upon it that cartilage named epiglottis, which, like a valve, prevents any thing getting down into the windpipe. Its horns extend along the sides of the throat, keeping the openings of the windpipe and gullet extended as we would keep a bag extended by two fingers. The chief muscles of the tongue and of the windpipe arise from its body ; the chief muscles of the gullet arise from its horns, and especially from their points ; it receives the chief muscles which either raise or depress the throat ; and it is the point d'appui, or fulcrum for all the muscles of the throat and tongue, and the centre of all their motions. It is the centre of the motions of the tongue ; for it is the origin of these muscles which compose chiefly the bulk of the tongue ; of the motions of the trachea or windpipe, for it forms at once the top of the windpipe, and the root of the tongue, and joins them together ; of the motions of the pharynx or gullet, for its horns surround the upper part of the gullet, and join it to the windpipe ; and it forms the centre for all the motions of the throat in general, for muscles come down from the chin to the os hyoides, to move the whole throat upwards ; others come up from the sternum, to move the throat downwards ; others come obliquely from the coracoid process of the shoulder-blade, to move the throat backwards, while the os hyoides still continues the centre of all these motions.

The TRACHEA, or WINDPIPE, is that tube which conveys the air to the lungs ; and the LARYNX is the head, or figured part of that tube which is formed like a flute for the modulation of the voice, and consists of cartilages, that it may stand

firm and uncompressed, either by the passage of the food, or by the weight of the outward air ; and that it may resist the contraction of the surrounding parts, serving as a fulcrum for them in the motions of the jaw, tongue and gullet. Its cartilages are, first, the SCUTEFORM, or THYROID cartilage, which is named from its resemblance to a shield, or rather it is like the flood-gates or folding doors of a canal, the meeting of the two sides being in the middle line of the throat. This prominent line of the thyroid cartilage is easily felt in the middle of the throat ; is about an inch in length, and makes that tumour which is called *pomum Adami*. The flat sides of the thyroid cartilage form the sides of the flute part of the trachea. And there are two long horns at its two upper corners, which rise like hooks above the line of the cartilage, and are joined to the horns of the *os hyoides* ; and two similar, but shorter hooks below, by which it embraces the cricoid cartilage.

The CRICOID CARTILAGE is next to the thyroid, and below it ; it is named from its resemblance to a ring : it is indeed like a ring or hoop, but it is not a hoop equally deep in all its parts, it is shallow before, where it ekes out the length of the thyroid cartilage, and is deeper behind, where it forms the back of this flute-like top of the trachea ; it is the top ring of the trachea, and the lower ring of the larynx or flute part of the windpipe. And upon its back, or deeper part, are seated those two small cartilages, which form the opening for the breath.

The ARYTENOID CARTILAGES are two small bodies, of the size of peas. They are foolishly described with cornua, ridges and surfaces, when they are so small that nothing further can be observed of their forms than that they are somewhat triangular ; that the base or broad part of each sits down upon the upper edge of the cricoid cartilage at its back ; that the point of each stands directly upwards, and is a very little crooked, or hook-like, that standing as they do, a little apart from each other, they form together an opening something like the spout of a ewer, or strouped basin, whence their name. And these cartilages being covered with the common membrane of the throat, which is thick, and full of mucous glands, the opening gets a regular appearance with rounded lips ; and this opening, or slit between them, which is something like the slit for the thill in the top of a counter, and which slants obliquely downwards, is named the RIMA GLOTTIDIS, or chink of the glottis ; and these cartilages being fixed on the cricoid cartilage by a regular hinge, they form the voice by their nearness and the narrowness of the slit ; and modify it by their motions, which are so exquisitely minute, that for every changing of the note, (and there are some thousand gradations in the compass of the voice,) they move in a proportional degree.

The **EPIGLOTTIS** is a fifth cartilage of the trachea, belonging to it both by connection and by office. It is a broad triangular cartilage, not so hard as the others, very elastic, and so exactly like an artichoke leaf, that no other figure can represent it so well. Its office is to defend the opening of the glottis. It is fixed at once to the os hyoides, to the thyroid cartilage, and to the root of the tongue, and it hangs obliquely backwards over the opening of the rima, or chink of the glottis; it is suspended by little peaks of the membrane, which we call ligaments of the glottis, and it is said to be raised or depressed by muscles, which yet are not very fairly described. But the rolling of the morsel which is swallowed, and the motion of the tongue, are sufficient to lay it flat over the rima, so that it is a perfect guard.

Then this is the constitution of the larynx. It is of hard cartilages to resist compression, and of a flute form at its opening, to regulate the voice. The **THYROID** cartilage is the great one, the chief defence before, and which has edges slanting far backwards, to defend the opening of the larynx. The **CRICOID** cartilage, which forms the upper ring of the trachea, supports the arytenoid cartilages, and by its deepness behind, raises them so that the opening of the glottis is behind the middle of the great thyroid cartilage, and in the deepest part of it, well defended by its projecting wings. The **ARYTENOID** cartilages form the rima glottidis, the chink by which we breathe, (which, as it is narrower or wider, modulates and tunes the voice,) the opening which is so exquisitely moved by its muscles in singing; widening or contracting in most delicate degrees; and which is so spasmodically shut by the same muscles when it is touched by a drop of water, or by a crumb of bread: but the valve of the glottis, the **EPIGLOTTIS**, standing over it, flaps down like the key of a wind instrument, so that the rareness of such accidents is wonderful, when we consider that the least attempt to draw the breath while we are swallowing, will produce the accident.

The muscles which move the tongue and throat must be far too complicated to be explained at all, without some previous knowledge of these parts; and still, I fear, not easily to be explained with every help of regularity and order.

## MUSCLES OF THE THROAT.

By this arrangement, I mean to include under one class all those muscles which move the os hyoides, or the larynx; and through these, as central points, the jaws, gullet, and



tongue ; and which, though they are inserted into the larynx, have more relation to swallowing, or the motions of the gullet, than to breathing, or to the motions of the windpipe.

The muscles which pull the throat down are these :

XXXIV. The STERNO-HYOIDEUS, which passes from the sternum to the os hyoides ; a flat, broad, riband-like muscle, which arises from the upper piece of the sternum, rather within the breast ; and partly also from the clavicle and cartilage of the first rib ; goes flat and smooth along the fore part of the throat ; mounts, nearly of the same breadth, to the os hyoides ; and is implanted into its basis, or that part (which in resembling the os hyoides to the jaw) we should compare with the chin.

XXXV. The STERNO-THYROIDEUS, which passes in like manner from the sternum to the thyroid cartilage, is like the last, a flat, smooth, riband-like muscle ; rather thicker and more fleshy, but very uniform in its thickness. As the thyroid cartilage is below the os hyoides, the sterno-thyroid muscle must lie under the sterno-hyoideus muscle. It arises under the sterno-hyoideus muscle from the sternum and cartilage of the rib ; and is implanted into the rough line of the lower edge of the thyroid cartilage, and a little to one side, but not so much as is represented in Cowper's drawings. It immediately covers the thyroid gland ; and the way to the trachea for piercing it in performing bronchotomy is in the middle betwixt these muscles.

XXXVI. The OMO-HYOIDEUS, which was once named GORACO-HYOIDEUS, being thought to arise from the coracoid process. It is a muscle of great length, and very slender, reaching from the shoulder to the os hyoides ; it is like these last mentioned, a long, flat, strap-like muscle ; as flat and as fleshy, but not so broad, as either of the former. It lies along the side of the neck ; is pinched in a little in the middle, where it is divided by a tendinous cross-line, which separates the fleshy belly into two heads. It arises from the upper edge of the scapula, near its notch, and is implanted into the side of the os hyoides, where the horn goes off from the body of the bone.

These three muscles pull the throat down. The sterno-hyoideus and sterno-thyroideus pull it directly downwards : one of the omo-hyoidei acting, pulls it to one side ; but if both act, they assist in pulling directly down, and they brace the trachea at the same time a little down to the back.

The muscles which move the throat upward, are :

XXXVII. The MYLO-HYOIDEUS, a flat and broad muscle which arises from the whole semicircle of the lower jaw. *i. e.*



from the backmost grinders to the point of the chin. It rises from the inner surface of the jaw-bone; goes down to the basis of the os hyoides; proceeds with very regular, straight, clear, and orderly fibres, from the jaw to the os hyoides; is plainly divided in the middle from the symphysis of the jaw to the middle of the os hyoides, by a middle tendinous and white line. And though Cowper denies the authority of Vesalius, who divides it thus, it is plainly two distinct muscles, one belonging to either side.

**XXXVIII.** The **GENIO-HYOIDEUS** is a small neat pair of muscles arising from the chin at a rough point, which is easily distinguished within the circle of the jaw. The mylo-hyoideus is named from the whole jaw. The genio-hyoideus is named from the chin, arising from a small tubercle behind the chin; its beginning is exceedingly narrow: as it proceeds downwards, it grows flat and broad; it is implanted into the basis of the os hyoides by a broad edge, and is a beautiful and radiated muscle. The sublingual gland lies flat betwixt this muscle and the last; and in the middle the sublingual duct pierces the membrane of the mouth, to open under the root of the tongue. The two muscles move the os hyoides forwards and upwards, when the jaw is fixed; but when the os hyoides is fixed by the muscles coming from the sternum, these muscles of the os hyoides pull the jaw down.

**XXXIX.** The **STYLO-HYOIDEUS** is one of three beautiful and slender muscles, which come from round the styloid process; which all begin and end with slender tendons, and with small fleshy bellies; and one going to the pharynx or gullet, another to the os hyoides, and a third to the tongue, they coincide in one common action of drawing back the tongue, and pulling the throat upwards.

This one, the stylo-hyoideus, arises from about the middle of the styloid process, and going obliquely downwards and forwards, is fixed into the side of the os hyoides, where the basis and horn are joined. Above its insertion, its fibres are split, so as to make a neat small loop, through which the tendon of the digastric muscle runs. This stylo-hyoideus is sometimes accompanied with another small fleshy muscle like it, and of the same name; which was first perhaps observed by Cowper, and has been named by Innes **STYLO-HYOIDEUS ALTER**; but it is not regular, nor has it ever been acknowledged as a distinct muscle.

**XL.** The **DIGRATICUS**, or **BIVENTER MAXILLÆ INFERIORIS**, is named from its having two bellies. One belly arises from a rugged notch along the root of the mastoid process, where the flesh is thick and strong; going obliquely forwards and down-

wards, it forms a long tendon, round, thick, and very strong, which passes by the side of the os hyoides ; and as it passes, it first slips through the loop or noose of the stylo-hyoideus, and then is fixed by a tendinous bridle to the side of the os hyoides ; and then turning upwards to the chin, it ends in a second fleshy belly, which, like the first, is flat, and of a pyramidal shape, lying above the mylo-hyoideus.

Though this muscle is often called *biventer maxillæ inferioris*, as belonging to the lower jaw, perhaps it does more regularly belong to the throat. No doubt, when the os hyoides is fixed by its own muscles from the shoulder and sternum, the digastricus must act on the jaw ; an office which we cannot doubt, since we often feel it taking a sudden spasm, pulling down the chin with severe pain and distortion of the neck. But its chief office is to raise the os hyoides ; for when the jaw is fixed, as in swallowing, the raising of the os hyoides pulls up the throat ; and this is the true meaning of its passing through the noose of the stylo-hyoideus, and of its connexion with the side of the os hyoides. Then the digastric and stylo-hyoideus muscles pull the throat upwards and backwards.

The muscles which move the parts of the larynx upon each other are much smaller, and many of them very minute.

**XLI.** The *HYO-THYROIDEUS* goes down, fleshy and short, from the os hyoides, to the thyroid cartilage. It arises from the lower border of the thyroid cartilage, where the *sterno-thyroideus* terminates, and goes up along the side of the thyroid cartilage, like a continuation of the *sterno-thyroideus* muscles. It passes the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and is fixed to the lower edge of the os hyoides, along both its base and part of its horn.

**XLII.** The *CRICO-THYROIDEUS* is a very short muscle, passing from the upper edge of the cricoid to the lower margin of the thyroid cartilage, chiefly at its side, and partly attached to its lower horn ; which comes down clasping the side of the *CRICOID* ring, so that it is broader above, and a little pointed below.

These two small muscles must have their use, and they bring the thyroid cartilage nearer to the os hyoides, and the cricoid nearer to the thyroid cartilage ; and by thus shortening the trachea, or compressing it slightly, they may perhaps affect the voice. But the muscles on which the voice chiefly depends, are those of the *RIMA GLOTTIDIS* ; for there is a double set of muscles for the little arytenoid cartilages ; one set which brings the cartilages together, and another set which draws them apart, and spreads the opening of the larynx.

**XLIII.** The *MUSCULUS ARYTENOIDEUS TRANSVERSUS* is

that delicate muscle which contracts the glottis, by drawing the arytenoid cartilages towards each other. It lies across, betwixt them, at their back part; it arises from the whole length of one arytenoid cartilage to go across, and be inserted into the whole length of the opposite one.

**XLIV.** *ARYTENOIDEUS OBLIQUUS*, is one which crosses in a more oblique direction, arising at the root of each arytenoid cartilage, and going obliquely upwards to the point of the opposite one. These two muscles draw the arytenoid cartilages together, and close the RIMA.

**XLV.** The *CRICO ARYTENOIDEUS POSTICUS*, is a small pyramidal muscle, which arises broader from the back part of the cricoid cartilage, where the ring is broad and deep; and going directly upwards, is implanted with a narrow point into the back of the arytenoid cartilage. This pair of muscles pulls the arytenoid cartilages directly backwards, and lengthens the slit of the glottis.

**XLVI.** The *CRICO ARYTENOIDEUS OBLIQUUS*, is one which comes from the sides of the cricoid cartilage, where it lies under the wing of the thyroid, and being implanted into the sides of the arytenoid cartilages, near their roots, must pull these cartilages asunder, and (as the origin in the cricoid lies rather before their insertion in the arytenoid cartilages) it must also slacken the lips of the slit; for the lips of the slit are formed by two cords, which go within the covering membrane, from the tip of each cartilage to the back of the thyroid cartilage; and the crico arytenoideus posticus must strengthen these cords, and the crico arytenoideus lateralis must relax them.

**XLVII.** The *THYREO ARYTENOIDEUS*, is a muscle very like the last one, and assists it. It arises not from the cricoid cartilage, but from the back surface of the wing of the thyroid; from the hollow of its wing, or where it covers the cricoid; is implanted into the forepart of the arytenoid cartilage, and by pulling the cartilage forward and sidewise, directly slackens the ligaments and widens the glottis.

These are all the muscles which belong to the larynx; and in our arrangement the muscles of the PALATE and PHARYNX come next in order.

When a morsel is to be thrown down into the œsophagus, or tube which leads to the stomach, the *VELUM PALATI*, or curtain of the palate, is drawn upwards; the opening of the throat is dilated; the morsel is received; then the curtain of the palate falls down again. The arch of the throat is contracted, the bag of the pharynx is compressed by its own muscles; and the food is forced downwards into the stomach.

**XLVIII.** The *AZYGOS UVULÆ*.—The *VELUM PENDULUM PALATI*, is that pendulous curtain which we see hanging in the back part of the mouth, in a line with the side circles of the throat ; and the uvula is a small pap, or point of flesh, in the centre of that curtain. The *AZYGOS UVULÆ*, or single muscle of the uvula, is a small slip of straight fibres, which goes directly down to the uvula in the centre of the curtain. It arises from the peak, or backmost sharp point of the palate bones, and pulls the uvula, or pap of the throat, directly upwards, removing it out of the way of the morsel which is to pass.

**XLIX.** *LEVATOR PALATI MOLLIS* arises from the point of the os petrosum, and from the *EUSTACHIAN* tube, and also from the sphenoid bone.\* These parts hang over the roof of the velum, and are much higher than it ; so this muscle descends to the velum, and spreads out in it ; and its office is to pull up the velum, to remove it from being in the way of the morsel, which is about to pass, and to lay the curtain back at the same time, so as to be a valve for the nostrils, and for the mouth of the eustachian tube, hindering the food or drink from entering into these passages.

**L.** The *CIRCUMFLEXUS PALATI*,† and the *CONSTRUCTOR ISTHMI FAUSCIUM*, have a very different use. The *circumflexus palati* is named from its fibres passing over, or rather under, the hook of the *PTERYGOID* process ; the muscle arises along with the *levator palati* (i. e.) from the sphenoid bone at its spinous process ; and from the beginning of the eustachian tube, it runs down along the tube, in the hollow betwixt the pterygoid processes ; it then becomes tendinous, turns under the hook of the internal pterygoid process, and mounts again to the side of the velum. Now, the *levator* and *circumflexus* arise from the same points ; but the *levator* goes directly downwards into the velum, and so is useful in lifting it up. The *circumflexus* goes round the hook ; runs on it as on a pulley ; turns upwards again ; and so it pulls down the palate, and stretches it : and thence is very commonly named, the *TENSOR PALATI MOLLIS*, or *stretcher of the palate*.

\* From the eustachian tube, it was named *SALPINGO STAPHILINUS* ; from the sphenoid bone, *SPHENO-STAPHILINUS* ; from the pterygoid process, *PTERYGO-STAPHILINUS* ; from the petrous process, it was named *PETRO-SALPINGO-STAPHILINUS* ; as if there were no science but where there were hard names, and as if the chief mark of genius were enriching the hardest names, with all possible combinations and contortions of them.

† This also has got a tolerable assortment of hard names ; as *CIRCUMFLEXUS PALATI*, *TENSOR PALATI*, *PALATO-SALPINGUS*, *STAPHILINUS EXTERNUS*, *SPHENO SALPINGO-STAPHILINUS*, *MUSCULUS TUBE*, viz. *EUSTACHIANÆ NONUS*. *PTERYGO-STAPHILINUS* of Cowper, &c.



**LI.** The **CONSTRUCTOR ISTHMI FAUSCIUM**, arises from the very root of the tongue on each side ; goes round to the middle of the velum, and ends near the uvula.\* This semicircle forms that first arch which presents itself upon looking into the mouth.

**LII.** The **PALATO-PHARYNGEUS**†, again, forms a second arch behind the first ; for it begins in the middle of the soft palate ; goes round the entry of the fauces, ends in the wing or edge of the thyroid cartilage ; and as the first arched line (that formed by the constrictor) belonged to the root of the tongue, this second arched line belongs to the pharynx or gullet. The circumflexus palati makes the curtain of the palate tense, and pulls it downwards : the constrictor fausciium helps to pull down the curtain, and raises the root of the tongue to meet it : the palato-pharyngeus farther contracts the arch of the fauces, which is almost shut upon the morsel now ready to be forced down into the stomach, by those muscles which compress the pharynx itself.

The **PHARYNX**, which is the opening of the gullet, that it may receive freely the morsel of food, is expanded into a large and capacious bag, which hangs from the basis of the skull, is chiefly attached to the occipital bone, the pterygoid processes, and the back parts of either jaw-bone. The œsophagus, again, is the tube which conveys the food down into the stomach ; and this bag of the pharynx is the expanded or trumpet-like end of it ; or it may be compared with the mouth of a funnel. Towards the mouth, the pharynx is bounded by the root of the tongue and by the arches of the throat ; behind, it lies flat and smooth along the bodies of the vertebræ ; before, it is protected, and in some degree surrounded, by the great cartilages of the larynx ; the horns of the os hyoides embrace its sides, and it is covered with flat muscular fibres, which, arising from the os hyoides and cartilages of the throat, go round the pharynx, in fair and regular orders, and are named its constrictors, because they embrace it closely, and their contractions force down the food.

**LIIL.** The **STYLO-PHARYNGEUS**, arises from the root of the styloid process. It is a long, slender, and beautiful muscle ; it expands fleshy upon the side of the pharynx ; extends so far as to take a hold upon the edge of the thyroid cartilage ; it lifts the pharynx up to receive the morsel, and then straitens and com-

\* Named **GLOSSO-STAPHILINUS**, from its origin in the tongue, and insertion into the **UVULA**.

† The **SALPINGO-PHARYNGEUS** of Albinus, is no more than that part of the palato-pharyngeus which arises from the mouth of the eustachian tube.



presses the bag to push the morsel down, and by its hold upon the thyroid cartilage, it commands the larynx also, and the whole throat.

The pharynx being surrounded by many irregular points of bone, its circular fibres or constrictors have many irregular origins. The constrictor might fairly enough be explained as one muscle, but the irregular origins split the fibres of the muscle, and give occasion of dividing the constrictor into distinct parts; for one bundle arising from the occipital bone and os petrosum from the tongue, the pterygoid process, and the two jaw bones, is distinguished as one muscle, the constrictor superior.\*—Another bundle arising from the os hyoides, is named the constrictor medius.† A third bundle, the lowest of the three, arising from the thyroid and cricoid cartilages, is named the constrictor inferior.‡

LIV. The CONSTRUCTOR SUPERIOR, arising from the basis of the skull, from the jaws, from the palate, and from the root of the tongue, surrounds the upper part of the pharynx; and it is not one circular muscle, but two muscles divided in the middle line behind, by a distinct rapha, seam, or meeting of the opposite fibres.

LV. The CONSTRUCTOR MEDIUS rises chiefly from the round point in which the os hyoides terminates; it also arises from the cartilage of the os hyoides, *i. e.* where the horns are joined to the body. The tip of the horn being the most prominent point, and the centre of this muscle, it goes upwards and downwards, so as to have something of a lozenge-like shape; it lies over the upper constrictor like a second layer; its uppermost peak or pointed part touches the occipital bone, and its lower point is hidden by the next muscle.

LVI. The CONSTRUCTOR INFERIOR arises partly from the thyroid, and partly from the cricoid cartilage; and it again goes also obliquely, so as to overlap or cover the lower part of the constrictor medius. This, like the other two constrictors, meets its fellow in a tendinous middle line; and so the morsel admitted into the pharynx by the dilatation of its arches, is pushed down into the œsophagus by the forces of these constrictores pharyngis, assisted by its styloid muscles.

LVII. The CÆSOPHAGUS is merely the continuation of the

\* These good opportunities of names have not been disregarded: this muscle has been named CEPHALO-PHARYNGEUS, PTERIGO-PHARYNGEUS, MYLO-PHARYNGEUS, GLOSSO-PHARYNGEUS.

† This one is named HYO-PHARYNGEUS, or SYNDESMO-PHARYNGEUS, from its origin in the cartilage also of the os hyoides.

‡ This, of course, is named THYRO-PHARYNGEUS, and CRICO-PHARYNGEUS.

same tube. It lies flat upon the back-bone, and it is covered in its whole length by a muscular coat, which is formed, not like this of the pharynx, of circular fibres, but of fibres running according to its length chiefly. And this muscle surrounding the membranous tube of the œsophagus like a sheath, is named VAGINALIS GULÆ.

## MUSCLES OF THE TONGUE.

THE muscles of the tongue are large bundles of flesh which come from the os hyoides, the chin, and the styloid process. Their thickness constitutes the chief bulk of the tongue. Their actions perform all its motions. The muscles, which I am now to describe, form the whole flesh of the tongue, excepting merely the thin membranes which cover the tongue, and give it form, and conduct its nerves to the papillæ or feeling points.

LVIII. The first muscle of the tongue is the *STYLO-GLOSSUS*, which arises from the styloid process, goes obliquely downwards and forwards; it touches the tongue a little before the angle of the tongue; it makes part of the flesh at the side of the tongue, expanding into its substance in somewhat of a radiated form; its office is to pull the tongue backwards into the mouth.

LIX. The *HYO-GLOSSUS* is a comprehensive name for all those muscles which arise from the os hyoides. The muscles from the os hyoides go off in three fasciculi, and were once reckoned as distinct muscles. That portion which arises from the basis of the os hyoides, was called *BASIO-GLOSSUS*; that which arises from the cartilaginous joining of the body and horn, was called *CHONDRO-GLOSSUS*; and that which arises from the horn itself, was named *CERATO-GLOSSUS*; or the terms were all bundled together into the perplexed names of *BASIO-CHONDRO-CERATO-GLOSSUS*.

The *hyo-glossus*, then, is all that muscular flesh which arises from the whole length of the os hyoides; and which, by the changing form of the bone in its basis, cartilage and horn, has slight marks of division, but which lies all in one plain, and need not have distinct names.

LX. The *GENIO-GLOSSUS* arises from the rough tubercle behind the symphysis of the chin. It has a very narrow or pointed origin; it spreads out fan-like, as it goes towards the tongue; and it spreads with radii, both forwards and backwards, making the chief part of the substance of the tongue.

LXI. The *LINGUALIS* is an irregular bundle of fibres which runs according to the length of the tongue: it lies betwixt the

stylo-glossus and the genio-glossus ; and as it is in the centre, and unconnected with any bone, it is named lingualis, as arising in the tongue itself.

The genio-glossi muscles form by far the larger part of the tongue, and lie in the very centre. They go through the whole length, *i. e.* from the root to the tip of the tongue ; and from the radiated form of their fibres, they perform every possible motion ; whence this was named by Winslow, *MUSCULUS POLYCHRESTUS*, for its rays proceed from one point or centre, and those which go to the point of the tongue pull the tongue backwards into the mouth ; those which go backwards, thrust the tongue out of the mouth ; the middle fibres acting, make the back of the tongue hollow, while the tip and the root of the tongue both rise.

The hyo-glossi muscles lie on either side of the genio-hyoidæi, and make up the sides of the tongue ; and their chief action would seem to be this, that the hyo-glossus muscle of either side acting, the edges of the tongue would be pulled downwards, and the back rounded ; the opposite of which motion is the genio-hyoidæi acting, by which the middle of the tongue is made into a groove ; the edges rising, and the centre being depressed. Lastly, the stylo-glossus is plainly intended for drawing the tongue deep into the mouth, particularly affecting the point of the tongue.



### CHAP. III.

#### OF THE MUSCLES OF THE ARM.

INCLUDING THE MUSCLES OF THE SCAPULA, ARM, FORE-ARM,  
AND HAND.



##### MUSCLES OF THE SCAPULA.

THE great peculiarity of the arm is the manner of its connection with the breast ; to which it is fixed by no ligaments, nor joined to no bone, but is at once both fixed and moved by its strong and numerous muscles, which are indeed its only li-

gaments. Though it were perhaps more regular to describe first the muscles of the trunk, it will be more easy and natural to describe first the broad muscles belonging to the scapula, which cover almost the whole trunk, and hide its proper muscles, viz. those which move the ribs and spine. For the muscles which move the scapula lie upon the trunk; those which move the arm lie upon the scapula; those which move the fore-arm lie upon the arm; and those for moving the hand and fingers lie upon the fore-arm. The leg requires but one chief motion, viz. backwards and forwards, flexion and extension: it has no other motions than those of the thigh and of the knee. But the arm requires an easy and circular motion; and its joints are multiplied; for it has the wrist turning round; it has the elbow for hinge-like motions; it has the shoulder-joint, upon which the arm rolls; and to assist all these, the scapula, which is the centre of all these motions, is itself moveable; after a certain point of elevation all the motion in raising the arm is performed, not by the motions of the shoulder-bone upon the scapula, but by the scapula upon the trunk. For whenever the shoulder-bone rises to the horizontal direction, it is checked by the acromion, which hangs over it; and if the arm is to be raised higher still, the scapula must roll; for it turns as if upon an axis passed through it, and in turning it glides upon those muscles, which are like a cushion betwixt it and the trunk.

The muscles which move the scapula come from the breast to move it forwards; from the neck, to move it upwards; from the spines of the vertebræ, to move it backwards; and from the side, that is, from the ribs, to move it downwards.

**LXII.** The **TRAPEZIUS** is named from its lozenge form; or is often named **CUCULARIS**, from its resembling the Monk's cowl; hanging back upon the neck. It is one of the most beautiful muscles in the body; and the two muscles together cover all the shoulders and neck, with a lozenge-like form, with neat and sharp points, extending from the tip of one shoulder to the tip of the other, and from the nape of the neck quite down to the loins. It arises first by a strong tendon from the most pointed part of the occipital bone, and along the transverse spine quite to the mastoid process; from this point all down the neck it has no hold of the vertebræ, but arises from its fellow in a strong tendon, which, extending like a bow-string down the neck, over the arch of the neck, and not touching the vertebræ till it comes down to the top of the back, is named **LIGAMENTUM NUCHÆ**. The tendon begins again to take hold of the spines of the two last vertebræ of the neck, and arises from all the spinous processes of the back down-



wards ; from this long origin, its fibres converge, as it were, into one point, the tip of the shoulder : it also comes a little forward over the side of the neck.

It is implanted into one third of the clavicle nearest the shoulder ; into the tip of the acromion ; into the whole length of the spine, from which the acromion rises. And its fibres, arising from along the neck and back, and converging almost into a point, must have various effects, according to the different fibres which act : for those which come downwards must raise the scapula ; those which come from the middle of the back must carry it directly backwards ; those which come from the lower part of the back must depress it ; and those different fibres acting in succession, must make the scapula roll. The trapezius is chiefly a muscle of the scapula, but it must be also occasionally a muscle of the head, pulling the head backwards, and bending the neck.

Three other muscles which raise the scapula, or carry it backwards ; lie so much in the same plane, and are so little divided from each other, that they might almost be reckoned different portions of the same.

**LXIII. LEVATOR SCAPULÆ**, named also **LEVATOR PROPRIUS ANGULARIS**, is a small thin slip of flesh, which arises from the four or five uppermost vertebræ of the neck, at their transverse processes, by three or four, and sometimes five, distinct heads. The heads join to form a thin and flat stripe of muscle, about three inches in breadth, which is fixed by a flat thin tendon to the upper corner of the scapula, to pull it upwards, as in shrugging the shoulders ; whence it is named **MUSCULUS PATIENTIÆ**.

**LXIV. and LXV.** The **RHOMBOID MUSCLE** stretches flat, neat, and of a square form, betwixt the spine and the whole line of the base of the scapula. One part arises from the three lower spinous processes of the neck, and is implanted into the base of the scapula at its upper part : then another portion arises from the spinous processes of the first four vertebræ of the back ; runs exactly in the same plane with the other into the base of the scapula at its lower part : the part arising from the three vertebræ of the neck is slightly divided from that which arises from the four vertebræ of the back, though not distinctly, and often not at all. I would reckon this but one muscle, but it has been commonly distinguished into (**LXIV.**) the **RHOMBOIDES MINOR**, the uppermost portion, and (**LXV.**) the **RHOMBOIDES MAJOR**, the lower portion. These are seen after raising the trapezius ; and the uses of the trapezius, levator scapulæ, and rhomboides, are to raise the scapula, or to carry it backwards. The muscles which move



the scapula downwards and forwards, viz. the pectoralis minor and the serratus major anticus, lie upon the forepart of the breast.

LXVI. The *SERRATUS MAJOR ANTICUS* lies upon the side of the chest arising from the ribs; and as the ribs have interstices betwixt them, every muscle arising from the ribs arises by distinct portions from each rib. All such distinct and pointed slips are named digitations, tongues, or serræ, from their resembling the teeth of a saw; and every muscle arising from the ribs must be a serrated muscle. The serratus major anticus is that great and broad muscle, the chief part of which lies under the scapula; and nothing of which is seen but the fleshy tongues, by which it arises from the sides of the ribs. It is all fleshy, and is of a considerable breadth and strength: it arises from all the true ribs, except the first, and from three of the false ribs: its indigitations, of course, spread all over the side of the thorax like a fan: its upper indigitations lie under the pectoralis major, and its lower indigitations are mixed with the beginning of the abdominal muscles: its middle indigitations are seen spreading upon the sides of the thorax: it lies thick and fleshy under the scapula, and is a part of that cushion on which the scapula glides: its fibres converge towards a narrower insertion; and the muscle ends thick and fleshy in the whole length of that line which we call the basis of the scapula, and is, as it were, folded round it: so that this muscle, which comes from before, is implanted along with the rhomboïdes, which comes from behind.

Perhaps, in difficult breathing, the shoulder blade being raised and fixed by its own muscles, the serratus major may assist in heaving up the ribs: but its chief operation is upon the scapula; for when the whole acts, it pulls the scapula downwards and forwards: when only the lower portions act, it pulls the lower angle of the scapula forwards, by which the scapula rolls, and the tip of the shoulder is raised; when the upper part acts in conjunction with the little pectoral muscle, the tip of the shoulder is fixed and pulled downwards towards the chest, and the lower corner of the scapula rolls backwards.

LXVII. The *PECTORALIS MINOR* lies under the pectoralis major, close upon the ribs; and as it arises from the third, fourth, and fifth ribs, it also is a serrated muscle, and was named serratus minor anticus: its three digitations are very thick and fleshy; they soon converge so as to form a small, but thick and fleshy muscle, which, terminating in a point, is inserted into the very apex of the coracoid process: by pulling the coracoid process forwards and downwards, it will roll the scapula.

LXVIII. The *SUBCLAVIAN MUSCLE* is another concealed

muscle of the scapula ; for the clavicle is just the hinge upon which the scapula moves, and the subclavian muscle arises by a flat tendon from the cartilage of the first rib : it becomes flat and fleshy, and lies along betwixt the clavicle and the first rib ; it arises at a single point of the rib, flat and tendinous ; but it is inserted into a great length of the clavicle, beginning about one inch from the sternum, and being inserted all along the clavicle, quite out to where it is joined to the acromion process. Its chief use (since the rib is immoveable) must surely be to pull the clavicle, and consequently the shoulder, downwards, and so to fix them.

Many have affected to find other muscles of respiration than those which directly belong to the ribs. Among these are reckoned the serratus major, the pectoralis minor, &c. ; but there is much reason to doubt whether any muscles can have much effect which do not belong properly to the ribs : and it is manifest, that the subclavian can have none, since the first rib is quite rigid, has so little length of cartilage that it cannot bend nor move.

The scapula is thus moved in every possible direction ; upwards, by the levator and the trapezius ; backwards, by the rhomboides, assisted by other orders of the trapezius ; downwards and backwards, by the lowest order of fibres in the trapezius ; downwards and forwards, by the serratus major anticus ; directly downwards, by the serratus, balanced by the trapezius, and assisted by the subclavius : and directly forwards, by the pectoralis minor.

## MUSCLES OF THE ARM.

VIZ. THOSE MOVING THE OS HUMERI, OR ARM BONE.

**LXIX.** The PECTORALIS MAJOR is a large thick and fleshy muscle which covers all the breast. It arises from two-thirds of the clavicle next the sternum ; from all the edges of the sternum ; the cartilaginous endings of the fifth and sixth ribs. Where it arises from the sternum, it is tendinous, and the fibres from the opposite muscles cross and mix, so as to make a sort of fascia covering the bone. It is fleshy where it arises from the ribs, and there it mixes with the external abdominal muscle. The fibres approach each other till they form a flat tendon about an inch in breadth ; and as the fibres approach each other, they cross in such a way, that the lower edge of the muscle forms the upper edge of the tendon, which is still flat, but twisted : its implantation is into the edge, if I may call it so, of the

groove or rut which is in the shoulder bone for receiving the biceps tendon. That part which arises from the clavicle is a little separated from that which arises from the sternum ; a fatty line makes the distinction ; and they are sometimes described as two parts : it is those two bundles chiefly which cross each other to make the plaited appearance. The pectoralis, among others, has been made a muscle of respiration.\*

LXX. The *LATISSIMUS DORSI* is the broadest, not only of the back, but perhaps of the whole body. It is a beautiful muscle, covering all the lower part of the back and loins, and reaching to the arm, to be the antagonist to the pectoral muscle. It arises by a broad, flat, and glistening tendon, which covers all the loins, and which is in some degree the root of other muscles, especially of the *longissimus dorsi*. This broad silvery tendon, begins exactly in the middle of the back ; it arises from the lower vertebræ of the loins, from the spines and knobs of the back of the sacrum, and from the back part of the circle of the os ilium : this last is the only part that is fleshy. The flat tendon gradually passes into a flat and regular muscle, which wraps round the side of the body ; and as it lies over the corner of the scapula, it receives a small fleshy bundle from it ; and as it passes over the lower ribs, it has some tendinous slips sent into it, by which it is attached to the ribs. Its fibres converge : for the lower ones ascend ; the upper ones go directly across. And these different orders, not only meet to form its flat tendon, but they cross each other, like those of the pectoral muscle. Here also the tendon is twisted, and the upper edge of the muscle forms the lower edge of the flat tendon ; which passing into the axilla, turns under the arm bone, and is implanted into it, on the inner edge of the bicipital groove. So the tendons of the pectoralis and *latissimus* meet each other ; they in fact join face to face, as if the one tendon ended directly in the other ; and both united make a sort of lining for the groove, or a tendinous sheath for the long tendon of the biceps to run in.

These two muscles form the axilla or arm-pit ; and although each has its peculiar offices, their chief operation is when they coincide in one action ; and that action is exceedingly powerful, both by the great strength of either muscle, and by their

\* Haller tells us, that when at any time, he had rheumatism in this muscle, in breathing was checked ; and when he had difficult breathing, he found great relief by fixing the hands, raising the shoulders, and acting with the pectoral muscles. It seems confirmed by these facts, that asthmatics take this posture ; women in labour fix their arms, by resting upon the arms of their chair ; those who play on wind instruments raise the shoulders in straining, &c.

being implanted into the arm bone four inches below the head. The pectoralis major is for pulling the arm forwards, as in laying the arms across the breast, or in carrying loads in the arms : and it forms the border of the axilla before. The latissimus dorsi has a wider range : when the arm is raised, it brings it downwards, as in striking with a hammer ; or downwards and backwards, as in striking with the elbow ; or in rolling the arm inwards and backwards, as in turning the palm of the hand behind the back ; whence it has the obscene name of *MUSCULUS SCALPTOR ANI*, or *TECTOR ANI* ; and it forms the back edge of the axilla. The edges of these two muscles receive the pressure of crutches, and defend the vessels and nerves : when both muscles act, the arm is pressed directly downwards, as in rising from our seat, or in holding a bundle under the arm ; or when the arm is fixed, these muscles raise the body, as in the example just mentioned of rising from our seat, or in walking with a short stick, or in raising ourselves by our hands over a high beam.

**LXXI.** The *DELTOIDES* is the first of those muscles which arise from the scapula to be inserted into the shoulder-bone. It is named deltoid muscle, from its resembling the letter  $\Delta$  of the Greeks ; it is thick and fleshy, and covers the top of the shoulder, filling up the space betwixt the acromion process and the shoulder-bone. It arises from all that part of the clavicle which is not occupied by the pectoralis muscle, and is separated from it only by a fatty line : it arises again in another bundle, from the point of the acromion process ; and this middle bundle is also insulated by a fatty line on either side of it : the third bundle arises from the spine of the scapula, behind the acromion process. And thus the muscle has three converging heads, viz. a head from the outer end of the clavicle ; a head from the acromion or tip of the shoulder ; a head from the ridge of the spine ; each divided from the other by a fatty line.\* These heads or bundles of fibres, meeting about one third down the humerus, form a short, flat and strong tendon, which grasps, or almost surrounds the shoulder-bone.

These three distinct heads must be observed in speaking of the use of the muscle ; for though the chief use of the muscle be to raise the arm, this is not the use of it in all circumstances. For the outer and inner heads, lying by the side of the shoulder-bone, and below the joint, do, when the arm is lying flat by the side, assist the pectoral and latissimus dorsi muscles in draw-

\* Albinus has distinguished it into seven fasciculi or bundles ; a very superfluous accuracy.



ing it close to the side ; but when the middle bundle raises the arm, in proportion as it raises the arm it loses of its power ; and in proportion as it loses of its power, the side portions, having come into a new direction, begin to help : nay, when the arm is raised to a certain point, more power still is required, and the clavicular part of the pectoral muscle also comes to assist. It is in this succession that the several bundles of fibres act ; for if they began all at once to act, the arm should rather be bound down by the lateral portions than raised by the middle one.

**LXXII. CORACO BRACHIALIS.**—The coraco brachialis, so named from its origin and insertion, is a long and rather slender muscle.

It arises from the coracoid process of the scapula, along with the short head of the biceps muscle ; and it is closely connected with this head almost in its whole length : it is small at its beginning ; it grows gradually thicker as it descends ; it is all fleshy, and is inserted by a very short tendon into the os humeri, nearly about its middle, betwixt the brachialis and the third head of the triceps. It is perforated by the musculocutaneous nerve. This was observed by Casserius, an Italian anatomist ; and the muscle is often named *MUSCULUS PERFORATUS CASSERII*.

Its action is very simple, to raise the arm obliquely forwards and upwards, and consequently to give a degree of rotation. It will also have a chief effect in pulling the arm towards the side.

**LXXIII. The SUPRA SPINATUS,** is so named from its occupying the hollow of the scapula above the spine.

It arises from the back of the scapula, from the spine, and from the edge or costa ; it is exceedingly thick and fleshy, filling up all the hollow ; and it is firmly inclosed in this triangular hollow by a strong tendinous expansion, which passes from the edge of the scapula to the ridge of the spine. It is consequently a muscle of a triangular figure, thick and strong ; it passes under the acromion, and degenerates into a tendon there ; and going under the acromion as under an arch, and over the ball of the humerus, it adheres to the capsule of the shoulder-joint, and is at last implanted by a broad, strong tendon into the great tuberosity on the head of the bone.

It is evidently designed for raising the humerus directly upwards ; and by its attachment to the capsule, the capsule is drawn up when the arm is raised ; so that, though lax, it cannot be caught in the joint. It performs exactly the same motion with the middle part of the *DELTOIDES*, lies in the same direction with it, and assists it.



**LXXIV.** *INFRA SPINATUS*, is like the former, in all respects, of the same use, and assists it.

This also is of a triangular shape, and is fully one half larger than the *supra spinatus*; and as the *supra spinatus* arises from all the triangular cavity above the spine, this arises from all the triangular cavity below it.

It arises fleshy from all the back of the scapula below the spine itself, and from all the base of the scapula below the beginning of the spine, and also from the lower margin of the scapula. It is very thick and strong, filling up the triangular cavity entirely; and it is closed in like the former by a strong tendinous expansion; it begins to grow tendinous about its middle, but it continues also fleshy till it passes over the socket of the shoulder-joint. It also is connected with the capsular ligament; is inserted into the same tuberosity with the former; and has exactly the same uses, viz. preventing the capsule from being caught in the joint, and raising the arm upwards, and inclining it a little outwards by a slight degree of rotation.— And I do believe that one great use of these two muscles is, when the arm is much extended backwards, to prevent the head of the humerus from starting out of its superficial socket.

**LXXV.** The *TERES MINOR* is a third muscle which co-operates with these. This and another are named *teres* from their appearance, not from their shape; for they seem round when superficially dissected, because then their edges only are seen; but when fully dissected from the other muscles, they are quite flat. The *teres minor* is a long, small, fleshy muscle; it arises from the angle, and all the lower edge of the scapula: it is like the *infra spinatus*; it becomes early tendinous, but the tendon is accompanied with fleshy fibres from below; its flat tendon, in passing over the joint, is attached to the capsule, and is finally inserted into the great tuberosity of the shoulder-bone, so that it must have exactly the same uses as the two former muscles. It is separated from the *infra spinatus* by that tendinous expansion with which the latter is covered; it looks like a part of the same muscle in its origin, where it lies upon the scapula; but is very distinct in its tendon. The *supra spinatus*, *infra spinatus*, and *teres minor*, raise the arm.

**LXXVI.** The *TERES MAJOR*, is in shape like the former, lies lower upon the edge of the scapula than the *teres minor*, and is thicker and longer than it.

It arises chiefly from the angle of the scapula; partly from the lower edge of the scapula at its back part; it is connected with the *TERES MINOR* and *INFRA SPINATUS*. It is a large, thick and flat muscle, and forms a flat, strong tendon, which passes under the long head of the triceps. It passes under the *os hu-*

meri; turns round it, and is inserted into the ridge, on the inner side of the groove, and gives some tendinous fibres to line the groove. In short, it accompanies the tendon of the latissimus dorsi, is inserted along with it, and may be considered as the congener of the latissimus dorsi; and the two tendons are inclosed in one common capsule or sheath of cellular substance.

Its use, then, is evidently to draw the humerus downwards and backwards, and to perform the same rotation of the arms which the latissimus dorsi does.

**LXXVII.** The **SUBSCAPULARIS** lines all the concavity of the scapula like a cushion. It is like the surface of the scapula on which it lies, of a triangular shape; and from the convergence of all the fibres, it is completely radiated or fan-like; it is very fleshy, thick and strong. The radii are each minutely described by Albinus; but Sabbattier says, with good sense, that he cannot distinguish them so as to describe them accurately; and he might have added, that there was not the shadow of a motive for wasting time in so trivial an employment as counting the bundles.

It arises from the two edges, the base, and all the internal surface of the scapula. And indeed it is to favour this origin that the inner surface of the scapula is full of little risings and hollows, to every one of which the muscle adheres closely. Just under the coracoid process is the only part from whence it does not arise. That little space is filled up with cellular substance.

Its alternately tendinous and fleshy fibres are so rooted in the scapula, and so attached to its risings and depressions, that it is difficultly cleaned away from the bone.

The tendon and upper edge of the muscle is almost continuous with the supra spinatus: but from the manner of its insertion, its effect is very opposite from that of the supra spinatus; for it goes round the os humeri to its insertion, and it is fixed to the lesser tuberosity; therefore it both pulls the arm backwards and downwards, and performs the rotation like the teres major and latissimus dorsi. It is also like all the other tendons, attached to the capsule, so as to prevent its being caught; and it is particularly useful by strengthening the shoulder-joint.

## OF THE MOTIONS OF THE HUMERUS.

HAVING thus described all the muscles which move this bone, I shall review the order in which they are arranged, and mark their places and effects.

To distinguish clearly the function of each muscle, we have but to mark the point to which it is attached.

1. Those implanted above the head of the bone must raise the arm. Now the *supra spinatus*, *infra spinatus*, and *teres minor*, are implanted into the great tubercle, and raise the arm ; and the *deltoideus* is implanted in the same direction, and still lower, so that it performs the same action with a still greater degree of power.

2. There is implanted into the opposite, or lower part of the head, the *subscapularis*, which, of course, draws the arm directly downwards and backwards.

3. There is implanted into the outer edge of the bicipital groove the *pectoralis major*, and also the *coraco-brachialis*, which comes in the same direction ; and these two pull the arm inwards towards the side, or rather upwards.

4. There are inserted into the inside, or lower side of the groove, the *latissimus dorsi* and *teres major* ; both of which pull the arm directly backwards. As they bend under the arm, to reach their insertion, they also roll the palm inwards and backwards. And it is easy to observe in what succession those muscles must act, to describe the circular and rotatory motions of the arm.

Joints are more strengthened by the origin and insertion of muscles around them, than by elastic ligaments : for these yield or tear ; whereas the muscles, having a living power, re-act against any separating force ; they contract, or, in other words, they are strong in proportion to the violence that the joint suffers. Thus, in the shoulder, the capsule is so lax, that there is a mechanical contrivance to prevent its being checked in the joint ; and it is moreover so weak, that independent of its yielding easily, it is also very easily torn ; but these muscles surround the joint so fairly, that their strength and their tendinous insertions into the head of the bone are more than a compensation for the looseness of its capsular ligament. Were not the muscles thus closely attached, the shoulders would be very often displaced, the glenoid cavity is so superficial, and the bursa so lax : and surely it is for some such purpose that the muscles are planted so closely round the head of the bone ; for when they are implanted at a distance from the centre, as one muscle, the *deltoid*, is, or as the *biceps* and *triceps* of the arm, or as the *hamstrings*, or *tendo Achillis* are, the power is much increased. Here, in the humerus, power is sacrificed to the firmness of the joint, and they are all implanted closely round the head of the bone.

The joint is in a manner formed by these muscles ; for the *supra spinatus*, *infra spinatus*, *teres major* and *minor*, and the

subscapularis, surround the joint very closely ; cover the joint with their flat tendons ; and so thicken the capsule, and increase its strength.

## MUSCLES OF THE FORE-ARM.

THE muscles of the fore-arm are only four ; the BICEPS and BRACHIALIS for bending, and the TRICEPS and ANCONÆUS for extending.

**LXXVIII.** BICEPS BRACHII FLEXOR is universally named BICEPS, from its having two very distinct heads. It is an exceedingly thick and strong muscle ; for when it contracts, we feel it almost like a hard firm ball upon the forepart of the arm ; and at the upper and most conspicuous part of this ball is the union of the two heads.

The larger and thicker head arises from the coracoid process, by a tendon which extends three inches along the forepart of the muscle, in the form of an aponeurosis ; but at the back part the tendon is short, and the muscle is fleshy, and is attached there to the fleshy belly of the coraco-brachialis.

The second, or long head, arises from the edge of the glenoid cavity, at its upper part ; it is exceedingly small and tendinous, and this long tendon runs down in its proper cavity, till, about one-third down the arm, the two heads meet. And though below that it is but one fleshy belly, yet there, as in other muscles, the common division betwixt its two origins may be still observed.

It is earlier tendinous at the forepart and outer side ; the tendon there sends off that aponeurotic expansion which covers all the fore-arm below, and encloses its muscles as in a sheath. The tendon, at first flat and large, becomes gradually smaller and rounder ; it turns a little in its descent, so as to lay one flat edge to the radius, and another to the ulna ; and it is at last implanted into that round tubercle which is on the forepart of the radius, a little below its neck.

The great use of the biceps is to bend the fore-arm ; which it does with great strength. But as it is inserted into the tubercle of the radius, when the arm and hand are turned downwards, the biceps, by acting, will pull them upwards, i. e. it will assist the supinators. Since both its heads are from the scapula, it will also occasionally move the humerus, as well as the fore-arm.

**LXXIX.** The BRACHIALIS INTERNUS lies immediately under the biceps, and is a very strong fleshy muscle for assisting the biceps in bending the arm. It is called BRACHIALIS from



its origin in the fore-arm ; and *INTERNUS* from its being within the biceps, or rather from its being on the inner side of the arm.

It arises from two-thirds of the *os humeri* at its forepart, by a sort of forked head ; for it comes down from each side of the deltoid. It continues its attachment all the way down the forepart of the humerus to within an inch of the joint. It is very thick, fleshy, and strong ; it is tendinous for about two inches in its forepart ; and is inserted by a flat strong tendon into the coronoid process of the ulna.

Other uses are ascribed to it, as the lifting up the capsule to prevent its being pinched ; but the chief use of it is to bend the fore-arm. In a strong man, it is exceedingly thick, and its edge projects from under the edge of the biceps, and is seen in the lateral view.

**LXXX. TRICEPS EXTENSOR.**—Upon the back part of the arm three muscles are described : the extensor longus, the extensor brevis, and the brachialis externus ; but it is, in fact, one three-headed muscle.

The longest head of this muscle is in the middle. It arises by a flat tendon of one inch in thickness, from the edge of the scapula under the neck, and a little way from the origin of the long head of the biceps ; and it is under this head that the tendon of the *teres major* passes to its insertion.

The second head is on the outside of the arm, next in length to this. It arises from the arm-bone under the great tuber, and just below the insertion of the *teres minor*. These two meet about the middle of the humerus.

The third, or internal head, is the shortest of all. It begins at the inner side of the humerus, just under the insertion of the *teres major* ; and it arises from the inner part of the humerus, all the way down, and joins just where the second head joins (i. e. about the middle.) All these heads still continue adhering to the humerus (as the brachialis does on the fore side,) quite down to within an inch of the joint ; and then a strong thick tendon is formed, by which it is implanted strongly in the projecting heel of the ulna, named *olecranon* ; by which projection it has great power, and the power is increased by an increased length in dogs, and other animals which run or bound.

The whole forms a very thick and powerful muscle, which covers and embraces all the back part of the arm ; and its use is too simple to admit of any farther explanation, than just to say that it extends the hinge-joint of the elbow with great power ; and that by its long head it may assist also to bend the shoulder outwards and backwards.

Besides bones, there is also another source of attachment for



muscles, that is, the tendinous expansions: for the expansions, which go on the surface like sheaths, also dive betwixt the muscles, and form septa or partitions, from which their fibres arise.

One tendinous expansion begins from the clavicle and acromion process, or rather comes down from the neck: it is then strengthened by the tendon of the deltoid muscle; it descends, covering all the arm; and before it goes down over the fore-arm, it is again re-inforced chiefly by the biceps, but also by the tendon of the extensor triceps. One remarkable process or partition of this general fascia is sent in from the sheath to be fixed to the outside of the humerus, all the way down to the ridge of the outer condyle. Another partition goes down, in like manner, to the inner condyle, along the ridge which leads to it; then the fascia, taking a firm hold on the condyles, is greatly strengthened about the elbow, and goes over the fore-arm, inclosing its muscles in a very firm and close sheath; and it sends partitions down among the several layers of muscles in the fore-arm, which gives each of them a firm hold.

**LXXXI.** The *ANCONÆUS* is a small triangular muscle, placed on the back part of the elbow. It arises from the ridge and from the external condyle of the humerus, by a thick, strong, and short tendon. From this it becomes fleshy; and after running about three inches obliquely backwards, it is inserted by its oblique fleshy fibres into the back part or ridge of the ulna.

It is manifestly designed for the extension of the fore-arm, and has only that one simple action.

## MUSCLES OF THE RADIUS, CARPUS, AND FINGERS.

THE whole fore-arm is covered with a mass of muscles of great strength, and so numerous and intricate, with a catalogue of names so difficult, and so distracting, that they should be arranged and classed with much care, explaining to the student the reason and value of their names, and the place and effect of each class.

The fore-arm is covered with a fascia or strong tendinous web, which, like that which covers the temporal muscle, gives both origin and strength to the muscles which lie under it; which divides the several layers one from another; and helps them in their strong actions, with that kind of support which workmen feel in binding their arms with thongs. This fascia is said to proceed from the small tendon of the biceps muscle,

though that were but a slender origin for so great a web of tendon, which not only covers the surface of the muscles, but enters among their layers. This fascia really begins in the shoulder, and has an addition and an increase of strength from every point of bone ; it is assisted by each tendon, because the tendons and fascia are of one nature over all the body, and its connection with the tendon of the biceps is quite of another kind from that which has been supposed. I would not allow that the biceps tendon expands into the fascia, but rather that the web receives the biceps tendon, which is implanted into it ; and for this wise purpose, that when the fore-arm is to strike, or the hand to grasp, the biceps first moves, and by making the fascia tense, prepares the fore-arm for those violent actions which are to ensue. Thus, it may be defined a web of thin but strong tendon, which covers all the muscles of the fore-arm ; makes the surface before dissection firm and smooth ; sends down partitions, which are fixed into the ridges of the radius and ulna, enabling those bones to give a broader origin to the muscles, establishing a strong connection among the several layers, and making the dissection always difficult, and never fair nor clean.

The motions to be performed by the muscles which lie upon the fore-arm, are these three ; to roll the hand ; to bend the wrist ; to bend the fingers.

1. The turning of the hand, which is performed by rolling the radius on the ulna, is named pronation and supination.—When we turn the palm down, it is said to be prone ; when we turn the palm upwards, it is supine. This is pronation and supination. The muscles which perform these motions are the PRONATORS and the SUPINATORS ; and the motion itself is best exemplified in the turning of a key in a lock, or in the guards of fencing, which are formed by a continual play of the radius upon the ulna, carrying the wrist round in circles.

2. The wrist is called the CARPUS, and therefore those muscles which serve for bending or extending the wrist are the FLEXORS and EXTENSORS of the carpus.

3. The bending and extending of the fingers cannot be mistaken ; and therefore the flexors and extensors of the fingers need not be explained.

These muscles are denominated from their uses chiefly ; but if two muscles perform one motion, they may be distinguished by some accident of their situation or form. And thus, if there be two benders of the fingers, one above the other, they are named FLEXOR SUBLIMIS, and FLEXOR PROFUNDUS, *i. e.* the deep and the superficial flexors. If there be two flexors of the carpus, one is named FLEXOR RADIALIS CARPI, by its running

along the radius ; the other *FLEXOR ULNARIS CARPI*, from passing along in the course of the ulna. And if there be two pronators, one may be distinguished as the *PRONATOR TERES*, from its round shape, the other as the *PRONATOR QUADRATUS*, from its square form. And this, I trust, will serve as a key to what is found to be a source of inextricable confusion.

It will be easy to make the origins and insertions of these muscles still more simple than their names ; for all the muscles arise from two points, and have but two uses. This assertion shall be afterwards qualified, with a few exceptions ; but at present it shall stand for the rule of our demonstration ; for all the muscles arise from two points, the external and the internal condyle.

The internal condyle is the longer one, and gives most power ; more power is required for bending, grasping and turning the hand ; therefore all the muscles which bend the hand, all the muscles which bend the fingers, and the pronator, or that which turns the palm downwards, arise from the internal condyle.

The external condyle is shorter ; it gives less power ; there is little resistance to the opening of the hand, and little power is required in extending the fingers ; and so all the muscles which extend the wrist or the fingers, or roll the hand outwards to turn it supine, arise from the external condyle.

So that when we hear a pronator or a flexor named, we know that the origin must be the internal condyle, and the insertion is expressed by the name : thus a pronator radii is a turner of the radius, and goes to the radius ; a flexor carpi goes to the wrist ; a flexor digitorum goes to the fingers ; and a flexor pollicis goes to the thumb : all the flexors, and all the pronators, issue from that point as from a centre. And again, when a supinator or an extensor is named, we know where to look for it ; for they also go out from one common point, the external condyle ; and the supinator radii goes to the radius ; the extensor carpi goes to the wrist ; the extensor pollicis goes to the thumb ; and the extensor indicis to the fore-finger.

#### FLEXORS.

The *MUSCLES* closing and bending the hand arise from the internal condyle. They are,

The <i>PRONATOR TERES RADII</i> , turning the radius.	
<i>PALMARIS LONGUS</i> ,	} bending the wrist.
<i>FLEXOR CARPI RADIALIS</i> ,	
————— <i>ULNARIS</i> ,	

FLEXOR DIGITORUM SUBLIMIS,	} bending the fingers and thumb.
————— PROFUNDUS,	
————— LONGUS POLLICIS,	

And, lastly, there is the PRONATOR QUADRATUS, which is the single muscle out of that scheme which I have proposed ; lying flat upon the interosseous membrane near the wrist.

LXXXII. The PRONATOR TERES RADII is of the outermost layer of muscles, is small and round ; named pronator from its office of turning the radius, and teres from its shape, or rather to distinguish it from the pronator quadratus, which is a short, square muscle, which lies deep again, being laid flat upon the naked bones.

The pronator teres arises chiefly from the internal tubercle of the humerus, at its lower and fore part : it has a second origin from the coronoid process of the ulna. These form two portions, betwixt which passes the radial nerve. The muscle thus formed is conical ; is gradually smaller from above downwards ; is chiefly fleshy, but is also a little tendinous, both at its origin and at its insertion ; and stretches obliquely across the fore-arm, passing over the other muscles to be inserted in the outer ridge of the radius, about the middle of its length.

Its use is to turn the hand downwards, by turning the radius ; and it will also, in strong actions, be brought to bend the fore-arm on the arm ; or the reverse, when the fore-arm is fixed, and we are to raise the trunk by holding with the hands.

LXXXIII. The PALMARIS LONGUS is a long, thin muscle, which, although it seems to have another use in its expansion into the aponeurosis ; yet is truly, by its insertion into the annular ligament of the wrist, a flexor of the wrist, and, in some degree, a pronator of the radius.

It arises from the internal condyle of the os humeri, and is first of five muscles which have one common tendon, and which go out, like radii, from one common centre ; viz. the palmaris, the flexor radialis, the flexor ulnaris, the flexor digitorum sublimis, the flexor digitorum profundus.

The palmaris longus arises from the inner condyle of the os humeri, and also from the intermuscular tendon, which joins it with the flexor radialis and flexor digitorum sublimis, and from the internal surface of the common sheath. Its fleshy belly is but two inches and a half or three inches in length ; and its long slender tendon descends along the middle of the fore-arm to be inserted into the fore part of the annular ligament of the wrist, just under the root of the thumb. This tendon seems to give rise to the very strong, thick aponeurosis of the palm of the hand, (under which all the muscles of the hand run, and which conceals the arch of blood vessels, and protects them,)



thence the muscle has its name. But it is a very common mistake to think, that because tendons are fixed to the sheaths, the sheaths are only productions of the tendons; whereas the sheaths do truly arise from bones. The fascia, which the *deltoïdes* is thought to form, arises from the acromion and clavicle; and the fascia, which the *biceps* is thought to produce, arises from the condyles of the humerus; and that great sheath of tendon which is made tense by the *musculus fascialis* of the thigh does not arise from that muscle, but comes down from the spine of the ilium, strengthened by expansions from the oblique muscles of the abdomen. In the present instance, we have the clearest proof of fascia being derived from some other source than the tendons; for sometimes the *palmaris* muscle is wanting, when still the tendinous expansion is found, and some pretend to say that the expansion is wanting when the muscle is found. The *aponeurosis*, which covers the palm, is like the palm itself, of a triangular figure; it begins from the small tendon of the *palmaris longus*, and gradually expands, covering the palm down to the small ends of the metacarpal bones. Its fibres expand in form of rays; and towards the end there are cross bands which hold them together and make them stronger; but it does not cover the two outer metacarpal bones, (the metacarpal of the fore-finger or of the little finger,) or it only covers them with a very thin expansion.

Now this palmar expansion also sends down perpendicular divisions, which take hold on the edges of the metacarpal bones: and thus there being a perpendicular division to each edge of each metacarpal bone, there are eight in all, which form canals for the tendons of the fingers, and for the *lumbricales* muscles.

**LXXXIV.** The *PALMARIS BREVIS* is a thin, flat, cutaneous muscle, which arises properly from the edge of the palmar aponeurosis, near to the ligament of the wrist; whence it stretches across the hand in thin fasciculi of fibres, which are at last inserted into the metacarpal bone, on which the little finger stands, and into the skin and fat on the edge of the palm. This is the *PALMARIS CUTANEUS* of some authors, for which we can find no use except it were that of drawing in the skin of the hand, and perhaps making the palmar expansion tense.

**LXXXV.** The *FLEXOR CARPI RADIALIS* is a long, thin muscle, arising from the inner condyle, stretching along the middle of the fore-arm somewhat in the course of the radius, and is one of the five muscles which rise by one common tendon, and which are, for some length, tied together.

It arises tendinous from the inner condyle; the tendon very



short and thick. This tendon, at its origin, is split into many (seven) heads, which are interlaced with the heads of the *sublimis*, *profundus*, *palmaris*, &c. ; consequently this muscle not only arises from the internal condyle, but also from the intermuscular partitions (as from that betwixt it and the *sublimis*) : it forms a long tendon, which, becoming at last very small and round, runs under the annular ligament : it runs in a gutter peculiar to itself ; but in this canal it is moveable, not fixed : it then expands a very little, and is inserted into the metacarpal bone of the fore-finger, also touching that which supports the thumb.

Its use is chiefly to bend the wrist upon the radius. But when we consider its oblique direction, it will also be very evident that it must have some effect in pronation ; and this, like many of the muscles of the fore-arm, although designed for a different purpose, will also have some effect in bending the fore-arm at the elbow-joint.

**LXXXVI.** The *FLEXOR CARPI ULNARIS* is a long muscle, much like the former ; but as its course is along the radius or upper edge of the fore-arm, this runs along the ulna or lower edge.

It comes off tendinous from the inner condyle of the *os humeri*, by the common tendon of all the muscles : it has also, like the *pronator teres*, a second head (*viz.* from the *olecranon* process of the ulna), which arises fleshy ; and as the radial nerve passes betwixt the heads of the *pronator teres*, the ulnar nerve perforates this muscle betwixt its heads. The *flexor ulnaris* passes all along the flat side of the ulna, betwixt the edge of the *sublimis* and the ridge of the bone : and here it has a third origin of oblique fibres, which come from the edge of the ulna two-thirds of its length. Its tendon begins early on its upper part, by which it has somewhat the form of a *peniform* muscle. It has still a fourth origin from the intermuscular partition, which stands betwixt it and the *sublimis flexor* ; and is also attached to the internal surface of the common fascia of the arm. Its long tendon is at last inserted into the *os pisiforme* at its forepart, where it sends off a thin tendinous expansion to cover and strengthen the annular ligament ; and also a thin expansion towards the side of the little finger to cover its muscles.

This is to balance the *flexor radialis* : acting together, they bend the wrist with great strength ; and when this acts alone, it pulls the edge of the hand sidewise.

**LXXXVII.** The *FLEXOR DIGITORUM SUBLIMIS*, is named *SUBLIMIS* from being the more superficial of the two muscles ; *PERFORATUS*, from its tendon being perforated by the tendon

of that which lies immediately below. It lies betwixt the palmaris longus and flexor ulnaris. It is a large fleshy muscle ; and not only its tendons, but its belly also, is divided into four fasciculi, corresponding with the fingers which it is to serve.

It arises from the internal condyle, along with the other four muscles ; from the ligament of the elbow joint ; from the coronoid process of the ulna ; and from the upper part of the radius, at the sharp ridge. By these origins it becomes very fleshy and thick ; and a little above the middle of the fore-arm divides into four fleshy portions, each of which ends in a slender tendon. The tendons begin at the middle of the fore-arm or near the division ; but they continue to be joined to each other by fleshy fibres some way down : and indeed the fleshy fibres cease only when it is about to pass under the annular ligament of the wrist. At this place a cellular stringy tissue connects the tendons with each other, and with the tendons of the profundus ; but after they have passed under the ligament, they expand towards the fingers which they are to serve. They each begin to be extended and flattened, and to become thinner ; they begin to appear cleft ; they pass by the edge of the metacarpal bones, and escape from under the palmar aponeurosis : and where it ends, viz. at the root of the fingers, a tendinous sheath or bursa begins, in which these tendons continue to be inclosed.

The tendons are fairly split just opposite to the top of the first phalanx : and it is at this point that the tendons of the deeper muscle pass through this splitting. The flattened tendon parts into two, and its opposite edges diverge ; the back edges meet behind the tendons of the profundus, and form a kind of sheath for them to pass in ; and then they proceed forward along the second phalanx, into the forepart of which they are implanted.

This muscle is exceedingly strong. Its chief office is to bend the second joint of the fingers upon the first, and the first upon the metacarpal bone. And in proportion to the number of joints that a muscle passes over, its offices must be more numerous ; for this one not only moves the fingers on the metacarpus, but the hand upon the wrist, and even the fore-arm upon the arm.

**LXXXVIII.** The FLEXOR DIGITORUM PROFUNDUS vel PERFORANS, has the same origin, insertion, and use, insomuch that the description of the last is applicable to this muscle in almost every point. This is of a lower stratum of muscles ; it lies deeper, and under the former, whence its name : and by this deeper situation it is excluded from any hold upon the tubercle of the humerus.

It arises from the ulna, along its internal surface ; from the whole surface of the interosseous ligament ; and also in some degree from the intermuscular membrane, which separates this from the sublimis.

This muscle is small, we may say compressed, above ; but it grows pretty strong and fleshy near the middle of the arm ; it divides above the middle of the arm into four portions, corresponding with the four fingers ; and it is about the middle of the arm that the tendons begin, and continue to receive muscular fibres from behind, all down to the ligament of the wrist. At the wrist these tendons are tied to each other, and to the tendons of the sublimis, by loose tendinous and cellular fibres. They diverge from each other, after passing under the annular ligament ; and going along in the hollow of the bones, under the tendons of the sublimis, they first pass through the bridges formed by the palmar aponeurosis, then enter the sheaths of the fingers, and finally pass through the perforations of the sublimis, a little below the second joint of the fingers. At this place the perforating tendons are smaller and rounder for their easy passage ; and after passing they again expand and become flat. They also above this appear themselves split in the middle, without any evident purpose ; they pass the second phalanx, and are fixed into the root of the third. And every thing that is said of the use of the sublimis may be applied to this, only that its tendons go to the furthest joint.

**LXXXIX. LUMBRICALES.**—I shall here describe, as a natural appendage of the profundus, the LUMBRICALES muscles, which are four small and round muscles, resembling the earth-worm in form and size ; whence they have their name. They arise in the palm of the hand, from the tendons of the profundus, and are therefore under the sublimis, and under the palmar aponeurosis. They are small muscles, with long and very delicate tendons. Their fleshy bellies are about the length of the metacarpal bones, and their small tendons stretch over two joints, to reach the middle of the second phalanx. The first lumbricalis is larger than the second, and the two first larger than the two last.

The first arises from the side of the tendon of the fore-fingers, which is next to the radius ; the others arise in the forks of the tendons ; and though they rise more from that tendon which is next the ulna, yet they have attachments to both. Their tendons begin below the first joint of each finger ; they run very slender along the first phalanx, and they gradually wind around the bone ; so that though the muscles are in the palm of the hand, the tendons are implanted in the back parts of the fingers ; and their final connection is not with the bend-

ing tendons of the *sublimis* and *profundus*, but with tendons of the *extensor digitorum*, and with the tendons of the external *interossei* muscles, and with which they are united by tendinous threads.

Hence their use is very evident : they bend the first joint, and extend the second ; they perform alternately either office : when the extensors act, they assist them by extending the second phalanx or joint : when the flexors act, and keep the first and second joint bended, the extending effect of these smaller muscles is prevented, and all their contraction must be directed so as to affect the first joint only, which they then bend.

They are chiefly useful in performing the quick short motions, and so they are named by Cowper the *musculi fidicinales*, as chiefly used in playing upon musical instruments.

XC. The *FLEXOR LONGUS POLLICIS* is placed by the side of the *sublimis* or *perforatus*, and lies under the *extensor*, or rather *extensores carpi*. It runs along the inner side of the *radius*, whence chiefly it arises.

Its origin is from all the internal face of the *radius* downwards ; from the place where the *biceps* is inserted, and from the *interosseous ligament*, all the length down to the origin of the *pronator quadratus*, nor does it even stop here ; for the tendon continues to receive fleshy slips all the way down to the entry, under the *ligament of the wrist*. It has often also another head which arises from the *condyle of the humerus* and the forepart of the *ulna* ; which head is tendinous, and joins near the top of that origin which comes from the *radius*.

It becomes tendinous very high, i. e. above the middle of the arm ; and its small tendon passes under the *annular ligament*, glides in the hollow of the *os metacarpi pollicis*, and separates the short flexor into two heads ; passes betwixt the two *sesamoid bones* in the first joint of the thumb, and running in the tendinous sheath, it reaches at last the end of the farthest bone, to be inserted into the very point of it.

There is sometimes sent off from the lower part of the muscle a small fleshy slip, which joins its tendon to the *indicator tendon of the sublimis*.

Its uses, we conjecture, are exactly as those of the other flexors, to bend the last phalanx on the first, the first on the *metacarpal bones*, and occasionally the wrist upon the *radius* and *ulna*.

XCI. The *PRONATOR QUADRATUS*, so named from its shape and form, is one of the most simple in its action, since it serves but one direct purpose, viz. turning the *radius* upon the *ulna*.

It lies flat upon the *interosseous ligament*, upon the fore part of the arm, about two inches above the wrist ; it is nearly



square, and is about three inches in length and breadth. Its fibres go obliquely across, betwixt the radius and ulna. It arises from the edge of the ulna, adheres to the interosseous ligament, and goes to be implanted into the edge of the radius.— It turns the radius upon the ulna; and this muscle, and in some degree also the flexor pollicis, are the only muscles which do not come fairly under that arrangement by which I have endeavoured to explain the muscles of the fore-arm.

#### EXTENSORS.

The muscles which lie upon the outer side of the fore-arm, the supinators and the extensors of the fingers and wrist, all arise from one point, the external condyle of the humerus, and are all delivered in this list :

The EXTENSOR CARPI RADIALIS LONGIOR, } all extend the  
The EXTENSOR CARPI RADIALIS BREVIOR, } wrist.

The EXTENSOR CARPI ULNARIS,

The SUPINATOR LONGUS.—turns the palm upwards.

The EXTENSOR COMMUNIS DIGITORUM,—extends all the fingers, and unfolds the hand.

The EXTENSOR PRIMI INTERNODII POLLICIS, } extend the se-  
The EXTENSOR SECUNDI INTERNODII POLLICIS, } veral joints of  
the thumb.

The EXTENSOR TERTII INTERNODII POLLICIS,

The EXTENSOR PRIMI DIGITI, vel INDICATOR,—extends the fore-finger.

The EXTENSOR MINIMI DIGITI, vel AURICULARIS,—extends the little finger.

All these muscles arise from one point, the external condyle. They all roll the radius outwards, or extend the wrist, or extend the fingers. As the muscles which bend need more fibres and greater strength, they arise from the internal condyle, which is the larger; they lie in a deep hollow, for the bones of the fore-arm bend to conceal them, and they form a very thick fleshy cushion; but the extensors requiring less power, arise from the shorter process of the outer condyle, are on the convex side of the arm, and are thin, having few fibres: for though there is a large mass of flesh on the inner side of the arm, forming two big flexors, there is only a thin layer on the outer side of the arm, forming one flat and weak extensor.

**XCII. SUPINATOR RADII LONGUS.** This muscle forms the very edge of the fore-arm: it arises by many short tendinous fibres from the ridge of the humerus, above the external condyle, which origin is fully two inches in length above the con-



dyle. It also arises from the inter-muscular membrane; and, as it stands on the very edge of the fore-arm, it runs betwixt the flexor and extensor radialis. It becomes thicker as it passes the elbow-joint, and there gives a very peculiar form to the arm: it then becomes smaller, and forms a flat tendon, which is quite naked of flesh from the middle of the radius, or a little below, down to the wrist. This tendon becomes gradually smaller till it reaches the wrist, where, expanding a little, it is inserted into the radius, just in the tuber of its lower head.

Its use is perhaps chiefly as a supinator, but it is placed just upon the edge of the arm: it stands as a sort of intermedium betwixt the two sets of muscles; it is fixed indeed rather upon the internal surface of the radius; but yet when the supination is complete, when the hand is rolled very much outward, it will become a pronator.

It is all at once supinator and pronator, and, for a most evident reason, a flexor also of the fore-arm; since its origin is at least two inches up the humerus, above the joint of the elbow.

**XCIII.** The *EXTENSOR CARPI RADIALIS LONGIOR* has the additional name of longior or primus, to distinguish it from the next. It is almost entirely covered with the last muscle, the supinator.

It arises from the ridge of the humerus above the external condyle, and just under the origin of the supinator; it descends all along the back of the radius, and after having become a thick fleshy belly, it degenerates a little lower than the middle of the radius into a thin flat tendon, which becomes slender and small as it descends; and turning a little more towards the back of the radius, it then passes over the wrist, and goes along with the tendon of the extensor breviar, under the annular ligament, passing in a groove of the radius; at last it is inserted into the root of the metacarpal bone of the fore-finger, in that edge next the thumb.

It is chiefly an extensor of the wrist: in pronation, it pulls the wrist directly backwards; in supination, it moves the hand sidewise. It is also a pronator when the hand is turned back to the greatest degree; and from its origin, high upon the shoulder-bone, it is also a flexor of the fore-arm.

**XCIV.** *EXTENSOR CARPI RADIALIS BREVIOR*. This muscle is almost the same in description, name, and use, with the former. It arises from the external condyle; and here a common tendon for many muscles is formed, just as in the internal condyle; for from this point arise the extensor brevis, extensor digitorum, extensor minimi digiti, extensor carpi ulnaris.

The extensor carpi radialis breviar arises from the outer con-

dyle of the humerus, by the common tendon ; it also arises from the aponeurosis, which lies betwixt the extensor digitorum and this ; it grows a pretty large fleshy belly, and begins like the last to be tendinous below the middle of the radius ; so that this muscle continues fleshy lower than the last one.— Its tendon is also much larger and thicker ; it runs under the annular ligament, in the same channel with the extensor longior ; it expands a little before its insertion, which is into the fore part of the metacarpal bone of the middle finger, a little towards that edge, which is next to the radius : some little fibres pass from this tendon to the metacarpal bone of the fore-finger.

All that was said concerning the extensor longus may be said of this ; for all the three last muscles lie so ambiguously on the edge of the arm, that though they are regularly supinators and extensors, they become pronators and flexors in certain positions of the hand.

**XCV. EXTENSOR CARPI ULNARIS.**—By the name merely of this muscle we know its extent and course, its origin, insertion, and use.

It is one of the muscles which belong to the common tendon, arising from the external tubercle of the os humeri : it lies along the ulnar edge of the arm ; it arises also from the intermuscular membrane, which separates this from the extensor digitorum and the extensor digiti minimi ; and chiefly it is attached to the internal surface of the common sheath. It arises also from the face and edge of the ulna the whole way down ; its tendon begins in the middle of its length, and is accompanied all down to the wrist with feather-like fleshy fibres.

It is fixed into the outside of the lower head of the metacarpal bone of the little finger.

Its use is to extend the carpus. And it may be now observed, that when the two extensors of the wrist, the radialis and ulnaris, act, the hand is bent directly backwards ; that when the flexor radialis and extensor radialis act together, they bend the thumb towards the radius ; and that when the flexor ulnaris and extensor ulnaris act, they bend the little-finger towards the ulna, as in cutting with the edge of the hand : thus a circle may be described by acting with those in succession.

**XCVI. EXTENSOR DIGITORUM COMMUNIS.**—This muscle corresponds with the sublimis and profundus, and antagonises them, and resembles them in shape as in use. It covers the middle of the fore-arm at its back, and lies betwixt the extensor radialis secundus and the extensor minimi digiti.

Its origin is chiefly from the outer condyle, by a tendon common to it, with the extensor carpi breviar, and also from the intermuscular membrane, which separates it on one side from

the extensor minimi digiti, and on the other from the extensor carpi brevis, and also from the back part of the common sheath. It grows very fleshy and thick as it descends, and about the middle of the fore-arm it divides itself into three slips of very equal size. But though the tendons begin so high, they continue, like those of the flexors, to receive fleshy penniform fibres all down, almost to the annular ligament. These tendons are tied together by a loose web of fibres; and being gathered together, they pass under the ligament in one common and appropriated channel. Having passed this ligament, they diverge and grow flat and large; and they all have the appearance of being split by a perpendicular line. They are quite different from the flexor tendons in this, that they are all tied to each other by cross bands; for a little above the knuckles, or first joint of the fingers, all the tendons are joined on the back of the hand by slips from the little-finger to the ring, from the ring to the mid-finger, and from that to the fore-finger. So that it seems to be one ligament running quite across the back of the hand. It would be foolish to describe them more minutely; for the cross bands change their places, and vary in every subject, and in some they are not found.

After this the tendons pass over the heads of the metacarpal bones, along the first phalanx of the fingers; and being there joined by the tendons of the interossei and lumbricales, they altogether form a strong tendinous sheath, which surrounds the back of the fingers.

Now, it is to be remembered, that this muscle serves only for the fore, middle, and ring fingers: that if it moves the little finger, it is only by a small slip of tendinous fibres, which it often gives off at the general divergence, but sometimes not; sometimes it gives one slip, sometimes two, often none at all. And so the little finger has its proper extensor quite distinct from this.

The use of this muscle is to extend all the fingers; and when they are fixed, it will assist the extensors of the wrist, as in striking backwards with the knuckles. And since there is but one extensor muscle, the cross tendons are a provision against the bad consequences of any single tendon being cut across.

XCVII. The *EXTENSOR MINIMI DIGITI*, named also *AURICULARIS* from its turning up the little finger, as in picking the ear, should really be described with the last muscle. If we see the origin, course, and use of this muscle exactly the same with the common extensor, why should we not reckon it as a slip of the common extensor, appropriated to the little finger?

Its origin is from the outer condyle, along with the other tendons. It also adheres so closely both to the tendinous par-

tions, and to the internal surface of the common fascia, that it is not easily separated in dissection. It begins small, with a conical kind of head; it gradually increases in size; it is pretty thick near the wrist; it adheres all along to the common extensors of the fingers; it begins to be tendinous about an inch above the head of the ulna; it continues to receive fleshy fibres down to the annular ligament; and it passes under the annular ligament in a channel peculiar to itself, which is indeed the best reason for making this a distinct muscle.

This channel has a very oblique direction; and the tendon, like all the others, expands greatly in escaping from the ligament of the wrist. It is connected with the other tendons in the manner I have described. Close to the wrist, it is connected with the tendon of the ring-finger, by a slip which comes from it; and at the knuckle, and below it, it is again connected with the tendons both of the ring-finger and of all the others by the cross bands or expansions.

Whatever has been said of the use of the last muscle is to be understood of this; as its extending its proper finger, assisting the others by its communicating band, and in its extending the wrist when the fist is clenched. Its insertion is into the back of the second joint of the little-finger, along with the interossei and lumbricales. Its tendon has also a small slit; for the head of the proper extensor of the little-finger, and the heads of the common extensors of the others, are inserted into the top of the second phalanx, just under the first joint. They send off at the sides tendinous slips, which, passing along the edges of the bones, do, in conjunction with the tendons of the interossei and lumbricales, form a split tendon, which meets by two curves at the foot of the last bone of the fingers to move the last joint.

XCVIII. The EXTENSOR PRIMUS POLLICIS, is the shortest of the three extensors of the thumb. It is named by Albinus and others ABDUCTOR LONGUS; but since every muscle that extends the thumb must pull it away from the hand, every one of them might be with equal propriety named abductors.

The extensor primus lies just on the fore edge of the radius, crossing it obliquely.

It arises about the middle of the fore-arm, from the edge of the ulna, which gives rise to the interosseous membrane itself, and also from the convex surface of the radius.

The fleshy belly commonly divides itself into two or three, sometimes four fleshy slips, with distinct tendons; which crossing the radius obliquely, slip under the external ligament of the carpus, and are implanted into the root of the first metacarpal bone, or rather of the first phalanx of the thumb, to-



wards the radial edge ; so that its chief use is to extend the thumb, and to incline it a little outwards towards the radius. It must also, like the extensors of the fingers, be an extensor of the wrist : and it evidently must, from its oblique direction, assist in supination.

**XCIX.** The *EXTENSOR SECUNDUS POLLICIS* is longer than the first. It is named by Douglas the *extensor secundi internodii pollicis* ; by Albinus the *extensor minor pollicis*.

This muscle lies close by the former. It arises just below it, from the same edge of the radius, and from the same surface of the interosseous membrane ; it runs along with it in the same bending course ; and, in short, it resembles it so much, that Winslow has reckoned it as part of the same muscle.

Its origin is from the edge of the ulna, the interosseous ligament, and the radius. Its small round tendon passes sometimes in a peculiar channel, sometimes with the *extensor primus*. It goes over the metacarpal bone of the thumb ; it expands upon the bone of the first phalanx ; and it is inserted just under the second joint.

It extends the second bone of the thumb upon the first ; it extends the first bone also ; and it extends the wrist, and by its oblique direction, contributes to supination.

**C.** *EXTENSOR TERTIUS POLLICIS*.—This which bends the third joint is called in common the *extensor longus pollicis*. And here is a third muscle, which, in form, and place, and function, corresponds with the two former ones.

Its origin is from the ridge of the ulna, and from the upper face of the interosseous membrane : and it is a longer muscle than the others ; for it begins high, near the top of the ulna, and continues the whole way down that bone, and is very fleshy and thick. It is penniform all the way down to the ligament of the wrist ; and its small tendon passes the ligament in a peculiar ring. This tendon appears split, like those of the fingers ; it goes along the ulnar side of the first bone of the thumb, reaches the second, and is implanted there by a small slip of tendon ; and being expanded, it still goes forward, to be inserted once more into the third bone of the thumb at its root.

Its use is evident after describing the others ; for we have only to add another joint for motion. It moves the last joint of the thumb, then the second, then its metacarpal bone upon the carpus ; and if that be held firm, it will extend the carpus ; and it will, in its turn, contribute to supination, though in a less degree than the others.

**CI.** *INDICATOR*.—The *EXTENSOR INDICIS PROPRIUS* has

very nearly the same origin, and exactly the same course with the last, and lies by the side of it.

Its origin is from the ulna, by the side of the extensor longus pollicis. It has also some little attachments to the interosseous membrane. It, like the others, is feathered with fibres in an oblique direction down to the ligament of the wrist.

This muscle lies under the extensor communis digitorum ; its tendon passes along with the common tendon, through the annular ligament ; and near the top of the metacarpal bone, or about the place of the common junctions of all these tendons, this one joins with the indicator tendon of the common extensor.

Its use is to extend all the three joints of the fore-finger, assisting the common extensor to point with that finger, to act independently of the common extensor, and to help to extend the wrist when the fingers are closed.

CII. The SUPINATOR BREVIS is an internal muscle, which forms, with the muscles of the thumb, of the fore-finger, and mid-finger, a kind of second layer ; and this one lies concealed, much as the pronator quadratus does, on the inner side of the fore-arm. It is a short muscle, but very thick and fleshy, and of great power.

It arises from the outer tubercle of the os humeri, and from the edge of the ulna, and from the interosseous ligament : it is then lapped over the radius, and is inserted into its ridge ; so that this supinator brevis is very directly opposed to the pronator teres, the insertion of the two muscles almost meeting on the edge of the radius. It is almost circumscribed to one use, that of performing the rotation of the radius outwards ; but perhaps it may also have some little effect in extending the ulna and in assisting the anconeus.

## MUSCLES SEATED ON THE HAND.

BESIDES those muscles which bend and extend the fingers, there are other smaller ones seated on the hand itself, which are chiefly for assisting the former, and for quicker motions ; but most especially for the lateral motions of the thumb and little-finger ; and which are therefore named ADDUCTORS, ABDUCTORS and FLEXORS, of the little-finger and thumb.

That they are chiefly useful in assisting and strengthening the larger muscles, is evident from this, that much power being required for flexion, we find many of these smaller muscles added in the palm of the hand ; but as there is little power of extension needed, little more than what will merely balance

the power of the flexors, there are no small muscles on the back of the hand, the *interossei externi* excepted, which are chiefly useful in spreading the fingers.

The short muscles in the palm of the hand are for bending the thumb, the fore-finger, and the little-finger : and the little-finger and the thumb have each of them three distinct muscles ; one to pull the thumb away from the hand, one to bend it, and one to pull it towards the hand, opposing it to the rest of the fingers, and so of the little-finger, which has also three muscles.

#### ARRANGEMENT OF THESE MUSCLES.

1. LUMBRICALES, which bend all the fingers.
2. { ABDUCTOR POLLICIS, } bending the thumb and carry-  
 { FLEXOR AND OPPONENS } ing it away from the other fin-  
 { POLLICIS, } gers, or towards the palm of the  
 { ADDUCTOR POLLICIS, } hand.
3. { ABDUCTOR INDICIS, } which carries the fore-finger to-  
 { } wards the thumb.
4. { ABDUCTOR MINIMI DIGITI, } which bend the little-finger,  
 { ADDUCTOR MINIMI DIGITI, } and carry it like the thumb  
 { FLEXOR MINIMI DIGITI, } outwards or inwards.
5. { INTEROSSEI, } which are small muscles, lying betwixt the  
 { } metacarpal bones, and assisting the lum-  
 { } bricales in bending the fingers.

All the muscles of the thumb are seated on the inside, to form the great ball of the thumb ; and it is not easy at first to conceive how muscles, having so much the same place, should perform such opposite motions ; yet it is easily explained by the slight variation of their places ; for the ABDUCTOR arises from the annular ligament near the radius, and goes towards the back of the thumb. The FLEXOR arises deeper from bones of the carpus, and from the inside of the ligament, and goes to the inside of the thumb. The ABDUCTOR arises from the metacarpal of the mid-finger, and goes to the inner edge of the thumb.

CIII. The ABDUCTOR POLLICIS is covered only by the common integuments. It begins a little tendinous from the outside of the annular ligament, just under the thumb, and by some little fibres from the os scaphoides ; and from the tendon of the long abductor or extensor primus, it bends gradually round the thumb, and is at last inserted in the back of the first joint, just above the head of the metacarpal bone. But it does not stop here ; for this flat tendon is now expanded into

the form of a fascia, which, surrounding the first bone of the thumb, goes forward upon its back part, quite to the end, along with the common tendon of the extensor. This muscle, like the others, is covered by a thin expansion from the tendon of the palmaris, as well as by the common integuments.

Its only use is to pull the thumb from the fingers, and to extend the second bone upon the first.

Albinus describes a second muscle of the same name, having the same course, origin, insertion, and use : it also arises from the outer side of the ligament of the wrist, and is fixed into the side of the thumb, and lies upon the inside of the former muscle.

These two are inserted into the first bone of the thumb ; but the next is inserted into the metacarpal bone.

**CIV.** The *OPPONENS POLLICIS*, is often called the metacarpal of the thumb. It is placed on the inside, and implanted into the side of the thumb : its office is to draw the thumb across the other fingers, as in clenching the fist ; and from its thus opposing the fingers, it has its name of *opponens*.

It lies immediately under the last described muscle, and is like it in all but its insertion.

It arises from the *os scaphoides*, and from the ligament of the wrist. It is inserted into the edge and fore part of the metacarpal bone of the thumb : and its use is to turn the metacarpal bone upon its axis, and to oppose the fingers ; or, in other words, to bend the thumb : for I can make no distinction. Therefore this muscle and the next, which lies close upon it, may be fairly considered as but two different heads of one thick short muscle.

**CV.** The *FLEXOR BREVIS POLLICIS* is a two-headed muscle, placed quite on the inside of the thumb, betwixt the forefinger and the thumb, and extends obliquely across the two first metacarpal bones. It is divided into two heads by the long flexor of the thumb.

The edge of this muscle lies in close contact with the edge of the last, or *opponens* ; and indeed they may fairly be considered as one large muscle surrounding the basis of the thumb.

One head arises from the *os trapezium* or base of the thumb, and from the ligament of the wrist. The other head comes from the *os magnum*, from many of the other bones of the carpus, and from the ligaments which unite them.

The first head is the smaller one ; it terminates by a pretty considerable tendon in the first sesamoid bone. The second head runs the same course : it is implanted chiefly in the second sesamoid bone, and also into the edge of the first bone of



the thumb close by it. The second head is exceedingly muscular and strong : the heads are completely separated from each other by the tendon of the flexor longus passing betwixt them.

The office of this muscle is to bend the first joint upon the second, and the metacarpal bone upon the carpus : and indeed the office of this, and of the opponens, is the same. It is in the tendons of this double-headed muscle that the sesamoid bones are found.

**CVI.** The **ADDUCTOR POLLICIS** arises from the metacarpal bone of the middle-finger, where it has a flat extended base. It goes from this directly across the metacarpal bone of the fore-finger to meet the thumb. It is of a triangular shape, and flat : its base is at the metacarpal bone ; its apex is at the thumb : it is inserted into the lower part or root of the first phalanx : its edge ranges with the edge of the flexor brevis : it concurs with it in office ; and its more peculiar use is to draw the thumb towards the fore-finger, as in pinching.

Thus do these muscles, covering the root of the thumb, form that large and convex ball of flesh which acts so strongly in almost every thing we do with the hand. The ball of the thumb is fairly surrounded : it is almost one mass, having one office : but as the deltoides will, in some circumstances, pull the arm downwards, some portions of this fleshy mass pull the thumb outwards obliquely ; some directly inwards : but the great mass of muscle bends the thumb, and opposes it to the hand ; and as this one muscle is to oppose the whole hand, the ball of flesh is very powerful and thick.

The short muscles of the little-finger surround its root, just as those of the thumb surround its ball.

**CVII.** The **ADDUCTOR MINIMI DIGITI** is a thin fleshy muscle, which forms the cushion on the lower edge of the hand, just under the little-finger. It is an external muscle : it arises from the os pisiforme, and from the outer end of the annular ligament. It is inserted laterally into the first bone of the little finger ; but a production of it still goes forward to the second bone of the little-finger.

Its use is to spread the little-finger sidewise, and perhaps to assist the flexors.

**CVIII.** The **FLEXOR PARVUS MINIMI DIGITI** is a small thin muscle which rises by the side of the last, and runs the same course, with nearly the same insertion.

Its origin is from the ligament of the wrist, and in part from the crooked process of the cuneiform bone. Its use is to bend the little-finger. And indeed the office and place of both is so much the same, that I have marked the last as a flexor ; and

the little difference there is, is only that this performs a more direct flexion.

CIX. The ADDUCTOR MINIMI DIGITI is sometimes called the metacarpal of the little-finger. It lies immediately under the former muscle. Its origin is from the hook of the cuneiform bone and the adjoining part of the carpal ligament.

It is inserted into the outside of the metacarpal bone, which it reaches by turning round it. Its use is to put the little-finger antagonist to the others : it is to this finger what the opponens is to the thumb. It also, by thus bending one bone of the metacarpus, affects the whole, increases the hollow and external convexity of the carpus, and forms what is called Diogenes's cup.

CX. The ABDUCTOR INDICIS is a flat muscle of considerable breadth, lying behind the adductor pollicis, and exactly resembling it, being like the second layer. It arises from the os trapezium, and from the first bone of the thumb ; and it is inserted into the back part of the first bone of the finger, and pulls the fore-finger towards the thumb.

The interossei are situated betwixt the metacarpal bones. They are small, round, and neat, something like the lumbricales in shape and size. Three are found in the palm, which bend the fingers, and draw their edges a little towards the thumb ; four are found on the back of the hand, for extending the fingers.

CXI. The INTEROSSEI INTERNI arise from betwixt the metacarpal bones. They are also attached to the sides of these bones. They send their tendons twisting round the sides to the backs of these bones ; and they are inserted along with the tendons of the lumbricales and extensors into the back of the finger. They are thus flexors of the first joint, and extensors of the second joint, as the lumbricales are.

CXII. The INTEROSSEI EXTERNI are four in number. They arise, like the interni, from the metacarpal bones and their interstices, and from the ligaments of the carpal bones. They are peculiar in having each two heads, therefore named interossei bicipites. They join their tendons to those of the extensor and lumbricales : they have therefore one common office with them ; that is, extending all the joints of the fingers. Many have chosen to describe the origin and insertion with most particular care, marking the degree of obliquity, and ascertaining precisely their office, and giving particular names to each, as prior indicis for the first external : all which I forbear mentioning, because they must be more liable to perplex than likely to assist the student : if we but remember their common place and office, it is enough. The tendons of the flexor mus-

cles bend round the finger, along with the interossei and lumbricales, for a surer hold ; consequently the tendons of the long flexors, of the lumbricales, of the interossei interni, of the extensors, and of the interossei externi, meet upon the backs of the fingers ; which are by them covered with a very strong web of tendinous fibres.

## CHAP. IV.

### MUSCLES OF RESPIRATION ; OR, OF THE RIBS.

THE whole back is clothed with strong muscles ; and all its holes, irregularities, and spines, are crossed with many smaller ones. These muscles are related either to the arm, to the ribs, or to the spine, i. e. the vertebræ, whose motions they perform ; and from this we obtain an arrangement not inconsistent with the regular order of their office, and yet corresponding with the best order of dissection.

The first or uppermost layer of muscles, viz. the trapezius, the *musculus patientiæ*, the rhomboides, the *latissimus dorsi*, belong to the arm. The serrated muscles, which lie next under these, are the muscles of respiration, and belong to the ribs : while the *splenius* and *complexus*, the muscles of the neck, the *longissimus dorsi*, *sacro lumbalis*, and the *quadratus lumborum*, which are muscles of the back, and the innumerable smaller muscles which lie betwixt the vertebræ, belong entirely to the spine.

Respiration is indeed performed chiefly by the muscles of the belly, that is, in ordinary and easy breathing. In high breathing, the difficulty is relieved by the co-operation of almost all the muscles of the trunk ; of which there is scarcely one that may not assist in some slight degree. But yet the muscles of the abdomen have many other offices. And the muscles of the spine, and of the scapula, again, belong properly to the arm and trunk ; and therefore I call those the muscles of respiration by which the ribs are moved in breathing, and which have no direct relation to almost any other motion but merely that of the ribs.

The muscles which are appropriated to the ribs, performing no other motion, are,

- |                                    |   |  |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. The SERRATUS POSTICUS SUPERIOR, | } | which comes from the neck, and lies fleshy over the ribs, to pull them upwards.  |
| 2. The SERRATUS INFERIOR POSTICUS, |   | which comes from the lumbar vertebræ, and lies flat on the lower part of the back, to pull the ribs downwards.                             |
| 3. The LEVATORES COSTARUM,         | } | which are twelve flat muscles, arising from the transverse process of each vertebra, and going down to the rib below, they raise the ribs. |
| 4. The INTERCOSTAL MUSCLES,        |   | which lie betwixt the ribs, and fill up all the space betwixt rib and rib; they also raise the ribs.                                       |

And there may be added to these, that muscle which, lying under the sternum and within the thorax, is called *triangularis sterni*, and pulls the ribs downwards.

**CXIII.** The *SERRATUS SUPERIOR POSTICUS* lies flat upon the side of the neck, under the *trapezius* and *rhomboides*, and over the *splenius* and *complexus* muscles. It arises by a flat and shining tendon from the spines of the three lower vertebræ of the neck and the two uppermost of the back. It goes obliquely downwards under the upper corner of the scapula, and is inserted into the second, third, and fourth ribs, by three neat fleshy tongues.

The *ligamentum nuchæ* is chiefly formed by the meeting of the *trapezii* muscles; and the flat tendons of these upper serrated muscles help to form it.

They are purely levators of the ribs: their effect upon the vertebræ, if they have any, must be very slight.

**CXIV.** The *SERRATUS INFERIOR POSTICUS* is a very broad, thin, muscle, situated at the lower part of the back, under the *latissimus dorsi*, but above the *longissimus dorsi* muscle.

It arises in common with the *latissimus dorsi*, from the spines of the two or three lower vertebræ of the back, and the three or four uppermost vertebræ of the loins. Their origin, like that of the *latissimus*, is by a thin tendinous expansion: it soon becomes fleshy, and, dividing into three, sometimes four, fleshy straps or tongues, each of them is inserted separately into the ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth lower ribs, near their cartilages. So that this muscle, spreading so wide out from the centre of motion, has vast power; for it has the whole length of the rib as a lever.

Its office is to pull the ribs downwards and backwards; the



effect of which must be to compress the chest, and in certain circumstances to turn the spine.

CXV. The *LEVATORES COSTARUM* are twelve muscles on each side, for the direct purpose of lifting the ribs ; they lie above or upon the ribs, at their angles, and are thence named by some *SUPRA COSTALES*.

They are almost a portion of the external intercostal muscles. The first of the levators arises from the transverse process of the last vertebra of the neck, and goes down to be inserted into the first rib, near its tuberosity ; and so all that follow arise from a transverse process, and go to the rib below, being very small and tendinous at either end. But the three last levators arise from the second process above the rib to which they belong. They pass one rib to go into the one below it : they are consequently twice as long as the nine first are ; and are therefore named *LEVATORES COSTARUM LONGIORES* from the ninth downwards.

Thus the levatores costarum are a succession of small muscles, arising from the transverse processes of the vertebræ, and going to the angles of the ribs ; beginning from the last vertebra of the neck, and ending with the last but one of the back. They lie under the *longissimus dorsi* and *sacro lumbalis* ; and often they have connections with these muscles, sometimes very close.

CXVI. The *INTERCOSTALES* are two rows of muscles which lie betwixt the ribs : one row is external, the other internal. The *EXTERNAL INTERCOSTALS* run from the spine towards the sternum, having their fibres directed from behind forwards, and stopping at the cartilages of the ribs. The *INTERNAL*, again, begin from the sternum, and go towards the spine ; they have their fibres directed backwards, and they stop at the angle of the ribs ; the reason for which might be given, were it worth our while to stop for an explanation.

These two rows were thought to antagonize each other ; the one to pull the ribs downwards, the other to raise them. But I shall not stop to explain this, nor to refute it ; it is sufficient to declare their true use, which is (both external and internal) to raise the ribs and assist inspiration.\*

The ninth, tenth, eleventh and twelfth ribs, have a freer motion ; and it appears to me that this is the true use of the levatores longiores ; and for the same reason we find, that from the

\* I remember, many years ago, to have heard Dr. Monro explain the office of the intercostal muscles by a diagram, deducing from that argument, the more powerful effect of all muscles having oblique fibres.

sixth rib and downwards there are certain slips of the internal intercostals, which pass over one rib and go to the second below ; and as the levatores longiores were called supra-costales, these have been named INFRA-COSTALES, and COSTARUM DEPRESSORES PROPRII. They were discovered by Verhein, and bear his name : they were explained as depressors of the ribs by Haller ; but they are little different from the intercostals in form, and not at all in office, for they raise the ribs along with the intercostal muscles.

CXVII. The TRIANGULARIS STERNI, OR STERNO COSTALIS, is a depressor of the ribs ; an internal muscle lying chiefly on the inner surface of the sternum, and on the cartilages of the ribs. It is very generally considered as a triangular muscle on each side, but some consider it as three or four muscles under the title of sterno-costales.

There are four slips lying on the cartilages of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth ribs. The lower portion of the triangularis arises from the ensiform cartilage, and is inserted into the third or fourth rib ; the third arises from the middle of the sternum, and goes off from the edges of that bone to be inserted into the third rib.

The fourth or uppermost portion is often wanting ; it goes off in part also from the inner surface of the sternum, but more commonly from the third rib, and goes to the second rib.

In a dog they are much larger than in a man. Their office is to depress the ribs. And these portions are all conjoined at their roots, which gives the whole muscle the triangular shape.

The true uses of the intercostales, subcostales, and triangularis sterni, have been disputed ; but if the first rib be more fixed than the other ribs, then the intercostals proceeding downwards from the first rib must raise all the thorax ; and if the sternum be more fixed than the ribs, then the sterno-costales muscles going upwards from the sternum must pull down the ribs.

## CHAP. V.

## MUSCLES OF THE HEAD, NECK AND TRUNK.

## MUSCLES OF THE HEAD AND NECK.

THE serratus superior posticus being raised, the splenii come into view ; and the splenii being also lifted, the complexus is fully exposed.

CXVIII. SPLENIUS.—The two splenii are so named from their lying like surgical splints along the side of the neck ; both together they have the appearance of the letter Y ; the complexus being seen betwixt them in the upper part of the angle. They lie immediately under the trapezii, and above the complexi.

Each splenius is a flat and broad muscle, which arises from the spinous processes of the neck and back, and is implanted into the back part of the head. It arises from the four spines of the back and the five lower of the neck ; it parts from its fellow at the fifth vertebra of the neck, so as to show in the interstice two or three of the uppermost spines of the neck, with the upper part of the complexus muscle ; each splenius goes obliquely outwards, to be inserted into the occipital ridge, and all along to the root of the mastoid process. At the third vertebra of the neck, where the two splenii muscles part from each other, the tendons of the opposite splenii are closely connected both with each other, and with the common tendon, which is called ligamentum nuchæ.

This is the SPLENIUS CAPITIS ; but there is a portion of this same muscle which lies under this, and which has the same common origin, but which terminates by four or five distinct tendons in the transverse processes of the upper vertebra of the neck. This portion may be dissected apart ; and has been considered by many as a muscle, the SPLENIUS COLLI of Albinus ; who has distinguished as splenius capitis all that part arising from the spines of the neck, and implanted into the head, and as the splenius colli, all that part which arises from the vertebræ of the back, and is implanted into the transverse processes of the neck.

These splenii are the proper antagonists of the mastoid muscles. Both the splenii acting, pull the head directly back.

wards ; one acting turns the head and neck obliquely to one side ; one acting along with the corresponding mastoid muscle, lays the ear down upon the shoulder.

**CXIX.** The **COMPLEXUS** is named from the intricacy of its muscular and tendinous parts, which are mixed ; from the irregularity of its origins, which are very wide, it has the names of **COMPLEXUS-IMPLICATUS-TRIGLIMINUS**, by which the student is warned of the difficulty of understanding this muscle.

It lies immediately under the **splenius** ; arises by distinct tendons, with ten or more tendinous feet, from the transverse processes of the neck and back, from the four lower vertebræ of the neck, and from the seven uppermost of the back ; having also some less regular origins, as from two spines of the back, and from four oblique processes in the neck. It grows into a large muscle, which is not like the **splenius**, flat and regular, but thick, fleshy, composed of tendon and flesh mixed ; filling up the hollow by the sides of the spines of the neck, and terminating in a broad fleshy head, which is fixed under the ridge of the occipital bone ; and this is the part which is seen in the angle or forking of the **splenii**.

This may stand as the general description of the muscle considered as one : but **Albinus** has chosen to describe it as two muscles, under two different names, with a minuteness which, far from clearing the demonstration of any difficulties, makes it less distinct ; and, if any thing could complete the confusion, it was his humour of calling that **BIVENTER** which had been hitherto named **COMPLEXUS**, and naming the lower part of the muscle **COMPLEXUS**, though it never had been distinguished from the rest.

The **BIVENTER** of **ALBINUS** is the upper layer of the muscle, that part which appears in the fork of the **splenii** : and if we have hitherto named it **complexus**, from its mixture of tendons and flesh, it is particularly improper to transfer that name to another part of the muscle which is less complicated. This upper layer, the **BIVENTER CERVICIS**, arises by a large broad head from the occipital bone. In the centre of this belly there is a confusion of tendon ; then there is a middle tendon, about the middle of the arch of the neck ; and the lower part of the **biventer** arises from two parts ; first, by one slip of flesh from the two uppermost spines of the back ; and, secondly, by a larger fleshy portion which comes from the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh transverse processes of the back. And it is from the upper and lower fleshy heads, and the confused middle tendon, that it is called **biventer**.

The **COMPLEXUS** of **ALBINUS** lies below this one. It arises by three tendinous and fleshy slips from the three upper trans-



verse processes of the back : then it has four other slips from four oblique or articulating processes of the neck ; which various origins are gathered into one thick irregular fleshy belly, which is implanted into the occiput under the great head of the biventer, and mixed with it. This I have chosen to explain, lest the student should be embarrassed by false names ; referring him to the first paragraph for the true and simple description of this muscle.

CXX. *TRACHELO-MASTOIDEUS*\*.—The last muscle is often named *COMPLEXUS MAJOR*, and this *COMPLEXUS MINOR* ; but a fitter name is the *TRACHELO-MASTOIDEUS*, from its origin in the neck and its insertion in the mastoid process.

It has exactly, or nearly, the same origin and the same insertion with the splenius ; for it arises, not from the spines indeed, but from the transverse processes of the back and neck, and is implanted into the mastoid process.

Its origin is from the three first vertebræ of the back, and from the five lowest of the neck at their transverse processes. Its origins are by distinct tendons, and its belly is in some degree mixed of tendon and flesh ; whence its name of *complexus minor*. It is inserted into the mastoid process, just under the insertion of the occipital part of the splenius : and indeed its long and flat belly lies all along under that muscle, so that the order is this : 1. The *TRAPEZIUS* ; 2. The *SPLЕНИUS CAPITIS* ; 3. The *SPLЕНИUS CERVICIS* ; 4. The *TRACHELO-MASTOIDEUS*.

It is needless to speak of its use, since the use of all these muscles is to draw the head backwards directly, when both act ; obliquely, when one acts alone.

The *RECTI MUSCLES* are two deep-seated muscles, which go immediately from the vertebræ to the occiput to be inserted into its lower ridge. They are called major and minor.

CXXI. The *RECTUS MINOR* is the shorter of the two, arising from the first vertebra of the neck. Its place of origin is a small tuber which stands in the place of the transverse process of the first vertebra ; and from that point where it is tendinous, it goes up to the occipital ridge, and is inserted fleshy.

CXXII. The *RECTUS MAJOR* is larger. It rises, in like manner, tendinous, from the second vertebra of the neck at its transverse process, and mounting from that, is inserted fleshy into the lower ridge of the occiput without the former. These

\* It is the *TRACHELO-MASTOIDEUS*, the *MASTOIDEUS LATERALIS*, the *CAPITIS PARTERTIUS*, the *COMPLEXUS MINOR* : by some it is considered as a part of the *COMPLEXUS*.

are so placed, that the recti minores appear in the interstice of the recti majores. And though we call them both recti, yet they cannot truly be so; for the recti minores must be, in some degree, oblique, and the recti majores still more so: and consequently, although their chief use be conjointly to draw the head directly backwards, yet one acting must turn the head to its side. And indeed the same may be said of all the muscles of the neck; for they are all divided by the spine, and consequently they are all oblique.

The *OBLIQUUS SUPERIOR* and *OBLIQUUS INFERIOR* correspond very closely in all things with the recti; but in their oblique direction the uppermost, as being much shorter, has been named *obliquus minor*, the lower one *obliquus major*.

**CXXIII.** The *OBLIQUUS SUPERIOR* arises from the transverse process of the atlas, and is inserted into the end of the lower occipital ridge. Its use, notwithstanding its oblique position, is not to turn, but to bend, the head backwards; for the occipital condyles are not concentric circles. Its insertion into the occiput is under the *splenius* and *complexus*; but one edge of it is above the insertion of the *rectus major*.

**CXXIV.** The *OBLIQUUS INFERIOR* rises from one vertebra and goes to another. It arises from the spine of the second vertebra: it goes to the transverse process of the first; and it meets the superior oblique muscle; and, by the long lever or arm of the first vertebra, obtains great power. The first vertebra or atlas rolls on the tooth-like process of the *dentatus*; and while the great and slow motions of the neck in general are performed by other muscles, the short and quick turnings of the head are performed entirely by these oblique muscles.

## MUSCLES OF THE TRUNK.

THE great muscles which move the back and loins are the *QUADRATUS LUMBORUM*, *SACRO LUMBALIS*, and *LONGISSIMUS DORSI*.

The *sacro lumbalis* and *longissimus dorsi* lie immediately under the *latissimus dorsi*, which is the outer layer; the *quadratus lumborum* lies again under these, and next to the abdominal muscles; and, lastly, the abdominal muscles are the innermost layer, and make the back part of the walls of the abdomen. Although the *quadratus lumborum* lies deep under the *longissimus dorsi* muscle, I shall describe it first for the sake of a connection which will be presently understood.

**CXXV.** The *QUADRATUS LUMBORUM* is a flat squared muscle, named *quadratus* from its square or rather oblong form.

It arises fleshy from three or four inches of the back part of the os ilium, and from the ligaments of the pelvis, which tie the back part of the ilium to the side of the sacrum and to the transverse processes of the loins. As it goes upwards along the side of the lumbar vertebræ, it takes hold of the points of the transverse processes of each by small tendinous slips ; so that we are almost at a loss whether to consider these as new origins or as insertions : but its chief insertion is into the lower edge of the last rib, and a small production of it slips under the arch of the diaphragm, to be implanted into the body or fore part of the last vertebra of the back.

The *LONGISSIMUS DORSI* and *SACRO LUMBALIS* have their origin in one common and broad tendon, coming from the sacrum, ilium, and loins ; the two muscles lie along side of each other ; the *longissimus dorsi* is nearer the spine, and keeps its tendons closer by the spine. The *sacro lumbalis* is farther from the spine, and spreads its tendinous feet broader upon the sides of the thorax ; and if one be a little under the other, it is the outer edge of the *longissimus dorsi*, which is a little under the edge of the lumbar muscle.

The common tendon and muscle (for there is for some way but one muscle) begins thus : it may be said to have two kinds of adhesion ; for, first, externally it appears a broad, flat, and shining tendon, which arises tendinous from all the spines of the lumbar vertebræ, from the spines of the sacrum, and from the back part of the os ilium. But the inner surface of this broad tendon is strongly fleshy ; for it arises fleshy from the back part of the ilium, from the deep hollow betwixt the ilium and sacrum, from the sides of the long spines of the lumbar vertebræ, and from their articulating processes and the roots of their transverse processes. In short, its origin is all tendinous without, and all fleshy within ; and its flesh arises from all that irregular surface which is on either side of the spine, betwixt the os ilium and the vertebræ of the loins ; and thus it continues one strong tendinous and fleshy muscle, filling up all the hollow of the loins. There is an appearance of separation, something like a split in the tendon, which shows in the loins what part of the tendon belongs to each muscle ; but it is only in the back that they are fairly divided.

Just opposite to the lowest rib, the *longissimus dorsi* and *sacro lumbalis* break off from the common tendon ; and the *longissimus* goes to be implanted into the vertebræ, and the *sacro lumbalis* to be implanted into the ribs.

**CXXVI.** The *LONGISSIMUS DORSI* is a muscle of the spine. It is not a flat muscle, but round, thick, and firm, filling up all the hollow betwixt the spine and the angle of the ribs. It is of

a long form, as its name implies, terminating towards its top almost in a point. It has two distinct sets of feet by which it is inserted; one set of feet more fleshy, but small and neat, go outwards from the side as it were of the muscle, to be implanted near the heads of the ribs; the lower ones farther out than the heads of the ribs; the upper ones close to the head, and consequently closer to the spine. These heads are nine or ten in number, corresponding with the nine or ten uppermost ribs. Another set of heads, which are not so well seen as this set, because they lie more under the muscle, are small, neat, and tendinous; they go in an opposite direction, viz. inwards and upwards; keep closer by the spine, and are inserted into the transverse processes of the vertebræ of the back. This set of heads is thirteen in number, implanted into the transverse processes of all the back, and of one vertebra of the neck.

**CXXVII.** The **SACRO LUMBALIS** separates from the longissimus dorsi at the last rib, and is a flatter and less fleshy muscle: its twelve tendons are flatter than those of the longissimus dorsi, and go out wider from the spine. The tendons next to the longissimus dorsi run highest up, and are the longest; those farthest from the spine, i. e. farthest out upon the chest, are the shortest. It has a flat tendon for each rib, which takes hold upon the lower edge of the rib. But it has another order of small muscles which mix with it: for as the longissimus dorsi has a double row of insertion, this has another set of attachments; for there arises from the surface of each rib, at least of the six or seven lowest ribs, a small slip of flesh, which runs into the substance of the sacro lumbalis, and mixes with it; and these fleshy slips go by the name of the **ADDITAMENTUM AD SACRO-LUMBalem**, or **MUSCULI ACCESSORII**.

Both these muscles, viz. the longissimus and sacro lumbalis, terminate in points which reach towards the neck; and under the point of each there lie the roots of two small muscles, which go up to move the neck. Many have referred these slips going up into the neck entirely to the muscles I am now describing; calling one an ascending slip of the longissimus dorsi, and the other a slip of the sacro lumbalis; while others have described them as distinct muscles, having but slight connections with the longissimus and sacro lumbalis. Their proper names are **CERVICALIS DESCENDENS**, and **TRANSVERSALIS COLLI**.

**CXXVIII.** The **CERVICALIS DESCENDENS** is connected with the sacro lumbalis muscle; it cannot be entirely referred to it, for the cervicalis descendens arises as a distinct muscle from the five lower vertebræ of the neck at their transverse processes; goes downwards very small and slender to be inserted



into the six uppermost ribs, to get at which it slips under the longest tendons of the *sacro lumbalis*; but that the *cervicalis descendens* does not belong to the *sacro lumbalis*, may be inferred from its having distinct tendons from six ribs, and from six transverse processes of the neck, and from these tendons being in a direction which does not at all correspond with the heads of the *sacro lumbalis*. Indeed the *longissimus dorsi* has a better claim to this muscle; for a long slip, partly tendinous and partly fleshy, runs upwards from the longest tendon of the *longissimus dorsi*, to join itself to the *cervicalis descendens*.\*

**CXXIX.** The *TRANSVERSALIS COLLI* is that which *Sabbatier* refers to the *longissimus dorsi*; but it is a distinct muscle, arising partly tendinous and partly fleshy from the five upper transverse processes of the back; lies betwixt the *trachelo mastoideus* and the *cervicalis descendens*; goes from the transverse processes of the back to the transverse processes of the neck, and has no more than a confused and irregular connection with any other muscle.

The *QUADRATUS LUMBORUM* keeps the trunk erect by the action of both muscles at once; inclines it to one side, or turns it upon its axis, when one only acts; and by its insertion into the ribs must assist in high breathing, by pulling down the ribs. The *LONGISSIMUS DORSI* has no power but over the spine, which it bends backwards, acting continually in keeping the trunk erect. This is also the chief use of the *sacro lumbalis*; but the *SACRO LUMBALIS* going out further upon the ribs, takes such hold upon them, that besides its common action of raising the trunk, it may, on occasions, pull them down, assisting the *quadratus* and the lower serrated muscle. And it will have greater power in turning the trunk of the body upon its axis than the *longissimus dorsi*, which pulls almost directly backwards. The *CERVICALIS DESCENDENS* co-operates with the *trachelo mastoideus* and others, which turn the head to one side; and the *cervicalis descendens* bends the neck to one side; both the one and the other being independent muscles, and having no further connection with each other than what arises from the confusion of the parts.

\* Hence it is plain that the *sacro lumbalis* and *longissimus dorsi* have nearly an equal claim to the *cervicalis descendens*. For, first, the *longissimus dorsi* sends its longest tendon fairly up into the *cervicalis descendens* so far, that the slip is implanted, into the transverse processes of the neck. And, secondly, the feet of the *cervicalis descendens* begin under the last tendons of the *sacro lumbalis*, so as to have the appearance of arising from its supplementary muscle, the *additamentum*, and being part of it; and indeed *Sabbatier* has described it according to this view.

These two muscles bring us to mention that intricate set of muscles which fills up all the hollows and interstices among the spines and irregular processes of the vertebræ, which might be fairly reckoned as one muscle, since they are one in place and in office ; but which the anatomist may separate into an infinite number, with various and perplexing names ; and opportunity which anatomists have been careful not to lose.

The surface of the back, from the bulge of the ribs on one side to the bulge of the ribs on the opposite side of the thorax, is one confused surface ; consisting of innumerable hollows, processes, and points of bone ; and it is tied from point to point with innumerable small muscles, or unequal bundles of mixed tendon and flesh. There are many points ; as the spinous, transverse, and oblique processes of the vertebræ, and the bulging heads and angles of the ribs ; and each process, or at least each set of processes, has its distinct sets of muscles and tendons.

1. There is one long continuity of muscular and tendinous fibres going from spine to spine, along the whole length of the back and neck. This is divided into the *SPINALIS CERVICIS* and the *SPINALIS DORSI*.

2. There is a similar continuation of fibres, with less tendon and more flesh, belonging one half to the spine and the other half to the transverse processes, where it is named *SEMI-SPINALIS DORSI*.

3. There is a great mass lying all along the hollow of the back, on each side of the spinous processes, which passing alternately from the transverse process of one vertebra to the spinous process of the next above, is of course split into many heads, but yet having such connection as to give it the form and name of a single muscle, the *MULTIFIDUS SPINÆ*.

4. and 5. There are yet smaller muscular fasciculi, which stand perpendicularly betwixt every two transverse and every two spinous processes ; thence they are named *INTERTRANSVERSarii* and *INTER-SPINALES*.

CXXX. The *SPINALIS CERVICIS* is that which is implanted into the spines of the cervical vertebræ ; but because it does not go from spine to spine, like the *spinalis dorsi*, but from transverse processes to spines, it has been named by Winslow *SEMI-SPINALIS*, or *TRANSVERSO-SPINALIS COLLI*. It arises from the transverse processes of the six upper vertebræ of the back, and is inserted into all the spinous processes of the vertebræ of the neck except the first and last ; and it extends the

neck, or, by its obliquity, may contribute to the turnings of the neck, or to bending it to one side.\*

CXXXI. The *SPINALIS DORSI* arises from two spinous processes of the loins, and from the three lower spines of the back; and passing two spines untouched, it is implanted into all the spines of the back except the uppermost. This muscle is very slender and long, and consists fully more of tendon than of flesh: it has five feet below, rising from the lower spines of the back and loins; and nine feet above, implanted into the upper spines of the back. Its action must raise the spine; but perhaps it may be equally useful as a muscular and tendinous ligament.

CXXXII. The *SEMI-SPINALIS DORSI* arises from the transverse processes of the lower vertebræ of the back all but two; and is implanted into the upper spinous processes of the back, and into the first spine of the neck†.

CXXXIII. The *MULTIFIDUS SPINÆ* runs from the sacrum along all the spine to the vertebræ of the neck; and is a comprehensive and true way of describing many irregular portions of flesh, which authors have divided into distinct muscles‡. It is a continued fleshy indentation, from transverse process to spine, through all the vertebræ of the back, neck, and loins.

It begins both tendinous and fleshy from the upper convex surface of the os sacrum, which is rough with spines from the adjoining part of the ilium; and in the loins it arises from oblique processes; in the back, from transverse processes; and again from oblique processes among the cervical vertebræ.

Its origin in the loins is close to the spine; being from the upper oblique processes, and from the root of the transverse processes. In the back it arises from the transverse processes, and therefore arises there by more distinct heads. In the neck, again, it arises from the lower oblique processes more confusedly.

Its bundles or fasciculi are inserted into the spinous processes; sometimes into the second, or even into the third or fourth spine, above that from which the bundle arises; for the tendons do not stop at that spinous process which they first

\* The *TRANSVERSALIS CERVICIS* (vide p. 186.) is that which goes from the transverse processes of the back to the transverse processes of the neck; while this, the *SPINALIS CERVICIS*, goes from the transverse processes of the back to the spines of the neck.

† This is of course the *TRANSVERSO-SPINALIS DORSI* of Winslow.

‡ *TRANSVERSO-SPINALIS LUMBORUM* veterib. *SACER*; *SEMI-SPINALES INTERNUS*, five *TRANSVERSO-SPINALIS DORSI*; *SEMI-SPINALIS*, five *TRANSVERSO-SPINALIS COLLI. pars interna.*—Winslow. *TRANSVERSALIS LUMBORUM*, vulgè *SACER*; *TRANSVERSALIS DORSI*; *TRANSVERSALIS COLLI.*—Douglas.

touch, but go upwards, taking attachments to other two or three, and mixing their tendons with those of the fasciculi above and below; and these tendons reach from the first of the loins to all the vertebræ, up to the atlas, which is the only one not included.

The use of the multifidus spinæ is to retain the spine from being too much bent forwards; for these muscles serve (as I have observed) the purpose of a ligament, and the best of all ligaments, having a degree of strength exactly proportioned to the necessity for strength. It also moves the spine backwards, though perhaps it is less useful in this than as a ligament; for we find it as strong in the vertebræ of the back, which have little motion, and that little very slow and general. It seems rather intended to moderate the lateral motions of the vertebræ than to produce them: when it acts, its chief use is either to resist the spine being bent forward by a weight, or to erect the spine.

CXXXIV. The INTERSPINALES COLLI, DORSI, and LUMBORUM, have varieties so little interesting that they need hardly be described. The INTERSPINALES COLLI are stronger, because the neck has many and quick motions, and the bifurcated spines of the neck give broader surfaces for these muscles. The INTERSPINALES DORSI are almost entirely wanting, because the spines of the back are close upon each other, and the vertebræ are almost fixed. The INTERSPINALES in the LOINS are rather tendons or ligaments than proper muscles.

CXXXV. The INTERTRANSVERSALES are again stronger and fuller in the neck, because of the lateral motions of the neck being free, and its transverse processes forked. They are in more numerous bundles where the motion is greatest, viz. betwixt the atlas and dentatus; and it is there that Albinus counts his INTERTRANSVERSALES CERVICIS, PRIORES-LATERALES, &c. The inter-transversarii are wanting in the BACK, giving place to the ligaments, by which they are tied to each other and to the ribs; but in the LOINS, the inter-transversarii are again strong, for the lateral or twisting motions of the loins.

The muscles on the forepart of the head and neck will complete the catalogue of those belonging to the spine, and they are the chief antagonists to the muscles which I have been describing.

CXXXVI. The PLATISMA-MYOIDES† is a very thin muscu-

† The PLATISMA-MYOIDES is also named MUSCULUS CUTANEUS LATISSIMUS COLLI, and QUADRATUS GENÆ.



lar expansion, like the cutaneous muscle in animals. It is spread over the other muscles immediately under the skin, and covers the whole neck and lower part of the face.

It arises from the cellular substance and aponeurosis, which cover the pectoral muscle, the deltoid muscle, and the clavicle. Its origin is by long separate fleshy slips; it goes like a thin integument over the neck, and is first inserted about the depressor anguli oris; and then going over the masseter, is lost betwixt the muscles and the integuments of the cheek.

Perhaps it serves also to pull down the skin of the cheek and the angle of the mouth; but its chief insertion is into the lower jaw, and its use to pull it downwards.

**CXXXVII. MASTOIDEUS.**—This muscle arises partly from the clavicle, partly from the sternum. Albinus reckons it two muscles, the **STERNO-MASTOIDEUS**, and **CLEIDO-MASTOIDEUS**: a more common name is the **STERNO-CLEIDO-MASTOIDEUS**: but here, as in other things, I adhere to what is plainest. And the most familiar and easy name is **musculus MASTOIDEUS**, considering the clavicular portion as an addition only.

Its origin from the upper part of the sternum is pretty round. It arises again flat from the fore part of the clavicle: and this second origin is broad and fleshy, while the first one is tendinous and pointed. These two heads form together a very big strong, bellied, fleshy muscle, which is inserted into the mastoid process by a broad tendon, which indeed surrounds the mastoid process, and from that extends still backwards towards the lambdoidal suture. When one of the mastoid muscles acts, it turns the head to one side; when both act, they pull the head directly forwards.

**CXXXVIII. RECTUS INTERNUS CAPITIS MAJOR.** There are three muscles on each side, lying under the œsophagus, trachea, and great vessels, flat upon the fore part of the vertebræ; and this is the first and longest.

Although this be called rectus, it is oblique, and runs rather on one side; for it arises from the transverse processes of the five lower vertebræ of the neck, and is inserted into the cuneiform processes of the occipital bone, just before the foramen magnum.

**CXXXIX, RECTUS INTERNUS MINOR.** This is an exceedingly small muscle; resembles the obliquus posterior of the head. It lies immediately under the **RECTUS MAJOR**: it arises from the fore part of the body of the first vertebra, the atlas; and going (like the other rectus) obliquely inwards, it is inserted into the occipital bone near the condyle.

**CXL.** And the **RECTUS CAPITIS LATERALIS** is another small muscle like the former; which arises from the transverse

processes of the first vertebra, and is inserted into the side of the cuneiform process of the occipital bone. It lies immediately under the exit of the great jugular vein.

**CXLI. LONGUS COLLI.** This is the chief of those muscles which lie upon the fore part of the neck; it is very long, arising from the flat internal surface of the vertebræ of the back to go up along those of the neck.

Its origin is first within the thorax, from the three uppermost vertebræ of the back, from the flat part of their bodies, and then from all the transverse processes of the neck except the three upper ones. It is inserted tendinous into the fore part of the second vertebra of the neck, where the opposite large muscles meet in one point almost.\*

All these muscles, which lie thus flat upon the plain surface of the vertebræ of the neck, pull the head and neck directly forwards; or when the muscles of one side act, they are of use in pulling it towards that side; though I rather suppose that that motion is performed by the external muscles.

**CXLII. The SCALENUS** I consider as one muscle; for it is one in origin, insertion, and office. Its origin is from the whole upper surface of the first rib from its cartilage backwards, and also from the second rib; and its insertion is into the transverse processes of the vertebræ of the neck. But by its broad origin, and its very long insertion, it gives opportunity for dividing it into several fasciculi; and accordingly it has been so divided: but these divisions are entirely modern, artificial, and unnatural. The ancients considered it as one triangular muscle; Winslow divided it into two, the *primus* and *secundus*; Cowper into three; Douglas into four; and Albinus divides it into five muscles. The ancients called it *scalenus* from its resemblance to the scalen triangle; and the true anatomy is to consider it as one great triangular muscle, flat, and stretching from the ribs to the neck, closing the thorax above, and giving passage to the nerves and vessels of the arm.

If it were to be described in distinct portions, it would be in three parts. The anterior portion arises from the transverse processes of the six lower vertebræ of the neck, and is inserted into the flat part of the first rib hard by its cartilage. The middle portion from the four lower vertebræ goes to the outer edge of the rib, and extends along all its length. The posterior portion is the thinnest and longest; for it arises from the transverse processes of the second, third, and fourth vertebræ. It is inserted into the upper edge of the rib, about an inch or more from its articulation with the spine.

\* The *longus colli* muscle is in part covered by the *rectus major*.

The first head is tendinous and fleshy at its insertion into the rib ; but the second and third heads are tendinous both in their origins and insertions.

The artery goes through the flesh of the first portion, about an inch above the axilla.

The nerves pass in the interstice betwixt the first and second portions.

The office of the scalenus muscle is to pull the neck to one side, or to bend the head and neck forwards when both act ; and when the neck is fixed backwards, they may perhaps raise the ribs ; for asthmatics are observed to throw the head backwards, in order to raise the chest with greater power.



## CHAP. VI.

### OF THE MUSCLES OF THE ABDOMEN, AND OF THE DIAPHRAGM.

THE abdominal muscles cover in the belly, contain the bowels, and take a firm hold upon the pelvis and the trunk ; the diaphragm, again, is a moving partition betwixt the thorax and the abdomen ; and the diaphragm pressing down the bowels upon the abdominal muscles, enlarges the thorax, and the abdominal muscles re-acting, push the bowels back upon the diaphragm, and compress the thorax. Thus the alternate yielding and re-action of the abdominal muscles and diaphragm performs breathing ; agitates the bowels ; promotes the circulation ; expels the fæces and urine ; assists the womb in the delivery of the child. And, with all these important uses, the abdominal muscles bend and turn the trunk, and fix it for the stronger actions of the limbs. They steady the body in lifting weights, in bearing loads, in all our more violent exertions : they often give way under this double office of breathing and of straining along with the rest of the body ; and the bowels coming out through their natural openings, or by bursting through the interstices of their fibres, form herniæ of various kinds. Whence the anatomy of these muscles is most interesting to the surgeon.

The muscles of the abdomen are five on either side. 1. The outer oblique muscle, to which the names of DESCENDENS, DECLIVIS, and MAJOR, are added, because it is the outermost

of all the abdominal muscles ; because it is the largest, covering all the side of the abdomen with its fleshy belly, and all the fore part of the abdomen with its broad expanded tendon ; and it is called *declivis*, or *descendens*, because its fleshy belly begins above upon the borders of the thorax ; and because both its muscular and tendinous fibres, which lie parallel to each other, run obliquely from above downwards and inwards.

2. The *OBLIQUUS INTERNUS* is named from its being within the first ; and has the names of *ASCENDENS* vel *MINOR* super-added, because its fleshy belly is smaller than that of the first, arises below, chiefly in the haunch-bone, and all its fibres go from below upwards.

3. The *TRANSVERSALIS* lies under all the others, and next to the cavity of the abdomen, and has but one name, which also is derived from the direction of its fibres running across or round the abdomen.

4. The *RECTUS*, so named because of its running on the fore part of the abdomen in one straight line from the pubis to the sternum.

5. The *PYRAMIDAL* muscle is the only one named from its shape. It is a small, neat, conical muscle, which arises from the os pubis by a broad basis, and has its apex turned upwards ; but it is not always found, for it is only as a supplement to the recti muscles and a part of them ; whence it has been named *MUSCULUS SUCCENTURIATUS*, or supplementary muscle.

**CXLIII.** The *EXTERNAL OBLIQUE* muscle arises from the ribs, and, like all the others which arise from ribs, is a serrated muscle. It comes from the eight lower ribs by distinct fleshy tongues, one from each rib. These serræ are mixed with the indentations of the serratus major anticus muscle, which goes off in an opposite direction. The origin of the muscle lies out broad upon the border of the chest ; it is its thickest and most fleshy part, whence its fibres go down all in one direction parallel with each other, but oblique with respect to the abdomen. Its fleshy belly ceases about the middle of the side. Its flat sheet of tendon goes over the fore part of the belly till it meets its fellow exactly in the middle ; so that one half, or the back part of the abdomen, is covered by its fleshy belly, and the fore part by its tendinous expansion.

The muscle meets its fellow in the middle of the belly ; and this meeting forms (along with the other tendons) a white line from the pubis to the sternum, which is named *LINFA ALBA*. It also, before it reaches the middle, adheres to the flat tendon of the inner oblique muscle. This meeting is about four inches on either side of the linea alba, and is a little inclined to the circular, whence it is named *linea semilunaris*. And,



finally, this muscle is implanted into the spine of the ilium ; fleshy about the middle of the ilium ; tendinous at the fore part or spinous process of the ilium ; and still tendinous into the whole length of that ligament, which extends from the spine of the ilium to the crest of the pubis.

This is the whole of its insertion, viz. all the length of the linea alba, from the pubis to the sternum, the fore part of the spine of the ilium, and the ligament of Paupart ; which, though it is commonly thought to be but the tendon of the external oblique stretching from point to point, is in truth a distinct ligament, independent of the tendon, and stronger than it.

**CXLIV. OBLIQUUS INTERNUS ABDOMINIS.**—The chief part of this muscle arises thick and fleshy from all the circle of the spine of the ilium, with its fibres directed upwards. But, to be accurate, we must describe it as arising from the whole length of the spine of the ilium ; from the joining of the ilium and sacrum ; from the spines of the sacrum itself ; and from the three lower spinous processes of the loins\* ; and, lastly, it arises from the ligament of the thigh, at its end next to the ilium ; but still the chief belly is at the iliac spine. From that it spreads upwards in a radiated form ; the central fibres only are direct, going across the abdomen to the linea alba ; the higher fibres ascend and go towards the sternum, and the lower ones go obliquely downwards to the pubis. Its flat tendon is like that of the external oblique ; and it is inserted into the cartilages of all the false ribs, into the sternum, and into the linea alba through its whole length.

**CXLV. The TRANSVERSALIS ABDOMINIS** runs directly across the belly. It arises fleshy from the inner surface of the six lower ribs, where its digitations mix with those by which the diaphragm arises tendinous ; from the transverse processes of the four lower lumbar vertebrae ; from the whole spine of the os ilium ; and from a part of the femoral ligament. Upon the whole, its origin is like that of the inner oblique muscle ; its fibres go across the abdomen, and its tendon is inserted into the whole length of the linea alba.

The succession in which these three muscles arise from the chest is this : the external oblique muscle lies broad upon the outside of the chest, and so its tongues mix with the tongues of the serratus anticus major. The internal oblique muscle again rises lower down the thorax, from its edge, from the cartilages of the ribs. The transverse muscle arises within the

\* This origin from the spinous processes of the loins is a thin tendon common with the serratus and latissimus dorsi muscles.

thorax, from the internal surface of the ribs, opposite to where the tongues of the external oblique lie ; and the diaphragm arising from the same ribs, mixes its indigitations with the transversalis ; so that Caspar Bartholin observing this indigitation to be very curious in the larger animals, believed the diaphragm and transverse muscles to be but one great trigas-tric or three bellied muscle surrounding all the abdomen.

CXLVI. The RECTI muscles cover the abdomen on its fore part, in a line from the pubis to the sternum ; and they belong so equally to the sternum and to the pubis, that it is indifferent which we call their origin, and which their insertion. The origin (as I should call it) of each rectus muscle is in the sternum ; is broad and fleshy ; lies upon the outside of the sternum, covering part of the sternum, and all the xiphoid cartilage, and touching and mixing its fibres with the great pectoral muscle. It is about four inches broad all down the abdomen, and terminates at the side of the symphysis pubis with a flat and pointed tendon about an inch in length and about an inch broad. This muscle is crossed at intervals by four tendinous intersections, which divide it into five distinct bellies. Commonly there are three bellies above the umbilicus and two below ; but the recti muscles are the least regular of all the muscles of the abdomen. Vesalius, Albinus, and Sabbatier, were thought to have found the recti abdominis extending up to the throat ; but it is now found that Vesalius had only represented the muscles of a monkey or of a dog (which are very long) upon the thorax of a human subject\* ; Sabbatier, upon revising his notes, retracts what he had said ; and Albinus also is supposed to have seen only a production of the mastoid muscle, extending down the breast ; for irregularities of this kind are very often found.

CXLVII. The PYRAMIDAL muscles are as a supplement to the recti. There is a small neat pyramidal muscle on each side, or rather a triangular muscle, fleshy through its whole extent and length, with its base turned towards the pubis and its apex towards the umbilicus ; so that its origin is in the crest of the pubis and its pointed insertion in the linea alba : and though the pyramidal muscles have been supposed by Massa

\* “ Porro (r) linea insignitur, quæ carneam recti musculi partem finit, quæque  
 “ ultima ipsius insertionis in homine est portio, uti in quarta tabula ad characterem  
 “ n. est cernere. Intercapedine igitur ab r. ad s. pertinente, se offert recti sime  
 “ abdominis musculi tendo, seu membrana, excarnisve musculi pars ; r. autem in-  
 “ dicat carneam musculi sedem, primæ costæ et secundæ thoracis insertam, estque  
 “ latus ille tendo hominibus haudquaquam, ut in caudatis simiis, et canibus con-  
 “ spicuus.” VESALIUS, p. 156.

to relate to the penis, or by Fallopius to belong to the urinary bladder, their true use is only to assist the rectus to draw down the sternum, and tighten the linea alba, and so to give greater power to the oblique and transverse muscles. The pyramidalis is so irregular a muscle, that sometimes two are found on one side and none at all on the other. Sometimes two on each side, sometimes there is but one, and very often they are wanting, the belly of the rectus coming quite down to the pubis.

1. The *LINEA ALBA* is the common meeting of all the thin flat tendons; and therefore we call it their insertion, being the common point towards which they all act: it is white, by the gathering of all the colourless tendons.

2. The *LINEA SEMILUNARIS* is a line of the same white appearance, of a circular form, and produced by the meeting of all the tendons, on the edge of the rectus muscle, to form a sheath for it.

3. The *SHEATH* for the *RECTUS MUSCLE* does not admit of so brief a definition as these: it has been commonly supposed to be formed in a very curious manner, chiefly by the broad tendon of the obliquus internus, which being the central muscle betwixt the two other layers, is supposed to have its tendon split into two thin sheets; that the outermost sheet adheres to the outer oblique muscle, forming the outer part of the sheath, while its inner sheet adheres to the tendon of the transverse muscle, forming the inner part of the sheath: but this is too intricate, and can hardly be proved by dissection. Cowper expresses his doubts about the doctrine of the tendon of the inner oblique muscle being split into two layers; and I think the truest description is this, that all the tendons meet and adhere in the semilunar line; that they immediately part to form this sheath; that the flat tendons of both the oblique muscles go upon the outer surface of the rectus to form that side of the sheath; that the tendon of the transverse muscle only lies under the rectus, forming the lower part of the sheath, and that it is unassisted by any lamella of the inner oblique muscle; that the sheath is complete at the forepart, or over the muscle; but that under the muscle the sheath stops about five or six inches above the pubis, and that there the recti muscles (or in their place the pyramidal muscles) lie bare upon the bladder and other abdominal viscera, lined only by the thin peritonæum\*. And that this back layer of the sheath is thinner and

\* Cowper had never observed this, but once that the lower part of the rectus was not lined by the tendon of the transversalis. He concluded that, in this instance, it was a sporting of nature; "so much a *lusus naturæ*, that accidents like this might be the cause of certain ruptures."

more delicate, and but little attached to the back part of the rectus muscle, which is easily raised in dissection ; while the forepart of the sheath adheres firmly to the fore part of the muscle forming those cross bands or tendinous intersections which divide the rectus into bellies ; and the sheath where it lies over the muscle cannot be dissected without a degree of violence either to the sheath or to these tendinous intersections.

4. The UMBILICUS is that opening in the centre of the abdomen, in the middle of the linea alba, through which the nutritious vessels of the fœtus pass. The vessels have degenerated into ligaments in the adult, and the umbilicus is closed in the form of a ring ; but sometimes it is forced by violent action, and the viscera come out by it, forming umbilical hernia.

5. The RING of the ABDOMINAL MUSCLES is that opening near the lower part of the abdomen, just over the pubis, through which the spermatic cord passes in man, and the round ligament of the womb in women.

Cowper (p. 5.) says, that the spermatic cord passes through separate rings, in each of the three abdominal muscles ; and, like older authors, he makes nature exceedingly wise, in placing the rings, not opposite to each other, but one high, and another lower, and a third lower still, so as to prevent the bowels falling out. But the truth is, that neither the internal oblique, nor the transverse muscles, have any share, at all in the ring, which belongs entirely to the external oblique muscle, and is formed in this way. All the tendinous fibres of the external oblique are, like the muscle itself, oblique, running from above downwards ; and the tendinous fasciculi are in some places wider, a little disjoined from each other, and resembling stripes crossed by small threads of tendon, as if the long fibres were in danger of parting from each other, so as to leave a gap, and were held together by these cross threads ; and it is in fact a wider and perfect separation of two fibres that forms the ring, and a strong interlacement of cross fibres that secures it from splitting farther up. But the chief security of the ring is by the form of the opening ; for it is not a ring, as we call it, but a mere split in the tendon, which begins about an inch and a half above the pubis, is oblique, and looking towards the pubis, like the fibres which form it, and consists of two legs or pillars of the ring, as they are called ; for the upper slip, which forms the upper part of the opening, goes directly towards the crest or highest point of the pubis ; the lower pillar, or the slip which forms the lower line of the slit, turns in behind, gets under the upper one, and is implanted into the pubis, within and behind the upper pillar :



this lower slip forms at once the lower pillar of the ring and the edge of the femoral ligament.

Now this crossing of the pillars of the ring secures it; for the more the muscle pulls in pressing upon the abdominal viscera, the tighter is the slit drawn; and the obliquity of the opening gives the direction to herniæ of the groin, which always point towards the pubis, so as to fall into the scrotum in men, or into the labia pudendi in women, keeping close by the groin.

The spermatic cord, formed of the vessels belonging to the testicle, passes through this ring of the external oblique muscle; but as the internal oblique, and transverse muscles, form no share in the ring, the cord passes by their lower edge, but not through it. At the place where the cord passes the edge of the internal oblique muscle, it sends a bundle of fleshy fibres down along the cord, which go all along the cord, gradually extend towards the testicle, expanding and growing thin upon the upper end of the testicle, and gradually disappearing on its body. This is

**CXLVIII.** The **CREMASTER MUSCLE** of the **TESTICLE**, which is a thin slip of fibres from the internal oblique muscle of the abdomen; which is designed for suspending the testicle, and for drawing it up; is very thick and strong in the lower animals, as in bulls, dogs, &c.; is easily found in man, but not always, being sometimes thin and pale, and hardly to be known from the coats upon which it lies. It appears to grow more fleshy in old age, and to be thickened in enlargements of the testicle, the better to support the weight.

6. The **LIGAMENT** of the **THIGH\*** is a distinct ligament, and not merely the tendon of the external oblique, rounded and turned in. It arises from the spinous process of the ilium, and is inserted into the crest of the pubis. It receives the external oblique muscle, for the tendon is implanted into it. Part of the flesh of the internal oblique muscle arises from the outer end of the ligament. It forms an arch under which the psoas and iliacus internus muscles, and the great artery of the thigh, and its anterior nerve, pass out. The great vein, and the lymphatics of the limb, return under it to get into the abdomen; the lymphatic glands of the groin lie there. The whole interstice is surrounded and filled up by cellular substance and fat; but it is not firm; the playing of the muscles, and the fat, and inguinal glands, keep it open and lax; and at that point the

\* This ligament of the thigh is named also the **INGUINAL LIGAMENT**; the **EXTERNAL ARCH**; the **LIGAMENT** of **PAUPART**; the **LIGAMENT** of **FABLOPIUS**, &c.

bowels are apt to fall down, especially in women, where the spine of the ilium is high and the arch wide. So little are femoral herniæ or the form of this opening understood, that no particular cushion is adapted to this part ; for it is supported by the common bandage for the hernia of the groin : and, a few years ago, hernia of the groin was not even known by anatomists of the highest name. For Cowper says (explaining Paupart's ligament,) " It is not impossible but that ruptures " may sometimes happen in this part ; and I am apt to imagine " this to be the case when a rupture is very large, and not to be " retained by a truss."

It often happens, that in vomiting, in violent coughing, in straining at stool, or in lifting heavy weights, these natural openings are forced, and the bowels descend. The *UMBILICUS* is very seldom forced by sudden exertion, for it is a very firm ring ; but often it is slowly dilated in pregnancy ; and hernia of the naval is infinitely more frequent with women than with men.—The opening of the *RING* is often kept dilated by the bowels following the testicle when it descends ; so that though the accident be almost forgotten, the hernia often appears again in the adult : most frequently the ring is forced in strong young men by hard and continual labour, or by sudden straining ; but women are safer from this kind of hernia, because the round ligament of the womb is smaller than the spermatic cord, and the ring in them is very close.—*ABDOMINAL HERNIÆ* are those which come, not through any natural opening, but through the interstices of the muscles, by the parting of the muscular fibres on an accidental wound in the abdomen, or by the operation of the Cesarean section ; for a wound of the abdominal muscles seldom heals so neatly as not to leave some small interstice, through which the bowels protrude. Thus any point may be forced by violence, any of the openings, or all of them, may be relaxed by weakness, as in dropsical or other lingering diseases : for it is from this cause that herniæ are more frequent in childhood and in old age ; by the laxity which is natural to childhood, or by the weakness natural to the decline of life. Often there seems to be a hereditary disposition to herniæ in certain houses ; the form of the openings of the abdomen being wider in a whole family, just as the features of the face are peculiar. And I have seen a child with all these openings so particularly wide, that upon the slightest coughing or crying, herniæ came down at every possible point, at the navel, the scrotum, the thigh, and in the sides of the abdomen, all at once ; or, as one tumour was reduced, another arose.

The effects of the abdominal muscles in moving the trunk cannot be mistaken. The *RECTI* pull the ribs downwards in

breathing, flattening the belly, and bending the body forwards. The two **OBLIQUE MUSCLES** of one side acting, turn the trunk upon its axis ; but the oblique muscles of the opposite side acting, co-operate with the rectus in flattening the belly and bending the body : and the **TRANSVERSE MUSCLES** tighten the linea alba, so as to give effect to all the others ; and particularly they brace the sheath of the recti muscles, so as to give them their true effect.

**CXLIX.** The **DIAPHRAGMA** is a Greek word, translated inter septum ; the transverse partition betwixt the abdomen and the thorax ; the midriff : but it is not merely a transverse partition, it is a vaulted division betwixt the thorax and abdomen ; and not only is the middle raised into a vaulted form, but its obliquity is such, that though its fore part be as high as the sternum, its lower and back part arises near the pelvis from the lowest vertebræ of the loins.

It is a circular muscle, which is fleshy towards its borders, and tendinous in the centre ; which is convex towards the thorax, and concave towards the abdomen ; becoming plain, or almost so, when it presses against the abdominal muscles in drawing the breath ; and returning to its convex form when the abdominal muscles re-act in pushing it back into the thorax.

The diaphragm arises, by one broad fleshy attachment, from all the borders of the chest, forming the upper or greater muscle of the diaphragm ; and it arises below, by many small tendinous feet, from the fore part of the loins, which, meeting, form what is called the lesser muscle of the diaphragm. 1st. The **GREAT OR UPPER** muscle arises, first, from under the xiphoid cartilage, and from the lower surface of the sternum.— 2dly. From all the false ribs ; from the cartilage of the seventh, eighth, and ninth ribs ; and from the bony parts of the tenth and eleventh ribs ; and from the tip of the twelfth rib. All these origins are, of course, fleshy digitations or tongues, which intermix with those of the transverse muscle of the abdomen. 3dly. From the tip of the twelfth rib to the lumbar vertebræ there is a ligament extended, which, going like an arch over the psoas and quadratus lumborum muscles, is named **LIGAMENTUM ARCUATUM** ; and from this another part still of the great muscle of the diaphragm arises. Thus the upper muscle of the diaphragm has four chief origins, viz. from under the sternum and xiphoid cartilage ; from all the false ribs ; from the ligamentum arcuatum : and, in short, from all the borders of the chest, from the xiphoid cartilage quite round to the vertebræ of the loins.

2. The **LESSER MUSCLE** of the **DIAPHRAGM**, which arises from the spine, begins by four small slender tendinous feet on

each side. The first of these, the longest one, arises from the second vertebra above the pelvis : it goes from the flat fore part of its body, and adheres to the fore part of all the lumbar vertebræ as it mounts upwards. The second rises from the third vertebra, but farther out towards the side of the vertebra. The third arises from the side of the fourth vertebra. And the fourth tendon of the diaphragm arises from the transverse process of the same fourth vertebra of the loins. But indeed we ought, in place of this minute demonstration, to say, that it arises from the four uppermost lumbar vertebræ by four tendinous feet, flat and glistening, and adhering closely to the shining ligament with which the bodies of the vertebræ are strengthened; that these tendons soon join to form a strong round fleshy leg, which is called the *crus diaphragmatis* ; of which crura the left is the smaller one ; and that these crura, joining, mixing, and crossing their fibres, form a fleshy belly, the lesser muscle of the diaphragm.

3. The TENDON in the centre of the diaphragm is determined in its shape by the extent of these fleshy bellies ; for the great muscle above almost surrounds the central tendon. The smaller muscle below meeting it, the two divisions give it a pointed form behind ; the tendon has the figure of a trefoil leaf, or of the heart painted upon playing cards. The middle line of this tendinous centre is fixed by the membrane which divides the thorax into two ; the two sides go upwards into the two sides of the chest, each with a form like the bottom of an inverted basin ; their convexity reaching within the thorax, quite up to the level of the fourth true rib : the proper centre of the diaphragm is fixed by this connection with the mediastinum, that its motion might not disorder the action of the heart, which rests upon this point, and whose pericardium is fixed to the tendon : but the convexity of either side descends and ascends alternately as the diaphragm contracts or is relaxed ; so that it is chiefly these convexities on either side which are moved in breathing.

Thus is the diaphragm composed of one great and circular muscle before ; of one smaller circular muscle behind ; and of the triangular tendon, as the centre betwixt them ; and both in its fleshy and tendinous parts, it is perforated by several vessels passing reciprocally betwixt the thorax and the abdomen.

First, The AORTA or great artery of the trunk passes betwixt the crura or legs of the diaphragm, which like an arch stride over it to defend it from pressure.

Secondly, The ŒSOPHAGUS passes through the diaphragm a little above this, and to the left side : its passage is through



the lower fleshy belly, and through the most fleshy part of the diaphragm : and the muscular fibres of the crura diaphragmatis first cross under the hole for the œsophagus, then surround it, then cross again above the hole ; so that they form the figure of 8 : and the œsophagus is so apparently compressed by these surrounding fibres, that some anatomists have reckoned this a sort of sphincter for the upper orifice of the stomach.

Thirdly, The great *VENA CAVA* goes up from the abdomen to the heart, through the right side of the diaphragm ; and this hole being of a triangular form, being in the hard tendon, and larger than the vein requires, there is no danger of strangulation in the vein.

The tendon is composed of fibres which come from the various fasciculi of this muscle, meet and cross each other with a confused interlacement, which Albinus has been at much pains to trace, but which Haller reports much more sensibly : “ *Intricaciones variæ et vix dicendæ ;*” irregular and confused, crossing chiefly at the openings, and especially at the vena cava, the triangular form of which seems to be guarded in a most particular way.

The lower surface of the diaphragm is lined with the peritonæum or membrane of the abdomen ; and the upper surface is covered with the pleura or membrane of the chest. The hole for the vena cava is so large that the peritonæum and pleura meet, and touch each other through this opening all round the vein.

The chief use of the diaphragm is in breathing ; and in this office it is so perfect, that though there be a complete ankylosis of the ribs (as has often happened,) the person lives and breathes, and never feels the loss. The diaphragm is, in its natural state, convex towards the thorax ; when it acts, it becomes plain, the thorax is enlarged, and by the mere weight of the air the lungs are unfolded and follow the diaphragm. No vacuum is ever found betwixt the diaphragm and the lungs ; but the lungs follow the ribs and diaphragm as closely as if they adhered to them ; and indeed when they do adhere, it is not known by any distress ; so we draw in the breath : and when the abdominal muscles re-act, the diaphragm yields, goes back into the thorax, and grows convex again, by which we blow out the breath ; and while the diaphragm is acting, the abdominal muscles are relaxed, yield, and are pushed out, and leave the ribs free to be raised by their levator muscles. And again, when the abdominal muscles re-act, the diaphragm in its turn yields so that they at once force up the diaphragm, and pull down the borders of the thorax, assisting the serrated muscles which depress the ribs.

There is also in every great function such a wonderful combination of actions conspiring to one end, as cannot be even enumerated here. But the alternate action and re-action of the abdominal muscles draws in and expels the breath, promotes the circulation, and gently agitates the bowels, while their more violent actions discharge the fæces and urine, and assist the womb ; and vomiting, yawning, coughing, laughing, crying, hiccup, and the rest, are its stronger and irregular actions.—The diaphragm might well be named by Haller, “*Nobilissimus, post cor, musculus.*” And Buffon, who affected the character of anatomist with but little knowledge of the human body, might mistake its central tendon for a nervous centre, the place of all motions, and almost the seat of the soul. For the ancients confounded the names and ideas of tendon and nerve. And in sickness and oppression, lowness and sighing, in weeping or laughing, in joy or in fear, all our feelings seem to concentrate in this part.



## CHAP. VII.

### THE MUSCLES OF THE PARTS OF GENERATION, AND OF THE ANUS AND PERINÆUM.

THE muscles of the parts of generation follow this division of the abdominal muscles more naturally than any other.

The *ERECTOR PENIS* is a small and slender muscle, which goes over the crus penis, and braces it back to the pubis. The *erectores* are supposed (by pressing the penis against the pubis) to compress the great vein, and so cause erection. The *ACCELERATOR URINÆ* is a muscle which surrounds all the bulb of the urethra, and acts by a sort of subsultus in discharging the last drops of the urine, and in throwing out the semen. And the *TRANSVERSALIS PERINÆI*, which goes across the perinæum, belongs rather to the anus than to the penis. The *SPHINCTER ANI* is a circular bundle of fibres which surrounds the orifice of the anus, and contracts it ; and the *LEVATOR ANI* is a flat thin muscle, which lines the pelvis, surrounds the rectum like a funnel, and being fixed round the margin of the anus, raises it up ; and the *COCCYGEUS* is but a part of it. The *DETRUSOR URI-*

NÆ is the muscular coat of the bladder and the SPHINCTER VESICÆ is not easily distinguished from the detrusor urinæ, being but the fibres of it, only thicker and stronger at the lower and narrower part of the bladder.

The penis is composed of two crura or cavernous bodies, which arise from the branch of each os ischium, which soon meet to form the body of the penis; and of the corpus cavernosum urethræ, which surrounds the urethra, is attached to no bone, but begins just before the circle of the anus, by a bulging which is called the bulb of the urethra; and the erector penis lies along the crura, to draw them back to the pubes; and the accelerator surrounds all the bulb, and acts in expelling the semen or the last drops of urine.

CL. The ERECTOR PENIS is a delicate and slender muscle, about two inches in length. It lies along the face of the crus penis of each side. And when the crura penis are inflated, the erectors are seen of their proper length and form. The erector of each side rises by a slender tendon from the tuberosity of the os ischium. It goes fleshy, thin, and flat, over the crus penis, like a thin covering. It ends in a delicate and flat tendon upon the crus penis, about two inches up; and the tendon is so thin and delicate, that it is hardly to be distinguished from the membrane of the cavernous body.

The erectors lying thus on the sides of the penis, have been called COLATERALES PENIS, or ISCHIO-CAVERNOSI, from their origin in the ischium, and their insertion into the cavernous bodies.

CLI. The TRANSVERSALIS PERINÆI is often named transversalis penis; but its origin being in the tuberosity of the os ischium, by a delicate tendon, and its insertion into the very backmost point of the bulb of the urethra, where it touches the anus, its course is directly across the perinæum; and its relation to the perinæum and anus is very direct and evident, while its relation to the penis is rather doubtful. Often there is a second muscle of the same origin and insertion running like this across the perinæum, named TRANSVERSALIS PERINÆI ALTER.

This transverse muscle may, by bracing up the bulb to the arch of the pubis, have some effect in stopping the vein on the back of the penis, and so producing erection; but its chief use must be in preventing the anus from being too much protruded in discharging the feces, and in retracting it when it is already protruded.

CLII. The ACCELERATOR muscle is not a single muscle, as it is often described: it is manifestly a pair of muscles surrounding the whole of the bulb of the urethra. For there is

along the lower face of the bulb a white and tendinous line, corresponding with the outward line or seam of the perinæum. This line distinguishes the bellies of the two muscles: the fibres of each side surround their proper half of the bulb with circular fibres, winding obliquely round the bulb; and each muscle ends in its separate tendon, which is delicate and small, and which, leaving the bulb of the urethra, turns off obliquely to the side, so that the tendon of each side goes out flat and thin upon the crus penis of its own side, a little higher than the insertion of the erector penis; and thus it embraces the bulb itself with its two crura. We know and feel its convulsive involuntary action in throwing out the seed: and we are conscious that we use it as a voluntary muscle in emptying the urethra of the last drops of urine.

CLIII. The SPHINCTER ANI muscle is a broad circular band of fibres which surrounds the anus. It arises from the point of the os coccygis behind. It sends a neat small slip forwards, by which it is attached to the back part of the accelerator muscle. It is of a regular oval form, and is two inches broad, and is for a very obvious reason stronger in man than in animals. Some choose to enumerate two sphincter muscles, of which this is the external or cutaneous; and what they describe as the internal one, is merely the circular fibres or muscular coat of the intestine, strengthened a little towards the anus, but not a distinct muscle. Its effect is to shut the anus.

CLIV. The LEVATOR ANI muscle is described as a pair of muscles, one from each side: but it is properly one broad and thin muscle, which arises from the internal surface of all the fore part of the pelvis; and from its breadth it has been named MUSCULUS ANI LATUS. It continues its origin from the internal surface of the pubis, all the way round to the sacrum. It grows gradually smaller as it goes downwards to surround the anus. So it is inserted into the circle of the anus, into the point of the os coccygis, and is mixed with the sphincter ani muscle. The whole pelvis is lined with it like a funnel or inverted cone; the wider part representing its origin from the pelvis, the narrower part its insertion into the anus. The whole bladder is surrounded and covered by this muscle; the urethra passes through a split in its fibres; and no operation of lithotomy can reach the bladder from below without cutting through this muscle. It raises the anus, and at the same time dilates it; opening the anus for the passage of the fæces, and supporting it, so as to prevent its being protruded. Thus it is not for shutting the anus, as some have supposed, but is the direct antagonist of the sphincter ani muscle. By enclosing the bladder, the levator ani acts upon it also; for the neck of the bladder passing



through a slit in its fibres, while the levator ani is acting, this slit is drawn, as it were, round the neck of the bladder, and so the urine is for the time prevented from flowing. It is as a sphincter to the bladder, which prevents our passing the urine and fæces at the same moment. By surrounding the lower part of the bladder, and enclosing the prostate gland, and the vesiculæ seminales, which lie upon the back of the bladder, this muscle affects these parts also; and is perhaps the only muscle which may be supposed to empty the vesiculæ, or to compress the gland, pulling upwards at the same time, so as to press the back of the penis against the pubes, to maintain the erection, and to assist the accelerator muscles. By enclosing the bladder, vesiculæ, prostate, and anus, this muscle produces that sympathy among the parts which is often very distressing; as in gonorrhœa, the stone in the bladder, constipation, piles, and other diseases of these parts; for piles, constipation, or any cause which may excite the action of the levator muscles, will cause erections, a desire to pass the urine, and an obstruction in the discharge of it.

CLV. The *MUSCULUS COCCYGEUS* is a thin, flat, muscle, which arises by a narrow point from the inside of the pelvis at the spine of the os ischium: is implanted, expanded, and fleshy, into the whole length of the os coccygis; can be useful only by pulling up the point of the os coccygis, which is just equivalent to raising the circle of the anus; so that from every circumstance of its form and use, it might be fairly enough described as being merely the back part of the levator ani muscle.

The perinæum, where the bulb begins, is the point into which all the muscles are united; for the accelerator muscle, and the sphincter ani muscle, touch at the beginning or point of the bulb; and a small pointed slip of the sphincter ani, going upon the bulb, connects them firmly together. The transversalis perinæi comes across the perinæum from either side; and the levator ani muscle comes down to meet the sphincter; so that the sphincter ani, the levator ani, the transversalis perinæi, and the accelerator urine muscles, all meet in one point, viz. the back of the bulb. They secure the perinæum, and support the heavy viscera of the abdomen: if they be unskilfully cut in performing lithotomy, it will be difficult to extract the stone. In that operation the incision passes by the side of the anus, and on the inside of the tuber ischii; and our knife accordingly cuts clean across the transverse muscles, which stand as a bar across the perinæum: it passes by the side of the erector muscle, need not touch it, or touches it slightly, and by a sort of chance: it must not touch the accelerator muscle; for whoever says he cuts the accelerator, cuts too low, and performs his ope-

ration ill. After the first incision we get deep into the pelvis, and cut the levator ani. The surgeon does not observe these muscles, on account of any danger which may attend wounds of them, but takes them as marks for the true place of his incision ; and a good operator will be careful to have them fairly cut, that they may be no hinderance to the extraction of the stone.\*



## CHAP. VIII.

### MUSCLES OF THE THIGH, LEG, AND FOOT.



#### MUSCLES MOVING THE THIGH-BONE.

THE muscles belonging to the thigh-bone arise all from the pelvis or trunk. The *PSOAS MAGNUS* and *ILIACUS INTERNUS* come from within the pelvis, at its fore part, and, passing under the femoral ligament, go down to be implanted into the trochanter minor ; and by this obliquity of their insertion, they turn the toes outwards, and bend the thigh. Other muscles come from the lower and fore part of the pelvis ; as the *PECTINALIS*, *TRICEPS*, and *OBTURATOR EXTERNUS*, which arise from the arch of the pubes, and go down to be implanted into linea aspera, and lesser trochanter ; and they, pulling the thigh towards the body, are called the *ADDUCTORS*. Others arise from the sacrum and back part of the pelvis, as the *GLUTÆI*, which, coming directly forwards to be implanted into the greater trochanter, pull back the thigh ; and a fourth set coming also from the internal surface of the pelvis, viz. the *OBTURATOR INTERNUS*, and the *PYRAMIDALIS*, come out through the back openings, turn round the pelvis as round a pulley, and

\* The detrusor urinæ is but the muscular coat of the bladder ; the sphincter vesicæ, or muscle of the prostates, is but a denser fasciculus of this common coat of the bladder. I should no more think of describing them here than of describing the coats of the intestines or stomach. These muscles of internal parts, with the muscles of the internal ear, &c. I reserve for those books which describe the organs and viscera.

roll the thigh, and draw it back. This completes the catalogue of those muscles which move the thigh.

1. The PSOAS MAGNUS, ILIACUS INTERNUS, PECTINEUS, TRICEPS, OBTURATOR EXTERNUS, which, coming from before, are inserted into the lesser trochanter, and bend the thigh.

2. The GLUTÆI, GEMINI, PYRIFORMIS, OBTURATOR, INTERNUS, and QUADRATUS, which come from behind, are implanted into the great trochanter, and extend the thigh; and it hardly need be remembered, that as, when the arms being fixed, their muscles raise the weight of the body, as in climbing or in turning over a bar, by grasping with the hands; so the muscles of the thigh move that thigh only which is loose and free from the weight of the body, while the muscles of the other thigh, which is fixed by the weight of the body, move not the thigh, but the trunk upon the thigh; so that our walking is performed not so much by the muscles of the thigh moving the limb, as by their moving the pelvis, i. e. rolling the trunk upon the limb.

## MUSCLES MOVING THE THIGH.

### 1. THE THIGH IS MOVED BACKWARDS AND OUTWARDS

By the Glutæus maximus,	} which is im- planted into the	{ Linea aspera, Trochanter major, Top of trochanter.
—— medius,		
—— minimus,		

### 2. THE THIGH IS MOVED BACKWARDS, AND ROLLED UPON ITS AXIS.

By the Pyriformis,	} which is im- planted into the	{ Root of the trochanter, _____ _____ _____ betwixt the trochanters.
Gemini,		
Obturator externus,		
—— internus,		
Quadratus,		

### 3. THE THIGH IS MOVED FORWARDS AND INWARDS

By the Psoas magnus,	} which is im- planted into the	{ Trochanter minor, _____ Linea aspera, _____
Iliacus Internus,		
Pectinalis,		
Triceps,		

FASCIALIS. I begin with this muscle, as it is necessary in the dissection. The thigh is inclosed in a very strong sheath, which, like that of the arm, sends down among the muscles strong tendinous septa or partitions; and the muscles are inclosed in these septa; and the great muscles of the leg are supported by it in their strong and continual actions. The

tendinous fascia of the thigh arises chiefly from the spine of the ilium, partly (over the groin) from the external oblique muscle of the abdomen. Every fascia has something added by each muscle, and takes a new increase and adhesion at each bone which it passes. It is always strengthened by adhesions to joints, and comes down from them thicker upon the muscles below ; and so this fascia of the thigh, which arises chiefly from the spine of the ilium, descends, covering all the muscles of the thigh : it sends partitions down to the *linea aspera* and trochanters ; it has a new adhesion and a new source of tendinous fibres at the knee ; it adheres most remarkably at the inner side of the tibia, and then descends to the brawn ; it covers all the leg, and is again reinforced at the ankle : and this I believe to be a juster history than the common idea of making it an expansion of the small tendon of the small muscle, which I am now to describe ; for the fascialis is too essential to the strength of the leg to depend upon so inconsiderable an origin, and would be found there though this muscle were away, as in the *palmaris* of the hand.

This fascia consists properly of two plates ; one is that which comes down from the crest of the ilium, and from the muscles of the belly ; the other, that which arises purely from the tendon of the *musculus fascialis*, and which is, at the same time connected with the capsular ligament of the femur and with the trochanter ; and so the muscle lies betwixt the two plates of the fascia ; and as the fascia at this part takes at least a reinforcement from the capsular ligament, and from about the trochanter major, the fascialis muscle may be said to be inserted into the trochanter.

So this great tendinous fascia has these connections : the crest of the ilium ; the ligament of Paupart at the rim of the belly ; the crest and arch of the pubes ; the tuber ischii, and so back along the coccyx to the ridge and processes of the sacrum ; the ligament of the joint, the great trochanter, and the *linea aspera*, all the way down to the knee, where its last adhesion is very strong, and from whence it comes off again much strengthened.

It is thicker on the outer side and back part, and very thin on the inner side of the thigh ; and it dives with perpendicular divisions among the muscles of the thigh.

CLVI. The FASCIALIS MUSCLE. The muscle is rightly named *tensor vaginæ femoris* ; for hardly any other use can be assigned. It arises from the upper spinous process of the ilium, i. e. from the fore part, or very point of its spine, by a tendon of about an inch in length. It is very small at its origin and at its termination. It is thick and fleshy in the middle,



swelling out. It extends downwards, and obliquely backwards, almost to the middle of the thigh; and there it terminates obliquely, betwixt the two lamellæ of the membrane to which it belongs.

Its use is chiefly to make the fascia tense, to prepare the muscles for strong action; and perhaps, by its adhesions about the trochanter, it may have some little effect in rolling the thigh, so as to turn the toes inwards, and oppose the Gemini.

**CLVII. PSOAS MAGNUS.**—This and the following muscle come from within the body to move the thigh forwards. This is a very long and fleshy muscle; of considerable strength; of constant use; perpetually employed in moving the thigh forwards, or in supporting the pelvis upon the thigh-bone, so as to preserve the equilibrium of the body.

It is named from *PSOA LUMBUS*; is a large round muscle, very strong, of great length, filling up all the space upon either side of the spine, and bounding the pelvis at its side. It comes from under the ligamentum arcuatum of the diaphragm; for it arises first by its uppermost head from the last vertebra of the back, then successively from each of the vertebræ of the loins. It sticks close to the lumbar vertebræ; for it arises, not only from the transverse processes, but from the sides of the bodies. These heads do not appear; for they are covered by the body of the muscle, which goes down thick and round till it reaches the sacro-iliac symphysis, and then, being united to the internal iliac muscle, they descend through Paupart's ligament.

**CLVIII.** The *PSOAS PARVUS* does not, like this, belong to the thigh, but is a muscle of the loins which arises along with this one from the last vertebra of the back and the first of the loins. It is a small and delicate muscle; ends in a slender tendon, which goes down by the inner side of the great *psaos*, but does not go out of the pelvis along with it: it stops short, and is implanted into the brim of the pelvis, into the *os ilium*, near the place of the acetabulum: it bends the spine upon the pelvis. This muscle is more regular in the monkey: in the dog it is seldom wanting. It is said to be more frequently found in women than in men: in both it often is not to be found; but sometimes in strong and big men three *psaos* muscles have been found.

**CLIX.** The *ILIACUS INTERNUS* is a thick, very fleshy, and fan-like muscle, which occupies the whole concavity of the *os ilium*.

Its origin is from the internal lip of the *crista ilii*: it adheres to all the concave surface of that bone down to the brim of the pelvis; to the fore part of the bone under the spinous process;

and to a part also of the capsular ligament of the joint : all its radiated fibres are gathered together into a tendon at the ligament of Paupart. This tendon is longer on the lower than on the upper surface : for below it slides on the pubes as upon a pulley, and continues tendinous, that it may bear the friction ; but above it is unconnected, or it is connected only by loose cellular substance ; and there it is quite fleshy. Just under the ligament the two tendons are joined ; whence they bend obliquely round to be implanted into the lesser trochanter.

The *psoas magnus* and *iliacus internus* are two very powerful muscles. Their chief use is to bend the thigh, and more peculiarly of the lumbar one to support the body. The great blood-vessels come down along with these two muscles : the muscles and vessels are both surrounded with loose cellular substance. Matter often forming behind the abdomen, round the *psoas* muscle, is named the *psoas abscess* ; and penetrating under Paupart's ligament, bursts in the thigh at last, and is commonly fatal.

**CLX.** The *PECTINEUS*, or *PECTINALIS*, is so named from its arising at the pecten or pubes ; is a broad flat square muscle ; lies along side of the last described muscles ; and is inserted with their common tendon. It arises flat and fleshy from that line of the pubes which forms the brim of the pelvis, and is implanted into the *linea aspera* by a tendon flat and long, pretty nearly of the same extent and shape with its origin.

This muscle lies immediately under the skin and fascia lata ; and by its bending round under the thigh-bone it has three actions : to close the knees together ; to pull the thigh forward ; to perform rotation, turning out the toe ; and in certain positions of the limb it will pull the thigh back, assisting the extensor muscles.

**CLXI.** The *TRICEPS FEMORIS* is a broad flat muscle, with three heads, arising from the pubes, and inserted into the whole length of the *linea aspera* down to the condyle, and serving for pressing the knees together or bringing the thigh forwards.

The triceps consists of three heads, which lie in different layers, one above the other ; and have so little connection among themselves, that they have been more commonly, and I think properly, described as three muscles. These three parts of the muscle are indeed for one common use : but they are of very different forms ; for they do not even lie on the same plane : one is long : another shorter by one half ; a third longer than both the other two ; so that they have been commonly described under the names of *ADDUCTOR PRIMUS* or *LONGUS* ;

ADDUCTOR SECUNDUS OR BREVIS ; ADDUCTOR TERTIUS OR MAGNUS.

1. The ADDUCTOR LONGUS is the uppermost layer : its border (for it, like the pectinalis, is a flat muscle) ranges with the border of the pectinalis. It arises from the upper and fore part of the pubes by a short roundish tendon, very strong : it swells into a thick fleshy belly, not round, but flattened ; the belly grows flatter as it goes down towards the thigh-bone ; it ends in a flat and short tendon, which is inserted web-like into the linea aspera in all its middle part, viz. about four inches. Thus the muscle is of a triangular form, with its base in the linea aspera, and its apex on the pubes. Its head or origin lies betwixt the pectinalis and the gracilis : its upper edge ranges with the pectinalis ; its lower edge lies upon the triceps magnus. It is called longus, because it is longer than the next head.

2. The ADDUCTOR BREVIS lies under the adductor longus, and is of another layer of muscles ; for as the first layer consists of the pectinalis, triceps longus, and gracilis, this layer consists of the obturator externus, triceps, brevis, and triceps longus. The triceps brevis is exceedingly like the former, in rising near the symphysis pubes, by a thick and flattened tendon, swelling like it into a strong fleshy belly ; like it, it grows flat, and is inserted by a short flat tendon into the inner trochanter and linea aspera. But it differs in these points : that it is less oblique ; for this muscle being shorter, goes more directly across betwixt the pelvis and the thigh : that it is placed higher than the last ; so that whereas the adductor longus is inserted into the middle of the thigh bone, this one is inserted into the lesser trochanter, and only the upper part of the linea aspera ; and the triceps longus is a superficial muscle, while this is hidden under it and behind it. The longus takes its rise from the very crest of the pubes ; this takes its origin from the fore part of the pubes, from the limb just under the crest, so as to be immediately under the head of the longus.

3. The ADDUCTOR MAGNUS, the third head of the triceps, is a very long and flat muscle, lying behind the other heads. It arises by a short tendon, just under the tendon of the adductor brevis : it continues to have a fleshy origin all down the ramus and the tuber ischii (i. e.) from the flat edge of the thyroid hole. From this broad origin it goes to be implanted into the thigh-bone the whole length of the linea aspera, its fibres having various degrees of obliquity according to their insertion ; for the uppermost fasciculi go almost directly across, to be inserted flat into the upper part of the linea aspera ; the succeeding fasciculi go more and more obliquely as they descend, the lower part of the muscle following that rough line which leads

to the condyle ; and the last fibres of all are implanted by a tendon of considerable length into the condyle itself. This adductor magnus makes, as it were, a flat partition betwixt the fore and back parts of the thigh ; and it is about three inches above the condyle that the great artery passes betwixt this tendon and the bone, perforating the triceps, to get from the fore to the back part of the thigh, and down into the ham.

The use of all these muscles is entirely the same, making allowance for their various degrees of oblique insertion ; and they must be very powerful, by the great distance of their origins from the centre of that bone which they move : so that while other muscles pull in a direction very oblique, these three heads of the triceps must pull almost at right angles, the most favourable direction of all.

**CLXII.** The **OBTURATOR EXTERNUS** is named after the obturator ligament, from which it arises. The ligament and the muscles shutting up the foramen thyroideum are named **OBTURATORS** ; and it is sometimes named **ROTATOR FEMORIS EXTRORSUM**, from its turning the thigh outwards. It arises from the ramus of the ischium and pubes where they form the margins of the thyroid hole ; and from the outer surface of the ligament, which it occupies entirely, leaving only room for the obturator vessels and nerves. It is a short muscle ; its origin is broad, and its insertion narrow, so that it is of a conical form ; for the flesh of this muscle is gathered very soon into a round short tendon, which twist under the thigh-bone betwixt it and the pelvis : so that it is in a manner rolled round the thigh-bone, being inserted into the root of the great trochanter. It pulls the thigh forwards, but is more peculiarly a rotator of the thigh. This muscle is of the second layer ; and the succession of all the muscles is this : the upper layer consists of the *psaos* and *iliacus*, where they come out from the abdomen ; of the *pectinalis* ; and of the long head of the triceps : the second layer consists of the short head of the triceps : and the third layer consists of the obturator externus at the upper part, and of the triceps magnus, or third head of the triceps, all down to the condyle.

**GLUTÆI.**—There are three glutæi muscles, each under the other, and each smaller than the muscle which covers it. The **FIRST**, arising from the back part of the ilium, the back of the sacrum, and the sacro-sciatic ligament, forms the whole hip, and descends so low as to be inserted into one third of the length of the *linea aspera*, and into the root of the great trochanter.

The **SECOND** arises from all that portion of the ilium which



is before this one, and from the back of the bone, and goes down to be inserted into the very top of the great trochanter.

The THIRD arises from the back of the bone below the last, down to the acetabulum and sacro-sciatic sinus; and it is inserted into the root betwixt the apex of the great trochanter and the neck of the bone.

CLXIII. The *GLUTÆUS MAXIMUS* arises from the back of the ilium one half its length; from the joining of the ilium and sacrum; from all the spines and irregularities of the sacrum; and from the sacro-sciatic ligament. Its thick fleshy fasciculæ come in a winding and oblique direction down to the thigh-bone; and, being gathered into a flat and pretty broad tendon, it is inserted into the root of the trochanter major, and down three inches of the linea aspera. This is one of the largest and most fleshy muscles of the body; covers all the other muscles of the hip; forms the contour of the hip; pulls the thigh backwards, or the body forwards upon the thigh when the thigh is fixed: and being a wide spreading muscle, which in a manner surrounds its joint, its different portions act with different effects; not only according to their natural direction, but according to the accidental positions of the pelvis with regard to the thigh-bone.

CLXIV. The *GLUTÆUS MEDIUS* or *MINOR* is smaller than the former, but like it. It arises from all the outside of the ilium not occupied by the glutæus major. It, like the other, is a fan-formed muscle; for its fibres converge from its broad origin in all the back of the ilium, to form a short flat tendon, which is inserted into the back or into the very top of the great trochanter. It lies in part under the glutæus maximus; but its chief part lies before the glutæus maximus: and as certain portions of the muscle are before the thigh-bone, there are positions of the pelvis and thigh-bone in which it will pull the thigh forwards, although its proper office is to assist the glutæus magnus in pulling the thigh backwards, and moving it outwards from the body.

CLXV. The *GLUTÆUS MINIMUS* is a small radiated muscle, which lies deep, and quite under the former. It has, compared with the former, a very narrow origin; for it arises chiefly from the lowest part of the back of the ilium, viz. that part which forms the socket for the thigh-bone, and a little higher up; and from the border of the sciatic notch. It forms a short, flat, and strong tendon, which is fixed under the root of the trochanter major, betwixt the trochanter and the neck of the bone: so that these muscles are inserted in this succession; first, the great glutæus, below the root of the trochanter, and

into the *linea aspera* ; the middle *glutæus* into the back and top of the trochanter ; and the smallest of the *glutæi* is implanted into the roughness under the root of the trochanter.

**GEMINI.**—The *gemi*ni are two muscles, or rather one *biceps* muscle ; but the heads are so distinct that they are reckoned two, and so much alike that they are named **GEMINI**.

**CLXVI.** The uppermost, the larger and stronger muscle, arises from the spinous process of the *os ischium*.

**CLXVII.** The second, or smaller head, arises in like manner from the *tuber ischii*, upon its ball or outer end. They are fleshy in their whole length. They meet and unite their tendons at the great trochanter. They are inserted firmly, along with the following tendon, at the root of that process.

**CLXVIII.** The *pyriformis*, sometimes called *iliacus internus* or *pyramidalis*, comes from the hollow of the sacrum, runs in the same line with the lesser *glutæus*, and is inserted with the two last named muscles in the root of the great trochanter.

Its origin is from the hollow of the sacrum, rising from the *vertebræ* of that bone by three or four small fleshy digits, and from the *sacro-sciatic* notch ; it runs betwixt the *glutæus minor* and the *gemi*ni, and its round tendon is inserted betwixt them, somewhat connected with each.

The *pyriformis*, *gemi*ni, *obturator internus*, and *quadratus*, form what some anatomists have called **MUSCULI QUADRAGEMINI** ; and they are so much alike in insertion and use, that it would be waste of time to repeat what has been said of the *gemi*ni and *obturator*.

This muscle, the *pyriformis*, like the others, rolls the thigh outwards. Its name is from its shape.

**CLXIX.** The *obturator internus*, once named *marsupialis* or *bursalis*, arises from all the internal surface of the *obturator* ligament, and from all the edges of the thyroid hole, from the *ilium*, *ischium*, and *pubes* ; so it arises within the *pelvis* ; comes out by turning round the *ischium* in the notch betwixt its *tuber* and its spine. Its origin is therefore circular and fleshy. It runs along the inside of the *os ischium*, turns round that bone betwixt the spinous process and the *tuber*. The hollow there is guarded with cartilage ; and this tendon runs in the hollow, like a pulley round a rope ; passing this, it runs betwixt the two legs of the *gemi*ni, and its tendon is united to theirs ; and the three, appearing almost like one tendon, are inserted together into the root of the *trochanter major*. These, then, might with some propriety be named one muscle ; all the three, viz. the two *gemi*ni muscles and the *obturator* muscle, passing between them, were once accounted as one muscle, and then it

seemed to be a muscle with two bellies and an intermediate tendon ; and this intermediate tendon, with two fleshy ends, give it the appearance of a purse, and thence it was named *MUSCULUS MARSUPIALIS*, or *BURSALIS*.

CLXX. The *QUADRATUS FEMORIS*, is a thin flat muscle, passing in a transverse direction betwixt the tuber ischii and the thigh-bone.

It arises from the lower and flattened surface of the *TUBER ISCHII* by a short tendinous beginning. It goes a little obliquely upwards and outwards, and is inserted into the back of the great trochanter, in that roughness which is found just where the trochanter is joined to the bone, and goes obliquely betwixt the trochanter major and the trochanter minor.

It rolls the thigh-bone, so as to turn the toe outwards, and pulls it almost directly backwards.

The *MOTIONS* of the *THIGH* must be performed by many very strong muscles, as it moves under the weight of the whole body ; and it seems to be curiously contrived, that the muscles fit for moving the thigh forward should, in certain positions of the thigh, move it backwards ; also giving an increase of strength to that motion of the thigh in which most strength is required.

There are but two, or chiefly two, points for insertion ; the trochanter major and the trochanter minor. These two points are so oblique, that no one muscle, nor set of muscles, performs any direct motions ; for they all twist round the bone's axis, to get at their insertion. The *glutæi*, the *pyriformis*, the *gemini*, the *quadratus*, the *obturator internus*, and *obturator externus*, all bend round the axis of the thigh-bone, to reach the *TROCHANTER MAJOR*. These now may be called the *abductors* of the thigh, to pull it outwards ; but we should conclude from this direction, that they could not pull the thigh backwards, for the thigh-bone would turn on its axis and elude their action.—The *psaos magnus*, the *iliacus internus*, the *pectinalis*, and the *triceps*, do in the same manner go round the inner side of the bone : the two first to be implanted into the trochanter minor, the two latter into the *linea aspera*, just below it. These are justly named *adductors* of the thigh : their chief use is to draw the thighs together : and this is the combined effect of these two sets of muscles. When the adductors act by themselves, they pull the thigh forwards, moving the leg, rolling the thigh-bone, and turning the toe out in a graceful step ; which is most peculiarly the effect of the *pectinalis* and *triceps*. But when we are to finish the motion, by pulling forward the body, which is the same with pulling back the thigh, it is not merely the

antagonists of these muscles, as the glutæi, the gemini, &c. which must act. Were the glutæi to act alone, they would rather turn the thigh upon its axis outwards than pull it back ; but the triceps, &c. act again in conjunction with the glutæi, &c. and by the action of the triceps, the inner trochanter is fixed ; the further rolling of the thigh is prevented ; the full effect is given to the glutæi muscles. When the glutæi act, they pull the thigh directly backwards, assisted by the triceps, pectinalis, and others : for now the thigh-bone is so far advanced before the body, that those muscles, as the triceps, which were benders of the thigh in its first position, are extensors when it is advanced a step before the body ; or, perhaps, it will be more explicit to say, that when the thigh is moved one step before the body, the iliacus internus, psoas magnus, and triceps muscles, co-operate, agree with the glutæi muscles in bringing the trunk forwards to follow the limb, and then in fixing and stiffening the trunk upon that limb till the other thigh is advanced a second step before the body.

The MUSCLES of the LEG are the most simple of all : for the knee is a mere hinge, at least it is so in all our ordinary motions ; so that there is no action to be performed but those of mere flexion and extension ; and there are only two classes of muscles to be described, the extensors and the flexors of the leg.

1. The EXTENSORS of the LEG. The only muscles which extend the leg are those four, which may be very fairly reckoned a quadriceps extensor cruris. Indeed the French anatomists arrange them so. Sabbatier calls them the triceps femoris. These muscles, which all converge to the patella, and are inserted in it, are :

Rectus Femoris,	Vastus Externus,
Cruræus vel Femoræus,	Vastus Internus.

And these are all implanted by one tendon ; because the joint being a hinge, bending only in one direction, its muscles could have given but one motion, however oblique their origin and course had been.

2. The FLEXORS of the LEG are one on the outside and four on the inside of the leg ; the tendons of the outside being implanted into the upper knob of the fibula, and those in the inside into the rough head of the tibia, forming the hamstrings, and extending their tendons or aponeurotic expansion downwards upon the leg.

#### INSIDE FLEXORS.

Sartorius,	Gracilis,
Semitendinosus,	Seminembranosus.
VOL. I.	2 E



## OUTSIDE FLEXOR.

Biceps.

FLEXOR lying in the HAM.

Musculus Poplitæus.



## EXTENSORS OF THE LEG.

CLXXI. The RECTUS FEMORIS, sometimes RECTUS CRURIS, is so named from its direction ; it is a thin flat muscle, and arises by two heads. The first or greater head arises from the lower spinous process of the ilium by a short round tendon ; its second head is in a different and in somewhat of a curved direction ; for it comes from the head of the acetabulum and from the capsular ligament. These join together, and form a flat tendon of four inches in length, which becomes gradually fleshy and larger down to its middle, and then again contracts towards the patella in the same gradual manner. There is a middle tendinous line running the whole length of the muscle, especially conspicuous on its back part ; and towards that central line all the muscular fibres converge.

The rectus is united at the sides to the vasti ; at the back part to the cruræus ; and its tendon, along with that of the cruræus, goes to be directly implanted into the rotula of the knee.

The rectus cruris is the first of those muscles which Sabbatier calls the TRICEPS FEMORIS ; and surely they may be as properly named thus as the TRICEPS CUBITI EXTENSOR.

This large mass of muscle or flesh enwraps the whole of the thigh-bone behind as well as before : for, first, the CRURÆUS arises fleshy from all the fore part of the bone ; the VASTUS EXTERNUS from the great trochanter, and all the back part and outer side of the bone ; and the VASTUS INTERNUS arises, in like manner, from the lesser trochanter, and all the inner side of the bone, from the trochanter major all round to the origin of the cruræus.

CLXXII. The CRURÆUS arises from the fore part of the TROCHANTER MINOR ; and it continues its origin from the fore part of the femur, the whole way down to within two inches or little more of the patella. About three inches from its origin it is joined by the VASTUS EXTERNUS, which unites with it at the outer edge and fore part ; and the VASTUS INTERNUS comes into it about five inches below its origin, and joins it at the inner edge and fore part. At its lower part it is joined to

the tendon of the rectus, to form but one large tendon, which is inserted into the rotula.

Under the cruræus are sometimes found two little muscles, or rather two little slips of this muscle, which are quite distinct. They arise on the fore part of the thigh-bone, two or three inches above the capsule of the joint ; and they are inserted into the capsule on each side of the patella, evidently for the purpose of pulling it up, to prevent its being caught ; and when these two (*SUBCRURÆI*) are not found as distinct muscles, some fibres of the cruræus supply their place.

**CLXXIII.** The *VASTUS EXTERNUS* is the largest of these three muscles.

Its origin is by a pretty thick and strong tendon from the lower and fore part of the trochanter major ; and it continues its origin from the root of the trochanter all down the linea aspera to that rough line which goes to the inner tuberosity of the thigh-bone.

It touches the end of the cruræus about four inches below its origin, and continues attached to it the whole way down ; and then it forms a flat tendon which connects itself with the tendon of the *RECTUS FEMORIS*, and then embraces in a semicircular manner the outside of the patella. And several of the fibres of this aponeurosis not only cross over the rotula, but go down over its opposite side to glide along the head of the tibia, and to be inserted into the inner side of the knee.

**CLXXIV.** The *VASTUS INTERNUS* is neither so large nor so fleshy as the *VASTUS EXTERNUS* ; but it is exceedingly like it in all other respects.

It arises from the fore part of the trochanter minor just under the insertion of the *psaos magnus* ; and it continues its origin from the linea aspera the whole way down to the inner condyle, exactly opposite to the origin of the vastus externus, so that their origins meet ; they leave just a channel betwixt them. The vastus internus, very soon after its origin, joins itself to the cruræus, or middle portion, and accompanies it in all its length : and at the distance of two inches from the rotula it unites itself with the tendon of the cruræus at its internal edge ; and this tendon completes that junction which unites the four muscles into a quadriceps cruris. This vastus internus descends much lower, in a fleshy form, than the external vastus does ; and forms that fleshy cushion which covers the inner side of the knee joint. Its tendon embraces the rotula somewhat in the same circular form with that of the vastus externus ; and, like the externus, it sends some fibres across the knee-pan, to be inserted in the outer part of the head of the tibia.

The RECTUS, and the VASTUS EXTERNUS, INTERNUS, and CRURÆUS, form one large mass of flesh, which embraces and incloses all the thigh-bone ; and they are so connected, that the cruræus cannot be separated, and cannot be neatly distinguished.

The use of these four muscles is evident to extend the leg and to bend the thigh on the trunk, or reciprocally to bend the trunk on the thigh. This, or these two motions alternately, is the common use of these muscles, as in walking ; and they are most peculiarly useful in running and leaping.

After describing a large mass, conjoined in one tendon, and concurring in one simple action, it is superfluous to say that its power must be great. This power must be still further increased by the rotula, which removes the force from the centre, and gives the advantage of a pulley, which it really and truly is : without this pulley these muscles could be of no use in certain situations ; for instance, in the recumbent posture : for then the extending muscles being in the same line with their bones, could have no farther power ; but the rectus, by the pulley of the rotula, and by its attachment to the basin, raises the trunk, or at least helps the psoas, the iliacus, and the muscles of the belly.

The rotula is again attached to the tibia by a strong ligament, to sustain the pulling of these great muscles.\*

#### FLEXORS OF THE LEG.

CLXXV. The SARTORIUS or TAYLOR'S MUSCLE, is so named from its bending the knees and drawing the legs across. It is the longest muscle, and a very beautiful one : it extends obliquely across the whole length of the thigh, crossing it like a fillet or garter, about two inches in breadth.

It arises from the upper spinous process of the os ilium, by a tendon about half an inch in length ; its thin flat belly extends obliquely across the thigh, like a strap, and is inserted in the

\* These muscles are in continual action : for their office is to resist the bending of the knee, which would happen by this incumbent weight of the body ; so that the continual support of the body depends wholly on these muscles ; and they are the great agents in running, leaping, walking, &c. Since, by extending the knee, they raise the weight of the pelvis and trunk, and of all the body, they must be very powerful ; and accordingly when they are weighed against their antagonist muscle, we find them greatly to exceed ; for the QUADRICEPS, i. e. the rectus, cruræus, and vasti, will weigh four pounds, while the BICEPS, &c. their antagonists, weigh but two pounds. This experiment was often repeated by the great Cowper for Mr. Brown, who was delivering lectures on muscular motion.

same oblique form into the inner tubercle of the head of the tibia ; its aponeurosis spreads pretty widely, going over the whole joint of the knee a thin sheet of tendon.

From the oblique position of the muscle, it might in action change its place ; but it is closely embraced by the fascia lata, and is tied by such adhesions as form something like a peculiar sheath of itself.

It turns the thigh like the *quadrigemi* and *obturator* muscles. It also bends the leg upon the knee ; and when the leg does not yield, it bends the thigh upon the pubes ; or where the thigh also is fixed, it bends the body forwards : but in performing that action, whence it has its name, it does all these ; for first the leg and thigh are rolled, then the thigh is bended towards the belly, then the legs are bent to draw them across. Though a small muscle, yet it is of great power from its origin, and in some degree from its insertion also ; being much removed from the centre of motion.

CLXXVI. The *GRACILIS*, sometimes called *RECTUS INTERNUS FEMORIS*,\* is a small, flat, thin muscle, in its general shape somewhat like the *sartorius*.

It arises by a flat tendon of two inches in length from the pubes and near the symphysis ; and it passes immediately under the integuments down to the knee : it passes by the inner condyle of the knee, in the form of a short round tendon ; and as it bends behind the head of the tibia, it is bound down by a bundle of tendinous fibres, which crossing it, go to the back part of the leg. After passing the head of the tibia, it turns obliquely forwards and downwards ; it here runs behind the tendon of the *sartorius*, and before that of the *semitendinosus*. It is inserted with the *sartorius* into the side of the tuberosity at the top of the tibia.

This muscle runs also in a line so wide from the centre of motion, that its power is very great. It serves chiefly as a flexor of the leg : when the leg is fixed, it must, by its origin from the pubes, be a flexor of the thigh, and an adductor in nearly the same direction with the *pectineus* and *triceps* ; and it is worth observing, that while the knee is straight, the *sartorius* and the *gracilis* cannot bend the knee : they, on the contrary, keep it steady and firm : but when the knee is bent, they come into action ; for in proportion as the muscles which have made the flexion are contracted, they are less able to contract

\* *GRACILIS* is from its smallness ; *RECTUS INTERNUS* is from its straight direction.



farther ; and therefore it is desirable that more muscles should come into play.

CLXXVII. The SEMITENDINOSUS is so named from its lower half being composed of a small round tendon ; and as tendon was once misnamed nerve, this is the SEMINERVOUS of Winslow, Douglas, and others.

Its origin is from the tuberosity of the ischium (along with the semimembranosus, and touching the biceps) by a short thick tendon. It also arises by many oblique fasciculi of fibres from the posterior portion of its opposite muscle the biceps cruris. This cross connection betwixt the two muscles continues for three inches down from the tuber ischii ; it then departs from the biceps, goes obliquely inwards, and is flattened and contracted into a tendon six inches from the knee. Its tendon then becoming smaller and rounder, passes down behind the inner tubercle of the knee ; and getting round the head of the tibia, it comes forward to be inserted into the tuber at the head of that bone. At this place the tendon grows broad and flat ; it is expanded, and as it were grasps the inner side of the knee ; its upper edge is joined to the lower edge of the tendon of the gracilis, so that the sartorius, gracilis, and semitendinosus, are implanted like one muscle ; and this tendinous expansion seems like a capsule for enclosing the heads of the tibia and femur, and for strengthening the knee-joint. The semitendinosus bends the leg.

CLXXVIII. The SEMIMEMBRANOSUS has its name from the muscle, which is flat, thick, and fleshy, beginning and ending with a flattened tendon, somewhat like a membrane, but infinitely thicker and massier than such a name should imply.

It arises from the tuber ischii, before the semitendinosus and biceps. It arises a broad, thin, and flat tendon, of about three inches in length. It becomes fleshy and thick in its middle, but it soon becomes thinner again, and terminates in a short tendon, which gliding behind the head of the tibia, is inserted there.\*

This muscle has little connection with any other. It lies under, or, more properly speaking, on the inside of the semitendinosus, and the two together form the hamstrings. The hamstring muscles contribute also to another motion. Though,

\* The two tendons of this muscle, the membranous tendon at the head, and this smaller one by which it is inserted, stand so obliquely, that the muscular fibres betwixt them must be very oblique ; for the membranous tendon descends low upon the back part or edge, and the tendon of insertion begins high upon the fore edge of the muscle.

when extended, the tibia cannot roll, yet when we sit with our knees bent, it can roll slightly ; and such rolling is accomplished by these muscles. All these muscles which bend the leg, and which consequently extend the thigh at the same time, are muscles of very great power ; because they arise in one common point, the tuber ischii, and that point is very far distant from the centre of motion.

There is still one small muscle, a flexor of the leg, which performs this rotation during the bent state of the knee with most particular power.

**CLXXIX.** The *MUSCULUS POPLITEUS*, which is so named from its lying in the ham, is a small triangular muscle, lying across the back part of the knee-joint, very deep under the hamstrings, and under the muscles of the leg.

Its origin is from the outer condyle of the thigh-bone, and from the back part of the capsule of the joint. Its tendon is short and thick, but of no great extent. It passes fleshy behind the knee-joint ; and it is inserted broad into a ridge on the back part of the tibia ; so that by its small origin and broad insertion it is a fan-like muscle ; its fibres being almost transverse, and its lower fibres nearly perpendicular. Besides bending the leg, it is useful by pulling aside the capsule to prevent its being caught.

**CLXXX.** The *BICEPS CRURIS*, so named from having two heads, a long and short one, lies immediately under the skin, in the back part of the leg, running down from the pelvis to the knee, to form the outer hamstring.

It is the single flexor on the outside of the thigh. Its origin is from the outer part of the tuber ischii by a tendon of an inch and a half in length. And this tendon is, in its origin, closely united with that of the semitendinosus for two inches, or at least the whole length of the tendon. After a short, but very thick fleshy belly, it degenerates into a tendon, especially on its back part ; and this tendon, which begins above the middle of the thigh, is continued the whole way down.

About one third down the bone is the beginning of the second or short head, which has its origin all the way down the linea aspera to the line above the outer condyle of the thigh-bone ; and here it is somewhat connected with the origin of the vastus externus muscle and the insertion of the glutæus magnus. The tendons of the two heads are joined a little above the inner condyle, and go outwards to be inserted into the outer part of the head of the fibula, forming the outer hamstring.

Its insertion surrounds the head of the fibula, and a small portion also sinks betwixt the bump of the fibula and the inner head of the tibia, to be implanted into it also.

This muscle, like the opposite ones, serves for bending the leg. The short head simply bends the leg ; the long head assists the short one in bending the leg, and is also a muscle of the thigh.

The muscles of the foot are six **EXTENSORS** and one **FLEXOR** MUSCLE.

### EXTENSORS.

GASTROCNEMIUS vel GEMELLUS,	} all lying on the back part of the leg.
GASTROCNEMIUS INTERNUS vel SOLEUS,	
TIBIALIS POSTICUS,	
PERONEUS LONGUS,	
———— BREVIS,	
PLANTARIS,	

The **FLEXOR** is,

The **TIBIALIS ANTICUS**, lying on the fore part of the leg.

**CLXXXI.** The **GASTROCNEMIUS** is often divided into three muscles, named **GASTROCNEMII** or **GEMELLI**. But, far from counting thus, we should rather favour the arrangement of Douglas, who couples this with the next muscle, as forming a quadriceps or two muscles joined with two heads each, and he calls it the **EXTENSOR CRURALIS**.

The **GASTROCNEMIUS** is the great muscle of the brawn : its two heads are two very large and fleshy bellies, which arise from the tubercles of the thigh-bone. The inner head is the larger, and arises by a strong tendon from the back of the inner condyle, and a little way up the rough line ; and it has also a strong adhesion to the capsular ligament of the knee.

The outer head is shorter than this : it arises in the same way, from the outer tubercle of the thigh-bone ; and the two muscles meet and run down together, forming the appearance of a rapha, by the direction of their fibres. But the two bellies continue distinct till they meet in the middle of the leg. They are distinct at their back part, but at their fore part they are connected by a tendinous aponeurosis, or strong but flat tendon ; and the two bellies being about the middle of the leg united firmly, they form a large flat tendon, very broad at its beginning, which unites with that of the soleus a little above the ankle.

**CLXXXII.** **SOLEUS**.—This name is from its resemblance to the sole-fish ; and it is often named **GASTROCNEMIUS INTER-**

**MUS.** This, like the last muscle, has two **HEADS**, which arise from either bone.

One head arises from the bulb of the fibula, and continues to adhere to one fourth of the upper part of the bone ; another head arises from about three inches of the upper part of the tibia. The first of these heads is large and round ; the second is smaller and round ; they unite immediately ; and a large fleshy belly is formed, with still a conspicuous division betwixt the flesh of the two heads. The great tendon begins about half way down the leg, but still is intermixed with fleshy fibres till it approaches the heel. A little below the middle of the leg this tendon is united with the tendon of the gastrocnemius, to form the great back tendon, named tendo Achillis, and sometimes, though very rarely, chorda magna.

The tendon is large ; it grows small as it approaches the heel ; when it touches the extremity of the heel bone, it expands to take a firmer hold.

In running, walking, leaping, &c. this muscle, with the extensors of the leg, are the great muscles. The external gastrocnemius has double power ; for it, arising from the tubercles of the thigh-bone, is both an extensor of the foot and a flexor of the leg ; but the gastrocnemius internus is a mere extensor of the foot, and both together have such strength as often to break the tendo Achillis.

**CLXXXIII. PLANTARIS.**—This muscle is named from a mistaken notion of its going to the *planta pedis* or sole of the foot, to form the plantar aponeurosis, like the palmaris of the hand ; but, in fact, it does not go to the sole, but is a mere extensor of the foot, inserted along with the tendo Achillis.

This long and slender muscle is situated under the gastrocnemius internus. It arises from the external condyle of the femur wholly fleshy ; it also has an attachment to the capsular ligament of the joint ; after an oblique fleshy belly of about three inches, it forms its small flat tendon. The tendon runs betwixt the inner head of the gastrocnemius and the soleus ; and where the tendo Achillis begins, the tendon of the plantaris attaches itself to the inner edge and fore part of the Achillis tendon ; it accompanies it down to the heel, running in a groove which seems made to receive it ; and is implanted with the tendo Achillis into the inner side of the heel-bone. It is often wanting.

The use of this muscle is to tuck up the capsule in the great bendings of the knee-joint, and to assist the gastrocnemii muscles.

The **PERONÆI** muscles are those which arise from the fibula. They are named from their length being different : the **PERO-**



*NÆUS LONGUS* being as long again as the *BREVIS* ; for it is one half longer in its origin, the one rising at the head, the other at the middle of the bone ; and again it is one half longer at its insertion, going fully round under the foot of the opposite side, while the shorter *peronæus* stops at the side of the foot to be inserted.

**CLXXXIV.** The *PERONÆUS LONGUS* is so named from its lying along the fibula. It arises partly tendinous, chiefly fleshy, from the upper knob of the fibula, and from the ridge of the bone, down to within three inches of the ankle. It has another small slip of a head from the upper part of the tibia, above where the fibula joins ; it has also adhesions to the tendinous partition, which separates this from the *EXTENSOR DIGITORUM COMMUNIS* and the *SOLEUS*.

Its tendon begins very high above the middle of the leg ; and it continues to receive the fleshy fibres almost at right angles in the penniform manner. The tendon is concealed down to about or below the middle of the leg : then it is seen immediately under the integuments ; and we can easily distinguish it through the skin, being that acute line or string which runs down behind the outer ankle, and which gives shape to that part.

In passing the outer ankle, it runs down through a cartilaginous pulley or annular ligament, which also transmits the *peronæus brevis* : it leaves the *peronæus brevis* on the side of the foot ; and passing by itself in a groove of the heel-bone, it bends obliquely across the arch of the foot, goes quite down to the opposite side, and is inserted into the metatarsal bone of the great toe, and the great cuneiform bone on which it is founded. Under the eminence of the *os cuboides* it suffers great friction, so as to be thickened to a degree of ossification, and to resemble a sesamoid bone. It is also thickened in a lesser degree as it passes the outer ankle ; and in all this length it is tied down by a strong ligamentous expansion.

It is a powerful extensor of the leg ; it also gives that obliquity of the foot, which is so handsome and natural, and useful in walking. This muscle particularly turns down to the ground the inner edge of the foot ; so it presses to the ground the ball of the great toe ; and that is the part which touches the ground, and which feels sore after long walking or violent leaping or running : it is by that part that we push in making a step ; so that this muscle is perceived to be continually active in all motions of walking, leaping, running, and more particularly in dancing.

**CLXXXV.** The *PERONÆUS BREVIS* is like its fellow except in length and insertion. Its origin is from the ridge of the fibu-

la ; beginning about one third down the bone, and continuing its adhesion the whole way to the ankle. It also has adhesions to the tendinous partition which is betwixt it and the common extensor ; so that these two muscles are by such adhesions very difficult to dissect. It is smaller at its origin, but increases in its fleshy belly as it descends ; and it is fleshy lower down than the peronæus longus. It is like it, a penniform muscle.—The tendons of the two peronæi pass together by the outer ankle in the same ring : but the tendons cross each other ; for the peronæus longus is in its belly more forward. The brevis lies under, and behind it, quite covered by it ; and yet the tendon of the brevis, by creeping under the longus, gets before it, just under the outer ankle ; and from that it runs in a separate groove, superficially, upon the outer edge of the foot, to be inserted into the metatarsal bone of the little toe. In both muscles the tendon is upon the outer edge, and begins almost as high as the upper head of each muscle. This tendon of the peronæus brevis is the shorter one, is small where it passes through the pulley, and expands when it reaches its insertion, that it may grasp the metatarsal bone firmly. The tendon of the longer muscle also expands a little, and somewhat in the form of a hand and fingers, taking hold of two bones by three little heads.

This muscle assists the former in extending the foot and coincides well in its oblique action with the last ; for as the last turned down the inner edge of the foot, this turns the outer edge upwards, which is exactly the same motion.

**CLXXXVI.** The **TIBIALIS POSTICUS** is a penniform muscle, very much like the two last described, only its tendon goes round the cartilaginous pulley of the inner ankle.

It is named **TIBIALIS** from its origin, and **POSTICUS** from its place.

It arises from the back part and ridge of the tibia, from the opposite part of the fibula, and from the interosseous membrane below these ; and it continues its attachment to the interosseous ligament quite down to the ankle. It has also strong attachments to the surrounding tendinous partitions. Its fibres are all oblique, and go to the middle tendon, which is in the heart of the muscle. About the middle of the tibia this tendon begins to emerge from the fleshy belly ; it grows gradually smaller, but still continues to receive flesh quite down to the ankle. It passes in the groove of the inner ankle, and is retained there by such a ligament as holds the peronæi. After passing the ligament, it expands in the hand-like form, to grasp the bones of the tarsus : and it is expanded much more than the peronæus ; for it sends roots down among the bones both of the tarsus and

metatarsus, so as to take hold first on the lower rough part of the naviculare in passing over it. Then it is implanted into the two first metatarsal bones, then into the calcaneum, and lastly into the os cuboides; and where it passes over the os naviculare it is hardened into a sort of sesamoid bone. In short, it is implanted in the sole of the foot by a tendon like a hand, which sends down its fingers among the tarsal and metatarsal bones, to take the surest hold. This muscle pulls the foot in so as to put the toes together; and when balanced by the peronæi, it directly bends the foot.

CLXXXVII. The *TIBIALIS ANTICUS* crosses obliquely the fore part of the leg. It arises from the fore part and outside of the tibia. It begins just under the outer tuber, and continues its adhesion down two thirds of the bone; then the tendon begins to be formed: and this muscle, like almost all the smaller ones of the leg, adheres to the tendinous partitions, and to the fascia, with which they are covered. The tendon begins almost with the origin of the muscle; but continues covered by the flesh, and not appearing till within four inches or so of the ankle, when it begins to pass obliquely over the leg; and having completed the crossing above the ankle, it goes under the annular ligament in a peculiar ring: it runs along the side of the foot, and is implanted into the os cuneiforme internum; and a small production of the tendon goes forward to be inserted into the metatarsal bone of the great toe.

It is the only muscle which bends the foot, that is, which turns the great toe towards the leg.

## MUSCLES OF THE TOES.

THE long muscles of the toes are just four, two *FLEXOR* and two *EXTENSOR MUSCLES*. The flexor muscles lie upon the *tibialis posticus*, or behind betwixt it and the *solæus*. The extensor muscles again lie under the *tibialis anticus*, or at least their heads are under it, and their bellies only appear from under it about the middle of the leg.

The flexor tendons follow the tendon of the *tibialis posticus* by the pulley of the inner ankle into the hollow of the foot.—The tendons of the extensor muscles keep with that of the *tibialis anticus*, and cross over the fore part or rising of the ankle, where the tibia is united with the astragalus. And in dissection we must follow these in an opposite order to that in which they are described; for next to the fore part of the *solæus* is, 1st, The *FLEXOR POLLICIS*; 2dly, The *FLEXOR DIGITORUM*; and 3dly, The *TIBIALIS ANTICUS*.

**CLXXXVIII.** The **FLEXOR LONGUS POLLICIS** is small and pointed at its origin, and arises fleshy from three fourths of the fibula to within an inch of the outer ankle. It grows thicker and larger as it descends, and adheres to the tendinous partitions of the tibialis posticus and of the peronæi. Its tendon can be seen only about an inch above the joint of the ankle. It passes down behind the inner ankle, where it is bound in a sort of annular ligament. It there passes under the heel-bone, in the arch of the foot, betwixt the bones and the abductor pollicis; it then glides into the channel made by the two heads of the flexor pollicis brevis; it then passes betwixt the two sesamoid bones at the root of the great toe; it then goes forward in a sheath, to be inserted into the last bone of the great toe; at which implantation it is enlarged.

Its office is to bend the great toe; but it is also continually useful at every step in extending the foot, or in keeping the toe firm to the ground, while the gastrocnemii raise the heel; and therefore we should not be rash in cutting away the great toe, for in it consist not the strength of the foot only but of the leg.

**CLXXXIX.** The **FLEXOR LONGUS DIGITORUM PEDIS**, is named, in addition, the **PERFORANS**; because, like the perforans of the hand, it runs its tendons through the split tendon of a smaller muscle, which is lodged in the sole of the foot. It is named also **FLEXOR COMMUNIS**; although there be less reason here, where there are no flexors for the individual toes, than in the hand, where there are separate flexors for the individual fingers.

It arises from the back part of the tibia, its whole length; that is, from the end of the popliteal muscle, and from the septum tendinosum, by which it is divided from the tibialis anticus, which lies immediately before it; and it continues this origin from the tibia down to within three inches or so of the ankle. Its origin is not easily separated before from the tibialis posticus, nor behind from the flexor pollicis.

The tendon is not formed till very near the ankle (within two inches of it,) and the flesh still accompanies it quite down to the joint. It crosses the tendon of the tibialis posticus behind the ankle-joint, and goes forward in the groove of the os calcis, tied down by a sort of capsule or annular ligament. In the arch of the foot it crosses the tendon of the flexor pollicis, from which it receives a slip of tendon; and thus the office of either is assisted by the other, and could be wholly supplied by it; it then passes over to the middle of the sole, and growing flatter and thicker, divides into four flat tendons. These go forward, diverging till they arrive at the ends of their metatarsal bones; then they emerge from the aponeurosis plantaris,



along with the common short flexor. Now both these tendons run under a ligamentous sheath, and are included in it under the first and second bones of the toes ; and having perforated the short flexor opposite to the second joint, they are finally inserted into the root of the third or last bone of each toe. These tendons, like the corresponding ones of the foot, seem to be slit with a sort of longitudinal fissure.

The proper use of this muscle is to bend all the joints of the toes, but more peculiarly the last bone ; and also to extend the foot, keeping the point of the toes to the ground, consequently assisting the *gastrocnemii*, and all the muscles used in walking, &c.

CXC. The *MASSA CARNEA JACOBI SYLVII*, or *PLANTÆ PEDIS*, is a small body of flesh, naturally connected with the flexor longus. The *massa carnea* arises from the lower part of the heel-bone, in two divisions ; one (the external one) tendinous, the other fleshy. It is, upon the whole, pretty nearly of a square form ; it joins the tendon of the flexor longus before its division into tendons for each toe ; and by the long lever that this has upon the heel-bone it must be of great assistance to the flexor. It is more generally considered in this light of a supplementary muscle ; by some it is considered as a distinct muscle, and as the origin and first beginning of the *lumbricales pedis*.

Thus Cowper considers the *massa carnea* and the *lumbricales* as one and the same : that the *massa carnea* joins the tendon, covers it with its flesh, continues fleshy along the common tendon, till at the bifurcation it also parts, along with the four tendons, into four small fleshy muscles, which are called *lumbricales*.

Albinus, again, paints the *massa carnea* distinctly terminating at the common tendon, and the *lumbricales* as arising distinct from each of the divided tendons.

CXCI. The *FLEXOR BREVIS DIGITORUM* is also named the flexor sublimis or perforatus. It arises from the lower part of the heel-bone, or the bump upon which we stand. It arises by very short tendinous fibres ; and being placed immediately under the plantar aponeurosis, it takes hold of it, and also of the tendinous partitions betwixt it and the two abductors of the small and of the great toe, which are on either side of it. Under the metatarsal bones it divides itself into four heads : their tendons begin earlier upon the side next the foot ; they grow round ; emerge from betwixt the dentations of the plantar aponeurosis ; they then pass into the vagina or sheath of each toe ; and on this, the first phalanx, they lie over the tendons of the long extensors. About the root of this first bone they di-

vide into two little bands, which form a split (like the perforatus of the fingers) for the passage of the long tendon.

The long tendon passes through it upon the second joint of the toe ; and immediately after the perforated tendon fixes itself by the two forks to each side of the second bone or phalanx of the toe.

Its use is to bend the first and second joints of the toes, but most peculiarly the second. And the obliquity of the long flexor is exactly balanced by a corresponding obliquity of the short flexor : for the tendon of the long flexor coming round the inner circle, runs obliquely outwards to reach the toes ; while the short flexor coming from the heel, which is towards the outer edge of the foot, runs in a like degree obliquely inwards, and meets the other at an acute angle near the toes.

CXCII. The LUMBRICALES must be dissected after the short flexor. They need no description, since they exactly correspond with those of the hand. They rise like them in the forks of the flexor tendons. They, like them, pass through the digitations of the aponeurosis. They pass on to the first bone of the toes, and, like the lumbricales of the hand, creep over the convexity of the bone, to be united along with the tendons of the extensors. Their insertion is always at the side of the toe next the great toe ; and their use is to bend the first joint of the toes, and to draw them towards the great one, making an arch in the foot, and assisting the transversalis pedis. The FLEXOR BREVIS lies most superficially upon the sole of the foot, having its origin from the inner surface of the aponeurosis. The MASSA CARNEA lies deeper, having no origin but from the tip of the heel-bone, and being soon implanted into the tendon of the long flexor. The LUMBRICALES again rise from the tendons of the long flexor, beginning just where the massa carnea ends in it ; and the LUMBRICALES are the flexores primi internodii ; the SHORT MUSCLE, the flexor secundi internodii ; the LONG FLEXOR, the flexor tertii internodii digitorum.

#### EXTENSORS OF THE TOES.

CXCIII. The EXTENSOR LONGUS DIGITORUM PEDIS is very difficult to dissect from its numerous adhesions.

It arises properly from the head of the tibia, at its outer and fore part, just under the knee ; but it has also strong adhesions to the inner surface of the fascia ; to the tendinous partitions betwixt it and the tibialis anticus before, and betwixt it and the peronæi behind ; and also to the interosseous ligament and to

the edge of the fibula. Its small origin soon becomes thick, and is divided even from the beginning very perceptibly into three distinct portions. These soon form three round tendons, which go obliquely inwards, pass under the annular ligament of the ankle, and run in a ring of it peculiar to them and the peronæus tertius. They then traverse the two bands of the annular ligament, upon the fore part of the foot; and now they change their direction a little, and go from within outwards, and diverge towards their proper toes. There are three portions of muscles and four toes to be moved: the first portion divides its tendon into two at the joint; so that the first portion serves both the first and second toe, the second the third toe, and the third serves the fourth toe. Here the tendon of the long extensor receives four other tendons; first, of the interossæi externi; secondly, of the interossæi interni; thirdly, of the long flexor; fourthly, of the lumbricales; and these form a very large sheath, quite surrounding the toe.

These do not only, like other extensors, extend the toes, but also, by the divergence of the tendon, expand them or separate them one from another.

**CXCIV.** The PERONÆUS TERTIUS should have been described as a flexor of the foot, along with the tibialis anticus; but is so naturally connected with this, that it will be more easily understood now. It is often named PERONÆUS TERTIUS, sometimes NONUS VESALII, or ninth muscle of the foot.

Its origin is from the fibula, chiefly from the middle downwards; also from the interosseous membrane; and still from the tendinous partition which divides it from the peronæus brevis. Its origin is almost entirely fleshy; and it lies behind and under the extensor communis, so that it seems in its belly to be a part of that muscle. Its tendon also passes along with the tendon of the extensor communis, through the same ring of the annular ligament; and there going obliquely towards the outside or edge of the foot over the shorter extensor, it expands and covers the metatarsal bone of the little toe with an expansion, and adheres to it as a flexor of the foot; and this, as well as the tibialis and other peronæi, have an oblique insertion generally into the side of the foot; or if into the sole, it is after running over the side, as over a pulley; so that all of them tend to press down one edge, that of the ball of the great toe, to the ground.

**CXCV.** The EXTENSOR DIGITORUM BREVIS is so connected with the extensor longus, that it is natural to describe them together. The extensor brevis is a small mass of flesh, somewhat resembling the massa carnea and lumbricales of the foot. It is placed just where the buckle lies, upon the rising of the

foot, having its origin from the heel-bone, and running obliquely inwards.

Its origin is from the outer side and fore part of the heel-bone, and also from part of the annular ligament. It is smaller where it arises by a short tendon from the heel-bone, but it gradually increases in size : it divides early into four heads, which are muscular, and very distinct ; the two inner of which are larger, the two outer more slender : each head has already formed an oblique tendon under its flesh, which begins to appear naked about half way down the metatarsal bones. These tendons cross those of the long extensor, and pass under them nearly about the end of the metatarsal bones. Then one is implanted into the first bone of the great toe, on the inside of the long tendon under which it had turned. The second, third, and fourth tendon are inserted into their respective next toes, and the little toe is left without one. The three last of these tendons form a sort of slit ; the two sides of which pass along the sides of the toes, surrounding the long tendon, something like a perforatus ; so that the three last tendons are inserted along with the long tendons into the last bone of the toes.

The obliquity of this short muscle counteracts the obliquity of the long ; and it serves to extend and to spread the toes, and to pull them away from the great toe.

**CXCVI.** The **EXTENSOR POLLICIS PROPRIUS** is a very slender muscle, running from the top of the leg to the second joint of the great toe. It arises from the fibula a little below its head ; grows tendinous as it approaches the foot ; then passing under the annular ligament and the cross ligament of the foot, it goes onwards to the second joint of the toe over the first.

The succession in which these muscles lie under and behind each other is this : first, the *tibialis anticus*, the outermost muscle, arises from the fore part of the tibia, nearest the fore part of the leg, at the ridge of the tibia : secondly, the *extensor pollicis* lies immediately behind and under the *tibialis anticus* : thirdly, the *extensor digitorum communis* lies behind that : and, fourthly, the *peroneus tertius* lies behind the common extensor like a part of that muscle.

These extensor tendons are bound down by cross bands, resembling the annular ligaments of the wrist. The general fascia of the thigh is continued over the knee and down the leg : it is much strengthened at the knee, where it adheres to each point of bone : it descends very thick and strong over the leg, binding down and strengthening the *tibialis anticus* and extensor muscles. The sheath grows thinner towards the



ankle ; but where it passes over the joint, it is so remarkably strengthened by its adhesions to the outer and inner ankles, that it seems to form two distinct cross bands, which, going from the point of the outer ankle across the extensor tendons to the point of the inner ankle, forms a strong crucial ligament, resembling the annular ligament of the wrist ; so that this which is called the **CRUCIAL LIGAMENT** of the ankle or foot, is plainly but a strengthening of the common sheath.

The muscles of the foot are the **INTEROSSEI**, which, in the foot, are found single on the lower surface or sole, but double and two-headed upon the upper part of the foot. The **ABDUCTOR**, **FLEXOR**, and **ADDUCTOR POLLICIS**, which surround the great toe, something like those of the thumb ; and the **ABDUCTOR** and **FLEXOR MINIMI DIGITI**, surrounding the little toe ; and there is a small slip of muscle, the **TRANSVERSALIS PEDIS**, which goes across the sole of the foot.

**CXCVII.** The **ABDUCTOR POLLICIS** arises by very short tendinous fibres from the knob of the *os calcis*, and also from a ligament which stretches from this knob to the sheath which belongs to the *tibialis posticus* ; and it arises also from the tendinous partition betwixt it and the short flexor of the toes ; and although it forms a beginning tendon opposite to the cuneiform bone, the tendon is not naked till it has reached the middle of the long metatarsal bone. It unites with the short flexor of the same toe, and is inserted into the first bone or phalanx of the toe at its root. Its use is to pull aside the toe, and at the same time to bend it a little ; it also curves the foot itself ; for a joint, or any loaded part, is much better supported by muscles than by ligaments ; and this arch requires support more than almost any other part.

**CXCVIII.** **FLEXOR BREVIS POLLICIS.** This muscle is much shorter than the last, and lies betwixt the **ABDUCTOR** and the **ADDUCTOR** : it lies immediately upon the metatarsal bone.

Its origin is by a pretty long tendon from the heel-bone, and from the *OS CUNEIFORME EXTERNUM*, by two separate slips, from the heel-bone, being a full inch in length ; it also adheres to the membranous partitions on either side of it. It is soon divided into two heads : one goes to the abductor, and the other goes to the adductor, to have the tendons inserted with theirs into the root of the first bone or phalanx. These tendons contain the sesamoid bones ; and the parting of the two heads makes a channel for the tendon of the long flexor to run in.

Its use is to bend the first joint of the great toe.

**CXCIX.** The **ADDUCTOR POLLICIS** is the third and last portion of the muscle which encircles the great toe.

It arises from the heel-bone by a tendon as long almost as that which it gives the abductor : it does not immediately arise from the heel-bone ; but there is a ligament extended from the heel-bone to the *os cuboides*, and it arises from that ligament : this is the ligament under which the tendon of the *peroneus longus* glides. The adductor is divided into two fleshy fasciculi or heads ; these unite, and, going obliquely inwards, are inserted either into the sesamoid bone, or directly into the first bone of the great toe.

CC. The *TRANSVERSALIS PEDIS* extends transversely across the sole of the foot at the head of the metatarsal bones ; it is a very small muscle, and resembles a good deal the *palmaris brevis*.

It arises from the ligament which connects the bones of the tarsus together ; and a small muscular belly is formed, which is inserted into the tendon of the *ADDUCTOR POLLICIS*.

Its use is said to be to make a sort of gutter in the foot, by drawing the heads of the metatarsal bones together. But is it not evident that this is one of many instances of muscles being a more perfect support than ligaments ?—It is a support, having a sort of intelligence, contracting or relaxing according to the necessity or degree of force : indeed, except this use, it is not easy to assign any ; for there is very little occasion for hollowing the foot in this direction.

CCI. The *ABDUCTOR MINIMI DIGITI*, like the abductor pollicis, is a pretty long muscle, but very slender, lying on the outer side of the foot.

Its origin is from the knob of the heel-bone, and from the tendinous septum, which covers the flexor brevis : it forms two small tendons in the same direction ; one small and shorter tendon is fixed into the metatarsal bone, at its root ; the other goes forward, to be inserted into the root of the first bone of the toe : so that this muscle clearly performs both the offices ascribed to the other flexors. It bends the toe to which it belongs, and it extends and supports the tarsus in walking ; and it carries the toe a little outwards, from which it has its name.

CCII. The *FLEXOR BREVIS MINIMI DIGITI* is next, and is almost the same muscle in place and office : it is an exceedingly small muscle ; it just measures the length of the metatarsal bone, and arises from it. Its origin is from the root of the metatarsal bone of the little toe, and from the ligament by which that bone is connected with the *os cuboides* ; its small belly runs the length of that bone ; and it is implanted by a short tendon into the root of the first bone of the little toe.

Its use is to bend the toe.

CCIII. The *INTEROSSEI INTERNI* are three small muscles

seated in the *planta pedis*, as the *interossei manus* are in the palm of the hand. Their slender tendons pass through the openings of the *aponeurosis plantaris*; and, going on the inside of the toes, are, like the *lumbricales*, inserted along with the extensor tendons.

These pull the toes towards the great toe, bend the first joint, and extend the second and third.

CCIV. The *INTEROSSEI EXTERNI* are, like the corresponding muscles of the hand, four in number, and double headed, and have been named *bicipites*. They rise from the metatarsal bones on each side of them: each has some little variety in its origin or course; but it is far from being worth our while to describe each individually, as many do: it is sufficient to observe their origin, and that their tendons all meet the tendons of the long and short extensors of the *LUMBRICALES*, and of the *INTEROSSEI INTERNI*, upon the back of the toes; so that the whole forms a web, *aponeurosis*, or sheath, which covers the upper part of the toe, and adheres to its point.

The office of these muscles is to extend the toes.

**PLANTAR APONEUROSIS.**—The palm and the sole are much exposed, and are specially defended by a thick tendinous *aponeurosis*. In the palm there is the more reason to suspect expansion to proceed from the tendon of the muscle, because the tendon of the *palmaris* is inserted into it: yet that is not probable; for the tendon is very slender, and quite unfit for the generation of so broad a sheet of *aponeurosis*. In the foot such an origin is still less probable; for the *plantaris* tendon does not terminate in the *plantar aponeurosis*, but is inserted into the heel-bone.

The *plantar aponeurosis* arises most distinctly from that part of the tuber of the heel-bone upon which we stand: it is divided into three sheaths. *Sabbatier* makes a middle, external, and internal portion of the same *aponeurosis*. *Albinus* also describes it as three distinct *aponeuroses*: one for the middle of the foot; one for the abductor of the great toe; and one the *aponeurosis* of the abductor of the little toe; all connected together only by their edges. *Cowper* considers it as a general expansion from the *plantaris*; and it is from this prejudice that the muscle has its name.

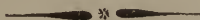
But its true origin is from that part of the knob of the heel-bone on which we stand. The middle, and more pointed tendon, arises from the very point of the knob; the inner fascia arises from the inside of this; and the outer one from the outside. And though thus divided into three heads, yet the whole origin is from the heel-bone, and is small and pointed. From this point the *aponeurosis* goes forward, expanding till it is as

broad as the roots of the toes ; so that the whole has the shape of a sandal ; and as it expands, its fibres are more scattered, so as to have a radiated appearance. Accordingly, the part nearest the heel is thicker, while the broader part is thinner.

It goes forward, like the sole of a shoe, till, having approached the heads of the metatarsal bones, it is divided into five heads, corresponding with the five knobs : and each of these heads again subdivides itself into two bands ; which, passing on each side of the heads of the metatarsal bones, is fixed into the sides, so as to leave room for the passing of the tendons, and nerves, and arteries.

Now, this middle aponeurosis sends down a deep strong partition on each side of it ; which is the best reason that I know for making these three distinct aponeuroses : for, by these perpendicular partitions, the hollow of the foot is separated into three distinct chambers : under the middle one are concealed the tendons of the long flexors, with the lumbricales and short flexor muscles ; under the outer one, the flexor and abductor of the little finger : and under the inner one, the adductor, flexor, and abductor of the great toe.

The uses of this great and very strong aponeurosis are : that it protects all the parts, the blood-vessels, muscles, and nerves that lie under it : that it supports the arch of the foot, both in standing and in motion, passing from heel to toe, like a bow-string, across its arch : that it binds down the muscles, and consequently supports and assists them in their strong actions : that it gives origin, or part of their origin to many of the muscles ; which, by their frequent and irregular adhesion to it, are very difficult to dissect : that it forms openings or rings, in which the tendons of the other muscles pass.



## CHAP. IX.

### OF THE MUSCULAR POWER.

THAT contractile power which resides in the muscular or living fibre, is a phenomenon the most wonderful and perplexing of all. When we cannot reach the true point, the mind too often condescends to the most trifling pursuits : and so, when



the older physiologists could not understand the intrinsic nature of this muscular power, they endeavoured to discover the size, the colour, and other external properties of the fibre; foolishly desiring to know what, if known, could be of no avail. Colour was believed to be essential to the constitution of a muscle: but in fowls, in amphibious animals, in fishes, in worms, and insects, through all the gradations of animals, of different species or different sizes, the colours of the muscular fibre change. In fishes and in insects it is entirely white; even in the human body it is not essentially red; the fibres of the iris, the muscular coats of the arteries, the muscles of the stomach, of the intestines, and of the urinary bladder, are colourless: the blood which makes this fibre red in the other parts may be washed away. Then why should we define a muscle by that accidental property which it so often wants, and of which it may be so easily deprived; while we may define it more truly by its contractile power, the only evidence of its nature, and its chief distinction in the system? for the contraction of the iris constitutes its nature; it is a muscle by truer marks than by its colour: and, by the same rule, the muscles of the least insect are as perfect as the muscles of a man.

Philosophers of the last age had been at infinite pains to find the ultimate fibre of muscles, thinking to discover its properties in its form; but they saw just in proportion to the glasses which they used, or to their practice and skill in that art, which is now almost forsaken. Some found the fibres to be of one equal size in all creatures, however various: others found them proportioned to the size, or age, or strength, of their subject: but even such discrepancies are trivial to those which, in one of the greatest of these minute philosophers, are found almost in the same page; sometimes affirming the ultimate fibre to be greater or smaller, according to the strength of the subject, and again making them of equal size in the whale and in the insect.

Others, less troubled about the ultimate size of these fibres, have conceived notions of their form, which, in the credulity of the times, rose into the importance of doctrines; and, from the first raw conceptions of their authors, were finally proved by the microscope forsooth; and while one author was drawing his rhomboidal fibres all conjoined in regular succession, and another describing them also from the microscope as consisting of six cylindrical fibres involved in a spiral one, a third reckoned the fibres a succession of spherical bodies; and Cowper thought that he was injecting with quicksilver chains of bells jointed with each other. For the honour of the age, these vanities are forgotten now. And why, indeed, should we seek

the ultimate fibres of the muscle, or study their forms, when the discovery could not advance us one single step in the knowledge of its nature or essence? What avails it, that we have discovered (if we have really discovered) the shape of the particles of the blood; the wave-like fibres within the substance of the nerves; or the jointed appearance in the smaller fibres of muscles? We do not understand the nature of the blood, the properties of the nerves, nor the contractile power of the muscles, at all better by the knowledge of this peculiar form of the internal structure, than we do by the grosser marks of their external form.

Physiologists have, by a late sense of their own weakness, been at last humbled to this becoming, but unwilling acknowledgment, that this contractility of the muscles is an original endowment of this living matter derived from the Creator; imparted in a way which we cannot know; and so attached to the organization of the muscular fibre, that when its organization is destroyed, this power is lost. We have resigned the search after a mechanical or physical cause, and seek only to learn the properties of this living power, and the excitements by which it is moved. To this end it is necessary to define this power, distinguishing it from those feelings or motions which result from the nerves. The *vis insita* being that power which belongs to muscles, is the source of motion and animal life. The *vis nervea*, being that property which is peculiar to nerves, is the seat of feeling, and the cause of voluntary motion, relating chiefly to the enjoyments and consciousness of life; for life and motion exist even in plants, and in many creatures which, not having nerves, have neither consciousness nor enjoyment, and in which the place of feeling is supplied by a less perfect instinct by this *vis insita*, or some analogous inherent power.

This irritable power residing in muscles may be defined the property by which muscles feel and re-act, upon certain stimuli being applied, without that feeling being conveyed to the sensorium; without a consciousness of action; without any other natural dependence on the system than that while certain orders of muscles are obedient to their own stimuli only, as the heart to the blood, other orders of the muscles are ready to receive the commands of the will. And above all, so little dependent is this action upon the nerves, that it is as perfect in animals which have no nerves; and is for a time very perfect in the parts which have been severed from the systems to which they belonged. This power, inherent in the muscular fibre, belonging to its constitution, and not derived from without, is

the *vis insita* or irritability of Haller\*, the *vis vitalis* of Goetter, the oscillation of Boerhaave, and the tonic power of Stahl. It is seen in the spontaneous and tremulous contractions of muscles when lacerated, as in wounds; when cut in operations; when entirely separated from the body, as in experiments upon animals; like that tremulous motion which we often feel in various parts of the body, without any evident cause, and independent of the will. Even when the body is dead to all appearance, and the nervous power gone, this contractile power remains; so that if a body be placed in certain attitudes before it be cold, its muscles will contract, and it will be fixed in that posture till the organization yields and begins to be dissolved. It is by this inherent power that a cut muscle contracts and leaves a gap; that a cut artery shrinks and retires into the flesh; that the whole body shrinks and grows stiff after death. These are but faint indications of that latent power which can be easily excited to the most violent motions, and on which all the strength of the muscles depends: for the ligaments, tendons, bursæ of joints, and all those parts which have no living power, are capable of bearing the same weight when dead as when alive. But such is the connection betwixt the organization of a muscle and its contractile power, that the moment it dies all its power is gone; and the muscle which could lift a hundred pounds while alive, cannot bear the weight of a few pounds when dead. This latent power may be brought into full action by various stimuli. The latent power itself is called *vis insita*; the acting power put into action, or the proof of the *vis insita*, upon applying stimuli, is called the irritability of muscles. This irritability is so far independent of nerves, and so little connected with feeling, which is the province of the nerves, that upon stimulating any muscle by touching it with a caustic, or irritating with a sharp point, or driving the electric spark through it, or exciting with the metallic conductors, as of silver and zinc†, the muscle instantly contracts; although the nerve of that muscle be tied; although the nerve be cut so as to separate the muscle entirely from all connection with the system; although the muscle itself be se-

\* The irritability of a muscle is, perhaps, more properly the *vis insita* or inherent power called into immediate action by the presence of stimuli: and as for the names of Tonic Power, Vital Power, and the rest, the terms are quite undefined, and may perhaps have referred rather to the combined effect of all the powers of life, and of all the properties of inanimate matter, of nervous sympathy, elasticity, and of muscular power combined.

† See a most ingenious dissertation by my pupil Mr. Fowler, the first writer, in this country, on this very interesting novelty, where the operations of this new excitement are explained.

parated from the body ; although the creature upon which the experiment is performed may have lost all sense of feeling, and have been long apparently dead. Thus a muscle cut from the limb trembles and palpitates for long after ; the heart separated from the body contracts when irritated ; the bowels, when torn from the body, continue their peristaltic motion, so as to roll upon the table, ceasing to answer to stimuli only when they become stiff and cold ; and too often in the human body the *vis insita* loses the exciting power of the nerves, and then palsy ensues ; or, losing all governance of the nerves, the *vis insita*, acting without this regulating power, falls into partial and general convulsions. Even in vegetables, as in the sensitive plant, this contractile power lives. Thence comes the distinction betwixt the irritability of muscles and the sensibility of nerves ; for the irritability of muscles survives the animal, as when it is active after death ; survives the life of the part, or the feelings of the whole system, as in universal palsy, where the vital motions continue entire and perfect, and where the muscles, though not obedient to the will, are subject to irregular and violent actions ; and it survives the connection with the rest of the system, as where animals very tenacious of life are cut into parts :—but sensibility, the property of the nerves, gives the various modifications of sense, as vision, hearing, and the rest ; gives also the general sense of pleasure or pain, and makes the system, according to its various conditions, feel vigorous and healthy, or weary and low. And thus the eye feels, and the skin feels ; but their appointed stimuli produce no motions in these parts ; they are sensible but not irritable. The heart, the intestines, the urinary bladder, and all the muscles of voluntary motion, answer to stimuli with a quick and forcible contraction ; and yet they hardly feel the stimuli by which these contractions are produced, or at least they do not convey that feeling to the brain. There is no consciousness of present stimulus in those parts which are called into action by the impulse of the nerves, and at the command of the will ; so that muscular parts have all the irritability of the system, with but little feeling, and that little owing to the nerves which enter into their substance ; while nerves have all the sensibility of the system, but no motion.

The *VIS INSITA* is a power that is in continual force, preserving the parts ready for their proper stimuli, whatever these may be ; one set obeying their own peculiar stimuli chiefly ; while others are obedient to the nervous power and the influence of the will. The heart is stimulated by the quantity or quality of its blood ; the stomach by the presence of food ; the intestines by their contents : the urine stimulates the bladder ;



the venereal appetite stimulates the genital system ; the fœtus stimulates the womb ; and the voluntary muscles (if we may be allowed to guess at a thing so little known) are excited by the nerves, and so are obedient to the will ; for, to our limited view, the nerves seem to be the sole messengers of these commands ; and any stimulus to the nerves moves the muscles like the commands of the will. The absence of the due stimulus to each, or the presence of ordinary stimuli in too great power, will excite enormous and irregular motions ; as fulness of blood in the heart, poisons in the stomach, acrimonies in the intestinal canal, or the passions of anger or fear in the system of the voluntary muscles. The due stimuli preserve their right tone and action ; but these violent stimuli hurt their irritability or moving power ; the heart acts weakly after fevers ; the appetite is languid after debauch ; the limbs are weakened by labour ; and the whole system is ruined by excess. Thus the functions by which the system lives, the heart, the stomach, the bowels, and the womb, the various sorts of vessels by which the fluids are conveyed, are providently removed from the influence of the will ; for these are the machines of the system, whose motions could not stop, must not be interrupted, nor lowered, nor raised, but must move and act according to the needs of the system. Not left to the irregularities or carelessness of voluntary motions, they are governed each by its own peculiar stimulus, and act in a continued and equal course.

Thus there are in the body two living powers which are as cause and effect in all motions of our system. The NERVES stand as an intermedium betwixt all external objects and our general sense ; by the impressions through these come pleasure and pain, and all the motives to action ; by the will, returned through the nerves, all voluntary motions ensue. Thus are the nerves, as internuncii, betwixt the external impression and the moving power. But nerves were never known to move under the influence of stimuli ; the moving power is another property of a distinct part of our body, having its own arrangement of particles, and its own peculiar form. All motion then proceeds from the joint operation of either power ; the nerves convey the impressions, while the muscles contain the power ; and it is here, as in other natural effects, the external cause changes, while the inherent property, the subject of its operation, remains the same. The nervous power is the regulator of the system ; it is the property suited to all the supports of life, upon which they act, and by which they maintain their power over our body : but it is subject to continual changing ; it rises and falls, is perfect or low ; but the energy of the muscle, which is to answer to this power, remains ever the same while its organ-

ization remains ; the nervous power is exhausted and languid ; but the muscular power is always perfect, always ready for the excitement of stimuli or for the commands of the will.

There is (if we may be allowed any expression so loose and indefinite) the will of the system, and the will of the mind : it is the will of the system that, through the medium of nerves of wide sympathy and consent, governs and leads in harmony all the consenting functions of the body, and lowers and raises their powers, according to the weakness, or strength, or fullness, or wants of the body ; while the will of the mind commands those voluntary motions, which it is its choice to perform. So natural seems that notion which has long prevailed of an archæus, or presiding spirit, which, like a latent instinct, regulates and preserves the system, prompts to what is right, and creates an aversion to what is wrong, and raises or allays the actions of the vital organs, preserving the system in health, and striving against disease. The voluntary muscles are put under the command of the will, while the involuntary muscles, by which the vital organs move, are insulated and mechanical, and depend less on our spiritual part ; for life and existence depend less on feeling, or that which is allied to our spiritual part, and more on the irritable or moving power ; and it was fit that this irritable power should be divided from our feelings and our will, which are irregular and transitory, and apt rather to derange than to preserve the system.

How this division is accomplished we do not know in any surer way ; but we see that the heart, the lungs, the stomach, and the intestines, have a proportion of nerves, so much lower than the muscles of voluntary motions, that the very existence of these nerves has been denied. Yet there are nerves proper to the vital parts : the phrenic nerve goes to the diaphragm ; the par vagum to the stomach and bowels ; the sympathetic nerve to the heart : they are smaller, but they are appropriated and distinct. Now this question occurs : if the irritable power be in these organs, if they be endowed with the quality of feeling their own peculiar stimuli, and answering to their impulses, what need is there for nerves ? But they also have their nerves, that they may not want some living connection with that system to which they belong ; that they may flourish in its health, and languish in its diseases ; that they may act according to the needs, and be subject to the will of the system ; that the grand movers of the mechanical system may be affected in their turns by the spiritual part, and thus the digestion, the circulation, the venereal appetite, and every vital power are languid and depressed, or lively and perfect, according to the conditions of the whole : and how these functions are moved by anger, or

joy, or fear, needs not be told. But the vital functions also lose their action : " The heart acts weakly after fevers ; the appetite is languid after a debauch ; the limbs are weakened by labour ; and the whole system is ruined by excess." These organs have less dependence on nerves ; and so suspicions arise, that the irritable power, the very basis of life, may also fail : but how should it fail ? If the motions of our system cease, it must be either from the incapacity of the muscles, or from the loss of exciting power in the nerves. The nerves are liable to change, but the muscle retains its power till its organization be destroyed. When the irritable power of a muscle ceases, when the heart, for instance, begins to fail, whence can that loss arise ? Its power is not mechanically exhausted, else from what source could it ever be renewed ? It is not from any injury to its nerves : for the heart, when cut out from the body, may be wearied out with constant stimuli till it cease to act ; and it will recover by rest, without communication with the nerves : but it is perhaps such a derangement as happens in a spring, which, being long bent, loses of its elastic power : the arrangement of its particles suffers by straining ; they are composed by rest : and if the elastic power be thus restored in an inanimate spring, much more should the contractile power recover by rest in the muscular fibres of a living system.

The *VIS INSITA* cannot be wearied nor exhausted ; so the heart is unwearied in its function, or if languid or too violent in its actions, that must be from the power of stimulus being lowered or increased, not from any change on the inherent power. The voluntary muscles also are unwearied ; and so, after great fatigue, we are sensible of cramps and irregular contractions, showing that they are still active, but more loosely governed by the nerves, and not so fully under the command of the will. But the *NERVOUS SYSTEM* is more subject to weariness and to decay : the senses become tired ; the feelings of the system are exhausted. It is from this failing of the nervous power that violent exertions bring fatigue and pain ; from this also that we need the refreshment of sleep ; but during sleep, the heart, and all the involuntary muscles, unwearied in their functions, proceed still in the same regular and orderly course.

This irritability or inherent power not only keeps the muscles ready, each for its peculiar stimulus, but preserves a balance over the whole system of the muscles. We know that muscles maintain a constant action independent of the nerves. The muscles of one side balance the opposite muscles : and if the muscles of one side be relaxed by palsy, the action of the opposite muscles instantly appears : or if a limb be luxated, and

its muscles displaced, they persevere in a violent and spasmodic action till they be restored each to its place. Have we not reason to believe, that if muscles were absolutely and entirely quiescent, they could not be so instantaneously called into action ; but that by this continual tension or tone they more readily follow the commands of the will : that by this lesser tension they are prepared for greater action, and inclined to harmonize : for if all the muscles were quiescent, and one suddenly moved by the will, its antagonist would rise into undue action, and the co-operating or assisting muscles would be unprepared. Whereas, by this continual tension of all the muscles, one set is opposed to another, is consenting with it, and is ready to co-operate with it, or to oppose it in the due degree : the mind has but to incline the power towards one set, and immediate and orderly motions ensue.

THE NERVOUS INFLUENCE, again, is as a mere stimulus to the voluntary muscles, as blood is to the heart, or the fœtus, or any foreign body, to the womb. It loses its influence over the system faster than the ordinary powers of life do ; and the irritable state of the muscles continues long after the voluntary motion, or the power of excitement from the nerves, is gone : for when we die slowly this inherent power is exhausted in the struggles for life. If, while in perfect health, we are killed by a sudden blow, the irritable power of the muscles survives the nervous system many hours or days, and the flesh trembles, and the absorbents continue to absorb ; and often, as after suffocation, we can, by operating upon this poor remains of life, restore the circulation, re-animate the nervous system, and recover that life which seemed to have entirely left the body ; and thus the nervous influence, which seemed to animate the system, and to be the prime mover and source of life, owes its restoration to that which was thought to be but a secondary power. It is this remains of contractile power which fixes the dead body in whatever posture it is placed : it is this remains of irritability which preserves freshness in the animal which seemed dead, but which is really dying still : for the moment this lingering portion of life is gone, the body dissolves, and falls down ; and so we judge of freshness by the rigidity of the flesh, and foresee approaching putrefaction by its becoming soft. There is no putrefaction in creatures suddenly killed, as in the accidents which happen to man, or in killing animals by a sudden blow ; in these the body continues fresh and susceptible of stimuli long after death : but if this inherent power, this irritable nature of the fibre, be exhausted before death, or in the moment of death, then does the body fall quickly into the condition of dead matter, running through those changes which are



the only true marks of death. The fish, which is allowed to struggle till it be dead ; the ox, over-driven before it be brought to the slaughter ; the animal killed by lightning, which suddenly explodes (if we may be allowed the expression) all the powers of life—in these the contractile power is effectually exhausted ; no mark of irritability remains ; putrefaction comes quickly on : and so in those who die of the plague, of poison, of fevers, or of any sudden and violent disease, which at once extinguishes life, in the vulgar sense, and robs the system of that remnant of life which the physiologist could produce to view ; in all these cases, the body becomes putrid in a few hours. If a body becomes putrid so early in warm climates, it is not merely because putrefaction is favoured by heat ; but it is because heat exhausts the vital power, and often a part of the body has lost its organized power, and is almost putrid, before the whole be dead. We find that we are wrong in this, that when a body has lost all feeling and motion, we pronounce it dead ; the nerves indeed have ceased to do their office ; all feeling and consciousness is gone ; but the mere animal power survives the nerves, and through it the whole system may be re-called into perfect life.

The powers and privileges of the nervous system must not be ranked too high nor valued too low : the perfect animal feels and moves by the nervous power ; but surely its muscles are actuated by a law of their own nature : the heart of the chick begins to move before we dare presume that there is any organ for distributing this nervous power. The *punctum saliens* is the heart of the chick ; it is seen beating while the body of the chick is but a rude, unformed, and gelatinous mass ; daily this active centre increases in strength and power ; and it has a delicate feeling of stimuli, and it quickly re-acts, so as “ to fly out into angry and perturbed motions” by the application of a stimulus. It is excited by increased heat, and languishes when cold, till at last it dies ; then it ceases to act, but still heat restores it to life : and is not the proof stronger in the grown animal, when we cut out the heart, which answers to stimuli for some time ; at last seems to have its power exhausted ; it lies dead for some time, till it again recovers its power. If this power proceeded from the nerves, how could it be renewed ? but if it reside in the muscle only, it may have been wearied, and may revive : its organization may have been deranged, and may be restored by rest from stimuli ; and its parts may be composed again, resuming their relative situation, and their active arrangement and form ; or though it may be insensible to a stimulus long applied, it may be still alive, even to a lower stimulus of another kind ; or it may awake again to the feeling

of that stimulus, which, by being too long applied, had lost its power.

Sensibility depends upon the nerves ; motion on the muscles ; both are equally admirable and inscrutable ; the one conducting to all the enjoyments, and all the sufferings of life, and to the intellectual faculties of man ; the other being the chief support of animal life, and the source of all the bodily powers.

As for the **MECHANICAL POWERS**, by which the contraction of the muscular fibre is forwarded or retarded, they are not what they have been believed ; for we find few circumstances in the origin, insertion, or forms of muscles, to favour their power, but many by which their power is abridged. There are certain points where the length of lever gives an increase of power. The mastoid process, and the occiput, are as levers for the head ; the spines of the vertebræ, for the back ; the olecranon, for the arm ; and the pisiform bone, for the hand. The pelvis and the jutting trochanters, are as levers for the thigh ; the patella is a lever for the leg ; the heel-bone is a lever for the whole foot ; and the arch of the foot is as a lever for the toes. These are not the whole, but they are perhaps the chief levers in the human body. In all the other implantations the muscle is fixed, not behind the joint, but betwixt the joint and the weight that is to be moved. There is a greater loss of power when inserted near to the joint ; there is less loss of power when the tendon is inserted far from the joint ; and though we call such insertion a longer or shorter lever, there is always some loss of power, and the true levers in the body are very few.—Far from providing mechanical forms to increase the power, nature has provided such a quantity of contractile power as to compensate for any loss of effect : so, in place of increasing the effect of muscles by levers, pulleys, and hinges, there is in almost every muscle a great abatement of its force by the form of the bones which it is destined to move ; for muscles lose of their effect by their being implanted, not behind the joint, but betwixt the joint and the body to be moved ; by the insertion of almost all muscles being very oblique, with respect to the motions which they are to perform ; so that half their force is lost upon the immoveable end of the bone. Much force is lost by a muscle passing over many joints : one set of fibres in a muscle hinders the action of adjoining fibres, and every degree of contraction takes from that muscle an equal proportion of its power. Thus, every where in the human body, is power sacrificed to the form and fitness of the part ; that the joints may be smaller than the limbs ; that the limbs may be proportioned to the body : and beauty and conveniency is gained by the sacrifice of that power which is not needed in the system,

since the wisdom and goodness of the Creator has appointed a degree of force in the muscles more than proportioned to all this loss of the mechanical power. Those who will admire the ways of Providence, should know how to admire ! Nature is not seeking to compensate for want of power, by the advantages of pulleys, and levers, and mechanical helps ; nor is it in the forms of the parts that the Infinite Wisdom is to be found ; for among other gifts, such a portion of this spirit is given to man that he has used the pulleys, and levers, accelerations of motion, and all the mechanical powers that result from it ; he has invented valves of infinite variety, each perfect and true to its particular office ; he has anticipated all that he has found in the mechanism of the human body ; but the living power which compensates for the want of levers, which allows every where power to be sacrificed to the beauty of form, which has strength in convulsive and violent actions to break the very bones ; this is the act of Infinite Wisdom, on which our admiration should chiefly dwell.

It is but the very elements of so deep a subject that can be delivered here. I must proceed to explain those provisions for easy motion, which may be considered as belonging to the muscles and bones, and as preparing us for a knowledge of the joints.

---

## CHAP. X.

OF THE TENDONS, LIGAMENTS, BURSÆ, AND ALL THE PARTS  
WHICH BELONG TO THE BONES OR MUSCLES, OR WHICH EN-  
TER INTO THE CONSTITUTION OF A JOINT.

THE bones and muscles themselves are but the smallest part of that beautiful mechanism by which the motions of the human body are performed ; for the parts by which the bones are joined to each other, or the muscles fixed into the bones, are so changed and varied in their forms, according to the uses of each part, as to give a natural and easy shape to the limbs, security and firmness to their motions, and lubricity and smoothness to the joints by which these motions are performed : and this apparatus deserves our attention, not merely that we may

know the forms of these joinings, but that we may learn something of the nature and uses of each part, and the various degrees of sensibility with which each is endowed ; for from this kind of study conclusions will arise which may lead us to the knowledge of their diseases, suggesting the means of their prevention and cure.

There is a difference in the parts of the human body, according to the several uses for which they are designed ; some are vascular and soft, others bony and hard ; some sensible, and very prone to inflammation and disease, others callous and insensible, having little action in their natural state, and little proneness to disease. The greater part of the human body is merely inanimate matter, united into a moving and perfect whole, by the system of the nerves which abound in each creature according to its wants, and are distributed in each system according to the uses and functions of every part. In some places there is such a conflux of nerves as form the most delicate and perfect sense, endowing that part with the fullest life ; while others are left without nerves, almost inanimate and dead ; lest feeling, where it ought not to be, should derange the whole system.

The living parts of the system are the muscles and nerves ; the muscles to move the body, and perform its offices, each muscle answering to its particular stimuli, and most of them obeying the commands of the will ; the nerves to feel, to suffer, and to enjoy, to issue the commands of the will, and to move the muscles to action : but still the muscles have their own peculiar kind of life, superior to the nerves, and independent of them, always acting, always capable of greater action, always ready to receive the impulse of the nerves. It is a power which survives that of the nerves, acting even when severed from the general system ; and acting often on the living body without the impulse of the nerves, and sometimes in opposition to the will. The dead matter of the system joins these living parts, and performs for them every subservient office ; forms coverings for the brain ; coats for the nerves ; sheaths for the muscles and tendons ; ligaments and bursæ ; and all the apparatus for the joints ; unites them into one whole by a continued tissue of cellular substance, which from part to part through all its various forms, has no interruption, and suffers no change, but still preserves its own inanimate nature, while it joins the living parts to each other. The tendons, ligaments, periosteum, and bursæ, are all composed of this cellular substance, which by its elasticity binds and connects the parts, and by its dead and insensible nature is less ex-



posed to disease, and is a fitter medium of connection for the living system.

#### OF THE FORMS OF THE CELLULAR SUBSTANCE.

UNDER various modifications and shapes this dead matter performs most important offices among the living parts :—1. It forms CELLS over all the body, which allow the parts to glide and move easily ; which contain the fluid that makes all the motion of parts more easy and free ; which store up fat to fill the interstices, to support the parts in their action, to give a plumpness to all the body, and to be reabsorbed for the needs and uses of the system. This cellular substance is peculiarly useful to the muscles ; dives in among them ; keeps their fibres at such due distance that each may have its action ; supports and lubricates them ; so that perhaps the difference of strength, in health and disease, depends, at least in some degree, upon this support. The thinner halitus makes the play of the fibres easy and free ; and the fat not only supports the fibres in their action, but lubricates them so, that a want of it is painful, while a superabundance of it incumbers the body. And Haller seems to have believed, that a diseased increase of it might not only oppress, but almost annihilate, the muscular fibre.

2. But it is still further essential to a muscle, that while it moves, it should neither be hurt itself nor harm the surrounding parts. Therefore, where one muscle moves over another muscle, soft flesh upon soft flesh like itself, there can be no hurtful friction, and the cellular substance is loose and natural, preserving its common form. But where tendons rub upon tendons, or bones upon bones, or where tendons rub upon muscles, or upon each other ; some defence is needed, and the cellular substance assumes a new form. The cells are run together into one large cell, with thicker coats, and a more copious exudation ; so that, being more liberally bedewed with a gelatinous mucus, it prevents the bad effects of friction, and is called a BURSA MUCOSA, or MUCOUS bag. These mucous bags are placed under rubbing tendons, and chiefly about the greater joints ; some are large and others small ; their glairy liquor is the same with that which bedews the cellular substance or the cavities of the joints ; and the provision of nature is so perfect, that the occasions which require bursæ seem to form them by friction out of the common cellular substance.

3. It is often useful that an individual muscle should be enclosed in a tendinous sheath, to give it strength and firmness, and to preserve it in its shape. All muscles, or almost all

muscles, form for themselves individual sheaths, such as are seen inclosing the supra-spinatus and infra-spinatus of the scapula ; the biceps humeri, and most of the muscles of the leg and thigh ; but it is especially necessary that the whole muscles of the limb should be inclosed in some stronger membrane than the common skin, both to give form to the limb and strength to its muscles, and to keep the individual muscles in their proper places, which otherwise might be luxated and displaced. And so the trunk of the body, the arm, the thigh, the leg, are bound each with a strong, smooth, and glistening sheath, formed out of the cellular substance, condensed and thickened by continual pressure. And this also is thicker and stronger according to the need that there may be for such a help ; for it is weaker over the flat muscles of the back or of the abdomen, stronger on the arm, stronger still over the strong muscles of the thigh. It is hardly to be distinguished in the child ; grows thicker and stronger as we advance in years and in strength, and in the arms of workmen it grows particularly thick and strong, increasing in the back, shoulder, or limbs, according to the particular kind of labour. These are the membranes which, by inclosing the muscles like sheaths, are called the VAGINA, or FASCIA of the arm, the leg, the thigh, &c.

4. TENDONS or ropes were needed, for the muscles could not be implanted thick and fleshy into each bone without a deformity of the limbs, and especially of the joints ; which would have been not unshapely only, but which must have abridged them of their motions and uses. Where a muscle is not implanted directly into a bone, tendons are seldom required ; and so there are no tendons in the heart, the tongue, the œsophagus, the stomach, intestines, or bladder. But where tendons pass over bones, or traverse the joints, their force is concentrated into narrower bounds ; and long tendons are fixed to the ends of the muscles to pull the bones : these tendons were once believed to be but the collected fibres of muscles, gathered into a more condensed form ; by which condensation their properties of feeling and motion were lost, while they became hard, white, and glistening ; and it was believed that parts which were fleshy in the child became tendinous in the adult. But we know by the microscope that the tendon is not truly continued from the flesh ; that the fibres of the tendon and of the flesh are not in the same line, the fibres of all penniform muscles running into their tendon, in a direction more or less oblique ; and good anatomists have been able to separate the tendon from the flesh, without any violence, and with the bluntest knives. Muscles are irritable and have

nerves ; tendons are quite dead, have no visible nerves, have neither feeling nor motion, nor any endowment by which we should believe them to be allied to the living parts of the system ; and many tendons, as the expansion of the palmaris, may be unravelled into mere cellular substance.

5. The PERIOSTEUM is merely a condensation of the common cellular substance, formed in successive layers : and the tendons are of the substance of the periosteum ; they mix with the periosteum, and are implanted into it. In dissecting a child, we tear up the periosteum along with tendons, and without hurting the bones ; but in process of time, the periosteum, and consequently the tendons, are inseparably fixed to the bones. The periosteum, tendons, fasciæ, and bursæ mucosæ, are all of one substance, and of one common nature ; they are various modifications of that dead matter which, having but little vascularity, and no feeling, and hardly any disposition to disease, is the fittest for its office, and bears the roughest usage in our experiments, and the most violent shocks in the motions of the body, without any signs of feeling, and without falling into disease.

6. These tendons must be bound firmly down ; for if they were to rise from the bones during the actions of the muscles to which they belong, the effect of contraction would be lost, and they would disorder the joint, starting out in a straight line from bone to bone like a bow-string over the arch of a bow. The same inanimate substance still performs this office also ; for the tendons of one muscle often split to form a sheath or ring for the next ; or their tendons after taking hold of the bone, spread their expansion out over all the bone, so as to form an entire sheath for the finger and toe ; or there is a wide groove in the bone which receives the tendons, and it is lined with a cartilage and with a lubricated membrane ; the membrane comes off from the lips of the groove, or from corners or edges of the bone, passes over the tendons so as to form a bridge, or often it forms a longer sheath, as in the fingers, or where the peronæi muscles pass behind the ankle ; and thus the VAGINÆ or SHEATHS of the TENDONS are connected with the tendons, periosteum, and other modification of the common cellular membrane.

7. The periosteum, which has run along one bone, leaves it at the head, and forming a bag for the joint, goes onwards to the next bone. Thus the periosteum of all the bones is one continued membrane, passing from point to point : each bone is tied to the next by its own periosteum ; and this membrane betwixt the end of one bone and the beginning of the next, is so thickened into a strong and hard bag, as to form the capsule

of the joint ; and the periosteum is assisted in performing this office by the tendons, fasciæ, bursæ, and all that confusion of cellular substance which surrounds the joint. The CAPSULE of the JOINT is then a firm and thick bag, which, like a ligament, binds the bones together, keeps their heads and processes in their right places, contains that glairy liquor with which the heads of moving bones are bedewed, and prevents the adjacent parts from falling inwards, or being caught betwixt the bones in the bendings of the joints. The capsule of every joint proceeds from the periosteum, and is strengthened by the tendons ; it is formed like these parts, out of the cellular membrane ; and when a bone is broken, or its periosteum destroyed by any accident or disease, when a tendon snaps across, when a joint is luxated, and the capsule torn, the injury is soon repaired by a thickening of the cellular substance round the breach ; and wherever a bone, being luxated, is left unreduced, a new socket, new periosteum, new ligaments, and new bursæ, are formed out of the common cellular substance ; and though the tendons may have been torn away from the head of the bone, they are fixed again, taking a new hold upon the bone.

8. There are other LIGAMENTS of a joint which prevent its luxation, guarding it at its sides, or round all its circle, according to its degree of motion ; and those ligaments are of the same nature with the first or bursal ligaments ; arise, like them, from the periosteum chiefly ; or indeed are truly but a thickening of the bursal ligament at certain points.

The universal connection of these parts is now sufficiently explained, since we have followed the several forms of cellular substance : 1st, Clothing the bones with a thick membrane, which, though insensible, and almost inanimate in its own nature, conveys blood-vessels, the means of life, to the bones, and is named periosteum : 2dly, The same periosteum, thickened and strengthened by the adhesion of surrounding parts, so as to form the capsules for the joints : 3dly, The tendon, also continued from the periosteum, and not growing from the muscle, but merely joined to it : 4thly, We see that smaller tendon, expanded into a thinner tendinous sheet, as in the brawn of the leg where the ham-strings (whose expansion strengthens the knee-joint) go down over the muscles of the leg : 5thly, We see the perpendicular partitions of this fascia going down among the muscles, and dividing them from each other ; and the cellular substance, which lies under the fascia, and immediately surrounds the muscle, cannot be distinguished from the inner surface of the fascia itself : 6thly, And as for the bursæ, we see that they are formed wherever a tendon rubs



over a bone. The upper surface of the bursa is formed by the tendon which rubs over the bone ; the lower surface of the same bursa is formed by the periosteum of the bone which it defends ; the sides are formed by the common cellular substance. Its cavity appears to be merely an enlarged cell ; and the bursæ mucosæ and capsular ligaments are plainly of one and the same nature ; their liquors are the same ; they often open into one another naturally, or if not naturally, at least it is no disease, since no bad effects ensue.

I must now explain more fully the constitution and nature of all the less feeling parts : for what I have said might be thought to imply absolute insensibility and total exemption from disease or pain ; whereas the sensibility of tendons, ligaments, bursæ, and joints, stands on the same footing with the feeling of bones : they are insensible in health ; not easily injured ; entering slowly into disease ; but their diseases are equally dreadful from their duration and from their pain : for by inflammation their organization is deranged, their healthy consistence destroyed, and their sensibility excited in a dreadful degree.

The tendons of animals have been cut or pierced with embowelling needles ; they have been pinched with nippers, and torn and cauterised ; they have been burnt with a lighted stick, while the creatures neither struggled nor shrunk from the irritation, nor ever gave the smallest sign of pain. Oil of vitriol has been poured upon each of the parts belonging to a joint, and a piece of caustic has been dropped into its cavity, but still no pain ensued ; nay, some have been so bold, may I not say so vicious, as to repeat these experiments upon the human body, pinching, pricking, and burning the tendons of the leg, and piercing them with knives, in a poor man, whose condition did not exempt him from this hard treatment ; who was ignorant of this injustice that was done to him, while his cure was protracted, and he was made a spectacle for a whole city. Without such cruel and inhuman practices, we do not want opportunities of knowing, that, in the human body also, the tendons and bursæ have no acute feeling. When we cut open a fascia or tendinous membrane, there is little pain : when (as in amputation) we cut the ragged tendons even and neat, there is no pain : when we snip with our scissors the ragged tendons of a bruised finger to cut it off, the patient does not feel : when we see tendons of suppurating fingers lying flat in their sheaths, we draw them out with our forceps, or touch them with probes, without exciting pain : in the old practice of sewing tendons there was some danger, but no immediate pain : when we cut

down into the cavity of a joint, still the pain is but slight. In a luxation there is comparatively little pain. There is no pain when the ligament of the patella is broken away from the tibia, nor when the great Achillis tendon is torn. There is but little pain in the moments of those accidents which appear slight in the time, but which turn out to be the most dreadful sprains. Yet after rupture of the patella, the knee inflames and swells : after rupture of the Achillis tendon, there is swelling and inflammation, with such adhesion of the parts as makes the patient lame : after the slightest sprain such inflammation sometimes comes on as destroys the joint. There is but little pain when we first make an opening into any joint ; yet it often brings on such pain and fever that the patient dies. In short, every thing conspires to prove, that though in wounds of the less feeling parts, there is indeed future danger, there is no immediate pain. Still there are many accidents which prove to us, that even in health the joints are not entirely exempted from pain : a smart stroke on the knuckles, or a blow on the elbow, or a fall upon the knee, are not perhaps the purest instances of feeling in joints ; for such blow may have hurt some external nerve : but when a small moveable cartilage forms within the joint of the knee, though it be small and very smooth, and lodged fairly within the cavity of the joint, it often gets betwixt the bones, causing instant lameness ; the moment it causes this lameness it brings dreadful pains : the pain, the lameness, and all the feeling of inconveniency, subside the instant that this cartilage is moved away from betwixt the bones ; and the joint continues easy till this moving cartilage chances again to fall in betwixt the heads of the bones. Even the pain from a blow upon the knee, for example, is plainly within the joint, and is caused by the force with which the patella is struck down against the ends of the bones. What indeed is a sprain, but a general violence and twisting of all the parts which compose the joint ? These parts are of one common nature, and may be arranged and enumerated thus : a joint is composed of the heads of the bones, swelling out into a broader articulating surface, and of a thin plate of cartilage, which covers and defends the head of each bone ; sometimes of small and moveable cartilages which roll upon the bones, and follow all the motions of the joint, and, like friction-wheels in machines of human invention, abate the bad effects of motion. There are mucous glands, or rather mucous bags, which convey a lubricating fluid : and there is a bursal ligament, which forms the purse of the joint, binds the bones together, contains the synovia, and prevents the surrounding parts from being caught in the joint : there are lesser liga-

ments on the outside of this, going along the sides of the joint, and passing from point to point : there are great tendons moving over the joint and bursæ, or mucous bags, which accompany these tendons, and prevent the violence which their continual rubbing might do to the bones. All these parts are of one constitution and nature ; we cannot say that they are insensible, for their feeling is only deferred ; it is slow, but not the less severe. The eye feels the instant that a mote falls upon it ; but the skin does not feel a blister till it has been some hours applied ; the ligaments and joints feel still less in the instant that any injury is done : but as the inflammation of the blister excites the feeling, and destroys the fabric of the skin, producing pain and derangement of its parts, the inflammation of joints, and of all the parts belonging to them, breaks up the organization of the part, evolves the feeling, and then in them also comes disease and violent pain. They are slow in entering into action ; but, once excited, they continue to act with a perseverance quite unknown in any other part of the system.— Their mode of action, whatever it may be at the time, is not easily changed : if at rest, they are not easily moved to action, and their excessive action once begun is not easily allayed.— The diseases are infinite to which these parts are subject. They are subject to dropsical effusions ; they are subject to gelatinous concretions ; they are subject to slight inflammation, to suppuration, to erosions of their cartilages, and to exfoliation of their bones : corresponding with the dropsies, suppurations, and mortifications of the softer and more feeling parts. Rheumatism is an inflammation round the joints, with a slighter effusion, which is soon absorbed : chronic rheumatism is a tedious and slow inflammation, with gelatinous effusions round the tendons, and permanent swelling and lameness of the joints. Gout in a joint is a high inflammation, with a secretion of earthy matter into its cavity. The inflammation of tendons is sprain : effusions of gelatinous matter round them is ganglion : suppurations in the tendinous sheaths is whitloae : the inflammation of bursæ is false white swelling, not easily distinguished from the true : the disease of the joint itself is either a dropsy, where the joint, though emptied by the lancet, is filled up again in a few hours, showing how continual, and how profuse, both the exhalation and absorption of joints naturally is ; or it is white swelling, which, next to consumption, is the most dreadful of all scrophulous diseases, which begins by inflammation in the joint itself, is marked by stiffness, weakness, loss of motion, and pain ; which goes on through all the stages of high inflammation, dreadful pain, destruction of cartilages, en-

largement of bones, fœtid suppurations, and spontaneous openings of the joints; which sometimes stops by an effusion of callus and concretion of the bones, forming a stiff joint, but which oftener ends in hectic fever, diarrhœa, morning sweats, and extreme weakness; so that the patient dies, exhausted with fever and pain.

s s



BOOK III.  
*OF THE JOINTS.*



CHAP. I.  
JOINTS OF <sup>OR</sup> THE HEAD AND TRUNK.



JOINTS OF THE HEAD AND SPINE.

**A**LMOST every thing relating to the heads and processes of the bones, and every proposition concerning the motions which they have to perform, has been already explained, anticipating much of the anatomy of the joints : and the principles of motion mentioned in describing the bones shall form the chief propositions on which my descriptions of joints shall be arranged, seeking that method chiefly by which the joints may be easily and rapidly explained ; for it is a subject on which volumes might be bestowed, and not in vain.

We may compare in the following order, the chief motions of the head and trunk. The head is so placed upon the oblique surfaces of the atlas, that it cannot turn in circles ; but at that joint all the nodding motions are performed. The atlas rests so upon the dentatus, that there all the turning motions are performed. The neck and loins have their vertebræ so loosely framed, with such perpendicular processes and easy joints, that there all the bending motions are performed ; while the back is fixed, or almost fixed, by its connection with the ribs, and by the obliquity and length of its spines ; and though upon the whole, the spine turns many degrees, yet it is with a limited and elastic motion where the whole turning is great, but the movement of each individual bone is small.

To secure these motions, we find, 1. The occipital condyles received into hollows of the atlas, where the oblique position of the condyles secures the joint, the occipital condyles looking outwards, the articulating surfaces of the atlas looking towards each other, the occiput set down betwixt them, so as to be secured towards either side, and the obliquity of the joints being such withal as to prevent the head from turning round. These joints of the occiput of the atlas are, like the greater joints of the body, secured with regular capsules or bag-like ligaments for each condyle, each rising from a rough surface on the vertebra, and being fixed into a roughness at the root of the condyle. 2. We find a flat membranous ligament, which extends from the ring of the atlas to the ring of the occipital hole, closing the interstice betwixt the occiput and the atlas : it is confounded at the sides with the capsules of the articulating processes ; is very strong before ; and at the middle short point of the atlas it seems a distinct ligament, which is strong only at this point, and very lax and membranous behind.\* 3. We find the atlas tied to the dentatus by a more complete order of ligaments.—These are, 1st, (as betwixt the atlas and occiput,) regular capsules or bags, fixing the condyles of one vertebra to the condyles of the other. 2dly, A cross ligament,† which, crossing the ring of the first vertebra, makes a bridge, embraces the neck of the tooth-like process, and ties it down in its place. 3dly, A smooth and cartilaginous surface all round the root of the tooth-like process, where this tooth of the dentatus turns in the ring of the atlas, and is bound by the ligament ; and this rolling of the atlas upon the axis of the dentatus is so fair and proper a joint, that it also is all included in a capsular ligament. 4thly, The point of the tooth-like process having threaded the ring of the atlas, almost touches the occipital hole ; and there another ligament ties it by its point to the occipital hole.‡

All the other vertebræ have another kind of articulation ; to which the occiput, atlas, and dentatus, are the only exceptions ; for their motions are particular, and quite different from the

\* This is part of what Winslow called *LIGAMENTUM INFUNDIBULIFORME*, a FUNNEL-LIKE LIGAMENT, joining the first vertebra to the occiput.

† *Viz. LIGAMENTUM TRANSVERSALE*, or *TRANSVERSUM* ; and what are called the *APPENDICES* of the *TRANSVERSE LIGAMENT*, are merely its edges extending upwards and downwards, to be fixed into the dentatus, and into the occipital hole, so as to inclose the tooth-like process of the dentatus in a capsule.

‡ There are two flat ligaments which come from about the neck or root of the tooth-like process, and which go obliquely upwards, to be fixed into the groove just behind the lip of the occipital hole ; but the ligament from the point of the tooth-like process is not what it has been supposed, a fair round ligament of some strength ; there is nothing more than a few straggling fibres of ligament going from the point to the occiput, though Eustachius has drawn it round and strong.

rest. The atlas and dentatus bend, turn, and roll, by connections resembling the common joints of the body; but the other vertebræ are united, each by its INTERVERTEBRAL SUBSTANCE, to the bones above and below; they are also united by their articulating processes to each other: each articulating process is held to another by a distinct capsule: each intervertebral substance is secured, bound down, and strengthened by strong ligaments; for the intervertebral substance, which of itself adheres very strongly to the periosteum, and to the rough socket-like surface upon the body of each vertebra, is further secured by a sort of cross ligaments, which go from the rim or edge of one vertebra to the edge of the next, over the intervertebral substance; and so, by adhering to the intervertebral substance, they strengthen it. These ligaments cross each other over the interstice betwixt each vertebra, and are very strong. They are very regular, beautiful, and shining, and are named INTERVERTEBRAL LIGAMENTS.

The spine is further secured by a general ligamentous or tendinous expansion, which goes over the fore parts of all the vertebræ from top to bottom of the spine. It begins at the fore part of the atlas; it almost passes the body of the dentatus, or is but very slightly attached to it. It is at first pointed, small, and round; it begins to expand upon the third vertebra of the neck, so as to cover almost all its body. It goes down along the bones, chiefly on their fore parts, and is but little observed on their sides. It is weaker in the neck, where there is much motion; stronger in the back, where there is none; weaker again in the loins, where the vertebræ move; but still on the bodies of all the vertebræ it is seen white, shining, and tendinous. We can distinguish all along the spine interruptions and fasciculi, or firmer bundles, going from piece to piece of the spine; which fasciculi are indeed very seldom continued without interruption farther than the length of two or three vertebræ; yet the whole is so much continued, that it is considered as one uninterrupted sheath, and is called the EXTERNAL OR ANTERIOR VAGINA, OR LIGAMENT of the SPINE\*.

But still the canal of the spine were left open and undefended, rough and dangerous to the spinal marrow, if internal ligaments were not added to these. The rings of the vertebræ are held at a considerable distance from each other, by the thickness of the intervertebral substance, and by the corres-

\* The LIGAMENTUM COMMUNE ANTERIUS, FASCIA LONGITUDINALIS ANTERIOR, FASCIA LIGAMENTOSA, &c. It is from this ligament in the loins that the crura diaphragmatis arise, with tendons flat and glistening like the ligament itself, and hardly to be distinguished from it,

ponding length of the oblique processes : but this space is filled up by a strong flat ligament, which goes from the edge of one ring to the edge of another ; and so extending from the articulating processes, backwards to the spinous processes, they fill up all the interstice, complete the canal of the spinal marrow, and bind the bones together with great strength\* : these are assisted in their office of holding the vertebræ together, by a continuation of the same ligament, or of a ligamentous membrane connected with it, which runs all the way onwards to the ends of the spinous processes, where they are strengthened by accidental fasciculi† ; and in the middle vertebræ of the back, but not of those of the loins or neck, similar ligaments are found also betwixt the transverse processes‡.

Next, there is another internal ligament, which is not interrupted from bone to bone, but runs along all the length of the spine, within the medullary canal, and it corresponds so with the external vagina, or anterior ligament of the spine, that it is called the POSTERIOR or INTERNAL ligament§. It begins at the occiput, lies flat upon the back part of the bodies of the vertebræ ; at the interstice of every vertebra it spreads out broad upon the intervertebral substance, doing the same office within, that the intervertebral ligaments do without. It is broader above ; it grows gradually narrower towards the loins. Although it is called a vagina or sheath, it does by no means surround nor inclose the spinal marrow, but is entirely confined to the covering of the bodies of the vertebræ, never going beyond the setting off the articulating surfaces, or the place where the nerves go out. It adheres firmly to the bones, and does not belong at all to the spinal marrow. It should rather be called a ligament for the bones than a sheath for the medulla. The anterior ligament prevents straining of the spine backwards : this one prevents the bending of the spine too much forwards ; and they inclose betwixt them the bodies of the vertebræ and their intervertebral substances.

There is yet a third internal ligament, which belongs entirely to the neck ; it is called APPARATUS LIGAMENTOSIS COLLI ;

\* They are named the LIGAMENTA SUBFLAVA CRURUM PROCESSUUM SPINOSORUM.

† These are named the MEMBRANE INTERSPINALES, and LIGAMENTA APICES SPINARUM COMITANTES. The ligaments which tie the points of the spines, running from point to point, make a long ligament, which stretches down all the spine.

‡ Called LIGAMENTA PROCESSUUM TRANSVRSORUM, and found only from the fifth to the tenth vertebra of the back.

§ FASCIA LIGAMENTOSA POSTICA, FASCIA LONGITUDINALIS POSTICA, LIGAMENTUM COMMUNE POSTERICUS.



it begins from the edge of the occipital bone, descends in the canal of the vertebræ, is thin and flat, and adheres firmly to the body of each vertebra, covering the tooth-like process. The irregular fasciculi, or bundles of this ligament, stretch from bone to bone; and the whole of the apparatus ligamentosus extends from the edge of the occipital hole to the fourth vertebra of the neck, where it ends. Its chief use is also as a ligament, merely fixing the head to the neck. The dura mater is within these, immediately inclosing the spinal marrow. The ligaments which I have just named may be well enough allowed to be "at once ligaments for the bones, and a sheath for the medulla." But there is no such sheath as that called *ligamentum infundibuliforme* by Winslow; for either they are peculiar and distinct ligaments for the bones, such as I have described, or they belong exclusively to the medulla, as the dura mater, which is indeed strengthened at certain points into the thickness of a ligament; but the only close connection of the spinal marrow with the ligaments of the spine is just at the hole of the occipital bone, and for a little way down; through all the rest of the spine, the connection is by the loosest cellular substance.

## OF THE LOWER JAW.

THE LOWER JAW is, by its natural form, almost a strict hinge, and the lateral motion in grinding is but very slight. The joint is formed by a deep hollow or socket in the temporal bone; by a ridge, which stands just before the proper socket, at the root of the zygomatic process; and by a long small head or condyle, which is placed across the long branch or condyloid process of the jaw. These form the joint; and the condyle, the hollow of the temporal bone, and the root of the zygomatic process, are all covered with articulating cartilage. The joint is completed by a capsule of the common form, which arises from the neck of the condyle, and which is so fixed into the temporal bone as to include both the proper socket and the root of the zygomatic process. Thence it is manifest, that in the motions of the jaw, this transverse ridge is required as a part of its articulating surface; that the common and lesser motions are performed by the condyle moving in the deepest part of its socket; that the larger and wider openings of the mouth are performed by such depression of the jaw as makes its condyle mount upon the root of the zygomatic process; while the luxation of the jaw is a starting forwards of the condyle, till it is lodged quite before and under the

zygomatic process, and the condyle standing upon the highest ridge, is the dangerous position in which luxation is most easily produced.

To render these motions very easy and free, a moveable cartilage is interposed. We find such cartilages in the joints of the clavicle, wrist, knee, and jaw, because the motions are continual and rapid. The moveable cartilage is thin in its centre, and thicker towards its edges, by which it rather deepens than fills up the hollow of the joint. It corresponds in shape with the head or condyle of the jaw, and with the hollow of the temporal bone. It moves with every motion of the jaw, facilitates the common motions, and prevents luxation; but the joint is still more strongly secured by the strength of its pterygoid and temporal muscles, which are inserted close round the joint, than by any strength of its capsule. It is the muscles which prevent luxation; and it is their action also that makes luxation, when it has happened, so difficult to reduce.

## RIBS.

THE ribs have two joints, and a hinge-like motion, rising and falling alternately as we draw in or let out the breath. The two joints of the ribs are thus secured: First, the proper head of the ribs being hinged upon the intervertebral substance, and touching two vertebræ, it is tied to the bodies of each by a regular capsule: the bag is regular, is lubricated within, and is as perfect as any joint in the body; it is radiated without, so as to expand pretty broad upon the sides of the vertebræ, and has a sort of division as if into two fasciculi; the one belonging to the vertebra above, the other to the vertebra below: they gradually vanish, and mix with the periosteum upon the bodies of the vertebræ; these are named *LIGAMENTUM CAPITELLI COSTARUM*, as belonging to the little heads of the ribs.

The back of the rib touches the fore part of the transverse process, and is articulated there; consequently there is a small capsular ligament belonging to this joint also: but this joint is further secured by two small ligaments, which come from the transverse process of the vertebra, and take hold on the neck of the rib: one short ligament coming from the point of the transverse process, is behind the rib, and is thence named *LIGAMENTUM TRANSVERSARIUM EXTERNUM*: another, rather longer, comes from the inner face of the transverse process, goes a little round the neck of the rib, is implanted into the lower edge of the rib, and is named *LIGAMENTUM TRANSVERSARIUM*

INTERNUM : another small ligament exactly opposite to this, going into the neck of the rib upon its back part, is also very regular ; and other subsidiary ligaments from different points assist these or supply their place.

The ribs are fixed into the sternum by their cartilages ; each of which has a round head, a distinct socket, a regular capsule, and ligaments which expand upon the surface of the sternum, much in the same way that the ligamenta capitelli expand upon the bodies of the vertebræ : a tendinous membrane also binds the cartilages of the ribs one to another, crosses over the interstice, and so covers the intercostal muscles with a sort of fascia ; and the whole surface of the sternum and that of the cartilages is covered with this tendinous expansion, which belongs confusedly to the origins of the pectoral muscles, to the ligaments of the ribs and sternum, and to the periosteum of that bone.



## CHAP. II.

### JOINTS OF THE SHOULDER, ARM, AND HAND.



#### CLAVICLE.

THE joining of the clavicle with the sternum is the hinge upon which the whole arm moves, and is the only point by which the arm is connected with the trunk : the round button-like head of the clavicle rolls upon the articulating surface of the upper bone of the sternum : it is in such continual motion that some particular provision is required ; and accordingly it has, like the condyle of the jaw, a small moving cartilage, which rolls betwixt this head and the sternum. The cartilage is thin, and of a mucous nature ; it is moveable in some degree, yet it is fixed by one edge to the head of the clavicle. This joint is inclosed in a strong capsule ; consisting first of a bag, and then of an outer order of fibres, which go out in a radiated form, upon the surface of the sternum, like the ligaments of the ribs ; and they cross and cover the sternum, so that the ligaments of the opposite sides meet ; and this meeting forms a cord across the upper part of the sternum, which is named INTERCLAVICULAR LIGAMENT. Thus is the clavicle fixed to the sternum, and another broad ligament also ties it to the first rib.

The joining of the clavicle with the scapula is by the edge of the flat clavicle touching the edge of the acromion processes with a narrow but flat articulating surface. Both surfaces, viz. of the acromion and of the clavicle, are covered with a thin articulating cartilage : in some subjects a moveable cartilage is also found here. It is a regular joint, and is very seldom obliterated ; yet its motion, though continual, is not very free ; it is rather a shuffling and bending of the scapula upon this bone, favouring the play of the other joints. It is secured first by a capsular ligament, which is in itself delicate and thin, but which is strengthened by many ligamentous bands, which pass (over the capsule) betwixt the clavicle and the acromion process : the clavicle, as it passes over the point of the coracoid process, is tied down to it by a ligament of considerable strength, which comes from the point of the coracoid process, is implanted into the lower or inner edge of the clavicle, and is named *LIGAMENTUM COMMUNE TRAPEZOIDES* ; trapezoid, on account of its square form, and commune, because it goes from the scapula to the clavicle ; while other ligaments, going from one process of the scapula to another, are named proper or peculiar ligaments of the scapula. There is a small slip of ligament which joins this, coming from the tendon of the subclavian muscle.

## SHOULDER-JOINT.

THE SHOULDER is one of the most beautiful joints, loose and moveable, very free in its motions, but very liable to be displaced. To form this joint, the humerus has a large round and flattened head ; the cavity of the scapula,\* which receives this head, is oval or triangular, small and very shallow : it is edged out with a thick cartilaginous border, which increases the hollow of the socket ; but still it is so shallow that the humerus cannot be so much said to be lodged in the glenoid cavity, as to be laid upon it. Its capsule or bag is very loose and wide, coming from the edges of the glenoid cavity, and implanted round the neck of the bone. The joint is richly bedewed with mucus ; or rather with a mixed secretion, which is partly secreted by a fimbriated organ, consisting of *lacunæ* or bags, the common organ for this secretion through all the joints, and by a thinner exudation from those extreme arteries, which terminate, with open mouths, upon the internal surface of the bag.

\* It is called glenoid cavity from the Greek name of a joint, and the name is not absolutely appropriated to the scapula.



By the shallowness of its socket, and the largeness of its head ; by the looseness of its capsule ; by all the forms and circumstances of its structure ;—the shoulder is exceedingly loose, and very liable to be displaced : it has this loose structure and superficial socket, that its motions may be free ; but seldom is there any great advantage gained in the human body without a counterbalance of weakness and danger ; and every where in the limbs we observe that a joint is weak and liable to luxation in proportion as its motions are free and large. Yet the shoulder-joint is not without some kind of defence ; its socket is shallow, but it is guarded by the largest projecting process in all the body ; by the acromion projecting and strengthening it above ; and by the coracoid process within ; its ligament is lax, easily torn, and useful rather for confining the synovia, and keeping the head of the shoulder-bone opposite to its proper cavity, than in securing the joint by any strength it has ; therefore a ligament extends from the coracoid to the acromion process,\* which completes the defences of the joint above, and at its inner side ; and there comes also from the point of the acromion process an additional ligament which adheres to the capsule : but the circumstance from which the chief strength of the shoulder-joint is derived, is the insertion of the four muscles which come from the shoulder-blade close round the head of the bone ; so that they adhere to the capsular ligament, pull it up to prevent its being checked in the motions of the joint ; strengthen it by their thickness, for they are spread upon it : and the contraction of the muscles holds the humerus in its place ; their total relaxation (as in certain cases of weakness) suffers the humerus to drop away from the scapula, without any fall or accident, forming what we are accustomed to call a luxation of the humerus from an internal cause ; and the shoulder cannot be luxated by a fall without such violence as tears up these muscles by the roots. We must add to this anatomy of the joint, that it is surrounded by numbers of bursæ or mucous bags :† one under the tendons of the subscapularis ; one under the short head of the biceps muscles ; one betwixt the coracoid process and the shoulder-bone ; and one under the acromion process of the scapula, exceedingly large : and these are so fairly parts of the joint, that very commonly

\* *LIGAMENTUM PROPRIUM TRIANGULARE SCAPULÆ.*

† Vide *Monro's Tables of the Bursæ Mucosæ*, where all these parts are represented ; the knowledge of which is so very useful for the surgeon. I have opened this great bursa under the acromion process, and let out four pounds of the peculiar mucus and gelatinous lumps with which the diseased bursæ are commonly filled.

they open into it with communications, either perfectly natural or at least not hurtful, either originally existing or formed by continual friction. It should also be remembered, that the long tendinous head of the biceps muscle comes from the margin of the socket, directly over the ball of the os humeri, and through the capsule, by a particular hole.

## ELBOW.

THE ELBOW-JOINT is formed by three bones ; the humerus, radius, and ulna : the ulna bends backwards and forwards upon the shoulder-bone ; the radius bends upon the shoulder-bone along with the ulna ; it always must accompany the ulna, but it also has a motion of its own, rolling in circles ; its round button-like head rolling continually with its edge upon a socket in the ulna, and with its flat face upon the tubercle of the humerus. The whole composes one joint, and is inclosed in one capsule : the bones accompany each other in their luxations, as well as in their natural motions : the ulna is never dislocated without the radius being also displaced ; a circumstance which is but too little noticed, and, so far as I remember, hardly considered or known. The general CAPSULE arises from the humerus, from both the tubercles, and all round the two hollows which receive the olecranon and coronoid processes of the ulna ; it is implanted again into the tip of the olecranon, and all round that sigmoid cavity which receives the lower end of the humerus, and all round the edge of the coronary process. It is also fixed round the neck of the radius ; it comprehends, in one bag, the humerus, radius, and ulna ; and unites them into one joint, performing two motions, viz. flexion and extension by the ulna, and rolling by the radius. The joint is lubricated by mucus and by fat, which is found chiefly about the olecranon ; and that the bones may be further secured, additional ligaments are spread out upon them, which are all without the common capsule of the joint lying upon it, and strengthening it at the necessary points.

1. There is the common capsule inclosing the whole. 2. It is the form of every hinge-joint (and this is one of the purest) to have its capsule strengthened at the sides ; and the sides of this, the elbow-joint, are strengthened by two fasciculi or ligamentous heads, which, coming from the tubercles of the humerus, spread a little upon the capsule, and adhere to it like part of its substance. One, from the outer condyle, spreads upon the neck of the radius, and is named the **EXTERNAL LATERAL LIGAMENT** : one from the inner condyle of the humerus, goes

upon the inside of the capsule, and strengthens it there : it is implanted near the root of the coronoid process of the ulna, and is named the INTERNAL LATERAL LIGAMENT. 3. The continual rolling motion of the radius requires a peculiar ligament ; and this peculiar ligament of the radius is named LIGAMENTUM CORONARIUM, because it encircles the neck of the radius ; ANNULARE or ORBICULARE, from its hoop or ring-like form. It is a very strong and narrow stripe or band, which arises from that part of the ulna where the radius rolls upon it, and surrounds the radius, making at least two-thirds of a circle ; and so having turned over the neck of the radius, is inserted into the opposite side of the ulna. This is commonly described as a distinct ligament surrounding the neck of the radius, and having the common capsule implanted into its upper edge ; but in truth it is, like the others, a thicker band of the common capsule, but with a distinction much more particular here, by the contrast of the great thickness of the coronary ligament, and the extreme thinness of the capsule at the fore part : for the capsule of every hinge-joint is strong only at its sides ; other bands from the outer condyle, and from the coronary process of the ulna, strengthen this ligament of the radius, and are known by the general name of ACCESSORY LIGAMENTS of the coronoid ligament, as the lateral ones are known by the name of ACCESSORY LIGAMENTS to the capsule.

So that there is, 1. A complete capsule which encloses all the bones ; 2. Lateral ligaments which make the main strength of the joint ; 3. A coronary ligament which regulates and strengthens the rolling motions of the radius, and keeps it firm, turning like a spindle in its bush. The whole joint is surrounded with cellular substance ; the regularity of its ligaments is confounded by the adhesions of muscles and tendons : though it is, on the whole, weak behind and before, and very strong at its sides, yet tendinous and ligamentous fibres cross it in all directions ; so that the capsule, and its assisting ligaments, are irregular and rough without ; but gelatinous, smooth, and glossy within.

## WRIST.

THE WRIST is one of the most moveable joints in the body, having the strength of a mere hinge-joint (because it is almost a strict hinge, by the connection of the long ball of the carpus with the long hollow of the radius ;) and having, at the same time, all the properties of the most moveable joint, by the free turning of the radius, without the weakness which is peculiar

to the circular and free moving joints. These distinctions divide the wrist-joint into its two parts.

1. The articulation formed by the scaphoid and lunated bones, which form an oval ball of articulation, and the great scaphoid cavity of the radius which receives this ball. The end of the ulna does not properly enter into the cavity of the wrist, but its end, or little round head, is covered with a moveable cartilage, and that cartilage represents the end of the ulna. Now this first joint, viz. of the scaphoid and lunated bones, the head of the radius, and the moveable cartilage which represents the head of the ulna, are surrounded by the general capsule or bag of the joint. The capsule arises from the ends of the radius and of the ulna; from the styloid point of the one round to the same point of the other; and is implanted near the lower rank of the carpal bones. Though it adheres first to the scaphoid and lunated bones, it passes them, going over all the bones of the carpus, especially in the palm, so as to add strength to their peculiar ligaments; and in the palm, the tendons for the fingers run over it: so it forms on one side an additional ligament for the carpus; on the other, it forms the floor of the tendinous sheath, a smooth and lubricated surface for the tendons to run upon. This general ligament is strengthened by particular ones coming from the styloid processes of the radius and of the ulna. But there are so many irregular points of bone about the wrist, that the little fasciculi, with which this capsule is covered and strengthened, are innumerable. Within this joint, and stretching from the groove betwixt the scaphoid and lunated bones, there is an internal ligament of a soft and pulpy nature; it is named *LIGAMENTUM MUCOSUM*: but the very name shows that it is less valuable as a ligament (since the joint is already well enough secured,) than as a conductor for the lacunæ or ducts which separate the mucus.

2. The articulation by which the hand performs all its turning motions is that of the radius with the ulna: this is set apart altogether from the general articulation of the joint. The lateral cavity of the radius receives the little round head of the ulna; they are enclosed in their own peculiar capsule; which is so loose about the bones, that although it is a regular capsule of the common form, it has the name of *MEMBRANA CAPSULARIS SACCIFORMIS*. Thus there is one joint within another; a moveable cartilage betwixt them, and the capsule of one, the more moveable joint, peculiarly wide, and not so strong; all which should be considered in thinking about luxations of the wrist.

The carpal bones are connected with each other so very closely, that the name of joint can hardly be used. They are



rather fixed than jointed together. Each bone has four smooth articulating surfaces, by which it is united to the adjoining bones. The first two bones form the great ball of the wrist ; the second row again is united with the first by a sort of ball and socket ; for the *os magnum*, which is the central bone of the second row, has a large round head, which is received into the lunated hollow of the *os lunare*, which is the central bone of the first row. The first row is thus united to the second by a distinct and general capsule ; in addition to which each single bone is tied to the next adjoining, by a regular capsular ligament within, and by flat cross ligaments without, or rather by many bundles of ligaments, which cross each other in a very complicated manner ; and the little flat and shining fasciculi give the whole a radiated or star-like form\*.

The metacarpal bones are also joined to the carpal in one row, by a line of joints which are as one joint ; besides their common capsule, the metacarpal of each finger has its peculiar ligaments proceeding in a radiated or star-like form from the carpal bones, and going out broad upon the metacarpal bones ; and so numerous, that each metacarpal bone is securely tied by ligaments to one or two of the bones of the carpus † ; and at their heads, where the fingers are implanted upon them, forming the knuckles, they are again tied by flat ligaments, which go from head to head of the metacarpal bones ‡, binding them together, permitting a slight bending towards each other, so as to make a hollow in the hand, but no such wide motion as might assist the fingers ; they are but as a foundation upon which the fingers stand and move.

## FINGERS.

The joints of the fingers are formed by round heads in the upper end of one row of bones, and by hollow sockets on the lower ends of the next row. Each joint is qualified by the round form of its head to be a circular and free moving joint ; but it is restricted by the forms of its ligaments to the nature of a hinge-joint ; for each finger-joint is included first in a fair round capsule or bag, of the ordinary form ; but that capsule

\* These are ligaments which are really so unimportant to the anatomist or to the surgeon, but which are so laboriously described under the titles of *LIGAMENTA BREVIA*, *OBLIQUA TRANSVERSARIA*, and *PROPRIA OSSIUM CARPI* ; for they do in fact cross and traverse the carpus in every possible direction.

† And these also are named, according to their several directions, *LIGAMENTA ARTICULARIA*, *LATERALIA*, *RECTA*, *PERPENDICULARIA*, &c.

‡ These are named the *LIGAMENTA INTEROSSEA*.

is strengthened by very distinct lateral ligaments upon its sides, which lateral ligaments form the chief strength of the joints ; above these lateral ligaments the joint is strengthened by a broad fascia or sheath, which comes from the tendons of the interossei muscles, covers the backs of all the fingers, and which is especially strong over the joints. One part of the apparatus of the wrist-joint is the smooth and lubricated SHEATH, in which the tendons of the fingers run. It is formed in part by the outer side of the capsule of the wrist, and in part by that bridge of ligament which proceeds from the four corner points of the carpal bones. This sheath is lined with a delicate and softer modification of the common tendinous membrane ; is fully bedewed with mucus ; and is fairly to be ranked with the bursæ mucosæ, as it is indeed, like them, a shut sack. But it is farther crossed in such a manner by partitions belonging to each flexor tendon, that each of them may be said to have its appropriated bursa mucosa. And these bursæ, to prevent the bad consequences of friction, are put both betwixt the cross ligament and the tendons, and also betwixt the tendons of the uppermost muscle and of the deeper one, and again betwixt the tendons of the fingers and of the thumb.

In the same way the sheaths of the tendons, as they run along the fingers, may be considered as part of the apparatus of their joints ; for the first set of bursæ, viz. those which lie in the palm of the hand, stop before they reach the first joints of the fingers, and then other longitudinal bursæ begin from the first joint of the fingers, and go all along them to the last joint ; forming a sheath for the tendons to run in, which does at once the office of a strong ligament, binding them down in their places, and which is so lubricated on its internal surface as to save the necessity of other bursæ. These sheaths are thicker in certain points, so as to form cross rings of strong ligaments ; but the common sheath and these thicker rings still form one continual canal : these are named the SHEATHS and ANNULAR LIGAMENTS, or CROSS LIGAMENTS\*, of the fingers, and are of the same nature with the bursæ. Besides these, there are no distinct bursæ on the fingers, but there are several about the wrist, and one especially of a considerable size at the root of the thumb†.

\* LIGAMENTA VAGINALIA, LIGAMENTA CRUCIATA PHALANGUM, &c.

† Vide MONRO'S BURSÆ MUCOSÆ.

## CHAP. III.

## JOINTS OF THE THIGH, LEG, AND ANKLE.

## OF THE HIP-JOINT.

THE acetabulum, which is rough in the naked bone, is naturally lined with a thick and very smooth cartilage. The head of the thigh-bone is covered with a similar cartilage, also very thick and smooth; and these cartilages almost fill up that deep dimple which is seen in the centre of the head of the thigh-bone, and smooth that hole which is formed in the centre of the socket, by the meeting of the several pieces of which it is composed. The socket is not only deep in its bones, but is further deepened by the cartilage which tips the edge of the socket, and which stands up to a considerable height. The socket is imperfect at that side which looks towards the thyroid hole; the bony edge is entirely wanting there, and the space is filled up by a strong cartilaginous ligament which goes across this gap, from the one point to the other, and from its going across is named the *LIGAMENTUM LABRI CARTILAGINÆI TRANSVERSALE*\*. The capsular ligament of the hip-joint is the thickest and strongest of all the body. It is, like other capsules, a reflection and thickening of the periosteum; the periosteum coming along the outside of the bone, leaves it at the edge of the socket. The periosteum, or rather perichondrium from the inside of the socket, comes up to the edge, and meets the outer layer. They unite together, so as to form the general capsule, inclosing the ring-like cartilage, which tips the edge of the socket between them. This ligament incloses all the bones from the edges of the socket to the roots of the trochanters, embracing not only the head but the neck of the thigh-bone. The outer plate, continuous with the periosteum, is thick and strong, and is assisted by much cellular substance condensed round it, and it is further thickened by slips which come from the iliacus, glutæus, and other muscles which pass over the joint, while the external plate of the ligament lines the whole with a soft and well lubricated coat.

\* This ligament is double; that is, there is one on the inside of the edge, and one on the outside; thence it is often reckoned as two ligaments, viz. *LIGAMENTUM TRANSVERSALE INTERNUM et EXTERNUM*.

In addition to this general capsule, there are two internal ligaments, 1st, The round ligament, as it is called, which comes from the centre of the socket to be fixed into the centre of the ball of the thigh-bone. It is not round, but flat or triangular. It has a broad triangular basis, rooted in the socket exactly at that place where the several bones of the socket meet, forming a triangular ridge, which gives this triangular form to the central ligament. It has three angles, and three flat sides. It is broad where it arises from the bottom of the socket, is about an inch and a half in length, grows narrower as it goes outwards towards the head of the bone, and is almost round where it is implanted into the dimple in the head of the thigh-bone; at which point it is so fixed as to leave a very remarkable roughness in the naked bone. But round the roots of this ligament, and in the bottom of the socket, there is left a pretty deep hollow, which is said to be filled up with the synovial gland. It is wonderful how easily authors talk of the synovial gland, as if they had seen it; they describe very formally its affections and diseases, as when hurt by a blow upon the trochanter; yet there is no distinct gland to be found. There is a fringed and ragged mass lodged in the bottom of the socket, hanging out into the hollow, and continually rubbed by the ball of the thigh-bone in its motions: the fringes and points certainly are ducts from which we can squeeze out mucus; but it is by no means proved that they belong to a synovial gland; and it looks rather as if the ducts were themselves the secreting organ, like the lacunæ or mucous bags in the tongue, or in the urethra, vagina, œsophagus, and other hollow tubes. Such a structure is fitter for suffering the strong pressure and continual action of the thigh-bone than any determined gland. We see then nothing but mucous ducts of a fringed form, hanging down from this hollow into the cavity of the joint; a quantity of fat accompanying these fringes; and a pappy mucous membrane, which keeps these fringes and fatty membranes orderly and in their places, and which ties them so to the angles of the triangular ligament, that they must move with the motions of the joint. This mucous membrane, which keeps these fatty fringes orderly, has two or three small bridles in different directions; whence they are named the *LIGAMENTA MUCOSA*, or *ligamentula massæ adiposæ glandulosa*; and this may be considered as the continued inflection of the softer internal lamella of the capsule, which not only lines the socket, but is reflected over the central ligament, and over the globe of the thigh-bone, covering them also with a delicate mucous coat. Other fringes of the same kind are found at the lower part of the joint, lying round the neck of



the thigh-bone, near the angle where the capsular ligament is implanted into the root of the great trochanter: the liquor from these mucous fimbriæ, with the general serous exudations, are mixed and blended for lubricating the joint.

This capsule, which is naturally the thickest and strongest in the body, almost a quarter of an inch in thickness, is farther strengthened by many additions: for a slip of very strong tendinous or cellular substance condensed comes down from the lower spinous process of the os ilium, and spreads out over the capsule, and strengthens it very much on its fore part; the smallest of the glutæi muscles adheres to the capsule and strengthens it behind; the psoas magnus and iliacus internus pass by the inner side of the capsule; and though they do not absolutely adhere to it, they deposit much cellular substance, which is condensed so as to strengthen the capsule, forming at the same time a large bursa mucosa betwixt their tendinous fibres and the joint. That tendon of the rectus muscle which comes from the margin of the socket, lies upon the outer side of the capsule, adheres to it, and strengthens it. The security of the hip-joint seems to depend more upon the strength of its capsular ligament than that of almost any other joint.

## THE KNEE-JOINT.

THE knee-joint is one of the most superficial joints and one of the weakest, so far as relates to the bones; for the flat condyles of the thigh-bone are merely laid upon the flat head of the tibia. There is here no fair cavity receiving a large head, as in the joint of the hip; no slighter ball and socket, as in the fingers; no strong overhanging bones, as in the shoulder; no hook-like process, as in the ulna. This is not a hinge-joint, like the ankle, secured between two points of bone. We do not find the means of strength in its bones, but in the number, size, and disposition of the great ligaments with which its bones are joined; by virtue of these ligaments it is the strongest joint of the human body, the most oppressed by great loads, the most exercised in continual motions, yet less frequently displaced than any other. But this complication of ligaments, which gives it mechanical strength, is the very cause of its constitutional weakness: makes it very delicate; and very liable to disease.

The bones which compose this joint are the tibia, thigh-bone, and patella; and they are united by many ligaments, both within and without the joint.

1st, The CAPSULE of the KNEE is naturally very thin and

delicate, transparent as a cobweb. This thin capsule comes from the fore part of the thigh-bone, all round the articulating surfaces, whence it goes downwards by the sides of the condyles; from this origin it is inserted into all the edge of the rotula, and in such a way as to keep the rotula properly without the cavity of the joint; the capsular ligament going over its inner surface, and lining it with a smooth and delicate coat. It is fixed below into all the circle of the head of the tibia, and thus completes its circle, embracing all the bones. This capsule, naturally so thin and delicate, is made up from all the surrounding parts to a considerable thickness; first, it is covered behind by the heads of the gastrocnemii; at the sides by the biceps and other muscles of the hamstrings; on its fore part, it is strengthened by the general fascia of the thigh, which goes down over the knee, and being there reinforced both by its adhesion to the bones and by the broad expansion of the vastus internus, sartorius, biceps, and other muscles which go out over the patella, it adheres to the capsule, and makes the whole very strong; besides which, there is a ligament which, lying in the ham, upon the back part of the capsule, is named, in compliment to Winslow, *LIGAMENTUM POSTICUM WINSLOWII*. It is a ligament somewhat resembling the lateral ligaments of the elbow. It arises from the outer condyle, goes obliquely across the back part of the joint, adheres to it, and strengthens it; but often it is not found at all, or in such straggling fibres as cannot be accounted as a ligament. It is manifest that the knee requires some such additional ligaments behind to serve as a check, and to prevent its yielding too far.

2. The knee, as being a hinge-joint, has its stronger ligaments at the sides; and although we speak of lateral ligaments in the other joints, this is the only one where the lateral ligaments are very distinct from the common capsule of the joint; on the inner side of the joint there comes down from the internal condyle of the thigh-bone a broad flat ligament, which is fixed into the inner head of the tibia, and is named the internal lateral ligament; on the outside of the knee there descends from the tip of the outer condyle a much stronger ligament, not quite so flat, rather round; it extends from the condyle of the thigh-bone to the bump of the fibula, which it embraces. It is a little conical from above downwards; it is from two or three inches in length, and is named *LIGAMENTUM LATERALE EXTERNUM LONGUS*, to distinguish it from the next: for behind this first external ligament there arises, a little lower from the same condyle, along with the outer head of the gastrocnæmius muscle, a ligament which is called the *LIGAMENTUM LATERALE EXTERNUM BREVIUS*; and it is not shorter only, but so

scattered as not to be easily distinguished, not having the true form of a lateral ligament coming down from the condyle, but of a mere strengthening of the capsule, coming upwards from the knob of the fibula.

3. The joint is still further secured by internal ligaments, which are within the cavity of the joint ; they are named the **CRUCIAL LIGAMENTS** of the knee. They arise betwixt the hollow of the condyles of the thigh-bone, and are implanted into the back part of the middle rising of the tibia : they lie in the back part of the joint, flat upon the back of the capsule ; and the one crossing a little before the other (but yet in contact with each other at the place of crossing,) they are distinguished by the names of **ANTERIOR** and **POSTERIOR CRUCIAL LIGAMENTS**.

The **POSTERIOR CRUCIAL** ligament is more perpendicular ; it arises from the hollow betwixt the condyles of the thigh-bone, and is implanted into a roughness on the back of the tibia, betwixt its two cup-like hollows, and behind the tubercle which divides these hollows from each other. While the posterior arises rather from the internal condyle, the **ANTERIOR LIGAMENT** arises properly from the external condyle, passes obliquely over the tuber in the articulating surface of the tibia, and terminates in the cup-like hollow. The effect of these two ligaments is more particular than is commonly observed ; for the one goes obliquely out over the articulating surface of the tibia, while the other goes directly down behind the joint ; and of course when the knee is bended, the posterior ligament is extended ; when the leg is stretched out, the anterior ligament is extended : they both are checks upon the motions of the joint : the anterior ligament prevents the leg going too far forwards ; the posterior ligament prevents its being too much bent back upon the thigh.

4. The most admirable part of the mechanism of this joint is the two **SEMILUNAR CARTILAGES**. They are so named from their semilunar form ; they lie upon the top of the tibia, so as to fill up, each of them, one of the hollows on the top of that bone. They are thicker towards their convex edges, thinner towards their concave edges ; they end by two very acute and long horns, named the **CORNUA** of the lunated cartilages. In short, they resemble the shape of the label which we put round a wine decanter ; and the two horns are tied to the tubercle or ridge that stands in the middle of the articular surface of the tibia ; and consequently they are turned towards each other so as to touch in their points. There are here, as in the other joints, masses of fat inclosing the fimbriated ends of the mucous ducts. These fimbriæ and fatty bundles are formed chiefly round the circumference of the patella, commonly surround-

ing it with a complete fringe ; they are also found at the back of the cavity, about the crucial ligaments, and in all the interstices of the joints ; the fatty bundles filling up the interstices, protecting the mucous ducts from more violence than what is just necessary to empty them, and perhaps mixing their exudation with the mucus of the ducts.

These masses of fat lie covered by the delicate internal surface of the capsule, and the mucous fimbriæ project from it.

The inner surface of the capsule is so much larger than the joint which it lines, that it makes many folds or lurks ; and several of these are distinguished by particular names. Thus at each side of the patella there are two such folds, the one larger than the other ; whence they are named *LIGAMENTUM ALARE MAJUS*, and *LIGAMENTUM ALARE MINUS*. These two folds are like two legs, which join and form one middle fold, which runs across in the very centre of the joint, viz. from the lower end of the patella to the point of the thigh-bone, in the middle betwixt the condyles. It keeps the looser fatty bundles and fimbriated ducts in their place (viz. the hollow betwixt the condyles, where they are least exposed to harm ;) thence it has been long named the *LIGAMENTUM MUCOSUM*.—

The internal membrane of the joint covers also the semilunar ligaments as a perichondrium ; it comes off from the ridge of the tibia, touches the horns of the semilunar cartilages, moves over the cartilage so as to give them their coat ; and at the point where it first touches the horns, it forms four little ligaments, two for the horns of each cartilage. These tags, by which the four points of the lunated cartilages are tied, are named the *LIGAMENTA CARTILAGINUM LUNATARUM*, or more simply named the four adhesions of the lunated cartilages. There is a little slip of ligament which goes round upon the fore part of the knob of the tibia, and ties the fore parts of these two cartilages to each other. It is named *LIGAMENTUM TRANSVERSALE COMMUNE*, because it goes across from the fore edge of the one cartilage to the fore edge of the other, and because it belongs equally to each ; but for their further security, these cartilages also adhere to their outer circle or thick edge, to the internal surface of the general capsule of the joint, and that again adheres to the lateral ligaments which are without it ; so that there is every security for these cartilages being firm enough in their places to bear the motions of the joint, and yet loose enough to follow them easily.

This joint has the largest bursæ mucosæ of all, and these perhaps the most frequently diseased. There is one bursa above the patella, betwixt the common tendon of the extensor muscles and the fore part of the thigh-bone, which is no less



than three inches in length. There is a smaller bursa about an inch below the patella, and under the ligament of the patella, protecting it from friction, upon the head of the tibia. These bursæ, I am persuaded, are often the seat of disease, when it is judged to be in the joint itself. But the truth is very easily known ; for if a swelling appear under the patella, projecting at the sides, and raising the patella from the other bones, we are sure that it must be in the main cavity of the joint : but if swellings appear above and below the patella, then there is reason to believe that these belong to the great bursæ, which are placed above and below the patella : a complaint which is far less formidable than a swelling of the joint itself ; I would almost say easily cured ; for openings into these bursæ, though they should be avoided, are less dangerous than openings into the joint. It is from mistaking such tumours for collection in the capsule itself, that authors speak of openings into the joint as a familiar or easy thing, or think that they have done such operations safely when probably they were puncturing the bursæ only.

These bursæ mucosæ lie under the tendon of the extensor muscles, and under the ligament of the patella : they are of the same substance with the capsule of the joint itself ; they lie over the capsule, united to it by cellular substance, and the bundles of fat, which are disposed irregularly about the joint, belong partly to the bursæ and partly to the capsule ; one end projecting into the cavity of the bursæ, while the other end of the same fatty bundles projects into the cavity of the joint.

Thus the knee-joint, which is the most important in all the body ; the most oppressed by the weight of the trunk, and by the accidental loads which we carry ; the most exercised in the common motions of the body, and the most liable to shocks and blows ; which is the most superficial and the weakest in all that respects its bones—is the strongest in its ligaments, and the most perfect in all the provisions for easy motion.

1. The great CAPSULE of the joint incloses the heads of the bone ; secretes (in part) and contains the synovia ; lines the joint with a smooth and delicate membrane, and, by turning over all the parts, and adhering to them, it forms the perichondrium for the cartilaginous heads of the bones, and the covering and ligaments for the moving cartilages of the joint.

2. This capsule, which is exquisitely thin, and which was formed for other uses than for giving strength to the joint, is surrounded on all sides with such continuations of the common fascia, and such particular expansions of the hamstring and other muscles, as by adding outwardly successive layers to the capsule, brings it to a considerable degree of strength.

3. The capsule having no stress upon its fore part, is very thin upon its fore part, viz. at the sides of the patella ; but is strengthened at the sides by fair and distinct ligaments, going from point to point of the three great bones: and so large, and particular as to deserve, more than any others in the body, the name of *LATERAL LIGAMENTS* : at the back part of the joint the same strength is not required as at the sides ; yet it must be stronger than at its fore part, wherefore it is strengthened by the additional bands which are sometimes general and confused, but often so perfect and distinct as to be known by the name of the *POSTERIOR LIGAMENT* of WINSLOW ; and as the lateral ligaments prevent all lateral motions, this strengthening of the capsule serves as a check-band behind.

4. It is only in the greatest joints that we find the additional security of *INTERNAL LIGAMENTS* ; and the only joints where they are perfect are the joints of the hip and of the knee ; the former having its round, or rather triangular ligament, which secures the great ball of the thigh-bone, and fixes it in its place ; the latter having its crucial ligaments, which, coming both from one point nearly, and going the one over the face of the tibia, and the other down the back of that bone, serve the double purpose of binding the bones firmly together, and of checking the larger and dangerous motions of the joint ; the fore ligament preventing it going too far forwards, and the back ligament preventing it bending too much.

5. A *MOVING CARTILAGE*, for facilitating motion and lessening friction, is not common, but is peculiar to those joints whose motions are very frequent, or which move under a greater weight ; such are the inner head of the clavicle, the articulation of the jaw, and the joints of the wrist and of the knee ; and it is in the knee that the moveable cartilages have their most perfect forms and use, are large and flat, semilunar, to correspond with the forms on the head of the tibia ; thicker at their outer edges, to deepen the socket : and though moveable, yet so tied with ligaments as never to go out from their right place.

And, 6. The mucous follicular bundles of fat, and the *bursæ mucosæ*, which complete the lubricating apparatus of the joint, and the mucous *frenulæ* or ligaments, which both conduct the mucous fringes and keep them in their place, are more perfect in the knee, and greater in number and size, than in any other joint.

I may well call this the most complicated, and (by daily and melancholy proofs) it is known to be the most delicate joint of the body.

## FIBULA.

The FIBULA is a support to the tibia in its various accidents, it gives a broader origin to the muscles, and it is the chief defence of the ankle-joint. It has no motion upon the tibia; the best authors speak of it as a symphysis, which classes it with the joinings of the pelvis, and excludes it from the list of true and moveable joints. It is united with the tibia by a sort of flat cartilaginous surface upon either bone; it is merely laid upon the tibia, not sunk into it. It is tied by a close capsule: it has no particular ligament for itself; but is strengthened by the external lateral ligament of the knee, which adheres to this knob, and by the insertion of the biceps tendon, which is implanted into this point, and which spreads its expanded tendon over the fore part of the tibia, and holds the bones together; and the firmness of the fibula is further secured by the great interosseous ligament, which goes from bone to bone.

## ANKLE.

The ANKLE-JOINT owes less of its strength to ligaments than to the particular forms of its bones; for while the strong lateral ligaments of the knee guard it so that it cannot be dislocated till they are torn, the lower heads of the tibia and fibula so guard the foot that it cannot be luxated sidewise without such violence as breaks these bones: first, the fibula is so connected with the tibia at its lower end, that they form together one cavity for receiving the astragalus, with two projecting points; the fibula forming the outer ankle, and the tibia forming the process of the inner ankle; the joining of the fibula to the tibia here, is like that of its upper end, too close to admit of the smallest motion; and it is thoroughly secured by particular ligaments; one of which passing from the fibula to the tibia on the fore part, is named the *LIGAMENTUM SUPERIUS ANTICUM*, consisting in general of one or two distinct flat bands. Another more continued and broader ligamentous membrane goes from the fibula to the tibia across the back part, and is named *LIGAMENTUM POSTICUM SUPERIUS*; the *LIGAMENTUM POSTICUM INFERIUS* being but a slip of the same. Next comes the capsule of the joint, which joins the astragalus to the lower heads of the tibia and the fibula; it is thinner both before and behind than we should expect from the strength of a joint which bears all the weight and the most violent motions of the body. But, in fact, the capsule everywhere serves other purposes than giving strength to the joint,

and never is strong except by additional ligaments from without ; so it is with the ankle-joint, the capsule of which is exceedingly thin before, but it is strengthened at the back part, and especially at the sides, by supplementary ligaments: first, a strong ligament comes down from the acute point of the inner ankle, expands in a radiated form upon the general capsule ; adheres to it, and strengthens it, and is fixed all along the sides of the astragalus : this ligament coming from one point, and expanding to be inserted into a long line, has a triangular form, whence it is named *LIGAMENTUM DELTOIDES* ; and while the general ligament secures the joint towards that side, the oblique fibres of its fore edge prevent the foot being too much extended, as in leaping ; and its oblique fibres on the back edge prevent its being too much bended, as in climbing ; but the ligaments of the outer ankle, tying it to the other side of the astragalus, are indeed distinct, one going forwards, one going backwards, and one running directly downwards ; one goes from the point or knob of the fibula, obliquely downwards and forwards, to be inserted into the side of the astragalus : it is square and flat, of considerable breadth and strength, and is called *LIGAMENTUM FIBULÆ ANTERIUS*. Another ligament goes perpendicularly downwards, from the acute point of the outer ankle, to spread upon the side of the astragalus and of the capsule, and is finally inserted into the heel-bone ; this is named the *LIGAMENTUM FIBULÆ PERPENDICULARE*. A third ligament goes out still from the same point, to go backwards over the back part of the capsule ; adheres to the back of the capsule, and strengthens it, and is named *LIGAMENTUM INTER FIBULAM ET ASTRAGALUM, POSTERIUS*. There is nothing very particularly worthy of notice in the ankle-joint ; for it is covered with cartilages ; lined with a soft and mucous membrane ; and lubricated with mucous fimbriæ and masses of fat, such as are found in all the joints. It is stronger than the other joints ; it can hardly be luxated without a laceration of its ligaments, and breaking of the bones which guard it at either side ; and it is the great violence which is required for completing this dislocation, and the terrible complication of dislocation, fracture, and laceration of the skin, which makes this accident so dangerous beyond any other luxation.

The *ASTRAGALUS*, *OS CALIS*, *OS NAVICULARE*, and all the bones of the tarsus, are united to each other by large heads and distinct and peculiar joints ; besides which, the bones are cross tied to one another by ligaments so numerous and complicated that they cannot nor need not be explained. They pass across from bone to bone in an infinite variety of directions ; some longitudinal ; some transverse ; and some oblique. There is



a curious complication, which we may call a web of ligaments, covering either side of the foot with shining and star-like bundles : each bone has its capsular ligament for joining it to the next ; each joint of each bone has its articulating cartilages always fresh and lubricated ; each joint has, besides its capsule, flat strips of oblique, longitudinal, and transverse ligaments, joining it to the nearest bones : and the greater bones have larger and more important ligaments, as from the astragalus to the os calcis, from the os calcis to the os naviculare, and from that again to the scaphoid bone, &c.

The metatarsal bones have their capsular ligaments joining them to the tarsal bones, and they have ligaments strengthening their capsules, and tying them more strongly to the tarsal bones ; and, as in the metacarpal bones, the several ranks are tied one to another by cross ligaments, which pass from the root of one bone to the root of the next. We have ligaments of the same description and use, holding the metatarsal bones together, both on the upper and on the lower surface of the foot ; and all the ligaments of the foot are of great strength and thickness. The lower ends of the metatarsal bones have also transverse ligaments by which they are tied to each other. The toes have hinge-joints, formed by capsules, and secured by lateral ligaments, as those of the fingers are ; and except in the strength or number of ligaments, the joinings of the carpus, metacarpus, and fingers, exactly resemble the joinings of the tarsus, metatarsus, and toes.

But these ligaments, though helping to join the individual bones, could not have much effect in supporting the whole arch of the foot. It is further secured by a great ligament, which extends in one triangular and flat plate from the point of the heel to the roots of each toe. This is named the *APONEUROSIS PLANTARIS PEDIS* ; which is not merely an aponeurosis for covering, defending, and supporting, the muscles of the foot ; that might have been done on easier terms with a fascia, very slight compared with this ; but the chief use of the plantar aponeurosis is to support the arch of the foot. It passes from point to point, like the bow-string betwixt the two horns of a bow, and, after leaping or hard walking, it is in the sole of the foot that we feel the straining and pain : so that, like the palmar aponeurosis, it supports the arch, gives origin to the short muscles of the toes, braces them in their action, and makes bridges under which the long tendons are allowed to pass ; it comes off from the heel in one point ; it grows broader in the same proportion as the sole of the foot grows broad ; it is divided into three narrow heads, which make forks, and are inserted into the roots of the second, third, and fourth toes ; and

the great toe and the little toe have two smaller or lateral aponeuroses, which cover their own particular muscles, and are implanted into the roots of the great toe and of the little toe.

The bursæ mucosæ surround the ankle and foot in great numbers. None of them having any very direct connection with the joint, and most of them accompanying the long tendons as they pass behind the ankle, or in the sole of the foot, are of that kind which we call tendinous sheaths. First, There are sheaths of two or three inches long, which surround the tendons of the *tibialis posticus*, and of the *peronæi* muscles, as they pass down behind the ankle. The sheaths of the *peronæi* begin from that point where the tendons first begin to rub against the bone, and are continued quite down into the sole of the foot; making first a common sheath for both tendons, and then a bursa peculiar to the tendons of the *peronæus brevis* muscle, and about an inch in length. Where the *peronæus longus* begins to pass under the sole of the foot, the sheath which inclosed it behind the ankle is shut, and a new bursa begins; in the same manner, where the tendons of the *flexor pollicis* and *flexor digitorum pedis* pass behind the inner ankle, a bursa of three inches in length surrounds them and facilitates the motion. As the tendons of the flexor muscles go under the arch of the foot, they lie among soft parts, and rub chiefly against the flesh of the *massa carnea* and the belly of the short flexor muscles: but whenever they touch the first joints of their toes, they once more rub against a hard bone. New bursæ are formed for the tendons. Each bursa is a distinct bag, running along the flat face of the toe, and is of a long shape, and the tendon is carried through the centre of the lubricated bag; so that we see once more that there is no true distinction betwixt bursæ mucosæ and tendinous sheaths, nor betwixt the tendinous sheaths and the capsules of joints.

Joints have been arranged under various forms, but not with much success; and I do not know that enumerating the joints in any particular order will either explain the motions of individual joints, or assist in recording their various forms; some joints are loose and free, capable of easy motions, but weak in proportion, and liable to be displaced; such is the JOINT of the SHOULDER, which rolls in every direction; other rolling joints, more limited in their motions, are better secured with ligaments of peculiar strength; such is the JOINT of the HIP, where the ligaments are of great strength both within and without: some, wanting all circular motions, are hinge-joints by the mere form of their bones; such are the LOWER JAW, the VERTEBRÆ, the ELBOW, and the ANKLE-JOINTS: some are hinges by their ligaments, which are then disposed only along the sides of the

bones ; such are the KNEE, the RIBS, the FINGERS, and the TOES. Some joints partake of either motion with all the freedom of a ball and a socket-joint, yet with the strength and security of the strictest hinge : thus the WRIST, having one joint by which its turning motions are performed, and another joint by which it rolls, has the two great endowments so rarely combined in any joint of the freest motion, and of great strength ; so also has the HEAD, by the combination of two joints of opposite uses and forms ; for its own condyles play like a mere hinge upon the atlas ; and the axis of the dentatus secures all the properties of a circular joint : this combination gives it all the motions of either joint without their peculiar defects. But there is still a third order of joints, which have such an obscure and shuffling motion that it cannot be observed. The CARPUS and METACARPUS, the TARSUS and METATARSUS, the TIBIA with the FIBULA, have these shuffling and almost immoveable joints ; they are not intended for much motion among themselves, but are appointed by a diffused and gradual yielding to facilitate the motions of other joints.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

THE  
*ANATOMY*  
OF THE  
HUMAN BODY.

—\*—  
IN FOUR VOLUMES,  
ILLUSTRATED WITH ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY-FIVE ENGRAVINGS.

—\*—  
VOLUME II.  
CONTAINING THE  
ANATOMY  
OF THE  
HEART AND ARTERIES.

—\*—  
By JOHN BELL, Surgeon.

LIBRARY  
SURGEON GENERAL'S OFFICE

NOV. 20 1901

—\*—  
FROM THE FOURTH LONDON EDITION, IMPROVED BY THE AUTHOR.

---

NEW-YORK:

PRINTED AND SOLD BY COLLINS AND CO. NO. 189,  
PEARL-STREET.

....  
1812.





DR. JAMES JEFFRAY,  
PROFESSOR OF ANATOMY IN THE UNIVERSITY  
OF GLASGOW.

---

DEAR SIR,

WHEN this volume first appeared, you mentioned to me some doubts concerning the office which I had ascribed to the Eustachian valve. You proposed to publish some critical observations, on this part of my Book, and, with a liberality becoming our common profession, and your high station in it, you spoke of addressing those strictures to myself.

It is no small gratification to me, that I have it now in my power to present a new Edition of this Volume, imperfect as it is, to one who allows it some merit, while he is yet not insensible to its defects.

I believe you will accept with pleasure this slight testimony of respect and esteem, from one who can have no motive but respect and esteem for professing himself in this particular manner,

Your most faithful and obedient

Humble Servant,

JOHN BELL.



## PREFACE.

---

**T**HIS volume consists of two parts ; the Anatomy and Physiology of the Heart—the Arrangements and Descriptions of all the Arteries of the body.

THE discovery of the circulation of the blood has been always regarded as one of the most important, and has been ranked rather with the great doctrines of philosophy, than with the little discoveries in our peculiar science ; it has been boasted of by our countrymen, and much coveted, and often claimed, by strangers. The discovery is most ingenious and beautiful, and is the foundation of all that physicians have thought or practised, right or wrong, useful or destructive, ever since.

How the well-proved doctrines of Harvey were perverted ; what new, strange, monstrous, and impossible circles his antagonists contrived for the blood, it were tedious to relate ; but it is most natural to mention why his doctrines were opposed. It was the universal opinion in those days, that the blood was formed in the liver, and sent out from it by all the veins to nourish the body, proceeding outwards during the day, and returning by night. The old physicians had thus entered into a train of thinking which it was not easy to change : these notions about the blood were become great and important doctrines, and had descended to them from their oldest



teachers, with many weighty dependencies, conclusions, and rules of practice issuing from them : they were as articles of faith which it was a heresy to forsake ; and it was easy to foresee, that should the Harveian doctrine prevail ; should it be once completely proved that the blood moved outwards along the arteries and returned only by the veins ; then all the reasonings of the physicians would be confounded ; their theories embracing the whole body of physic disturbed ; their system of practice entirely overthrown ; and all that they had written themselves, and all the ancient books which they had read with so much diligence (for they were really learned ; ) all that they had ever been proud of ; was to be wiped out from the thoughts of that and of all succeeding ages !

But the doctrine of Harvey did at last prevail, dispelled those idle dreams of humours and temperaments, and spirits, and blood ! of the blood concocted in the liver, and moving outwards along the veins to nourish the body ; of the blood moving outwards during all the day, and returning by night ; of the arteries carrying air only or vital spirits, to animate the system by mixing with the blood, while the veins alone conveyed the proper blood. Yet this theory of the illustrious Harvey introduced general doctrines more mischievous in all their consequences than those which had just vanished : as, that the blood was composed of particular globules, the larger globules of smaller ones, and these again of globules of a third series ; and that the arteries were so proportioned to the diameters of those globules, and descended by steps so regular and uniform, that each kind of artery had its peculiar globule which it received with ease, while others were rejected ; or, if unhappily driven by a too violent action into vessels which they did not suit, were arrested in their progress ; and produced either some local inflammation or some universal disease. These are the once famous doctrines of Malpighi, Boerhaave, and all the great men of their day ; and which they dilated into various forms, and adorned with the fine words of *lentos*, *remora*, *error loci*.

To these succeeded the mechanical physicians, who, by un-

intelligible problems of mathematics and algebra (reasonings which were ill-founded in their principles, even had the calculations been correct,) pretended to estimate the force of the heart, the velocity of the blood, the power of the arteries, the strength of the veins, and the shape and size of each secreting orifice, according to the secretion which it had to perform. These were the doctrines, these the discoveries, which rendered famous the names of Bellini, Pitcairn, Keil, Hales, and other mechanical physicians, whose books are gone "to the vault of all the Capulets."

The chemists next soon turned their thoughts, from the vain search after the universal solvent and the philosopher's stone, to pharmacy and the useful arts. By the abilities and industry of Newman, this branch began to assume the more respectable appearance of a useful art; it began to be allied to science, and its connection with medicine was found to be of the most direct and important nature.

Having analysed the materials of the druggist, the chemists proceeded to analyse the parts of the human body to which those medicines were to be applied: but from this rational commencement followed one of the most trivial of all the miserable doctrines with which our science has been disgraced; for as the chemists had already explained the properties of the salts, metals, earths, and of all active substances, by the angles, cubes, or other forms which they saw their particles assume, they soon persuaded themselves that such forms as cubes, wedges, spiculæ, &c. existed in the blood; and acid and alkaline humours, sharp, corrosive, irritating, and pointed particles, were the terms in which they expressed their most admired theories; and acids, alkalis, and metals, and medicines for rounding the pointed particles, or obtunding (as they termed it,) or sheathing, or covering the acrimonious humours, were their chief preventatives and cures.

Until the present day, this fault has pervaded all the great theories, that in describing our vessels physicians have continued to use the language of hydraulics and hydrostatics; of a philosophy applicable only to rigid tubes: in short, in

describing the living system, they have forgotten that it was endowed with life.

We also may have erred in our turn : but with whatever degree of contempt we may view the doctrines of these older authors ; or however succeeding generations may be amused with ours—still this is plain, that the most important facts in all anatomy, and the chief doctrines of the human body, must always accompany the explanation of those two great functions of the heart and lungs. Of course the constitution of the blood ; the chemistry of airs ; our dependence, so incessant and immediate, upon the atmosphere in which we live ; the various and singular ways by which the *fætuses* of different creatures, or the creatures themselves, according to their peculiar modes of life, draw their existence from the atmosphere ; the various kinds of circulation by which this air is distributed through the system of each ; the effects of air particularly upon our body ; and the effects also of accidents, deformities, and diseases in those prime organs—all this wide circle of physiology belongs, in the strictest and clearest sense, to the anatomy of the heart. For one chief purpose in studying the anatomy of the human body is to understand its functions, and to compare them with those of other creatures, till we arrive at last at some distant conception of the whole ; of the various structures of animals and vegetables ; and of the various functions which in each of these classes support life, and action, and through it the principle of life.

There is no occasion on which this desire of knowledge, this willing admiration of the wonders of nature, is so strong as on first studying the functions of the lungs and heart ; for upon the conjoined offices of the heart and lungs all perfect life seems to depend. And how universal these two functions are ; how necessary to the support of the greater animals ; how essential also to the constitution of the meanest insect—it shall be my business to explain.

The knowledge of the arteries again bears along with it the whole anatomy of the human body. The nerves accompany the arteries, the lymphatics and veins twine round them ; the

glands and various organs are composed of them. The intimate structure of parts is known only by understanding the forms of their vessels ; and as each individual part is nourished by arteries, he who has studied the arteries thoroughly, knows the whole.

But to the surgeon the knowledge of the arterial system is valuable beyond all calculation or belief. He performs no operation in which arteries are not engaged ; he cures no great wound in which arteries are not first to be tied ; he enters into no consultation in which the arteries are not first spoken of. Without a knowledge of the arteries he can neither think sensibly nor act safely.

Most unhappily all this comes to be known only at that period of life when the deepest conviction can produce only fear and perplexity, sorrow and regret. Yet, strange to tell, there is no such conviction ; no regret, no irresolution, no perplexity, is ever seen ! A surgeon, as ignorant of the blood-vessels as of every other point of anatomy, shall proceed in his operations with a forwardness and boldness terrible to those who know the danger ; yet with a success and good fortune exceeding all belief.

The causes of all this are very plain. A relaxation in the discipline of the schools is the first cause—an indifference to anatomy, so marked and pointed, that an anatomical thesis in this country was never known. Every young man especially fears the difficulty of this part of anatomy, and shuns it. He is not duly impressed with such a high sense of its importance as to make labour pleasant ; and when he is advanced to practice, he takes comfort daily from the mistakes and ignorance of others. A slender consolation ! to see exemplified in others the faults and dangers to which we ourselves are exposed.

If these negligencies may stand excused on any account, it is on this only, that anatomists have been accustomed to write, not for the Public, in plain and simple language, but for each other, in an unknown tongue. By this I mean not a foreign or a dead language, but a peculiar style and phrase which no



one can understand unless he be initiated ; unless he have studied the science itself so intensely, that he has also learned the jargon in which it is conveyed : in short, no one but a thorough anatomist can understand the language of anatomy, nor can even he understand it without some labour. Anatomists have buried their science under the rubbish of names ; there is not a difficult or hard sounding word upon which they have any claim, that they have not retained : they have choked their subject with useless minutæ, they have polluted their language, by transferring to it from Latin many words which, by their continual inflections in that language, were beautiful, while their unvaried, uncouth termination in ours, is barbarous in the utterance, while it tends but to interrupt and puzzle the sense : “ They have impressed into the service of their science a great many poor words that would get their habeas corpus from any court in Christendom.”

An anatomist, for example, will describe an artery as “ going to the radial edge of the second metacarpal bone ; then supplying the abductor and flexor muscles ; then going along the bone of the first phalanx, seated upon this second metacarpal bone,” with many other distortions, ambiguities, and little contrivances, to conceal (as one would believe) that he is describing so simple a matter as the artery of the fore-finger ; which the reader at last finds out either by some lucky chance, or by reflecting how many metacarpal bones there are ; and then reckoning them first forwards and then backwards, that he may be sure which it is that the author means ; for his author may count from the little finger towards the thumb, or from the thumb towards the little finger, or he may have a fancy of leaving out the thumb, and reckoning only four. What must be the surprise of any well-educated young man when he reads in those books which he must study, of the regions of the elbow or thumb, or fore-finger ? And if an anatomist understands such things with difficulty, how distressing must they be to the student ?

This is the scholastic jargon which has so long been the pride of anatomists and the disgrace of their science ; which has given young men a dislike for the most useful of all their

studies ; and which it is now full time to banish from our schools. These are the authors who avoid plainness as if it were meanness ; who are studious of hard words as if they constituted the perfection of science : “ it is their trade, it is their mystery, to write obscurely ;” and full sorely does the student feel it.

Want of arrangement, again, has still worse effects. Confusion is a monster in science ; and Thomson has, in his *Man of the Moon*, described such a thing with great spirit and life : “ A creature, if that may be called a creature which had no shape nor form, next rolled towards him, approaching still nearer and nearer, and by various glances and movements seemed to indicate a sympathy with man : it was a rude unformed mass ; legs and arms, fingers and toes, and membranes and glands, and entrails and teeth, were blended into one abominable mass.”

If I should tell my reader that there are very nearly one thousand arteries in the body, going promiscuously to bones, ligaments, bowels, and glands, muscles, and nerves, to a thousand unconnected difficult parts, all of which he must know by name, how would he be affected ? But when I observe, that these go to the neck, the head, the arm, the leg, he begins to see this confusion of muscles, and glands, and bowels, vanish, and to perceive that all these arteries may be usefully and very simply arranged. When he is next taught to know the course of each greater artery, and the parts in which each division and branch of it lies, he perceives clearly that the parts through which it runs, as the arm-pit, neck, or groin, must limit and regulate the number of its branches, and give to each twig even an appropriate place and name : When next the whole arterial system is marked and chalked out for him in different portions ; when there are points of peculiar importance set apart which he is charged to learn with particular care—he sees a good end in all this toil ; he begins with courage, and gets forward easily ; it becomes an interesting, and of course a pleasing, task. But still it is a task : and I entreat the young student, as he values his own honour, or

the safety of his friends, not to bate himself one iota of the whole. Let him not take an indolent advantage of those arrangements, which are meant to promote his industry, not to prevent it. Let him not read only concerning the greater arteries, neglecting the smaller ones, but go through the whole piece of anatomy honestly and fairly. He will no doubt forget in time the smaller arteries ; but by having studied even them with diligence, he must remember the great and important arteries with a clearness of comprehension and arrangement, which those who have not gone thus honestly through the whole study can never attain. Let him also remember, that studies like these, well performed during his early years, do, like past dangers, or the remembrance of good deeds, give an ease and pleasure to his after-life.

The arteries, I will now venture to say, should be with the surgeon as familiar as his name ; and there is no argument which proves it more strongly than this, that a man of real learning, of sterling good-sense, of a clear head and steady hand, a man accomplished in all other respects, and fitted by nature and genius for performing the most difficult operations, if yet he want this part of knowledge, may, in one unhappy moment, do things which he must think of with horror during all his life. I know well how little such accidents are thought of, when at last the evil day comes. A surgeon hardly believes this strict knowledge of the arteries to be so great a point. In the midst of an operation, or in a common wound, it gives him no concern to see arteries bleed which he did not look for ; nor has he great reluctance to drive his needle among parts which he does not know. An artery bleeds, and he looks for it ; he calls out at last to screw the tourniquet, and it stops ; the tourniquet is loosened again, and again it bleeds ; again the screw is tightened on account of the loss of blood ; he expects to strike the artery ; he is accustomed to strike it, not by knowing where it lies, but by seeing it bleed : at last some lucky dab of the needle succeeds, or perhaps from faintness of the patient the bleeding ceases : the surgeon is relieved from his present anxiety ; but in a few hours he is called back

to this scene of confusion and dismay : yet at last the bleeding in somehow or other mastered ; and thus he gets on through all his difficulties, accident after accident, operation after operation, till at last he almost forgets that anatomy was a branch of his education, or the knowledge of blood-vessels necessary in operations or wounds.

I will not say that a man cannot suppress a bleeding from a wound in the arm, because he is not acquainted with the anatomy of the arm ; but this surely I may be allowed to say, that it is a piece of knowledge which at all times, but especially in those circumstances, can do no harm ; and that if you leave a patient to choose betwixt two surgeons, one skilled in the knowledge of arteries, another knowing them only by seeing them spout out blood, it is easy to foretel where his choice will fall.

Perhaps some will be so hardened as to say, “ and yet we seldom hear that patients die of bleeding.” Is it then a merit that your patient is not plainly killed ; that he does not expire under your hands ? Is it nothing to lose blood from day to day ? Is it nothing that your patient is reduced to extreme weakness, suffering every thing but actual death ? Is it nothing that he lies with tourniquets round the limbs in fear and anxiety, attended by young surgeons appointed to watch that bleeding, which may burst out while the patient turns in bed, and destroy him in one moment ? Is it nothing to have fresh incisions and new searchings for the artery to endure ;—These are real difficulties and dangers, and they should be provided for ; our honour as well as our duty requires it. Bleeding from a great artery is to the patient the greatest danger : the very report of an ill accident is to the surgeon (though, God knows, he may be blameless) the greatest disgrace ; and, lastly, though it should not be so, his taking up a bleeding artery dexterously and quickly, when others have failed, is a great honour.

When we think of all the important consequences of being thoroughly versed in this part of anatomy, they crowd upon our imagination more in number than can be even named,



The surgeon may, indeed, provide for the arteries to be cut in a regular operation, by consulting books ; but when he is called to a patient bleeding and faint, perhaps expiring, that person must live or die by his immediate skill ! By his skill he will obtain the good opinion, not of ignorant attendants only, but of the profession : and by a bold and sensible conduct in any difficult situation he may give them a lesson of real use. Let us but for a moment think of the chances of those wounded in war ;—the alarming, unthought-of accidents which overtake us daily in private life ;—the wounds and hurts which workmen receive :—let us reflect on all the kinds of aneurism both in the heart and arteries, from wounds, from blows, from inward diseases :—let us think of all the various operations in which arteries are concerned—and then declare whether, of all his studies, the young man should not value that most which makes him so immediately and eminently useful.

# Thomas's Practice of Physic.

COLLINS & CO.

*Have lately published that very valuable work,*  
**THE MODERN PRACTICE OF PHYSIC;**

*Exhibiting the characters, causes, symptoms, prognostics, morbid appearances, and improved methods of treating the diseases of all climates,*

BY ROBERT THOMAS, M. D.

Third English edition, corrected and considerably enlarged by the author.

*To which is added* AN APPENDIX,

BY EDWARD MILLER, M. D.

*Professor of the Practice of Physic in the University of New-York, Physician in the New-York Hospital, &c. &c.*

So high is the estimation in which the present work is held by the medical profession in England, that three very large editions have during the short time since its publication, already been printed. It is represented by different medical critics, as exhibiting a very correct view of the present state of medical science in Great-Britain, and as condensing, in a small compass, more practical information than any work which has preceded it. The author, however, in his account of certain diseases, and methods of treatment, of which much experience has been had in this country, is believed to have committed some mistakes from inadvertency and misinformation. The design of the Appendix, by Dr. Miller, therefore, is, to correct these mistakes, and to state some opinions which, it is hoped, will meet with the approbation of the author.

It is no inconsiderable recommendation of the present work, that it is the only treatise on the practice of physic, republished in this country, which has been written within the last sixteen years.

The price is four dollars; though the English edition, executed on paper much inferior, sells at six dollars.

## *The following recommendations are taken from the Reviews.*

"A treatise nearly universal in its object, has been particularly desirable, and Doctor Thomas having had opportunities of actually observing the diseases and practice of different countries, but especially those of hot climates, and being conversant with the writings of our best modern authors and teachers, may be considered as well qualified to undertake so important a task. We think Dr. Thomas has acquitted himself of his undertaking in a manner highly creditable to him as a man of research, and as a practical Physician, and that his work deserves to stand high in the catalogue of this kind of compilation."—*London Medical Review.*

"In compilations of this sort, it is sufficient that, in addition to a clear and methodical arrangement, due diligence be employed in collecting from the proper sources, and judgment in discriminating between real and pretended discoveries. In these respects, we think the author of the present work has not been deficient. It is a compendium of the existing doctrines and practice of medicine." *Medical and Chirurgical Review.*

"This is a judicious compilation of facts, from the best writers, which may be perused with great advantage by students, because the different subjects are treated with brevity and perspicuity. The Author has chiefly followed Dr. Cullen, both in the classification of diseases, and in his text; but it is necessary to add, that Dr. Thomas does not prove a servile copyist. He has abridged with judgment, has added modern opinions and discoveries, has frequently introduced the result of his own experience, and his performance thus becomes an useful compendium of the present state of medical practice."—*Monthly Review.*

SMITH'S BELL'S SURGERY.  
COLLINS & CO. have lately published, price 5 dollars bound, containing about fifty engravings,

"THE PRINCIPLES OF SURGERY,

BY JOHN BELL, SURGEON:

*Abridged by J. AUGUSTINE SMITH, of the Royal College of Surgeons, London, and Professor of Anatomy and Surgery in the College of Physicians and Surgeons in the University of the State of New-York;*

SECOND EDITION, WITH ADDITIONS."

The above volume, it is believed, will be received as an important acquisition to the medical profession in these states. It professes to contain every thing that is valuable in the great work of John Bell, which cannot now be purchased at a sum much below one hundred dollars.

*Also, a second Edition of*  
A COMPENDIUM OF THE THEORY AND PRACTICE  
OF

M I D W I F E R Y,

*Containing practical instructions for the management of Women during Pregnancy, in Labour, and in Child-Bed; calculated to correct the errors, and improve the practice of Midwives; as well as to serve as an introduction to the study of this Art, for Students and young Practitioners.*

WITH NUMEROUS ADDITIONS.

—•—  
By SAMUEL BARD, M. D.

President of the College of Physicians and Surgeons in the University of the State of New-York.

PRINTING. *Collins & Co.* being provided with excellent materials, and having had considerable experience in printing the French, Latin, Greek, and Hebrew languages, offer their services to print any medical or other work which may require a knowledge of those languages to execute it with accuracy.

# CONTENTS.



## BOOK I.

### OF THE HEART.

#### CHAP. I.

#### OF THE MECHANISM OF THE HEART.

Page  
1

<b>O</b> F THE PARTS OF THE HEART,	-	-	-	<b>7</b>
Venæ Cavæ,	-	-	-	ib.
Right Sinus of the Heart,	-	-	-	8
Tuberculum Loweri,	-	-	-	ib.
Auricle,	-	-	-	ib.
Auricular Valves,	-	-	-	10
Right Ventricle,	-	-	-	ib.
Pulmonic Artery,	-	-	-	11
Sigmoid Valves,	-	-	-	12
Left Auricle,	-	-	-	13
Semilunar Valves of the Aorta,	-	-	-	14
Aorta,	-	-	-	15
Of the Coronary Vessels,	-	-	-	16
Eustachian Valve,	-	-	-	19
Irritability and Action of the Heart,	-	-	-	24
Posture of the Heart,	-	-	-	29
Pericardium,	-	-	-	30
Conclusion,	-	-	-	35



## CHAP. II.

ON THE APPEARANCE AND PROPERTIES OF  
THE BLOOD, OF THE CHEMISTRY OF OUR  
FLUIDS, AND OF THE INFLUENCE WHICH  
AIR HAS UPON THEM.

	Page
History of Opinions concerning the Blood, -	41
Life of the Blood, - - - - -	47
Qualities of the Blood, - - - - -	54
Of the Red Globules, - - - - -	ib.
Coagulable Lymph, - - - - -	57
Serum, - - - - -	59
General View of the Nature of the Blood, -	61
Chemistry of the Blood, - - - - -	62
Influence of Air upon the Blood, - - - - -	63
1. In reddening the Blood, - - - - -	70
2. In communicating its stimulant powers, -	ib.
3. In communicating heat to the Body, -	71
Respiration, or the manner in which the air is admitted to act upon the Blood, - - - - -	78
Respiration of Plants, - - - - -	79

## CHAP. III.

OF RESPIRATION, OR THE MANNER IN WHICH  
THE OXYDATION OF THE BLOOD IS ACCOM-  
PLISHED IN VARIOUS ANIMALS AND IN MAN.

History of Opinions concerning the Motions of the Lungs,	82
DIFFERENT SPECIES OF RESPIRATION, - - -	83
1. By a Diaphragm, - - - - -	84
2. Respiration of Birds, - - - - -	85
3. ————— Amphibiae, - - - - -	89
4. Respiration of Fishes, - - - - -	93
5. ————— Insects, - - - - -	98

## CHAP. IV.

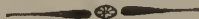
OF THE PECULIARITIES IN THE CIRCULATION  
OF THE FOETUS.

General View of the Peculiarities in the Anatomical Struc- ture of the Fœtus, - - - - -	105
--	-----

	Page
Ductus Venosus, - - - -	106
Foramen Ovale, - - - -	111
Ductus Arteriosus, - - - -	114
Explanation of the Circulation of the Fœtus, - - -	115
Critique of Opinions upon this Subject, - - -	ib.

## CHAP. V.

OF MALCONFORMATIONS OF THE HEART, AND OTHER CAUSES PREVENTING THE DUE OXY- DATION OF THE BLOOD, - - -	124
Of Malconformations of the Heart and Arteries, -	ib.
Of the Effects of these Malconformations and of ill Oxyda- ted Blood, - - - -	129
Of Malconformation in the Lungs, or want of the Pulmonic Artery, - - - -	134
Of a Heart too small for the System, - - - -	137
Of Enlargement of the Heart, - - - -	138
Of Polypi, - - - -	141
Thickening of the Walls or Muscular Substance of the Heart,	143
Of Aneurisms of the Aorta, - - - -	ib.
Of Nervous Palpitations of the Heart, - - - -	148



## BOOK II.

*OF THE ARTERIES.*

GENERAL PLAN OF THE ARTERIES, -	157
---------------------------------	-----

## CHAP. I.

## OF THE ARTERIES OF THE HEAD.

SECT. I. OF THE CAROTID ARTERIES IN GENERAL,	156
General View of the Anatomy of the Carotid Artery,	159

	Page
1. EXTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY AND ARRANGEMENT OF ITS BRANCHES, - - -	161
1. ORDER, going forward to the Thyroid Gland, Tongue, and Face, - - -	162
Arteria Thyroidea, - - -	ib.
Arteria Lingualis, - - -	163
Arteria Labialis, - - -	165
2. ORDER, going backward from the External Carotid.	
Pharyngea Inferior, - - -	168
Arteria Occipitalis, - - -	169
Arteria Posterior Auris, - - -	170
3. ORDER, including the Termination of the External Carotid in the Temporal and Maxillary Arte- ries, - - -	171
Arteria Maxillaris Interna, - - -	172
Arteria Temporalis, - - -	177
Conclusion, - - -	179
SECT. II. Of the ARTERIES of the BRAIN, SPINAL MAR- ROW, and EYE, - - -	182
§ i. Of the Arteries of the Brain, - - -	ib.
2. INTERNAL CAROTID, - - -	187
Division of it, - - -	189
1. Arteria Media Cerebri, - - -	ib.
2. Arteria Anterior Cerebri, - - -	190
3. Arteria Communicans, - - -	191
Vertebral Artery, - - -	192
1. Arteria Cerebelli Posterior, - - -	193
2. ————— Anterior, - - -	194
3. ——— Cerebri Posterior, - - -	195
§ ii. Of the Arteries of the Spinal Marrow, - - -	196
1. Arteria Anterior Medullæ Spinalis, - - -	ib.
2. ——— Posterior, - - -	198
§ iii. Arteries of the Eye, - - -	ib.
1. ORDER, - - -	199
Arteria Lachrymalis, - - -	ib.
2. ORDER, - - -	200
Arteria Centralis Nervinæ, - - -	ib.
Arteriæ Ciliares, - - -	201
3. ORDER, - - -	203
Arteria Muscularis Superior, - - -	ib.
————— Inferior, - - -	204
4. ORDER, - - -	ib.
Arteria Æthmoidalis Posterior, - - -	ib.
————— Anterior, - - -	205
5. ORDER, - - -	ib.
Arteria Supra-orbitalis, - - -	ib.
Arteria Palpebralis, - - -	206
———— Nasalis, - - -	ib.

	Page
Arteria Frontalis, - - -	207
Conclusion, - - -	208

## CHAP. II.

OF THE ARTERIES OF THE ARM.	210
I. Of the SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY, - - -	213
1. Arteria Mammaria Interna, - - -	ib.
2. ——— Thyroidea Inferior, - - -	216
3. ——— Vertebralis, - - -	217
4. ——— Cervicalis Profunda, - - -	ib.
5. ——— Cervicalis Superficialis, - - -	218
6. ——— Intercostalis Superior, - - -	219
7. ——— Suprascapularis, - - -	ib.
II. Of the AXILLARY ARTERY, - - -	221
1. Arteria Thoracica Superior, - - -	222
2. ——— Longior, - - -	ib.
3. ——— Humeraria, - - -	223
4. ——— Alaris, - - -	ib.
5. ——— Subscapularis, - - -	224
6. ——— Circumflexa Posterior, - - -	226
General remarks upon the Axillary Artery,	227
III. Of the BRACHIAL ARTERY, - - -	230
1. Arteria Profunda Humeri Superior, - - -	231
2. ——— Inferior, - - -	232
3. Ramus Anastomoticus Major, - - -	ib.
IV. Of the ARTERIES of the FORE-ARM, viz. of the RADIAL ULNAR, and INTEROSSEOUS ARTERIES,	283
Division of the Artery of the Fore-arm, - - -	237
Arteriæ Recurrentes, - - -	238
1. Recurrens Radialis Anterior, - - -	ib.
2. ——— Ulnaris Anterior, - - -	239
3. ——— Posterior, - - -	ib.
4. ——— Interossea, - - -	240
Arteria Radialis, - - -	ib.
1. Arteria Superficialis Volæ, - - -	241
2. Arteria Dorsalis Carpi, - - -	242
3. ——— Pollicis, - - -	243
4. ——— Radialis Indicis, - - -	ib.
5. ——— Magna Pollicis, - - -	244
6. ——— Palmaris Profunda, - - -	ib.
Arteria Ulnaris, - - -	ib.
1. Arteria Dorsalis Ulnaris, - - -	245
2. ——— Palmaris Profunda, - - -	246
Arteria Interossea, - - -	247



## CHAP. III.

OF THE ARTERIES OF THE THORAX, ABDOMEN,  
AND PELVIS.

	Page
§ I. ARTERIES of the THORAX, - - -	248
Aorta Thoracica, - - -	ib.
1. Arteriæ Bronchiales, - - -	249
Arteria Bronchialis Communis, - - -	ib.
----- Dextra, - - -	ib.
----- Sinistra, - - -	250
----- Inferior, - - -	ib.
2. Arteriæ Oesophagæ, - - -	ib.
3. Intercostales Inferiores, - - -	251
§ II. ARTERIES OF THE ABDOMEN, - - -	252
Aorta Abdominalis, - - -	ib.
Arteriæ Phrenicæ, - - -	253
ARTERIES OF THE STOMACH, LIVER, AND SPLEEN, - - -	254
Arteria Cœliaca, - - -	255
1. Arteria Coronaria Ventriculi, - - -	ib.
Its Branches, - - -	256
2. Arteria Hepatica, - - -	257
Its Branches, - - -	258
3. Arteria Splenica, - - -	260
Its Branches, - - -	ib.
ARTERIES of the INTESTINES, - - -	261
Mesenteric Arteries, - - -	ib.
1. Mesenterica Superior, - - -	262
Colica Media, - - -	ib.
----- Dextra, - - -	263
Ilio-Colica, - - -	ib.
2. Mesenterica Inferior, - - -	264
Arteria Colica Sinistra, - - -	265
Arteriæ Hæmorrhoidales, - - -	266
ARTERIES of the FIXED VISCERA of the ABDOMEN, - - -	ib.
1. Arteriæ Capsulares, - - -	ib.
2. ----- Renales, - - -	ib.
3. Arteria SpermatICA, - - -	267
4. Arteriæ Adiposæ, - - -	268
5. Arteriæ Uretericæ, - - -	ib.
6. ----- Lumbares, - - -	ib.
§ III. ARTERIES of the PELVIS, - - -	269
Arteria Sacra Media, - - -	270
Arteria Iliaca Interna, - - -	ib.
ORDER FIRST, of Arteries which keep within the Pelvis. - - -	271

	Page
1. Arteria Ilio-lumbalis, - - -	271
2. ——— Sacræ Laterales, - - -	ib.
3. ——— Hypogastrica, - - -	272
4. ——— Vesicales, - - -	ib.
5. ——— Hæmorrhoidales, - - -	273
6. ——— Hæmorrhoidæ Media, - - -	ib.
7. ——— Uterina, - - -	ib.
ORDER SECOND, of Arteries which go out from the Pelvis, - - -	274
1. Arteria Glutæa, - - -	ib.
2. ——— Ischiadica, - - -	275
3. ——— Pudica Communis, - - -	276
4. ——— Obturatoria, - - -	279

## CHAP. IV.

## ARTERIES OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

Iliaca Externa, - - -	281
General Description of this Artery, - - -	ib.
Surgery of the Femoral Artery, - - -	283
BRANCHES of the FEMORAL ARTERY, - - -	287
1. Above the Groin, - - -	ib.
Arteria Epigastrica, - - -	ib.
Arteria Circumflexa Ileum, - - -	288
2. Below the Groin, - - -	289
1. Arteria Profunda Femoris, - - -	ib.
2. ——— Circumflexa Externa, - - -	290
3. ——— Interna, - - -	291
4. ——— Perforantes, - - -	292
1. Arteria Perforans Prima, - - -	ib.
2. ——— Secunda Magna, - - -	293
3. ——— Tertia, - - -	ib.
4. ——— Quarta, - - -	294
5. Arteria Femoralis, - - -	295
6. Popliteal Artery, - - -	297
1. Arteria Articularis Superior Externa, - - -	ib.
2. ——— Interna, - - -	298
3. ——— Media ———, - - -	ib.
4. ——— Inferior Externa, - - -	299
5. ——— Interna, - - -	ib.
7. Arteries of the Leg and Foot, - - -	300
1. Arteria Tibialis Antica, - - -	ib.
—— Recurrens, - - -	301
—— Malleolaris Interna, - - -	ib.
—— Externa, - - -	302

	Page
Arteria Tarsea - - -	302
----- Metatarsca, - - -	303
Dorsalis Externa Halucis, - - -	ib.
2. Arteria Tibialis Postica, - - -	304
----- Plantaris Interna, - - -	305
----- Externa, - - -	306
3. Arteria Peronea, - - -	308
----- Anterior, - - -	309
----- Posterior, - - -	ib.

THE  
ANATOMY  
OF THE  
HEART AND ARTERIES.

---

BOOK I.  
*OF THE HEART.*

---

CHAP. I.

OF THE MECHANISM OF THE HEART.

THE heart is placed nearly in the centre of the human body, and is itself the centre of the circulating system. The system of vessels, which it excites and moves, consists of arteries and of veins ;—the arteries act with great strength, with a pulsation like that of the heart itself, and convey the blood over all the body ; the veins are in greater number, exceedingly large, pellucid almost in their coats, incapable of that energetic action with which all the functions of the arteries are performed ; they return the blood to the heart with a slow, equable, and gentle motion, and deposite at the right side a quantity of blood equal to that which is at each pulsation driven out from the left.—The heart is placed betwixt the arteries and the veins, to regulate and enforce their action ; to receive the blood from the veins by a slow dilatation, and to restore, by a sudden contraction, that force which the blood loses in passing round the circle of the body. But the heart has also another and more important office to perform ; for by having two great cavities and two orders of vessels, it performs in the same instant two circulations, one for the lungs and one for the body ; it receives from the lungs nothing but pure blood, it delivers out to the

body nothing but what is fit for its uses : and this purifying or oxydation of the blood, and this excitement of the arteries, are two chief points of modern physiology, which every step of the following demonstration will tend to explain.

It will be most easy to conceive at first the idea of a more simple heart, of one circle, of one simple circulation ; of one bag for receiving, and another joined to it for propelling the blood. Indeed a heart consists merely of these essential parts ; a GREAT VEIN, an AURICLE, a VENTRICLE, and a GREAT ARTERY : of a vein which returns the blood from all the body ; of an auricle or smaller bag, which receives that blood and retains it till the action of the heart is relaxed ; of a ventricle (which is the proper heart,) strong, muscular, very irritable, and easily excited, into which the auricle pours its blood ; of an artery which is allied to the ventricle in strength and action, as the auricle is to the vein in the delicacy of its coats, and which carries on the blood to the extremities of the body :—and the vein and artery meeting in all the extremities of the body, like various branches of one tube, the whole is a circle, and the heart is the central power.

If an animal do not breathe, its system will be what I have now described ; it will have but one vein, one auricle, one ventricle, one artery ; it will have one simple heart : but with us, and other breathing animals, it is not so ; and I am now to describe a more complex and curious circulation. For suppose this blood so essential to our existence, to have in it some principle of life, which is continually lost, that principle must be continually renewed : the heart, which fills the arterial system, must not be taken from its appointed office, nor disturbed ; nature appoints a second heart, which belongs entirely to this most important of all functions, viz. renewing the blood ; and it may be renewed in many various ways. It might, for example, circulate in some peculiar viscus like the liver or spleen : in the fœtus it does circulate in such a mass, for the placenta is a thick and flat cake, whose office we know to be equivalent to that of the lungs, but whose structure we do not understand : in the chick we see its blood circulating over the yolk (for the yolk is inclosed within the membranes of the unhatched chick,) and we perceive the blood redder as it returns to the heart, and plainly changed : in fish we find the blood circulated over the gills, exposed thoroughly to the water in which they swim, and thus the gills perform to them the function of lungs. But in all breathing creatures, the lungs do this office ; the lungs are, next to the heart itself, essential to life ; in those who die from bleeding, we can perceive from the liver of the face, from the sobbing and struggles of the chest, from the regular convul-



sive sighs of those creatures which are butchered, rather a desire for air than a want of blood. It is for the purpose of this second circulation that nature has appointed in every breathing creature two hearts, a heart for the lungs, and a heart for the body ; two veins, two auricles, two ventricles, and two great arteries, one the pulmonic artery, or artery of the lungs, the other the aorta, or artery of the body.

But still there are other varieties which distinguish animals into creatures of cold or of warm blood ; for there are certain constitutions which do not require that the blood should be thus continually renewed. It is not because animals are amphibious, or go into the water, that they have peculiar lungs ; for the Land Tortoise, the Newt, the Cameleon, never go into the water ; yet they have membranous lungs : nor indeed can the Amphibiæ, as the Seal, the Porpoise, the Sea-Lion, &c. dive longer than a man can do ; though for whole days they lie in herds basking upon the shore ; it is their peculiar constitution to need less than other creatures the office of the lungs. The cold-blooded animals are generally creeping animals, sluggish, languid, cold, inert, difficultly moved, and tenacious of life to a wonderful degree. They can bear all kinds of stimuli ; they can bear to have their heads, legs, bowels, cut away ; and among other peculiarities of this constitution, they can live long without air ; they will rise from time to time above water, if you allow them ; they can bear again to be kept under water, if you force them : but if they can live long under water, they can also live at least as long after you have cut off their heads, or cut out their hearts.

Of those cold-blooded creatures always either the heart or the arteries are peculiar ; the heart is so in many amphibæ, as in the Turtle, where the heart seems to consist of three ventricles, but with partitions so imperfect betwixt them that they are absolutely as one : this one ventricle gives out both the great arteries ; the blood of the lungs and the blood of the body are both mixed in the heart ; and since there are two arteries conveying this mixed blood, if the two arteries be nearly equal in size, then it is just one half of the blood thrown out by the heart at each stroke that receives the benefit of the lungs. In many others, as the Frog, the Newt, the Toad, the peculiarity is in the arteries alone ; they have one single and beautiful heart ; there is one large auricle as a reservoir for all the blood both of the body and of the lungs ; there is one neat, small, and very powerful ventricle placed below the reservoir, having strength quite sufficient for moving both the blood of the lungs and the blood of the body ; and this ventricle gives off an aorta, which soon divides into two branches, one for the body and one for the lungs ; and these of course have but half the blood

of this heart exposed to the air : these also are cold-blooded animals.

But all breathing creatures, such as are called animals of hot blood, have two hearts : the one heart is sending blood through the lungs while the other heart is pushing its blood over the body ; not the half only, but the whole blood which is sent by each stroke of the heart over the body must have first passed through the lungs ; no blood can reach the heart of the body which has not been sent to it through the lungs ; or, in other words, the veins of the lungs, and they alone, feed the left side of the heart.

Words alone will never explain any of the endless difficulties which concern the mechanism of the heart ; but at every point, in every kind of difficulty, in explaining the form, the parts, the posture, even the coats or coverings of the heart, I shall have recourse to plans, such as cannot fail to make all this intricate mechanism be easily conceived.

The most simple form of the heart, which is represented in the Plan, No. 1. has a vein marked (*a*,)—an auricle (*b*,)—a ventricle (*c*,)—an artery (*d*,)—it has no provision for purifying the blood ; it has no resemblance to that kind of heart which is connected with lungs ; but the blood is received by the vein, falls into the auricle, is driven by its force into the ventricle, by the ventricle it is thrown into the artery, and courses round all the body, till at length, reaching the extremities of the veins, it passes by the veins to the auricle a second time, and so this single circle is perfect.

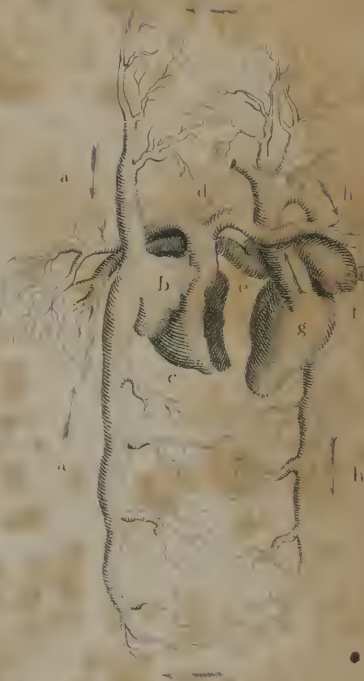
The heart of the amphibious creature is represented in No. 2 ; it is a frog's heart : it has the most simple form, and the fewest parts ; it has the same vein, auricle, ventricle, and artery ; but its great artery divides into two chief branches, of which (*d*)—the aorta goes to the body,—(*e*) the pulmonic artery goes to each side of the lungs.

The heart of a breathing creature is represented in No. 3. in its most intelligible form ; and the double circulation of the human body may be traced easily in the following way.—Here the heart of the lungs is set off from the heart of the body, being as distinct in office as in form and parts ; on the right side is the heart of the lungs, on the left side is the heart of the body.—(*a*) Is the great vein called *VENA CAVA* from its immense size :—there is an ascending and a descending cava ; the one brings the blood from the head and arms, the other brings the blood from all the lower parts of the body ; they meet at (*a*,) and form by their dilatation there a chief part of that bag which is called the auricle,—in it they deposite all the returning blood of the body, and thus present it at the right side of the heart to

N° 1



N° 3



N° 2



N° 1





be moved through the lungs—(b) Is the **RIGHT AURICLE** ; it is in part formed by a dilatation of these veins, but it puts on a strong and muscular nature as it approaches the heart ; it is the first cavity of the heart, and, like all its parts, is strong and irritable ; it is filled by the returning blood of the Cavas ; it receives, dilates, is oppressed by this great quantity of blood ; it is strongly excited to act : in its action the blood goes down into the ventricle or lower cavity of the heart.—(c) Is the **RIGHT VENTRICLE**, thick and strong in its walls and of great muscular power ; it is filled by the auricle, and is strongly stimulated both by the stroke of the auricle and by the weight and quantity, and also, in some degree, by the qualities of the blood ; its action is sudden and violent, and it drives the blood through all the system of the lungs.—(d) Is the **PULMONIC ARTERY**.—the artery of the lungs which receives all the blood of the right side of the heart ; it is filled by the stroke of the right ventricle, from whose cavity it arises ; it carries the blood in many branches through all the substance of the lungs ; and thus that blood which had returned imperfect and robbed of its vital quality to the right auricle of the heart, is by this circulation through the pulmonic artery ventilated and renewed, and made fit for the uses of the system ; and thus the lesser circulation or the circulation of the lungs, the circulation of the right side of the heart is completed, and the purified blood is brought round to the left side of the heart to undergo the greater circulation or the circulation of the body.

Thus it is from the extremities of this first circle that the second circle begins ; it consists of like moving powers, of an auricle, ventricle, vein, and artery ; for as the right heart receives the contaminated blood of the body from the veins of the body, the left heart receives the purified blood of the lungs from the veins of the lungs.—(e) Represents the **VEINS OF THE LUNGS**, which are sometimes three, sometimes four, in number ; two enter from each side of the lungs, and return the blood purified in the lungs to the left auricle of the heart.—(f) Is the **LEFT AURICLE**, smaller, but more muscular and stronger than the right ; it receives easily whatever quantity of blood the lungs convey to it, it is irritated, contracts, forces the mouth of the ventricle, and fills it with this purified and redder blood.—(g) Is the **LEFT VENTRICLE**, whose form is longer, its fleshy walls thicker, its cavity smaller, its power greater far than that of the right side ; this ventricle is thus small that it may be easily filled and stimulated, and thus strong that it may propel all the blood of the body.—(h) Is the **AORTA** or great artery of the body, arising from this left ventricle, just as the pulmonic artery arises from the right : the left ventricle, by its strong and

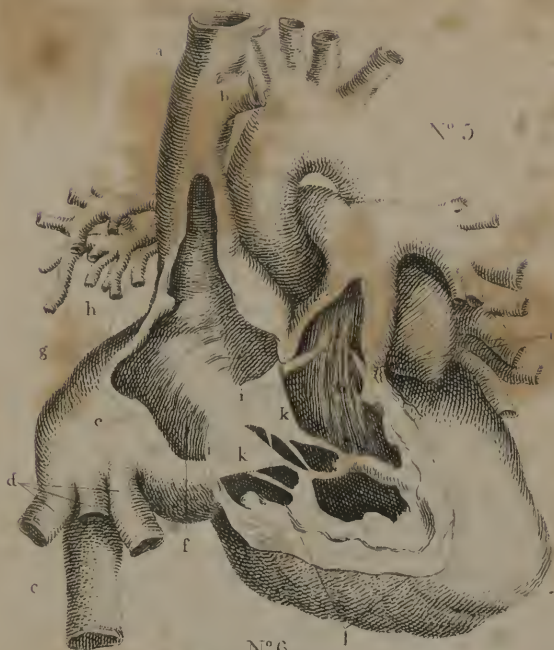


sudden stroke, not only delivers itself of its own blood, but propels all the blood of the body, communicates its vibratory stroke to the extremest vessels, and excites the whole ; this is the greater circle or circulation of the body, as opposed to the shorter circulation or lesser circle of the lungs.

That there are strictly two hearts, is now clearly made out ; they are as different in form as in office ; there are two distinct hearts, two systems of vessels, two kinds of blood, and two circulations. These two hearts might have done their offices, though placed in the opposite sides of the breast, it is in order to strengthen mutually the effect of each other that they are joined ; for the fibres of the two hearts intermingle ; they are both inclosed in one membranous capsule, viz. the pericardium ; the veins, auricles, ventricles, and arteries, correspond in time and action with each other, and harmonize in a very beautiful manner. But this, I believe, will be more easily explained by marking the succession of motions, by a suite of figures placed upon the several parts of the heart, by which the successive motions are performed.

In No. 4. I have joined the right and left hearts ; both that it may be seen how the left heart locks in behind the right heart, how the right heart comes to be the anterior one, and how the aorta seems to arise from the centre of the heart while its root is covered by the great artery of the lungs ; and also that the synchronous parts, *i. e.* the parts which beat time with each other, may be correctly seen.—1. The CAVAS are receiving the blood from all parts of the body, and in the same instant the pulmonic veins are receiving blood from the lungs. 2. The RIGHT AURICLE is gradually filling with the contaminated blood of the body ; the left auricle, marked also with a second figure, is filling with purified blood from the lungs. 3. The RIGHT VENTRICLE is stimulated by its auricle, and throws its contaminated blood into the lungs ; and in the same moment, the left ventricle throws its purified blood over the body. 4. The PULMONIC ARTERY re-acts upon the blood driven into it by the heart ; and in the same moment the aorta re-acts upon the blood thrown into it, and that re-action works it through all this great system of vessels from this the centre to all the extremities of the body.

Thus it is easy to perceive how the successive actions accompany each other in the opposite sides of the heart : 1. The two veins swell ; 2. The two auricles are excited ; 3. The two ventricles are filled with blood ; 4. The two arteries take up and continue this pulsating action of the heart. It is thus that the two hearts assist and support the actions of each other, and there seems almost a physical necessity for their being joined ;





yet on the very best authority, and after deliberate dissection, we are entitled to affirm, that the heart is found, not with its apex sharp and conical, but cleft; the two ventricles plainly distinct from each other and divided by a great space. "*Latro, quæ pœnas scelerum luebat, quando exenteraretur a carnifice, cor habuit singularis figuræ, mucrone non acuto, ut fieri solet, sed bifido; ut distincti ventriculi manifestius externa facie apparuerint, dexter nempe et sinister, interjecto magno hiatu.*"\*

## OF THE PARTS OF THE HEART.

As yet I have explained only the general plan of the circulation, without having described those curious parts which are within the cavities of the heart, and which support the actions in this beautiful harmony and perfect order, each part subordinate to some other part, and each action succeeding some other action with perfect correctness, often without one unsteady motion or alarming pause, during the course of a long irregular life.

1. The *VENÆ CAVÆ* are two in number; † they are named *venæ cavæ* from their very great size; the one brings the blood from the upper, and the other from the lower parts of the body, and they are formed of these branches: the upper *vena cava* (a) is properly termed the *DESCENDING CAVA*, because it carries the blood of the head and arms downwards to the heart: this great vein is properly a continuation of the right jugular vein, which joins with the right axillary vein, and then descends into the chest a great trunk; and in the upper part of the chest it is joined at (b)—by a great branch, containing the axillary and jugular veins of the left side, which in order to reach the cava, crosses the upper part of the chest, and lies over the carotid arteries. The *LOWER VENA CAVA*, or *CAVA ASCENDENS*, brings in like manner all the blood from the belly and lower parts of the body by two great branches. One, marked (c),—is the great vein which lies in the belly along the left side of the spine, and brings the blood from the legs, the pelvis, and parts of generation, the kidneys, &c.; it is named the *VENA CAVA ABDOMINALIS*, because of its lying in the ab-

\* Batholini Epist. p. 107.

† Let the reader observe, that the whole of this description of the various parts of the heart is, as it were, an explanation of the plans No. 5. and 6.; of which the No. 5. shows the right side of the heart, or the heart of the lungs opened: while No. 6. shows only the left heart, or the heart of the body opened.



domen. Another, marked (*ddd*),—arises in three or four great branches from the liver ; it is named the branches of the vena cava in the liver, or the *VENA CAVA HEPATICA* ; and these two make up the lower cava ; and the lower and the upper cava now join themselves at (*e*)—to form the right sinus of the heart.

2. The *RIGHT SINUS OF THE HEART* marked (*e*), is of considerable extent ; it is just the gradual dilatation of the two veins forming the auricle or reservoir, which is incessantly to supply the heart ; the veins grow stronger as they approach the sinus, and the sinus still stronger as it approaches the *AURICLE* or notched and pendulous part (*f*), and the auricle again approaches in its nature to the ventricle of the heart ; for it is crossed with very strong muscular fibres, which make very deep risings and furrows upon its inner part. To say that these veins, or the sinus which they form, are not muscular, merely because they are not red nor fleshy, is very ignorant ; for the ureters, urethra, arteries, intestines, the iris, and many other parts of the human body, are, at the same time, perfectly muscular and perfectly pale ; and the heart of a fish is as transparent as a bubble of water, and yet is so irritable, that after it is brought from market, if you lay open the breast, and stimulate the heart with any sharp point, it will renew its contractions, and in some degree the circulation.

3. The *TUBERCULUM LOWERI* should be looked for in this point, if it were not really an imagination merely of that celebrated anatomist. The whole matter is this ; the two veins meet, not directly, but at a considerable angle within the vein, as at (*g*). Lower conceived a projection of the inner coats of the vein at this point much more considerable than what I have here represented. It was thought to do the office of a valve, to break the force of the descending blood, to defend from pressure that blood which is ascending from the lower cava, and to direct the blood of the upper cava into the right auricle of the heart. But there is no such thing ; although anatomists were at one time so fond of this trivial observation, that not one of them would demonstrate the heart, without demonstrating the tuberculum Loweri ; whereas, if the blood of the lower cava needs any screen above it to defend it from the pressure, it is (as I shall show presently) quite of another kind ; and in the place appointed for finding this tuberculum Loweri we can find nothing but on the inside the natural angle of the two veins, and on the outside some fat cushioned up in that angle in the line (*h*).

4. The *AURICLE* is, as I have said, a small appendix to the great bag or sinus, and is marked (*f*). It is small, semicir-

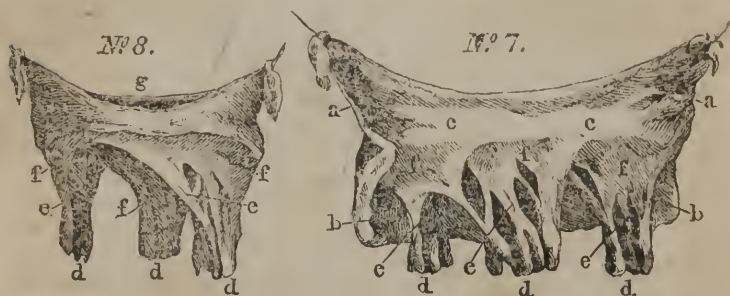


cular, notched or scolloped, and somewhat like a dog's ear ; whence its name. In general, we name the whole of this bag auricle ; but by this plan the names of sinus and auricle must be easily understood. The point chiefly to be noted is this, that the veins, as they approach the auricle, are thin, delicate, transparent ; that where they expand into the sinus they become fleshy, thick, and strong ; that in the auricle itself the muscular fibres at (*f*) are very strong, have deep sulci like those of the ventricle, cross each other so as to make a network ; and these strong fibres (*f*) are what are named the *musculi pectinati auriculæ*. Where these muscles run, as in cords, across the auricle they are very thick and opaque ; but in the interstice of each stripe of muscular fibre, the auricle is perfectly and beautifully transparent, like the membranes of the veins ; and these stripes of muscular fibre which are laid upon this thin membrane are almost as regular as the teeth of a comb ; and thus they are named *MUSCULI PECTINATI*.

5. The VALVES of the AURICLE are placed at the circle (*i*), where the auricle enters into the ventricle, and the valves are marked (*k*) : and how necessary these are for regulating the movements of the heart, will be easily understood by considering the conditions in which the auricle and ventricle act. First, The cava pour in a flood of blood upon the sinus and auricle, with a continual pressure ; the moment the auricle has contracted, it is full again ; the pressure from behind excites it to act, and while it is acting, there is no occasion for valves to guard those veins whose blood is pressing forwards continually, because they are continually full, and have behind them the whole pressure of the circulating blood. But when the auricle acts, it throws its blood into the ventricle, fills it, and stimulates it ; the auricle then lies quiescent for a moment, while it is gradually filling from behind with blood ; but during this quiescent state the whole blood from the ventricle would rush back into it, were it not guarded by valves. The valves, then, which rise whenever the ventricle begins to act, are of this kind : there is, first, a tendinous circle or hole, by which the auricle communicates with the ventricle. The opening is large enough to admit two or three fingers to pass through it ; it is smooth, seems tendinous, is plainly the place of union betwixt the auricle and ventricle, which are in the fœtus (in the chick, for example) distinct bags ; and from all the circle of this hole arises a membrane, thin, and apparently delicate, but really very strong ; not divided into particular valves at this root or basis, but as the membrane hangs down into the ventricle, it grows thinner, and is divided into fringes. How these fringes can do the office of valves is next to be explained.

The tags and fringes of this membrane are actually tied to the inside of the ventricle by many strings, which being, like the valves, of a tendinous nature, are called *CORDÆ TENDINEÆ*,

*Auricular Valves.*



or tendinous cords; and these cords being attached to little processes projecting from the muscular substance of the heart, these processes are named *COLUMNÆ CARNEÆ*, or fleshy columns. Of these tyings of the valves there are three chief points; the whole circle seems to be divided into three sharp pointed valves; they are named *VALVULÆ TRICUSPIDES*, or three-pointed, or they are still sometimes called *Triglochine Valves*. These strings and muscles cross each other; the valve at the left part of the circle is tied obliquely to the right side of the ventricle, and so on; so that by this crossing of their tendons the valves fall down easily when the blood goes down through them, and they rise readily and quickly whenever the blood gets behind them. The *columnæ carneæ* tie down the valves, so that when the ventricle acts the most strongly, they are the most strongly retained.

6. The *VENTRICLE* of the RIGHT SIDE (*ll*) is like its auricle, larger than the same parts on the left side; for this auricle and

*AURICULAR VALVES explained.*

Fig. 7. shows the Auricle and Ventricle cut open, and the valve hanging in three great divisions.—(*a*) Part of the inside of the Auricle.—(*b*) Part of the inside of the Ventricle.—(*c*) The Tendinous Circle from which the membrane of the valve arises.—(*d*) The *Columnæ Carneæ*—(*e*) The *Cordæ Tendineæ*—(*fff*) The three great divisions of the Valve.—No. 8. shows the circle of the entrance of the Auricle still entire; where—(*g*)—marks the entrance into the Auricle,—(*fff*) The three great divisions of the Valve.—(*d*) The *Columnæ Carneæ*; and—(*e*) The *Cordæ Tendineæ*.

ventricle of the right side have the weight of the whole blood of the body pressing upon them. They are subject to occasional fulness, for they must be dilated by many accidents, as labour, violent struggles, &c. which send the blood too quickly upon the heart; while the left auricle, and ventricle, on the other hand, can never be overloaded, as long as the pulmonic artery preserves its natural size, for that artery continues always the measure of the quantity of blood which they receive. The ventricle is thick, strong, and fleshy. Its inner surface is extremely irregular; it puts out from every part of its surface very strong fleshy columns. These fleshy columns are irregular in size, big, strong, running along the length of the ventricle; some cross the ventricle, so as to connect its opposite walls together; some have the tendons of the valves fixed to them: all of them have perfect contractile power, and are indeed the strongest muscles of the heart. Betwixt the fleshy columns, there are, of course, very deep and irregular grooves; and among the confused roots of these fleshy columns the blood often coagulates after death, seldom before it, into the form of what are called polypi of the heart. Yet still the walls of the right ventricle (*l*)—are thinner, the fleshy columns smaller, the cavity greater, than those of the left side; the right ventricle of the heart has also a peculiar form, for the SEPTUM CORDIS, a partition betwixt the right and left heart, is not, as generally supposed, a part common to both; but the left ventricle is much longer, and more conical than the right one; the septum belongs almost entirely to the left ventricle; the right ventricle, which is much bigger, laxer, flatter, and thinner in the walls, is, as it were, wrapped round the left; and thus the left ventricle alone forms the acute apex of the heart, and the left ventricle of necessity bulges very much into the cavity of the right, since the right ventricle is so much larger, and in a manner wrapped round it. In both ventricles, it is very remarkable, that towards the opening of the auricle the surface of the ventricle is very rugged, irregular, and crossed with columnæ carneæ, while a smooth and even lubricated channel marked (*m*)—leads towards the artery.

7. The PULMONIC ARTERY arises from the right ventricle, to carry out the blood close by the great opening at which the auricle pours it in; the artery rises at its root in a very bulging triangular shape. It is the valve within the mouth of the artery that gives it this very peculiar shape without; for the bulging root is divided into three knobs, indicating the places of the three valves, the artery dilating behind each valve into a little bag, which when it is described, is called its sinus.

8. This VALVE of the PULMONIC ARTERY (*n*)—has a more

perfect and simple form than that of the auricle. The valves in the mouth of each of the great arteries are three in number ; they are thin but strong membranes, rising from the circle of the artery, where it comes off from the heart ; each valve is semilunar ; its larger and looser edge hangs free into the cavity of the artery ; the edge is a little thicker than the rest of the valve ; the three valves together form one perfect circle, which closes the mouth of the artery so that no grosser fluid, nor hardly air can pass. When they are filled till they become very tense, each valve forms a kind of bag ; so that when you look at the mouth of a dried artery, they appear like neat round bags ; and when they are likely to be forced, the little horns or tags by which each valve is fixed into the coats of its artery, become so tense as to do the office of a ligament : these are called the SEMILUNAR OR SIGMOID VALVES.

Now the condition of the ventricle while it is contracting is well understood : the auricle by its action lays down the tricuspid or auricular valve, and fills the ventricle ; the ventricle cannot feel the stimulus of fulness till its valves rise and its cordæ tendinæ begin to pull ; and the ventricle could not be close for acting, nor its walls perfect, it could not in short be an entire cavity, till the tricuspid or auricular valves were completely raised. But there is another opening of the ventricle, viz. that into the artery which must be also shut ; this is one of the several instances of the subordination of these actions one to another ; for first the auricle acts, then the ventricle, then the artery ; so that the auricle and the artery are acting in the same moment of time ; the artery by acting throws down its valve, and closes that opening of the ventricle, while the auricle is filling it with blood ; and again, the moment that the ventricle is filled, both the auricle and artery are in a state of relaxation, both their valves yield, the auricular valve rises so as to close the ventricle on that side ; and the arterial valve falls down, both because the artery has ceased acting, and because the valve is laid flat by the whole blood of the ventricle rushing through it. Hence it is very obvious, that the right ventricle could neither be filled nor stimulated, unless the opening toward the artery were close during the time of its filling ; and again, it is obvious that this valve cannot be laid down by any other power than that of the artery itself ; who then can doubt that the artery has in itself (like the ventricle) a strong contractile power ? That it is the stroke of the artery succeeding that of the heart that lays down this valve so closely, is proved by this, that in many animals, the Frog for example, the aorta is as plainly muscular as the heart itself ; it is like a second heart ; and in many creatures, as in fishes, and often







Representing the Back part of the Heart - The great Coronary Vein - The  
Shape of the Auricle - and the entrance of the Pulmonary Veins

N<sup>o</sup> 9



in human monsters, the artery alone, by its own muscular power, moves the whole circulation without any communication with the heart. In fishes there is no second heart for the circulation of the body; and in monsters the heart is sometimes wanting, and there is found nothing but a strong aorta to supply its place. This stroke of the pulmonic artery, then, (which the heart excites,) pushes the blood through the lesser circle or circulation of the lungs, and by the pulmonic veins it is poured into the left side of the heart.

9. The LEFT AURICLE of the heart is unlike the right auricle in these respects: the sinus, or that part which consists of the dilatation of the pulmonic veins, is smaller, while the auricle, which is the more muscular part, is larger, the pulmonic veins come in four great trunks from the lungs, two from the right side and two from the left; two great veins then enter at each side of the left auricle, by which it gets a more square form; the whole of the left sinus, which forms the chief bulk of this part, is turned directly backwards towards the spine, and is not to be seen in any common view of the heart; but I have here added a plan of the back part of the heart,\* showing, 1. How the left ventricle lies behind; 2. How the left auricle is turned still more directly backwards; 3. How the pulmonic veins enter into it in four great branches, so as to give a square or box-like form, compared with the gliding, gentle shape of the right auricle; 4. How the pulmonic artery comes out from under the arch of the aorta, dividing into its two great branches for each side of the lungs; and, 5. How the aorta arches over it, towers above all the other vessels, and is known always among the vessels of the heart, by the carotid and subclavian arteries, which come off from its arch. On the plan, No. 6. are seen—(oo) the two pulmonic veins entering from each side of the lungs—(pp) the opening of these into the auricle—(qq) the sinus formed in part by the dilatation of these veins, and—(r) the auricula or little ear, from which the whole bag is named auricle.

10. The valves which guard the left auricle are seen here†

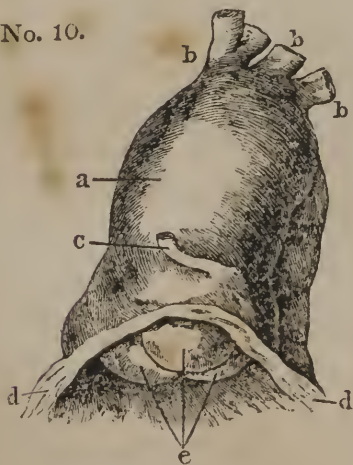
\* Explanation of the BACK VIEW of the HEART, No. 9,

1, The left Ventricle—2, The left Auricle—3 3 3, The four Pulmonic Veins—4 4, The two great branches of the Pulmonic Artery—5, The Aorta—6, The Carotids and Subclavians—7, The Cava Descendens—8, The Cava Ascendens, with all its branches from the Liver—9, The great Coronary Vein running along the back of the Heart betwixt the Auricle and Ventricle in a groove surrounded by fat.

† This begins the description of the left side of the Heart, and the description follows the Plan, No. 6.

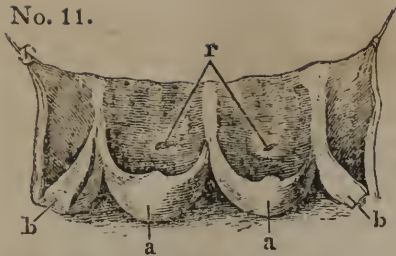
(ss):—Now it is to be remembered that the left auricle is smaller than the right, that the circle or opening of the left auricle is of course smaller than that of the right; that while it requires a valve divided into three points to fill the opening of the right auricle, a valve divided only into two points suffices for the opening of the left auricle: this is the reason of this slight variety of shape betwixt the two auricular valves, and is also the reason of the valve of the right side being called *TRICUSPID* or three-pointed, while this of the left side, from some very slight resemblance to a mitre, is named *VALVULA MITRALIS*, the *MITRAL VALVE*. In all other points this valve is the same with that of the right side, it has the same apparent thinness, for it is even transparent, the same real strength, the same *COLUMNÆ CARNEÆ* and tendinous strings to support it; the same rough irregular surface towards the opening of the auricle; the same smooth gutter leading towards the artery. The constitution of all these parts, in short, is expressly the same; so that even concerning the left ventricle there is nothing further to be observed, but that while it is much longer than the right ventricle, it is much smaller in its whole cavity, is much stronger in its *COLUMNÆ CARNEÆ*, and much thicker in its fleshy walls, as at (tt)—Where it is seen to be thicker than the right ventricle, it is indeed nearly three times as thick.

No. 10.

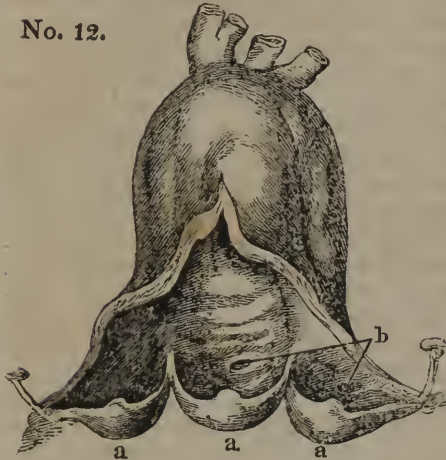


11. The *SEMILUNAR VALVES* of the aorta are also seen in this general plan at (u)—where manifestly the general structure and general intention of the valves are the same as in those of the pulmonic artery; but still we find at every point marks of superior strength and more violent action in the left side of the heart; for though this valve be expressly like that of the pulmonic artery, and named like it

No. 11.



No. 12.



semilunar, yet it is thicker and stronger in its substance, and is peculiarly guarded by three small hard tubercles, which being placed one in the apex or point of each valve, meet together when the valve is close, and give a more perfect resistance to the blood, and prevent the valve being forced open. These are to be seen chiefly in the marginal drawing, and from their being of the size of sesamum seed, they have the name of *CORPORA SESAMOIDEA*: sometimes they are named *Corpuscula Aurantii*.

12. The *AORTA* arises from its ventricle very large and strong; it swells still more at its root than the pulmonic artery does; the three subdivisions of this swelling, which mark the places of the semilunar valves, are very remarkable; the curvature at the arch of the aorta is called its great sinus, and these three smaller bags are called the three lesser sinuses of the aorta.

Fig. 10. shows the aorta entire, but its root within the heart opened so as to show its valve—(a) The body of the aorta; the arch is marked by *bb*, the carotids and subclavians—(c) Shows one of the coronary arteries or artery of the heart.—(d) A part of the walls of the heart.—(eee) The three valves stuffed and turgid towards the heart.—No. 11. shows the lower part of the aorta cut open; and two of the valves—(aa)—entire: and the third valve—(bb)—cut in two by slitting up the artery.—And (rr) shows the mouths of the two coronary arteries.—No. 12 shows the aorta slit only in its lower part, and the valves (aa) and the mouths of the coronary arteries (bb) are seen in their natural situation.—*N. B.* In these two last drawings the corpora sesamoidea are distinctly seen in the central part of the edge of each valve, and they need no letter to distinguish them.



*Of the CORONARY VESSELS.*

But there still remains to be explained that peculiar circulation by which the heart itself is nourished, and yet there is nothing in it very different from the usual form of arteries and veins ; it is a part of the general circulation of the body, for the heart is nourished by the two first branches which the aorta gives off. The circulation destined for the nourishment of the heart is peculiar in this chiefly, that the forms of the arteries and veins of the heart are beautiful, and that the arteries rise just under the valves of the aorta, while the veins end with one great mouth in the right auricle. The coronary arteries are two in number, of the size of crow-quills ; we see from the inside of the artery their mouths opening under the sigmoid valves. One artery comes from the lower side of the aorta ; it lies towards the right ; it belongs chiefly to the right ventricle ; it comes out first betwixt the roots of the aorta and pulmonic arteries ; it passes in the furrow betwixt the right ventricle and the auricle, and turning round arrives at the back part of the heart, and runs down along the middle of that flat surface which lies upon the diaphragm ; and when it arrives at the apex of the heart, its extreme arteries turn round the point and inosculate with the opposite coronary. The other coronary belongs in like manner to the left side of the heart, and arises from the upper side of the aorta ; it first goes out betwixt the pulmonic artery and the left auricle, and then turning downwards upon the heart, it runs along that groove which is betwixt the ventricles, and marks the place of the partition or septum ventriculorum ; its chief branches turn towards the left ventricle, and branch out upon it ; it belongs as peculiarly to the left side of the heart as the other does to the right side : after supplying the left ventricle, &c. it turns over the point of the heart to meet the extremity of the first, and inosculate with it. Both these arteries give branches not only to the flesh of the heart, but also to the roots of the great arteries, constituting the *VASA VASORUM*, as such vessels are called.

The *GREAT CORONARY VEIN* which collects the blood of these arteries, arises in small branches all over the heart ; these meet so as to form a trunk upon the fore-part of the heart, where the septum or union of the ventricles is. While small, the veins accompany their respective arteries ; but after the great trunk is formed, the vein takes its own peculiar route.—When the trunk of the great coronary vein (accompanied by several lesser veins) arrives at the auricle, it runs in between



the left auricle and left ventricle ; it turns all round the back of the auricle till it gets to the right side of the heart : it lies in the deep groove betwixt the auricle and ventricle, surrounded with much fat ; and having almost entirely encircled the heart, it discharges its blood into the right auricle, close by the entrance of the lower cava. The opening is very large ; it lies just above the tendinous circle of the auricle, and it is guarded with a strong semilunar valve. This is the great coronary vein : all the veins which appear upon the heart are but branches of it ; what are called the MIDDLE vein of the heart, the vein of the right auricle, the vena innominata, &c. are all but branches of the great coronary vein running along the right side or lower surface of the heart ; if there were to be any marked distinction, it should be into the GREAT CORONARY VEIN belonging to the left side of the heart, and the VENA INNOMINATA belonging to the right side. But one thing more is to be observed ; viz. that upon the inner surface of the right auricle may be seen many small oblique and very curious openings, which serve for the mouths of veins, while their obliquity performs the office of a valve. This name of coronary vessels is a very favourite one with anatomists, and is applied wherever vessels surround the parts which they belong to, however little this encircling may be like a crown : and it is thus that we have the coronary arteries of the stomach, coronary arteries of the lips, and coronary arteries of the heart. But these vessels of the heart are really very beautiful, and have some things very peculiar in their circulation : first, with regard to the coronary arteries, they lie with their mouths under the sigmoid valves ; or at least in so equivocal a manner, that their peculiar posture has given rise to violent disputes ; viz. Whether they be filled, like all the other arteries, by the stroke of the heart, or whether they be covered by the valve so as to let the blood rush past them during the action of the heart.

We see the opening of the coronary arteries rather, as I imagine, under the valve ; though Haller says they are above the valve, and that the highest point to which the margin of the valve reaches in very old men is below the opening of the coronary artery, and half way betwixt it and the bottom of the sinus or little bag behind the valve. But let this be as it will, if the condition of the aorta be considered, it will be found to make no difference ; for though the valves rise and fall, are at one time fully opened, and at another time closely shut, still in both these conditions of the valve the aorta is as full as it can hold ; its contraction instantaneously follows that of the heart, but its contraction is not, like that of the heart, such as to bring its sides together ; on the contrary, the aorta is full when the

heart strikes, the action of the heart distends it to the greatest degree, the aorta re-acts so as to free itself of this distention, but still it remains in some degree full of blood ; else how could this, like every other artery, preserve always its form and apparent size ? In this condition of matters, it is obvious that the coronary branches are on the same footing with all the other branches of the aortic system ; that, like all the other arteries, they first feel the stimulus of fulness from the push of the heart, and along with it the stroke of the aorta.

Secondly, with regard to the coronary veins a dispute has arisen more violent than this ; for it has been doubted whether the coronary veins, large as they are, do actually convey the whole of the blood which the coronary artery gives out.—Veussens believed that some of the coronary arteries opened directly into the cavities of the heart, without the interposition of veins. Thebesius, after him, believed that there were some shorter veins by which the blood was returned, not by a long circle into the right auricle, but directly into the ventricles of the heart. Veussens, Thebesius, and others who belonged to their party, pretended to prove this fact by injections ; but what doctrine is there which such clumsy anatomy and awkward injections may not be made to prove ? They used mercury, tepid water, and air ; and they forced these, the most penetrating of all injections, till they exuded upon the inner surface of the heart ; but if they had fixed their tubes, not into the coronary artery, but into the aorta, and had proceeded to inspect not the heart, but all the viscera of the body, they would have found their injections exuding from every surface ; of the pleura, and lungs ; of the peritoneum, and intestines : of the brain, and dura mater ; of the mouth and tongue ; and universally through the cellular membrane of the whole body ; but if any coarse injection, as tallow or wax, be used, it does not exude this way, but, following its natural course, keeps within the arteries and veins, and sometimes find its way back to the auricle of the heart.

Du Verney was so far engaged in this question, that having an opportunity of dissecting the heart of an elephant, he tied up the coronary arteries and veins, washed and cleaned very thoroughly the cavities of the heart ; and then tried, by squeezing, and all kinds of methods, to make that blood which was tied up in the coronary arteries and veins exude upon the inner surface of the heart, but with no effect.

On the present occasion, a theoretical answer happens to be as satisfactory as the most correct experiments ; and it is this, if there really were to be formed (by disease for example) those numerous openings which Thebesius and Veussens describe,

then the blood flowing all by these shorter and easier passages, none could come to the great coronary vein ; its office would be annihilated, and itself, contracting gradually, would soon cease to exist.

### Of the EUSTACHIAN VALVE.

There remains to be explained in the mechanism of the heart one point ; and which I have separated from the others ; not because it is the least important, but because it is the most difficult, and, if I may be allowed to say so, not yet thoroughly understood ; I mean the anatomy of the EUSTACHIAN VALVE ; which, if it had been easily described, should have been first described ; for it is a valve which lies in the mouth of the lower cava just where that vein enters the right auricle of the heart. How imperfect a valve this is, how difficult to dissect or to explain, may easily be known from this, that Winslow was first incited to look for the valve by some hints in Sylvius ; he was soon after fairly directed to it by finding it in the tables of Eustachius, which were then first found and published by Lancisi, after the author had been dead 150 years ; and yet with all this assistance Winslow sought for it continually in vain, till at last he reflected, that by cutting the heart in its fore-part he must have always in his dissections destroyed any such valve : by opening the back part of the cava he at last saw the valve, and demonstrated it to the Academy of Sciences in France ; and having just received from Lancisi his edition of the Eustachian Table, so long hidden, and since so outrageously praised, he called it VALVULA EUSTACHIANA, a name which it has retained to this day, and he added RETICULARIS to express its lace-like netted appearance at its upper edge. From Winslow's time to this present day, that is, for eighty years, there has been no good drawing, nor even any perfect description of the valve ; and, in the confusion of opinions upon the subject, what its use may be no one knows.

The Eustachian valve lies in the mouth of the ascending cava, just where that great vein is joined to the auricle of the heart. It looks as if formed merely by the vein entering at an acute angle, and by the inner edge of the vein, or that which is joined to the auricle, rising high, so as to do the office of a valve. The very first appearance of the valve, and its place just over the mouth of the cava, seems to point out that use which Lancisi has assigned it, viz. to support the blood of the upper cava, and prevent that column of blood which descends from the cava gravitating upon the opposite column which

comes from the liver and lower parts of the body ; and yet this, most likely, is not its use. The valve somewhat resembles a crescent, or the membrane called hymen. It occupies just that half of the cava which is nearest the auricle. Its deepest part hangs over the mouth of the cava, and is nearly half an inch in breadth, seldom more, often less, sometimes a mere line. Its two horns extend up along the sides of the auricle ; the posterior horn arises from the left of the isthmus, as it is called, or edge of the oval hole ; its anterior horn arises from the vena cava, where it joins the auricle. Behind the valve the remains of the foramen ovale may be seen, now shut by its thin membrane, but still very easily distinguished ; for its arch-like edges are so thick, strong, and muscular, that they look like two pillars, and thence are called the *COLUMNÆ FORAMINIS OVALIS* : these two pillars were called *ISTHMUS VIESSENI*, and by Haller are named *ANNULUS ROSÆ OVALIS*, while the hole itself is so deep that it is named the *FOSSA OVALIS*. Before the Eustachian valve lies the great opening into the ventricle ; but betwixt that and the valve there is a fossa or hollow, in which lies the opening of the great coronary vein ; and the valve which covers the coronary vein is a neat small slip of white and very delicate membrane, the one end of which connects itself with the fore-part of the Eustachian valve ; so that both valves are moved and made tense at once.

The Eustachian valve is in general thick and fleshy ; it is sometimes reticulated or net-like even in the fœtus, but by no means so often as to vindicate Winslow, in adding *reticulare* to the name ; it grows reticulated chiefly in the adult. The only beautiful drawing that we have of a reticular Eustachian valve is in Cowper ; and that was from a man of eighty years of age. Perhaps in eight or ten hearts you will not find one that is reticulated in the least degree ; in old men it is reticulated, just as all the other valves of the heart are, not by any thing peculiar to the constitution of this valve ; not by the pressure of the blood and continual force of the vessels, as Haller represents ; but by the gradual absorption which goes on in old age, and which spares not the very bones, for even they grow thin and in many places transparent.

This is the simple description of a valve, which has been the occasion of more controversy than the circulation of the fœtus and the use of the oval hole. Winslow first began about eighty years ago to observe the connections and uses of this valve : he laid it down as an absolute fact that this valve was almost peculiar to the fœtus ; that it was perfect only while the foramen ovale was open ; that it vanished gradually



as the foramen ovale closed ; that in the adult it was seldom seen unless the foramen ovale was also open by chance. It is incredible what numbers of anatomists followed this opinion ; for the difficulty of dissecting the valve made it always easier to say that it was only in the *fœtus* that it could be found : it is also incredible what absurd consequences arose from this doctrine, which, after all, is but a dream, for in fact the valve is more easily shown in the adult heart\*.

The foundation being now laid for connecting this valve with the peculiar circulation of the *fœtus*, they conceived the following theory, which has come down to this very day ; viz. that in the child the great object of nature, in arranging its vessels, was to convey the blood which came fresh from the mother's system directly into the carotids, and so plump into the head at once. The pure blood from the mother comes through the liver by the ductus venosus ; it is deposited in the lower cava at the right side of the heart ; and these anatomists supposed that this current of fresh blood was directed by the Eustachian valve into the oval hole, through that into the left auricle and ventricle, and from these directly into the aorta and carotids ; while the foul blood of the upper cava went down into the right auricle and ventricle, and from that into the ductus arteriosus, and so away down to the lower and less noble parts of the body, and to the umbilical arteries, and so out of the system ; for the ductus arteriosus, which comes from the right ventricle in the *fœtus*, joins the aorta only as it goes down the back, and none of its blood can pass upwards into the head.

This is the puerile theory, which, modified in various ways, has amused the French Academy, or rather been the cause of a perpetual civil war in it, for a hundred years. This doctrine began with Winslow, it is still acknowledged by Sabbatier ; and Haller, after announcing a theory not at all differing from this, challenges it as his own theory ; "*hanc meam conjecturam*

\* One author, I find in the *Acta Vindobonensia*, is exceedingly angry indeed with all the great anatomists, for not connecting more strictly with each other the anatomy and accidents of the foramen ovale, and Eustachian valve ; with Morgagni Albinus, and Wiedbriecht, he is offended for saying that they had seen the foramen ovale open, without saying one word concerning the state of this valve ; and with Lieuteaud, Portal, and others again, he is equally offended that they should have had opportunities of seeing the Eustachian valve entire without inquiring into the condition of the oval hole. The reason of all this is very plain ; the oval hole had not been open, neither in the one situation nor in the other, else it is very unlikely that such correct and anxious anatomists should have described that valve which arises from one of the borders of the oval hole, without observing it open, if it was so ; especially as the oval hole, being open, is by no means a usual occurrence.



etiam a Nichols video proponi." Of the truth of this theory Haller was so entirely satisfied, that he not only published it as peculiarly his own, but reclaimed it when he thought it in danger of being thus appropriated by another. Sabbatier is the last in this train of authors ; and in order that there might remain no ambiguity in what they had said or meant, he pronounces plainly that the Eustachian valve is useful only in the fœtus, and that there are two opposite currents in the right auricle of the heart ; that the one goes from the lower cava upwards to the foramen ovale, while the other from the upper cava descends right into the opening of the ventricle. What shall we say to anatomists who in the narrow circle of the auricle conceive two currents to cross each other directly, and to keep as clear of each other as the arrows by which such currents are usually represented. This error in reasoning is below all criticism ; it carries us backwards a hundred years in anatomy and in physics ; and yet this is all that Winslow, Haller, Sabbatier, and a mob of others, have been able to say in proof of the connection of the Eustachian valve with the circulation of the fœtus.

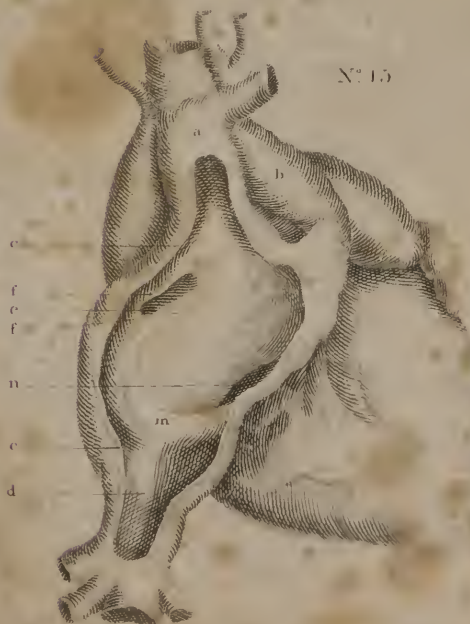
Lancisi, again, believed that it was chiefly useful by supporting the blood of the lower cava, defending it from the weight of that column of blood which is continually descending from above ; and Winslow and others approved of this, as being perhaps one use of the valve. But they have all of them forgotten a little circumstance, which must affect the office of the valve, and which should have been regarded especially by those who said it was useful chiefly before birth ; they have forgotten a little circumstance, which John Hunter also forgot, when theorizing about the gubernaculum testis, viz. that the child lies with its head downmost for nine months in the mother's womb.

Nothing is more certain than that the Eustachian valve is not peculiar to the fœtus ; that it has no connection with the oval hole ; that the valve is often particularly large after the foramen ovale is closed ; that the valve is often obliterated where yet the foramen ovale remains open ; that in adults it is more easily demonstrated than in children ; that in old age it is often reticulated as the other valves are. Its use relates neither to the foramen ovale, nor to the ascending cava ; it relates to the auricle itself, and therefore it is found in all the stages of life, smaller or larger according to the size or form of the heart.

The auricle on the side towards the venæ cavæ is imperfect ; the anterior part of the auricle chiefly is muscular, and when it contracts, the laxity of the cavas and the great width of the SINUS VENOSUS, *i. e.* of almost the whole auricle, would take



*Plans of the Eustachian Valve*





# Drawing of the Eustachian Valve.

from the Heart of a Child

about 3 or 4 years old.



a. A part of the Lungs, b.b. the Pericardium by which the Heart is suspended, c.c. the Ventricles of the Heart, d.d. the Aorta encircled by the Pericardium, e.e.e.e. the Subclavian and Carotid Arteries, g. the pendulous part of the Right Auricle, h. the Cava descendens by which the Heart is in part suspended, i. the Cava ascendens with a pencil passed up into the Right Auricle, this pencil is behind the Eustachian Valve, the Eustachian Valve itself is marked k, the little Valve of the Coronary Vein which is connected with it is marked m.



away from its contraction all effect ; but to prevent this, and to make the auricle perfect, the vena cava and auricle meet so obliquely, that the side of the cava makes a sort of wall for the auricle on that side. This wall has entirely and distinctly the reticulated structure of the auricle itself, with fleshy bands of muscular fibres in it: this wall falls loosely backwards when the auricle is quite relaxed, as, for example, when we lay it open ; and thus it has got the appearance and name without the uses of a valve ; but when the heart is entire, tense, and filled with blood, this valve represents truly a part of the side of the auricle : and that this part of the wall of the auricle should be occasionally a little higher or lower, looser or tenser, we need not be surprised. This further may be observed, that wherever, as in a child, this valve is very thin and delicate, the anterior part of the fossa ovalis goes round that side of the auricle particularly deep and strong. Let it also be remembered, that in certain animals this valve is particularly large and strong ; now, in a creature which goes chiefly in a horizontal posture, it may strengthen and make up the walls of the auricle (the chief use which I have assigned for it in man) ; but surely it cannot protect the blood of the lower cava from the weight of blood coming from above, since the body of an animal lies horizontally, and there is no such weight. The Parisian academicians describe the heart of the Castor in the following terms : “ Under the vena coronaria we find the valve called nobilis (viz. the Eustachian valve), which fills the whole trunk of the vena cava, and which is so disposed that the blood may be easily carried from the liver to the heart by the vena cava, but which is hindered from descending from the heart towards the liver through the same vein\*.”

#### \* EUSTACHIAN VALVE.

No. 14. explains merely the place of the Eustachian valve, which is seen at (*m.*)--No. 15. explains both the place of the valve and its relation to the oval hole (*e*)—behind it, and to the mouth of the ventricle (*n*)—which lies before it.

In both these plans--(*a*) Is the cava descendens--(*b*) The aorta rising behind it--(*cc*) The back of the auricle slit open--(*d*) The cava ascendens, in the mouth of which the valve is--(*e*) The foramen ovale--(*ff*) Its two rising borders, named pillars, isthmus of Veussens, annulus ovalis, &c.---(*m*) The Eustachian valve, of which the two cornua, or sharp points, are seen in the lower plate, terminating in the pillars of the foramen ovale on one hand, and in the walls of the auricle on the other. The opening of the foramen ovale (*e*)---is behind and above the valve ; the opening into the right ventricle (*n*)---is before and under the valve.

No. 14. explains more particularly the uses of the valve. Some authors conceived that it directed the blood rising in the line (*o*)--upwards into the oval hole ; others that it directed the column of blood, represented by the arrow (*p*)--into the right ventricle ; others that it protected the column (*o*)--from the weight of the column (*p*)---I rather suppose that it completes the auricle in the direction of the dotted line (*q*)---and so strengthens its action.

## Of the IRRITABILITY and ACTION of the HEART.

But even this curious mechanism of the heart is not more wonderful than its incessant action, which is supported by the continual influx of stimulant blood and by its high irritability and muscular power ; for though we cannot directly trace the various courses of its muscular fibres, there is not in the human body any part in which the muscular substance is so dense and strong. In the heart there can be no direct or straight fibres ; for let them go off from the basis of the heart in what direction they may, still as they belong to the one or the other ventricle, they must, by following the course and shape of that ventricle, form an oblique line. Vasalius has indeed not represented them so, he has drawn straight fibres only ; because in the latter end of his great work he was without human subjects, and betook himself to drawing from beasts.

The fibres of the heart are all oblique, or spiral, some lying almost transverse ; they all arise from a sort of tendinous line which unites the auricle to the ventricle ; they wind spirally down the surface till the fibres of the opposite ventricles meet in the septum and in the apex of the heart. The fibres of each ventricle pass over the convex or upper surface of the heart, then over the apex, and then ascend along the flat side of the heart, which lies upon the diaphragm, till they again reach the basis of the heart. The second layer or stratum of fibres is also oblique ; yet many of the fibres run almost transversely, uniting the oblique fibres ; but when we go down into the thick substance of the heart, we find its fibres all mixed, crossed, and reticulated in a most surprising manner ; so that we at once perceive both that it is the strongest muscle in the body, and that the attempt to extricate its fibres is quite absurd\*. Their desire of giving more correct and regular descriptions has been the cause why those who have particularly studied this point have been fatigued and disappointed ; the most sensible of them have acknowledged with Vasalius, Albinus, and Haller, that the thing could not be done ; while those, again, who pretended to particular accuracy, and who have drawn the fibres of the heart, have represented to us such extravagant, gross, and preposterous things, as have satisfied us more than their most ingenuous acknowledgments could have done, that they also could accomplish nothing.

\* Thickening the walls of the heart by vinegar, strong acids, alum, or boiling the heart, have assisted us in unravelling its structure but very little.

There is no question that irritability is variously bestowed in various creatures, that it is variously appointed in various parts of the body, that this property rises and falls in disease and health ; without hesitation we also may pronounce that the heart is in all creatures the most irritable part ; it is the part first to live and the last to die ; “ *Pulsus et vita pari ambulans passu.*” When we see the *punctum saliens* in the chick, we know that there is life ; and when we open either the human body or the body of an animal soon after death, still the heart is irritable and contracts.

In the very first days in which the heart appears in the chick, while yet its parts are not distinguished, and the *punctum saliens* is the only name we can give it, the heart, even in this state feels the slightest change of heat or cold ; it is roused by heat, it languishes when cold, it is excited when heated again. It is stimulated by sharp points or acids, it works under such stimuli with a violent and perturbed motion. In all creatures it survives for a long while the death of the body ; for when the creature has died, and the breathing and pulse have long ceased, and the body is cold, when the other muscles of the body are rigid, when the stomach has ceased to feel, when the bowels which preserve their contractile power the longest have ceased to roll, and they also feel stimuli no more, still the heart preserves its irritability ; it preserves it when torn from the body and laid out upon the table ; heat, caustics, sharp points, excite it to move again.

We know also another thing very peculiar concerning the irritability of this organ, viz. that it is more irritable on its internal than on its external surface ; for if instead of cutting out the heart we leave it connected with the body, seek out (as the old anatomists were wont to do) the thoracic duct, or pierce any great vein, and blow a bubble of air into the heart, it pursues it from auricle to ventricle, and from ventricle to auricle again, till, wearied and exhausted with this alternate action, it ceases at last, but still new stimuli will renew its force.

Thus it is long after apparent drowning or other suffocation before the principle of life is gone ; and long after the death of the body before the heart be dead ; and just as in this peculiar part of the system irritability is in high proportion, there are in the scale of existence certain animals endowed in a wonderful degree with this principle of life. They are chiefly the amphibious creatures, as they are called, needing little air, which have this power of retaining life ; no stimuli seem to exhaust them, there seems especially to be no end to the action of their heart ; a Newt's or a Toad's heart beats for days after the creature dies ; a Frog, while used in experiments, is often neg-

lected and forgotten, its limbs mangled, and its head gone, perhaps its spinal marrow cut across, and yet for a whole night and a day its heart does not cease beating, and continues obedient to stimuli for a still longer time. It seems as if nothing but the loss of organization could make this irritable muscle cease to act : or rather it seems as if even some degree of deranged organization could be restored : breathe upon a heart which has ceased to act, and even that gentle degree of heat and moisture will restore its action. Dr. Gardiner having left a Turtle's heart neglected in a handkerchief, he found it quite dry and shrivelled, but by soaking it in tepid water its plumpness and contractility were restored.

Since then this irritable power supports itself in parts long after they are severed from the body, what doubt should we have that there is in the muscular fibre some innate contractile power or *vis insita* independent of nerves ? And when we talk on a subject so difficult and so abstruse, what other proof can we expect or wish for than the power of one peculiar and insulated muscle surviving the separation of the head and brain, the destruction of its nerves, or its total separation from that living system to which it belongs ? If the heart be the most irritable muscle of the body, if all this irritability arise from the nerves, how can it be that this muscle, which is thus announced as the most dependent on its nerves, is really the most independent ? that the muscle which of all the body needs this nervous supply oftenest should want it the least, and should survive the loss of its nerves so much longer than the other muscles of the same body ?

Although the ancients knew how irritable the heart was, although they often opened living creatures, and saw the heart struggling to relieve itself, because it was oppressed with blood, yet they continued entirely ignorant of the cause : and why the heart should alternately contract and relax without stop or interruption, seemed to them the most inexplicable thing in nature. Hippocrates ascribed it to the innate fire that is in the heart ; Sylvius said, that the old and alkaline blood in the heart mixing with the new and acid chyle, and with the pancreatic lymph, produced a ferment there ; Swammerdam, Pitcairn, and Friend, thought that the heart, and every muscle which had no antagonist muscle, was moved by a less proportion of the vital spirit than other muscles required. Others believed that each contraction of a muscle compressed the nerves of that muscle, and each relaxation relieved it ; and that this alternate compression and relief of the nerve was the cause of the alternate movements of the heart : another physician of our own country, a great mechanic and a profound scholar in



mathematics, and all those parts of science which have nothing to do with the philosophy of the human body, refined upon this theory most elegantly ; for observing that the nerves of the heart turned round the aorta, and passed down betwixt it and the pulmonic artery, he explained the matter thus : “ These great arteries, every time they are full, will compress the nerves of the heart, and so stop this nervous fluid, and every time they are emptied (a thing which he chose to take for granted, for in truth they never are emptied,) they must leave the nerves free, and let the nervous fluid pass down to move the heart.”

Des Cartes, who studied every thing like a right philosopher of the old breed, viz. by conjecture alone, supposed that a small quantity of blood remained in the ventricle after each stroke of the heart ; which drop of blood fermented, became a sort of leaven, and operated upon the next blood that came into the heart “ like vitriol upon tartar ;” so that every successive drop of blood which fell into the ventricle swelled and puffed up so suddenly as to distend the heart, and then burst out by the aorta. Philosophers have been so bewitched with the desire of explaining the phenomena of the human body, but without diligence enough to study its structure, that from Aristotle to Buffon, it is all the same, great ignorance and great presumption. But on this subject of the pulse of the heart physicians almost surpassed the philosophers in the absurdity of their theories, till at last they were reduced to the sad dilemma of either giving up speaking upon this favourite subject, or of contenting themselves with saying, “ that the heart beat by its *facultas pulsifica*, its pulsative faculty ;” as if they had said, the jaws chew by their *mandicative* faculty, and the bladder pisses by its *expulsive* faculty, and the womb expels children by its *parturient* power.

The ancients, I have said, often opened living creatures, and saw the heart struggling to relieve itself because it was oppressed with blood : this blood is itself the stimulus which moves the whole ; for important as this function is, it is equally simple with all the others : and as urine is the stimulus to the bladder, food an excitement to the intestines, and the full grown fœtus a stimulus to the womb !—so is blood the true stimulus to the heart. When the blood rushes into the heart, the heart is excited and acts ; when it has expelled that blood, it lies quiescent for a time ; when blood rushes in anew, it is roused again : so natural is both the incessant action and regular alternation of contraction and relaxation in the heart.

It is when we are so cruel as to open a living creature that we see best both the operation of the blood as a stimulus, and



the manner in which the heart re-acts upon it. When we tie the two vena cavae so as to prevent the blood from arriving at the heart, the heart stops ; when we slacken our ligatures and let in the blood, it moves again ; when we tie the aorta, the left ventricle being full of blood will continue struggling, bending, turning up its apex, and contracting incessantly and strongly, and will continue this struggle long after the other parts have lost their powers. One author, whether from his awkwardness or the delicacy of the subject, or really from the strength of the ventricle, assures us, that often while he has held the aorta of a Frog close with pincers, it has burst by the mere force of the heart. If, after violent struggles of this kind, you cut the aorta, even of so small a creature as an Eel, it will throw its blood to the distance of three or four inches.

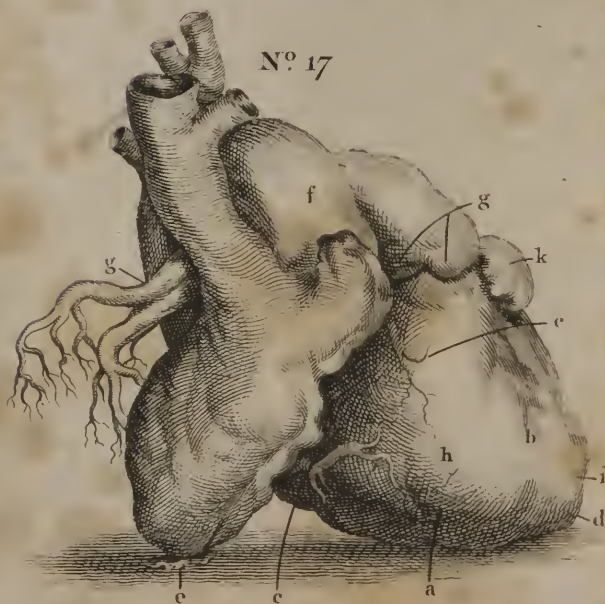
Thus we not only know that we can excite the heart by accumulating blood in it, but that by confining the blood in it we can carry that excitement to a very high degree ; and in short, by keeping the one or the other ventricle incessantly full of blood, we can make the one heart work continually, while the other lies quiet, or is only slightly drawn by the other's motion, showing the true distinction betwixt the heart of the body and the heart of the lungs. And this is a memorable fact, that it is not merely the stimulus of the blood, but the sense of fulness that makes the heart contract ; for the auricle often beats twice or thrice, sometimes it makes its push four or five times, before it can force the ventricle to contract.

When we empty the heart, and tie all its veins, all its parts cease to act ; stimuli applied outwardly make it contract partially ; it trembles in particular fibres : but it is only letting in the blood, or blowing it up with air, that can bring it into full action again. When we look with cruel deliberation upon the strokes of the heart in any living creature, we observe that at first, during the full and rapid action of the heart, there is hardly any perceptible interval among the several parts ; but towards the end of each experiment, when the pulse flags, and the creature falls low, the swelling of the great veins, and the successive strokes of auricle and ventricle, are distinctly told. The dilatation and contraction of each part is what we cannot observe, they are so quick ; but these things we distinctly observe : the auricle contracts and dilates the ventricle ; the ventricle contracts, subsides, and fills the aorta ; the aorta turns and twists with the force of the blood driven into it, and by its own re-action, and the ventricle, every time that it contracts, assumes a form slightly curved, the point turning up like a tongue towards the basis, and the basis in some degree bending towards the point. The basis, indeed, is in some degree fixed



## Sketches

*demonstrating the true position of the Heart.*



to the diaphragm and spine, but the heart in its contraction always moves upon its basis as upon a centre ; its ventricles, and especially its apex, are free ; the point rises and curves so as to strike against the ribs ; and the dilatation of the heart is such (together with the posture and relation of its several parts,) that during the dilatation the heart turns upon its axis one way ; the contraction of the heart reverses this, and makes it turn the other way, so that it seems to work perpetually with the turning motions of a screw. All this is most striking, while we are looking upon the motion of the heart in a living creature.

The posture of the human heart is very singular, and will illustrate this turning motion extremely well ; for in the human heart the posture is so distorted, that no one part has that relation to another which we should beforehand expect. In the general system, the human heart is placed nearly in the centre, but not for those reasons which Dionis has assigned ; it is not in order that by being in the centre it may feel less the difficulty of driving the blood to any particular limb or part of the body ; it is the place of the lungs that regulates the posture of the heart ; and wherever they are, it is. Except the Oyster, I hardly know of any creature in which the heart lies expressly in the centre of the body. In Frogs, Toads, Newts, and Snakes, the lungs are not moved by any diaphragm ; they are filled only by the working of the jaws, the lungs then begin under the jaws, and the heart is lodged at the root of the jaws, leaving, as in a Newt or Cameleon, Crocodile, Adder, Serpent, &c. the whole length of their trailing body behind. In a fish, the gills serve the creature for lungs ; the gills are lodged under the jaws, and the heart is placed betwixt them. In insects, as in the common Caterpillar (the aurelia of our common Butterfly,) the air enters by many pores on its sides ; and accordingly its heart is not a small round bag, but may be easily seen running all down its back, working like a long aorta, but having regular pulsations, denoting it to be the heart ; and this you easily see through the insect's skin, for it is more transparent along the back where the heart is.

The breast in man is divided into two cavities by a membrane named the MEDIASTINUM. This membrane passes directly across the breast from the sternum before, till it fixes itself into the spine behind. It is on the left side of this membrane, in the left cavity of the breast, that the heart is placed, lying out flat upon the diaphragm as upon a floor, by which it is supported ;\* and that surface (*a*)—which lies thus upon the

\* The true position of the heart is what is represented in No. 16, and 17 : where No. 16, shows the heart set upright, as I have hitherto represented it in all



diaphragm, is perfectly flat, while the upper surface (*b*)—or what we usually call the fore-part of the heart, is remarkably round. The whole heart lies out flat upon the diaphragm; its basis (*c*)—where the auricles are, is turned towards the spine and towards the right side; the apex (*d*)—or acute point, is turned forwards, and a little obliquely towards the left side, where it strikes the ribs; the vena cava (*e*)—enters in such a manner through a tendinous ring of the diaphragm,\* that it ties down the right auricle to that floor (as I may term it) of the thorax; the aorta (*f*) does not rise in that towering fashion in which it is seen when we take a dried-up heart, which naturally we hold by its apex, instead of laying it out flat upon the palm of our hand; nor in that perpendicular direction in which hitherto, for the sake of distinctness, I have represented it in these plans; but the aorta goes out from its ventricle towards the right side of the thorax; it then turns in form of an arch, not directly upwards, but rather backwards towards the spine; then it makes a third twist to turn downwards; where it turns downwards it hooks round the pulmonic artery (*g*),—just as we hook the fore-fingers of our two hands within one another. The right heart (*hh*)—stands so before the other, that we see chiefly the right auricle and ventricle before, so that it might be named the anterior heart; the pulmonic artery (*g*)—covers the root of the aorta; the left ventricle (*i*),—from which the aorta rises, shows little more than its point at the apex of the heart; the left auricle (*k*)—is seen only in its very tip or extremity, where it lies just behind the pulmonic artery; and the aorta (*f*)—arises from the very centre of the heart. From this view any man may understand these vessels by other marks than the mere colours of an injection; and he will also easily understand why the heart twists so in its actions, and how it comes to pass that its posture is difficult for us to conceive, no one part having that relation to any other part which we should beforehand suppose.

### Of the PERICARDIUM.

But the PERICARDIUM, purse, or capsule, in which the heart is contained, affects and regulates its posture, and makes the

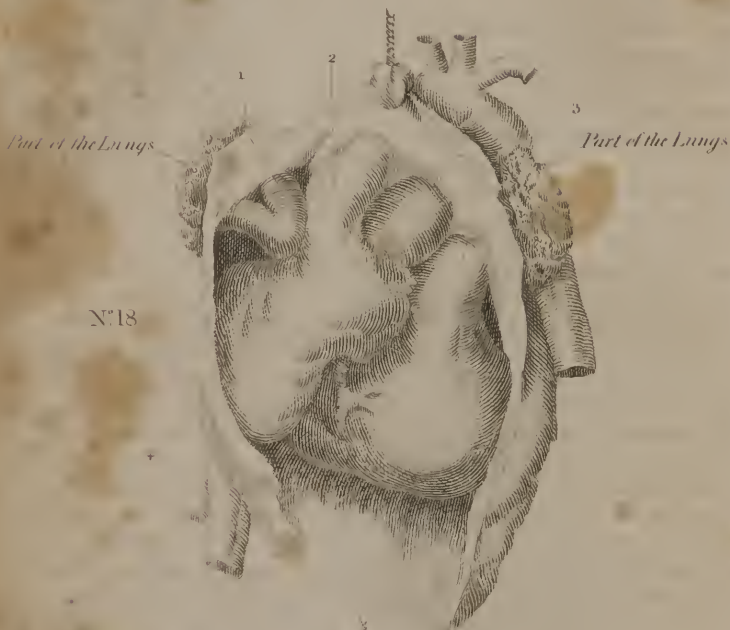
my plans, while No. 17, represents its inclined position lying almost horizontally upon the floor of the diaphragm.

\* Let it be observed, that (*e*) in this drawing marks the point where the lower cava was tied close upon the diaphragm, to prevent the injection going down into the liver.

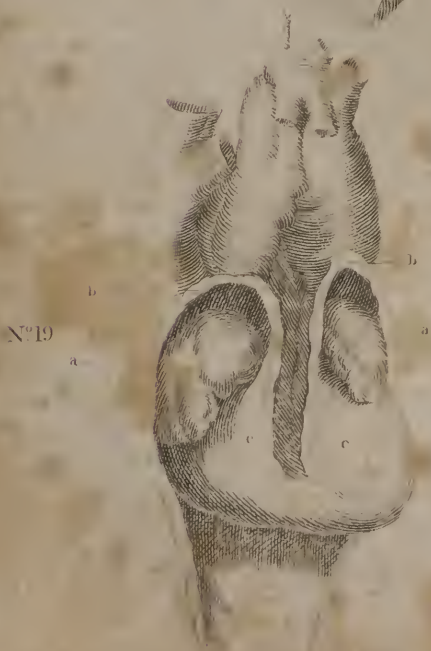




of the Pericardium of which N° 18 is a true drawing N° 19 a Plan  
 showing its reflection over the Heart



N° 18



N° 19

last important point concerning the anatomy of the heart. It is a bag of considerable size and great strength, which seems to us to go very loosely round the heart, because when we open the pericardium the heart is quite empty and relaxed; but I believe it to surround the heart so closely as to support it in its palpitations, and more violent and irregular actions; for when we inject the heart, its pericardium remaining entire, that bag is filled so full that we can hardly lay it open with a probe and lancet without wounding the heart; and still further, when we open the pericardium before we inject the heart, the heart receives much more injection, swells to an unnatural bulk for the thorax that it is contained in, and loses its right shape. The pericardium is formed like the pleura and mediastinum, of the cellular substance; it is rough and irregular without, and fleecy with the threads of cellular substance, by which it is connected with all the surrounding parts; within it is smooth, white, tendinous, and glistening, and exceedingly strong. As the heart lies upon the floor of the diaphragm, the pericardium, which lies under the heart, is connected with the diaphragm a little to the left of its tendinous centre, and so very strongly that they are absolutely inseparable. The pericardium surrounds the whole heart, but it is loose every where except at the root of the heart, where it is connected with the great vessels: for the pericardium is not fixed into the heart itself, but rises a considerable way upon the great vessels, gives them an outward coat, and surrounds each vessel with a sort of ring, as may be seen in the plan.\* For, 1st, It surrounds the pulmonic veins where they are entering the heart; there the pericardium is short: 2ndly, It mounts higher upon the vena cava than upon any other vessel; the cava of course is longer within the pericardium, and it also is surrounded with a sort of ring: 3dly, It then passes round the aorta and pulmonic artery, surrounding these in one greater loop: 4thly, The cava inferior is the vessel which is the shortest within the pericardium: for the heart inclines towards the horizontal direction: it lies in a manner flat upon the upper surface of the diaphragm, while the lower surface of the diaphragm adheres to the upper surface of the liver. Thus it happens that the liver and the right auricle of the heart are almost in contact, the diaphragm only intervening; thence the lower cava which passes from the liver into the right auricle of the heart cannot have any length. While the pericardium thus passes round the great vessels, it must leave tucks and

\* Vide Plan, No. 18.

corners ; and these have been named the CORNUA or horns of the pericardium.

But there is another peculiarity in the form of the pericardium, which I have explained in this second plan ; \* viz. that the pericardium constitutes also the immediate coat of the heart ; for the pericardium having gone up beyond the basis of the heart so as to surround the great vessels, it descends again along the same vessels, and from the vessel goes over the heart itself. I have marked the manner of this more delicate inflection of the pericardium at (aa)—where the pericardium is loose ; at (bb,)—the angle where it is reflected ; and at (cc,)—where it forms the outer coat of the heart. The pericardium where it forms this outer coat becomes extremely thin and delicate, almost cuticular, but strong : under this coat there is much cellular substance ; the coronary arteries pass along in this cellular substance, the muscular fibres are bound together by it, and under it the fat is gathered sometimes in a wonderful degree, so as to leave very little to be seen of the dark or muscular colour of the heart.

The pericardium then is a dense and very strong membrane, which I would compare with the capsule of any great joint, both in office and in form : for it is rough and cellular without, shining and tendinous within ; bedewed with a sort of halitus like the great joints, delicate and almost a cobweb-like membrane in the child, but increasing in thickness by the continued frictions of the heart, just as a capsular ligament does by the working of its joint ; and its uses are to keep the heart easy and lubricated by that exhalation which proceeds from its exhalent arteries (and not from any glands,) and which can be imitated so easily by injecting tepid water into its arteries, to suspend the heart in some degree by its connections with other parts, especially by its connections with the mediastinum and diaphragm ; and to limit the distentions of the heart, and check its too violent actions, just as we see it prevent too much of our injections from entering the heart. How strong the pericardium is, and how capable of supporting the action of the heart, even after the most terrible accidents, we know from this ; that the heart or coronary arteries have actually burst, but with a hole so small as not to occasion immediate loss of life ; then the pericardium receiving the blood which came from the rupture, has dilated in such a manner as to receive nine or ten pounds of blood, but has yielded so slowly as to support the

\* No. 19.

heart in some kind of action, and so preserved life for two or three days.

If I have not mentioned any fluid under the direct name of *AQUA PERICARDII*, or the water of the pericardium, it is because I consider the accident of water being found as belonging not to the healthy structure but to disease. Yet this same water occupied the attention of the older authors in a most ludicrous degree. Hippocrates believed that this water of the pericardium came chiefly from the drink we swallow, which found some way or other (as it passed by the pericardium) to insinuate itself into this bag: some after him said, it was the fat of the heart melted down by incessant motion and the heat of the heart; some said it was from humours exuding through the heart itself, and retained by the density of the pericardium that this water came; and it is but a few years since this clear and distinct account of it was given, viz. "that it proceeds from the aqueous excrementitious humour of the third concoction." The same "sad and learned men,\* *virī graves et docti*," declare to us, that the uses of the *aqua pericardii* are to cool the heart, for it is the very hottest thing in the body; or by its acrimony to irritate the heart, and support its motions; or to make the heart by swimming in it seem lighter. By this it is pretty obvious what absurd notions they had of the quantity of water that may be found in the heart. But of all the outrages against common sense and common decorum, the most singular was the dispute maintained among them, whether it was or was not the water of the pericardium which rushed out when our Saviour's side was pierced with the spear? The celebrated Bardius, in a learned letter to Bartholine, shows how it was the water of the pericardium that flowed out; but Bartholine, in his replication thereunto, demonstrates, that it must have been the water of the pleura alone. This abominable and ludicrous question, I say, they bandied about like boys rather than men: Bartholinus, Arius Montanus, Bertinus Nicelius, Fardovius, Laurenbergius, Chiprianus, with numberless other Doctors and Saints, were all busy in the dispute; for which they must have been burnt, every soul of them, at the stake, had they done this in ridicule; but they proceeded in this matter with the most serious intentions in the world, and with the utmost gravity.† The whole truth concerning

\* They are thus denominated in all the charters of the College of Physicians from the time of Henry VIII downwards.

† The shocking indecencies of their reasonings on this subject I will not condescend to draw out from the obscurity of that barbarous idiom in which it was delivered: "*Sed non cogar huc nie conferre. Fateor enim nativam Christi temperiem*"



water in the pericardium is, that you find water there whenever at any time you find it in any of the other cavities of the body. If a person have laboured under a continued weakness, or have been long diseased, if a person have lain long on his death-bed, if the body have been long kept after death, there is both a condensation of the natural halitus in all the parts of the body, and an exudation of thin lymph from every vessel ; there is water found in every cavity, from the ventricles of the brain to the cavity of the ankle joint, and so in the pericardium among the rest. But if you open any living animal as a Dog, or if you open suddenly the body of a suicide, or a criminal who has been just hanged, not a drop of water will be found in the pericardium. When such fluid is to be found, it is of the same nature with the dropsical fluids of other cavities : in the child, and in young people, it is reddish, especially if the pericardium be inflamed ; in older people it is pellucid, or of a light straw colour ; in old age and in the larger animals it is thicker, and more directly resembles the liquor of a joint.

Thus does the pericardium contribute in some degree to settle the posture of the heart ; but still the heart is almost entirely loose and free. It is fixed by nothing but its great vessels as they run up towards the neck, or are connected with the spine ; but how slight this hold is, how much the heart must be moved and these vessels endangered, by shocks and falls, it is awful to think. The pericardium is no doubt some restraint : its connections with the diaphragm and with the mediastinum make it a provision, in some degree, against any violent shock ; its internal lubricity is, at the same time, a means of making the heart's motions more free : yet the heart rolls about in the thorax, we turn to our left side in bed, and it beats there ; we turn over to our right side, and the heart falls back into the chest, so that its pulse is no where to be perceived : we incline to our left side again, and it beats quick and strong. The heart is raised by a full stomach, and is pushed upwards in dropsy ; and during pregnancy its posture is remarkably changed ; it is suddenly depressed again when the child is delivered, or the waters of a dropsy drawn off. It is shaken by coughing,

*nihil pravorum humorum produxisse, quia perfectissima ; at a causis externis, vigiliis, cruciatibus, itineribus vulneribus et mille tormentis quid non præter consuetam naturæ divinæ perfectionem productum credimus ? Ad hæc sano sensu id accipiendum, nihil pravorum humorum in corpore Christi generatum."* *Bartholini Epistola*, p. 299.—"Idque de Salvatore innoxie dixeris, quem scimus manducasse, bibisse, dormivisse, ambulasse et quid non egisse, ut se hominum cunctis actionibus, quæ secundum naturam sunt, submitteret : sputum emisit, quum luto misceret ad curandum cœcum, et sudavit ingruente martyrio, et sine dubio non parum seri in thorace collegit, quod, aperto post mortem latere, emanavit." *Bartholini Epistola*, p. 300.

laughing, sneezing, and every violent effort of the thorax.—By matter collected within the thorax it may be displaced to any degree. Dr. Farquharson cured a fine boy, about eight years old, of a great collection of matter in the chest, whose heart was so displaced by a vast quantity (no less than four pounds) of pus, that it beat strongly on the right side of the breast while his disease continued, and as soon as the pus was evacuated, the beating of the heart returned naturally to the left side. Who could have believed that, without material injury, the heart could be so long and so violently displaced? Felix Platerus tells us a thing not so easily believed, that a young boy, the son of a printer, having practised too much that trick which boys have of going upon their hands with their head to the ground, began to feel terrible palpitations in the left breast; these gradually increased till he fell into a dropsy from weakness, and died; and upon dissecting his body, the situation of his heart was found to have been remarkably changed by this irregular posture. Now we are not to argue that such change of posture of the heart could not happen merely from this cause, because professed tumblers have not these diseases of the heart; it were as silly to argue thus against the authority of Platerus, as to say that every post-boy has not aneurisms of the ham, or that every chimney-sweep has not a cancer of the scrotum.

We may now close this chapter on the mechanism of the heart, in which all the parts have been successively explained. We know how the heart is suspended by the mediastinum and by its great vessels; how it is lubricated, supported and regulated in its motions, by the pericardium; its nerves, which remain to be explained at a fitter time, are extremely small, while its vis insita, or irritability, is great beyond that of all the other parts. We can easily follow the circle of the blood, which, as it arrives from all the extremities, irritates the auricle, is driven down into the ventricle, is forced thence into the pulmonic artery, pervades the lungs, and then comes round to the left side of the heart, or to that heart which supplies the body; and there begins a new circulation, called the greater circulation, viz. of the body, as the other is called the lesser circulation of the lungs. Thus we recognise distinctly the functions of the double heart, with all its mechanism; the stronger heart to serve the body, the weaker heart to serve the lungs; and we see in the plainest manner two distinct functions performed by one compound heart: the right heart circulates the blood in the lungs, where it is purified and renewed; the left delivers out a quantity of blood, not such as to fill all the vessels, nor such as to move onwards by this single stroke of the heart to the

very extremities of the body, but such merely as to give a sense of fulness and tension to the vessels : the force is merely such as to excite and support that action which the arteries every where perform in the various organs of the body, each artery for its appropriated purposes, and each in its peculiar degree.

By understanding thus the true mechanism and uses of the heart, we can conceive how the ancients were led into strange mistakes, by very simple and natural appearances. We understand why Galen called the right auricle the "*ultimum moriens*," or the part which died last ; for, upon opening the body soon after death, he found the right auricle filled with blood, and still palpitating with the remains of life, when all the other parts seemed absolutely dead ; and if the blood always accumulates in the right side of the heart before death, it is plain that the stimulus of that blood will preserve the remains of life in the right side, after all appearance of life on the left side is gone. But the cause of this accumulation of blood in the right side is very ill explained by Haller, though it seems to have employed his thoughts during half his life. He says that in our last moments we breathe with difficulty ; the lungs at last collapse, and cease to act ; and when they are collapsed, no blood can pass through them, but must accumulate in the right side of the heart. That there is really no such collapse of the lungs, I propose hereafter to show ; but, in the meanwhile, this is the true reason, viz. that when the ventricles of the heart cease to act, and the beating of the heart subsides, the two auricles lie equally quiet, but in very different conditions : the right auricle has behind it all the blood of the body pouring in from all parts during the last struggles ; but the left auricle has behind it nothing but the empty veins of the lungs ; nothing can fill it but what fills the vessels of the lungs ; or, in other terms, nothing can fill the left auricle but the stroke of the heart itself ; but instead of acting, the heart falls into a quiescent state, the left auricle remains empty, while the blood oozes into the right auricle from all the extremities of the body till it fills it up.

Nothing is more agreeable than to find such phenomena described faithfully long before the reason of them is understood. In the Parsian dissections I find the following description : " When the breast of a living Dog is opened by taking away the sternum, with the cartilaginous appendices of the ribs, the lungs are observed suddenly to sink, and afterwards the circulation of the blood and the motion of the heart to cease. In a little time after that the right ventricle of the heart and the

vena cava are swelled, as if they were ready to burst.”\* This was what deceived the ancients, and was the cause of all their mistakes. When they found the right ventricle thus full of blood, they conceived that it alone conveyed the blood ; they found the left ventricle empty, and believed that it contained nothing but vital spirits and air : and so far were they from having any notions of a circulation, that they thought the air and vital spirits went continually forwards in the arteries ; that the gross blood which was prepared in the liver came up to the heart to be perfected, and went continually forwards in the veins, or, if they provided any way of return for these two fluids, it was by supposing that the blood and spirits moved forwards during the day time, and backwards in the same vessels during the night.

These things next explain to us why they called the right ventricle *VENTRICULUS SANGUINEUS* : they found it full of blood, and thought its walls were thinner, because it had only to contain the very grossest parts of the blood ; and why they called the left ventricle *VENTRICULUS SPIRITUOSUS* and *NOBILIS*, because they saw it empty, and concluded that it contained the animal spirits and aerial parts of the blood, and its walls were thicker, they said, to contain these subtile spirits. They explain to us their names of *ARTERIA VENOSA* and *VENA ARTERIOSA* ; for they would have veins only on the right side of the heart, and arteries only on the left ; and although they saw plainly that the pulmonic artery was an artery, they called it *Arteria Venosa* ; and although, on the left side again, they saw plainly that the pulmonic vein was merely a vein, they would still cheat themselves with a name, and call it *Vena Arteriosa* : the veins they said, were quiet, because they contained nothing but mere blood ; the arteries leaped, they said, because they were full of the animal spirits and vital air.

The very name and distinction of arteries which we now use, arise from this foolish doctrine about air and animal spirits.—To the oldest physicians there was no vessel known by the name of artery, except the *ASPERA ARTERIA* ; and it was named Artery because it contained air ; so that Hippocrates, when he speaks of the carotids, never names them arteries, but calls them the Leaping Veins of the neck. But when Eristratus had established his doctrine about the vessels which go out from the heart, carrying vital spirits and air, the name of artery was transferred to them : and then it was that the ancients began to call the vessels going out from the left side of the heart



arteries, naming the aorta the *ARTERIA MAGNA* and the pulmonic vein the *ARTERIA VENOSA*.

When a vein was cut, they saw nothing but gross blood, and of a darker colour ; but when an artery was cut, they observed that the blood was red ; that it was full of air bubbles ; that it spurted out, and was full of animal spirits ; and thus it became easy for them to show how safe it was to open a vein where nothing was lost but gross blood, how terribly dangerous it was to open an artery which was beating with the spirit of life ; and this they considered as such an awful difference, that when arteriotomy in the temple was first proposed, they pronounced it murderous, and on this reasoning it was absolutely forsaken for many ages.

But the oldest of our modern physicians soon found a necessity of mixing this blood and animal spirits together, and for a long while could hit on no convenient way by which this mixture might be effected : as a last shift, they made the blood exude through the septum of the heart ; and then the current doctrine was, that of the blood which came from the liver, one half went into the pulmonic artery to nourish the lungs ; the other half exuded through the septum of the heart to mix with the animal spirits. Riolanus was the bitter enemy of Harvey and of his noble doctrine ; and this is the miserable and confused notion, not to call it a doctrine, which he trumpeted through Europe in letters and pamphlets. To make good this miserable hypothesis, Riolanus, Gassendus, and many others, saw the necessity of having side passages through the septum of the heart. I really believe from their mean equivocating manner of talking about these passages, that they had never believed them themselves.\* “The chyle,” says Bartholine, “and the thinner blood, passes through the septum of the heart, when the heart is in systole and the pores and passages are enlarged.”—Thus did the celebrated Bartholine believe the septum perforated. Wallæus, and Marchetti, and Mollinettus, and Monichen, believed it, and Mr. Broadbecquius of Tubingen proved it.† But I believe most potently with Haller, that whenever they wanted to show those perforations, they managed their probes so as to make passages as wide and as frequent as the occasion required ; “*Solebant foramina parare adigendo stylos argenteos in resistens septum,*” says Haller ; and this is a full and true account of all the authors who have described

\* That I may not seem to speak too harshly of this knot of conspirators against Harvey, I will quote what Boerhaave says of Riolanus, who was at the head of them : “*Non ipse callidus cavillationum artifex Riolanus.*” &c.

† *Experimento perforatum ostendit Broadbecquius Tubingæ.*



side passages through the septum of the heart : they needed them, and they made them.

Amidst all this ignorance, we cannot wonder that a thousand childish imaginations prevailed, nor that the qualities of the mind were deduced from the physical properties of the heart. We have heard the vulgar, for example, speak of the bone of the heart. And from whom did this arise ? From Aristotle ! who explains to us, that there is at the root of the heart a bone which serves for its basis ; and not a physician has written upon the heart since his time, who has not spoken more or less mysteriously about this bone : while in truth the whole story means nothing more than this, that where the basis of the arteries are fixed into the hard ring or basis of the heart, the place is extremely firm, almost cartilaginous, especially in old age, when often the roots of the arteries are ossified, or converted into what anatomists have chosen to call bone.

Often also we have heard the vulgar talk, not figuratively, but in the plain sense of the words, of a little or big heart, as synonymous with a timorous or courageous heart. But whenever we hear mistakes of this kind among the vulgar, we may be assured they have some time or other come from high authority. Bartholine was so much convinced that a small heart begot courage, and a great one irresolution and fear, that he is thoroughly surprised when he finds the contrary ; “ *Cor vastus fuit homo, tamen audax fuerat, ut cicatrices in capite frequentes et rimæ in cranio testabantur.*” But if Bartholine be right, Kirkringius is quite wrong, and has mistaken the doctrine ; for he says, “ *An magnanima fuerit hæc magni cordis fœmina, nescio,*” &c. “ I do not know whether this woman’s courage was as big as her heart ; but this I do know, that she was a famous toper. Whether this drinking dilates the heart, and makes your staunch drinkers such famous fighters, I cannot pretend to decide.” We have heard the vulgar talk also of a hairy heart, as familiarly as of a hairy man, being the mark of high courage and strength ; but what shall we think of it, when we find that this report is to be deduced fairly from Pliny, through the most celebrated names among our old physicians ? He it was who began with telling how the Messenians, that unhappy people who lived for so many ages the slaves or helots of Greece, lost their great general Aristomenes. But how great he was, never, according to Pliny, came to be known till after his death ; for the Lacedemonians having caught him three times, resolved at last to open his breast ; and there, as a proof of his most invincible courage and daring, they found his heart filled with hair. This from Pliny were nothing, if such

dissections had not been made since then a hundred times.—“There was a robber (says Benivinius,) one Jacobus, who having been taken down from the gibbet apparently dead, but really having in him the remains of life, was laid carefully, recovered, was perfectly restored, betook himself to his old ways again; and so in the natural course of things came round to his old mark the gallows, and was this time very thoroughly hanged. Wondering (says Benivinius) at the perfect wickedness of this man, I longed very anxiously to dissect the body, and I actually found the heart, not covered, but (*refertum pilis*) crammed with hair.”

But there is, in fact, no end of wonders and wonderful dissections among these robbers of his. His next subject was not a bold robber, but a poor sneaking thief (*de corde furis cujusdam*;) there was no hair to be expected in his heart; but as he was a thief only, it was consistent with this doctrine that he should be first very heartless; secondly, have very little brain; thirdly, that he should have very inordinate appetites and desires. Now there was first a great two-legged vein carrying the *atrabilis*, the source, no doubt, of all his inordinate cravings, directly into the stomach. Secondly, there was a great abscess full of pus wasting the left side of his heart; and, thirdly and lastly, the back part of the head, (which all the anatomists of that time knew very well was the seat of memory) was in him so small that it could hardly contain a spoonful of that kind of brain; and this want was the reason (having so little memory) that he was so persevering a thief; for let you whip him, banish him, clap him in the stocks, he forgot it straightway, and was back at his old tricks again, like a dog to his vomit.\*

But these are now almost forgotten, though perhaps the history of the absurdities of the human genius should no more be neglected than of its beauties. Is it not delightful to feel, that after floating in this ocean of conjecture, after all these disorderly and wild dreams, we are come to have an idea of the heart, simple and beautiful; of a heart containing within it-

\* “Non videntur silentio esse prætereunda, quæ nuper in incisio Jacobi cujusdam furis insignis cadavere annotavimus: bifurcatem scilicet venam quæ a liene ad ventriculum atram deferret bilem, tum et abscessum in sinistro cordis ventre pituita redundantem: postremo et posteriorem ejus capitis partem, ubi memoriæ sedes est adeo brevem, at tantillam cerebri portiunculam contineret. Quam ob causam, cum priorum scelerum et eorum quæ pro his sæpe passus fuerat, tormenta scilicet, exilia et carceres minime recordaretur, toties ad vomitum tanquam canis impudens reversus est. ut in laqueum tandem inciderit, vitæque ac furti finem fecerit.”—Vid. *Benivinius*.

self two functions ; first, the office of renewing the blood ; secondly, the office of animating the arteries, and by them preserving in life and action the whole system of the body ? These are the two offices which I shall now proceed to explain.



## CHAP. II.

### ON THE APPEARANCE AND PROPERTIES OF THE BLOOD, ON THE CHEMISTRY OF OUR FLUIDS, AND ON THE INFLUENCE WHICH AIR HAS UPON THEM.

**B**Y the simplest methods the blood can be resolved into various parts, but chiefly into these three; the red globules, which give colour to the blood ; the gluten, which gives consistency and nutritious qualities to the blood ; and the serum, which dilutes, mixes, and suspends the whole.

Though the serum and gluten did not pass entirely unnoticed, the red globules were the part of the blood which first excited the attention of physicians, and seemed to promise a rich harvest of discoveries ; a promise which too surely never was fulfilled. The red particles have always appeared important, because they seem to give the colour, the useful qualities, and the whole character to the blood. It is by the rolling of the red particles only that we see the circulation in the microscope ; it is red blood only that we ever name as blood ; and the colour of the red blood changes in health and disease. But when physicians studied this part alone, when they gave it the mark of chief importance, annexed to it alone the name of blood, they little thought how far they over-rated its importance, how far the red particles are from nourishing the system, from being essential to the blood, from being universal in all creatures. They had not considered what myriads of animals, great as well as small, want the red particles, and (if these red particles are to be the characteristic) want blood ; while philosophers of less contracted notions have continued to call that fluid, blood, which fills the vessels of plants.

The Harveian doctrine had no sooner produced a revolution

in the general doctrines of physiology, or physicians began to think of the heart and its circulation, of the great arteries, and extreme vessels, of the difference betwixt arteries and veins, and of the ways in which the fluids move through the smaller tubes, (for they saw them moving by their microscopes) no sooner did all these phenomena and new wonders present themselves to their imaginations, than they thought also of curious ways by which these motions and secretions might be explained. They then began to estimate the calibres of the arteries, to calculate with great affectation of care the shape, the size, the composition, as they chose to call it, of the particles of the blood; chimeras and fancies sprung up innumerable; and it happened unfortunately that for a long while physicians studied nothing but angles, and logarithms, and algebraical equations; they reasoned according to those sciences only which have no connection with the physiology of the animal body; they calculated the force, the thickness, the dimensions of the heart; the diameter, and the strength of walls, and the direction of the aorta; their experiments consisted in fixing clumsy tubes into the arteries, or in calculating the whole quantity of blood by bleeding an animal to death; they applied nothing but the laws of hydraulics, *i. e.* of fluids rising and falling in rigid tubes, to explain the active arteries of a living body: in short, in explaining the living body they forgot that it was alive. But now the age of infallible proofs and demonstrations has passed over, and the works of Keill, Pitcairn, Borelli, are quite neglected.

This disordered and miserable state of science, which continued for a century nearly, arose from those red particles of the blood engrossing too much attention, and from their being allowed an importance which does not belong to them; although one must still acknowledge that they are very surprising, because they are very unaccountable, at least I do not know that any natural or likely use for them has been yet assigned.

Leeuwenhoek, looking through his glasses, saw that this which gave the red colour was the most permanent characteristic part of the blood: he saw that this part consisted of red particles floating in the serum; he found, or pretended to find, that they were of the same size in a Man as in a fœtus; in a Chick as in a Hen; in a Whale or Elephant, he found them the same as in a Mouse or Minnow; merely because it was convenient for him to find it so.

But poring still longer over these particles, he perceived that the great globules were so far imperfect as often to break in pieces, and roll about in the serum in separate parts; and he always found that there were six less parts composing the



greater globule of the blood. By looking more and more, he pretended to observe, that these smaller parts into which the red globules broke down still preserved their form ; that these were the particles of the serous part of the blood ; and that the great or red particles frequently broke down into serous particles, and these again as frequently united and composed afresh a red globule. He pretended to find, that exactly six smaller globules went to make up one great one ; and he called the red and serous globules the globules of the first and second order.

By this notion of orders it was plain that he intended to plunge deeper into this hypothesis, and to have at least a third and fourth order ; besides, these orders and particles were at his call, he might do as he pleased ; and he was almost the only person possessed of glasses which could enable the physiologist to see and tell about them. He pored till he believed, or at least made others believe, that he saw globules of a third order, six times smaller than the serous globules, and of course thirty-six times smaller than the red globules. And thus he had lymphatic particles, six of which made up one serous particle ; and serous particles, six of which made one red globule.

To the geometrical physiologists of that day all this instruction concerning the structure of the blood was most delightful ; it corresponded very notably with their calculations about regularly descending series of vessels ; and a most curious method did they find out for settling this law of the branching of arteries. They took the plates of Eustachius, measured with compasses the arteries and veins, estimated the angles at which each branch goes off, compared the several branches with the parent trunk ; and from such calculations they settled the general law as heartily and freely, as if, instead of the most extravagant plates in all anatomy, they had been measuring actually the human body itself. Thus they had set up their doctrine of angles, branches, anastomoses, trunks, and extreme vessels : they had found that there was a regular series of descending arteries ; they had a tube now suited to every descending particle that Leeuwenhoek could invent ; and when a particle had got into a wrong vessel, it could go back till it found a tube that suited it : or if driven into a wrong bore, it could break itself down into serous or lymphatic particles. But when many particles did stick hard in the strait places, then there was an error loci ; then the big particles were out of their peculiar vessels, and then the part began to be red : thence came inflammations, fevers, deeper obstructions ; and from such causes, or from the breaking down of the blood and humours, came every disease that could be named.



So very greatly were they delighted with the discovery, that Dr. Martin, who had measured the vessels, as I have just told, and had dreamt over this the longest and soundest of them all, speaks of it in these rapturous terms. "But we are moreover certain from the observations of that most accurate and curious observer of the *minima naturæ*, that there are innumerable vessels of such a smallness that none of these globules could pass; so that it is necessary to suppose inferior classes of globules of the fourth, fifth, sixth, and other orders.—Whence by analogy we are to conceive globules of the third order made up of six globules of the fourth order, and these of six of the fifth order, and so on ad infinitum through various degrees, the number of which we are not to take upon us to determine." This is a pleasant addition to Dr. Martin's; and makes it a most manageable system of most dilatable materials, stretching so as to suit all occasions. This rider or codicil to the doctrine made it easy for every particle to pass every vessel; but, alas! it leaves no room for that old catchword of the system, the *error loci*, nor any provision for making diseases.

How all the physicians in Europe could digest this absurdity, of yellow particles, by aggregation and arrangements in sixes and sixes, becoming red, it is not easy to conceive; nor is it easy to conceive how men, whose education in mathematics and algebra should have taught them to think accurately and reason closely, could believe that globules should break down into six particles each, and that these particles, being themselves particles of serum, should yet be distinctly seen floating in the serum. How could these geometrical physicians possibly believe, that these particles, from large to small, should descend, not gradually and imperceptibly, but by sixes and sixes, one after another like steps of stairs? In all his mathematics, I do not believe that Martin could find any contrivance fit to help him out of these difficulties. Martin observes, in his own way of geometry, and proceeds to prove it by most laborious schemes, "that just six small sphericles should go to make up one larger globule, if you were to choose the most convenient and firmest way of constructing it;" and then he wonders at Leeuwenhoek finding it exactly so. But if Leeuwenhoek knew this as well as Dr. Martin, I cannot for my heart think it any wonder that Leeuwenhoek chose "the most convenient and firmest way of constructing a red globule, viz. out of six smaller ones." Seeing that he had the affair entirely in his own hands, "what a beautiful HARMONY and REGULARITY do we perceive, says Martin, in the mass of blood? *Magnam certe opus oculis video.*" In plain truth, they desired but

a little of this harmony, a little consistency in their doctrine, and all was well.

But the mistakes concerning the formation or organizing of this blood are worse than these ; for they came from men truly learned, and diligent in anatomy, led on by too strong a desire of finding out the uses of several parts of the human body, as of the Spleen and Thymus, parts hitherto unexplained. Mr. Hewson supposed that the lymphatic glands, which seem at first to be mere convoluted vessels, but which microscopes shew as consisting of numerous cells, form in these cells the primordia of the red blood ; for each red particle he supposes to consist of a central particle, which is solid and dark-coloured, surrounded by a vesicle which is transparent or white ; and this dark or central part he supposes is formed in the lymphatic cells ; for he finds a sort of round particles in the lymph, and often he finds the lymphatics full of red blood.

Next, he has supposed that in the child there is required a much greater supply of blood ; for this purpose is the thymus appointed ; viz. to assist the lymphatic glands in organizing blood. This gland lies in the upper part of the chest, is great in the child, has vanished in the adult, but while it exists, he finds it full of a milky juice or whitish mucus, fit to make central particles for the blood ; and the lymphatics, as he supposes, are the excretories for this gland. He next conjectures, that this work, begun thus by the lymphatic glands, and thymus ; is perfected by the spleen ; that the lymphatics make central particles only, while the vesicular coverings are formed in the spleen ; so that there only do the particles become perfect ; and accordingly of these parts it is in the spleen alone that the red blood is found.

As the central particles are formed in the cells of the lymphatic glands, the vesicular parts are formed in the cells of the spleen, and the lymphatics unload these cells of the particles when completely formed : but there appears no other proof that they do this office than that there are cells in the spleen which may make vesicles ; and that the lymphatics being tied, and the spleen squeezed, red globules are sometimes found in them.

Long poring over a wearisome subject, and an intense desire to finish that account of the blood which he had so successfully begun, are strong apologies for all these mistakes. No man will venture to deny, that the glands and lymphatic vessels probably accomplish some important changes upon all fluids which pass through them ; but that they alone organize the blood is not to be conceived. Their containing round white particles, argues nothing ; these exist in the chyle, and

probably in that condition pass into the blood. But if the fœtus requires a great supply of blood, and the thymus assists the lymphatic glands, how comes it, when both lymphatic glands and thymus are working in concert to prepare a great quantity of blood, that the spleen, which is to finish all these particles, and to make vesicles for them, is not in a child as big as its liver is ?

That red globules are found in the lymphatics, and most especially in the lymphatics of the spleen, is a most ordinary occurrence, and quite intelligible. There are not found any where, not even in the spleen, imperfect globules advancing in their organization ; on the contrary, those which we do find are full formed globules which have been forced out of the common line of the circulation ; they are extravasated, and taken up by the absorbents before death ; or they are squeezed into them by handling after death. If we want to have an example of the first, we have but to inflame a part and tie up its lymphatics, and then many red particles are found in them ; the second we see every time we either look for, or prepare the lymphatics of the spleen, or of any other soft viscus ; for by handling and squeezing, the blood passes through the small breaches occasioned by this violence into the lymphatics ; if we allow the part to spoil, then air is generated, and, by handling it, air passes into the lymphatics in the same way.

But the spleen is essential to finish the work, it makes the vesicles, and has cells for the business ; and yet this part, which has the most important of all offices, viz. that of organizing the general mass of blood, is every day cut out from dogs and other animals, and they never feel the loss, nor decline in health. There is not the smallest doubt that the spleen has protruded at wounds, and been strangled, and so cut off. Every day we find it more or less diseased ; sometimes it has swelled to thirty or forty pounds ; sometimes it has been reduced to an extremely small size ; sometimes it has been found like an empty bag.

In the fœtus, as in a chick for example, red blood circulates in great profusion long before its lymphatics, spleen, or thymus, can be seen to exist ; whereas, on the contrary, since the Chick is insulated, and has no red blood from the mother, the spleen should have been first coloured, and all the red blood of the system should have emanated from the spleen.

It is but a poor evasion to say, in answer to these objections, “some other part may perform this office of the spleen.” What other parts will perform the office of the liver, if it be wanting ; or of the kidney, or of the testicle, or of any other gland ? or will the testicle secrete urine, or the kidney secrete

bile ? What gland, then, will be able to perform so peculiar an office as this of adding vesicles or coverings to the central parts of the blood.

After all this long dream about the vesicles and their central parts, the best physiologists of the present day seem to deny that they exist.

But one author has finished this career of useless speculation, by maintaining that the *LIFE* is in the *BLOOD* : and thus we have seen this simple and beautiful subject of the blood tortured through all kinds of imaginations, and running its fiery ordeal, first through mathematics, then through anatomy and all its glands, then through metaphysics ; till at last we are come to talk with the most perfect ease and confidence about the most monstrous of all absurdities, the life of the blood.

“ For in the blood is the life thereof,” might be a useful doctrine among the Jews, if it moderated their desire for blood ; and if among physicians this were to be the tendency of such a doctrine, it were very cruel and unnatural to disturb it : but, in serious earnest, it introduces into modern physiology nothing but a jargon of words, and perverts every idea that the mind of man can form of parts which excite and parts which act. Whimsical theories creep faster into physic than useful facts ; and the business is fairly enough begun when surgeons, dissecting aneurisms of the carotid arteries, and who should be employed in recording how and from what causes they have arisen, or how such diseases affect the arterial coats, choose rather to inform us “ that this state of the blood, or rather of the coagulable lymph, may arise from some connection or sympathy it may have with the diseased state of the artery.” “ By lightning (says a celebrated author), death is so instantaneously produced in the muscles, that they cannot be affected by the stimulus of death.” Connections, and unknown sympathies, and living powers in fluids, and energies, and efforts, and intentions, and “ sympathetic congelations in the blood,” and “ immediate sympathetic contiguous harmonies of cut parts,” and the “ diffused principle of life,” and “ the stimulus of death ;” are words which physiology would gain by losing, and are the very cant belonging to the doctrine which I propose to refute.

It is not merely the doctrine of a living principle existing in the blood that is now to be spoken of, but a doctrine attributing the life of the solids to this living principle of the blood ; so that it may be intitled “ the new theory concerning the blood which is itself alive, which gives life to all the other parts, and which in the beginning forms all the parts out of itself in the



mother's womb;" so that a fœtus is merely a speck of blood, and all the parts being formed from that speck of blood, the whole of physiology is abrogated henceforward, and totally annulled, except this theory itself. It is like the staff of Moses converted into a serpent, which ate up the serpents of all the magicians who had thrown down the staff before him; for if this theory were once established, there would remain nothing to be done in all the animal body but what was done by the blood; nothing to wonder at, nothing to guess about, nothing to study, but this vital and plastic power of the blood.

The author of this doctrine shows us two or three specks in an incubated egg; he tells us that they are dots of blood; he tells us that this blood forms the vessels in which this blood itself is to move; it forms the limbs of the Chick which these vessels are to serve; the bones, muscles, bowels, glands, the whole creature is formed out of it; and when the bird is delivered from the egg, the living principle of the blood still continues to support it. The blood heals its flesh or bones when they are broken; "the blood moves in the living solids, which it both forms and supports."

It is not easy to say on which of all his proofs Mr. Hunter chiefly relies for establishing a doctrine so important as this is; whether he considers it as a perfect proof of the vitality of the blood that it coagulates, or that this coagulum has moreover the power of becoming perfectly alive, and of forming new vessels within itself; or that blood seems to assist the union of contiguous parts; or that by taking away its blood a creature dies; or that a limb falls into immediate gangrene when its vessels and its supply of blood are cut off. But chiefly he seems to rely on coagulation as a proof of the vitality of the blood; for he considers the coagulation of the chyle as a proof that it also is alive; and he says, "contraction is the life of the solids; and if we can find any thing like it (by which he means coagulation), we shall call it the living principle of the blood."

But what harmony can he find betwixt the occasional, voluntary, regulated, contractions of the living solid, and this sudden, irretrievable, inorganic, coagulation of the blood, I cannot conceive. Does not jelly coagulate; and what is it but a part of the blood? Does not glue congeal, dissolve, and congeal again, yet what is it but an animal jelly? Does the blood itself ever congeal till it is out of the body, or extravasated in aneurismal sacs? When it is out of the body, it coagulates; when it coagulates, it is dead; coagulation is so far from resembling the contractions of the living body, that it is the marked character of dead animal matter, which you



melt and coagulate again and again. Shall we then define life by saying, coagulation is the mark of the vital principle? If so, we give the mark of its death as the proof of its living power.

But in his awkward attempts to prove this point, the author has brought himself into great suspicion, and of course into great dishonour, by two experiments, in which he endeavours to show how this vital power, like the life of a perfect creature, is affected by cold first. In page 79, we are informed, that a fresh egg, in consequence of being alive, resists the cold, and is frozen with great difficulty; but being once frozen and thawed again, it loses its living principle and its power of resisting cold at once; it freezes now at the same temperature with other animal matter, showing no longer any power of generating heat, or resisting cold.

But we are told\*, that the blood having a determined period for coagulating, you may, during that time, freeze the blood, and it will thaw again, and yet congeal at its proper time; and he tells us, that he had very cleverly frozen blood in the very time of its flowing from the vein, then thawed the cake, and still in due time it congealed. Now since the egg resists cold by its living principle, why did it die or lose that living principle when converted into ice? or rather, since the blood coagulates through its living principle, and by a living effort, how did it preserve its living principle after being frozen? This proves surely, either that the blood's coagulation has no relation to any living principle, and therefore is not affected by the cold; or that the egg has a living principle of a very different kind, which is absolutely and totally extinguished by cold. I am sure, that had Mr. Hunter seen these two experiments brought face to face in this manner, he would have put one of them at least back quietly into the portfolio from which they both came. I have always observed, that your great tellers of experiments need to have good memories; and I am come to look on a suite of experiments as coolly as upon a set of neat plans and figures by which the author chooses to illustrate his hypothesis.

That this coagulum, being once formed, has the power of becoming more perfectly alive, and forming vessels within itself, it is not easy to conceive. Nothing indeed is more common than clots of blood, or depositions of the coagulable part, becoming highly vascular, by vessels shooting into them from surrounding parts; but this is of no value in Mr. Hunter's

\* Page 87.

doctrine ; this is not the fact which he means to speak of ; this is much too natural and easy for him ; and that his meaning may neither be misrepresented nor mistaken, I quote his words : “ When new vessels are formed, they are not always elongations from the original ones, but vessels newly formed, which afterwards open a communication with the original.”— That a clot of mere blood should have in it a living principle, and should possess through that principle the power of forming within itself arteries and veins, a new and independent circulation ; that it should have the privilege of knowing when it should exert itself thus, is really wonderful ; that it should have some kind of intelligence ; or consciousness, by which it could understand when it were within and when without the body ; and whether in certain circumstances it were fit that such vessels should be formed ! That clots should have been busied forming vessels within them for ages, and no body ever have seen the process going on ! That Mr. Hunter, who has been looking out for vascular clots for thirty years, never should have seen this phenomenon, is all very surprising. Mr. Hunter falls into a deeper blunder in this business than in the affair of the frozen egg ; he absolutely never saw a proper vascular clot. He informs us most deliberately in page 92, “ that he thinks he has been able to inject what he suspected to be the beginning of a vascular formation in a coagulum, when it could not derive any vessels from the surrounding parts.” From whence then did this clot derive its injection ? this is a question which detects at once what Mr. Hunter was doing, and puts this experiment pretty much upon a footing with the frozen egg.

To say “ that the blood, in some circumstances, unites living parts by a sort of contiguous sympathy as certainly as the yet recent branches of one tree unite it with another,” is to put forth a syllogism, in which both major and minor propositions are untrue. First, it is not true, that it is the juices of the tree which unite the graft to the stock ; it is the living fibres, and the living vessels of both ; and unless both be alive, the process must fail, living juices would do no good. Secondly, though the juices did so unite or glue together the branches of a tree, that were no proof of the juices being alive ; but only that good juices, whether alive or not alive, were necessary to the process.

Any man who affirms that in surgical operations it is the blood, “ that by a contiguous sympathy unites the parts,” should have supported his assertion by this further argument, that without blood they will not unite. Prove to me only that fresh cut parts are not alive, and cannot naturally unite without

the assistance of some foreign power, and then I will acknowledge willingly that they are altogether beholden to the inter-mediation of the blood, with its living principle, and sympathy of contiguity.

But it is very singular, that any person, even the least instructed in forms of reasoning, should have advanced this as any proof of living principle in the blood, "that mortification immediately follows where the circulation is cut off;" for this proves merely, that the blood is one of many stimuli, by which the system is supported, in so much, that each limb is affected just as the whole body would be; and whether you stop the blood, which is one stimulus, or take away its heat, which is the stimulus next in power to the blood, the limb will equally die.

To say that the life is in the blood, because the blood being taken away, the limb dies, or because an animal may be bled till it dies; what is this but to jumble all distinction of cause and effect? The water, no doubt, is the life of the mill, and the plough-horse is the very life of the plough; for the mill and the plough are dead the moment that the horse is gone or the water fails.

Lastly, we are told "that it is by the contiguous sympathy of the blood and body both being alive," that they both work upon each other mutually: but is it not very strange for any physiologist to forget, that the blood is at least in part a foreign body, that it must be continually impregnated with air, that it is neither its original constitution, nor these presumed sympathies that make it vital blood, that it becomes vital blood only by exposure to air, and that if this foreign principle be not continually added, the solids are not wrought upon by the blood?

The natural difficulties of this doctrine are very great; for it seems to be against all the laws of nature that any fluid should be endowed with life. A fluid is a body whose particles often are not homogeneous, have no stable connection with each other, change their place by motion, change their nature by chemical attractions and new arrangements; a body which can have no perfect character, no permanent nature, no living powers connected with it. But the definition of a solid is the reverse of this: a solid among every kind of metals, earths, or fossils, is recognized by its peculiar form and arrangement of parts: and in the animal body, the arrangement of particles gives the permanent unchanging character of each part; and in the muscles, for example, or in the nerves, where feeling and irritability chiefly reside, the form and mechanism of the solid is in each most peculiar, and is always the same.

What is this blood that it should begin life and support it, and distribute it through all the system? Is it not a fluid which varies every hour, now richer, now poorer, now loaded with salts, now drowned in serum, now much, now sparingly supplied with air, now darker coloured, now red, now fully supplied with chyle, and now starved of its usual supply? Is it not lost in astonishing quantities in hæmorrhagies, and drawn very freely from our veins upon the slightest disease? That such qualities are consistent with life in the blood, is what I cannot believe. But I can most easily imagine how the system, having by successive operations converted the food into chyle, the chyle into blood, and fashioned the nutritious part of the blood into various solids; these new solids may partake of the vitality of all the parts to which they are applied, and to which they have been assimilated by so peculiar and so slow a process.

The question is plainly this: shall we follow the general laws of the system, such as physiology acknowledges? or shall we admit an absurd novelty without proof? Shall we allow of the simple accident of coagulation (an accident common to dead fluids) as a proof of life? or shall we forget those stupendous proofs of the irritability residing in the heart, muscles, and other forms of our living solids, and which is the source of all the various actions of the body? Shall we forget that polypi, worms, insects, the bloodless parts of fishes, the uncoloured parts of the human body, even plants almost inanimate, all partake of life, without having red blood in their system, or having it restricted to the central parts? All these have life and vitality, but where is their blood? In short, the question plainly resolves itself into this, shall we have two living parts, fluid and solid; two agents acting on each other? or shall we follow the common law of the æconomy, call the one an exciting power, while the other receives that excitement, being alive only that it may feel and act according to the degree in which it is moved? Shall we have the blood communicating life to all the body? or the body only alive, and the blood, like various other excitements, acting upon it with those powers which it is continually acquiring, without acquiring along with them any share of life?

But Mr. Hunter, ill contented with his doctrine himself, he even who began with giving to the blood a vital principle, and calling it the former of new parts, and the substance whence the living solid derives its life, hatches a new doctrine out of the confusion of the first; takes from the blood all those high privileges in the system which he had so freely bestowed upon



it, and gives them in full perpetuity to a new principle, a principium vitæ diffusæ, which he announces thus :

“ I would consider that something similar to the substance of the brain is diffused through the body, and even contained in the blood ; and between this (viz. the matter diffused in the blood) and the brain the communication is kept up by nerves.” This matter he does not like to define, but he must name it ; and having observed, as others have done, that a mouthful of nonsense sounds infinitely better in Latin than in our mother tongue, he calls it the “ *Materia vitæ diffusa*.—Concerning this diffused principle of life he tells us, that every part of an animal has its due proportion ; it unites all the body into one ; “ it is as it were diffused through the whole solids and fluids, making a necessary constituent part of them, and forming with them a perfect whole.”—The terms in which this doctrine is proposed are hardly more intelligible than those in which he argues about the life of the blood ; the matter itself, resembling the substance of the brain, is supposed ! the manner of its union with the blood, is supposed ! its connection at once with the fluids, and with the living solids, is supposed ! the sort, of a manner, in which this matter harmonizes the whole, is supposed ! and now the coagulation, and life of the blood, is no longer an effort of the life of the blood, but of the *materia vitæ diffusa* ; and the blood does not form the solids, the blood no longer communicates life to the solids, but the blood and the solids are both at once animated by this DIFFUSED PRINCIPLE OF LIFE.

No one need triumph over a doctrine which thus falls by its own weight ; but this must not be forgotten, that the doctrine of the life of the blood leads to a mean contracted narrow view, not merely of this but of higher subjects.

Plants have active and irritable fibres ; by the most curious actions they drink in water ; water alone they can convert, by the most simple mechanism, into the most delicate perfumes, into delicious fruits, or into terrible poisons. “ There stands,” says Blumenbach, “ a hyacinth before me ; generations of these flowers, of which this is the last, have grown there successively, touching the surface merely of a little water :” but shall Mr. Hunter persuade me that this water is alive ? “ *vel hyacinthi me monent.*”\*

I think I may safely conclude, that these theorists have done the science no good ; themselves no honour ; and us no kind of benefit, unless it be an advantage to know that by none of these ways can we arrive at a knowledge of the blood.



## QUALITIES OF THE BLOOD.

Blood is a fluid of a rich and beautiful colour ; it is vermilion-coloured in the arteries, strong purple in the veins, and black, or almost so, at the right side of the heart : it feels thick and unctuous betwixt the fingers, is of a slightly saline taste, is various in various parts of the body, in the heart or at the centre of the circulation different from what it is in the glands, excretories, and all the extremities of the body ; different in the liver, among the intestines, in the cheeks, and lips, in the reservoir or sinuses of the head and womb. In various individuals, but much more in different animals, it varies with their functions and manner of life ; it is more or less perfect in animals, in birds, in fishes, in insects ; it is thick or thin ; has gross particles or small ; is red or pale ; hot or cold ; according to the creature's life : and from this last variety, viz. of the manner of life, comes our division of animals into those of hot and cold blood.

It is by the most simple and natural methods that we examine the blood ; since almost spontaneously it resolves itself into three parts ; the CRASSAMENTUM, the SERUM, and the RED GLOBULES ; for in a cup of blood the crassamentum, or clot, the hepar sanguineum, as it was called long ago, floats in the serum ; the red globules are engaged in this clot, and give it colour ; the serum may be poured off, the coagulum may be washed till it is freed of the red parts of the blood ; and then the red particles are found in the water with which the coagulum was washed, and the coagulum remains upon the strainer, little reduced in size, pure and white, the gluten or fibrous part of the blood. Or we may separate this part by a method which Ruysch first taught us ; we may, while the blood is congealing, stir it with a bunch of rods, when the pure and colourless gluten gathers upon the rods and the serum, with the red particles suspended in it, remains behind.

## OF THE RED GLOBULES.

The red globules, as we have observed, are not universal ; yet in all creatures, even in colourless insects, there seem to be formal particles in the blood ; in white insects, they are white, in green insects they are green, in most insects they are transparent.

The red globules of the human blood are easily seen ; they are best examined with a simple lens, the globules being dilut-

ed in serum, and laid upon an inclined plane, not in water which dissolves them quickly, but in serum, which has the property of preserving their globular form.—The size of the particles of the blood varies in various creatures; in the fœtus, they are bigger than in a grown animal; and although Leeuwenhoek thought it essential to his doctrine, to say, that they were alike in all creatures, we know beyond a doubt that there are in respect to the size of the animals the strangest reverses. The Skate has red globules much larger, and the ox has globules much smaller, than those of a man. Fish have large globules, serpents smaller ones, and Man smaller still. In Man the diameter of each globule is much less than the three thousandth part of an inch.

There is in the effect of lenses, or in the nature of these globules, some strange refraction, by which there seems a darkness in the centre of each globule, and thence a deception which has been universal; so that no single description has tallied with that which went before. Leeuwenhoek believed that he saw them consisting each of six well compacted smaller globules: Hewson believed that they were bladders, which had within them some central body, loose and moveable; that often the central part might be seen rolling in its bag; and that sometimes the bladder was shrunk and shrivelled around the central body, and could, by putting a drop of water upon it, be plumped up again. The Abbé Torre examined them with simple lenses too; but they magnified so highly, that from this cause all this noisy mistake has arisen; for he used not ground lenses, but small sphericles of glass formed by dropping melted glass into water: they magnified so much, that to him the central spot appeared much darker; he said that these were not globules, but rings. He sent his sphericles of glass and his observations from Italy, his own country, to our Royal Society; and for a long while, though nobody could see them, still the public were annoyed by Abbé Torre's rings. Falconer, with all the zeal of a friend, published Hewson's discoveries after he was dead; lamenting, as we all must do, the loss of a promising young man. Falconer thought he saw these globules, not as spheres but as flattened spheres; he thought he saw them often as they rolled down the inclined plane upon which he placed them, turning their edges, their sides, their faces, towards the eye; he even compared their flatness with that of a coin. Many authors have conjectured that these globules are compressed when they come into narrow passages, and expand again when they get into wider arteries. This Reichell says he has seen, and Blumenbach believes; but Blumenbach, less easy of belief with regard to

all these strange forms ascribed to the particles of the blood, pronounces his dissent in plain terms. "They appear," says he, "to my eye no other than simple globules, apparently of mucus : that lenticular or oval form which authors speak of, I have not seen."

The following are their chief properties with regard to the rest of the blood. When blood stands, they fall to the bottom, because they are heavier than the other parts of the blood ; and although the gluten entangles them while it is forming, still it is to be noticed that the cake is always redder at the bottom ; and when by weakness or disease this coagulation is very slow, some globules escape the grasp of the coagulum, and the serum is tinged with red, and the cake, though coloured at the bottom, is white at the top, or has the buffy coat. Their form they preserve only while in the blood, and seem to be supported more by the qualities of the serum than by their own properties ; for if mixed with water, they mix easily, and totally dissolve ; the water is red, but the globules are gone ; when we mean to preserve their forms for experiment, we must keep them in serum, or must make an artificial serum by impregnating water with salts. Their quantity, in regard to the whole mass, varies so, that the appearance of the blood is a real index of health or disease : in disease and weakness, the blood is poor and colourless ; in health and strength, it is rich and florid ; by labour, red particles may be accumulated in a wonderful degree : in hard working men they abound ; they may be accumulated by exercise into particular parts, as in the wings of Moorfowl or Pigeons, and in the legs of common Hens. In short, the red globules are numerous in health ; in large and strong creatures ; and in the centre of the system, where they often circulate when (as in fishes) all the flesh is colourless ; in such a system, particular glands only, or viscera, as the liver, stomach, or spleen, are coloured with blood, and but a small proportion circulates in the great vessels round the heart.

The redness of these particles is a peculiarity for which we know no meaning nor cause. The greatest physiologists have ascribed it to the iron of the blood ; but when we reflect how many various colours iron gives in its various states ; when we reflect, that the unknown cause which gives colour to the iron may give colour to the blood ; when we reflect that of this crocus of iron we can hardly procure one poor grain from four hundred grains of these red particles of the blood ;—we cannot but be conscious that this peculiarity is not yet explained.

## COAGULABLE LYMPH.

The coagulable part, the cake which is left when we wash away the red globules, is by far the most important part of the blood, the most universally diffused in the animal system, the most necessary for the supply and growth of parts. It forms all the solids, and in its properties resembles them most curiously; for this cake, when washed, is white, insipid, extremely tenacious, and very fibrous; can be drawn out greatly; and it is the coagulation of this part that makes the long fibrous strings which we find in the tub when bleeding a patient in the foot in very hot water. Being slightly dried, it shrinks into a substance like parchment; being hardened by heat, it becomes like a piece of horn or bone; when burnt, it shrinks and crackles, with a very fetid smell, like the burning of feathers, wool, flesh, or any other animal substance; by which we know it to be the part of the blood which is the most perfectly animalized, and the most ready to be assimilated with the living solids. When distilled, it gives ammoniacal salt and alkaline water, and a very thick heavy fetid oil, and much mephitic, which are the marks of the most perfect animal nature; and after burning it, the residuum is a phosphate of lime, or, in other words, the earth of bones.

Its peculiar proprieties, as it appears in the blood, are few; its relation to the body is very surprising; how the body acquires, and how it applies, this most important part of the blood, we shall next explain.

There is no part of our food which does not contain this gluten in a large proportion. With regard to animal food, this is to be remembered, that except the fat and the earth of bones (which is in a wonderfully small proportion), the whole is gluten. A piece of animal food we can first wash clear of its blood till it be colourless, and then boil with a strong heat till it is converted into jelly merely. Eggs contain an animal gluten separated and entirely formed; the final use of which is to enter into the intestines of the chick, and nourish it. Milk contains in its curdy part a perfect gluten, which is easily separated, and when perfect coagulates with acids like blood. Oysters, shell-fish, fishes of all kinds, are so entirely formed of gluten, that many of them can be boiled down to a perfect jelly. With regard to our vegetable food, this is to be remembered, that much of it is already formed into gluten, and is ready to be assimilated into an animal nature. If we knead up flour with cold water into a cake, the washing of that cake resembles the process of washing a coagulum of blood; for



while we hold it in our hand, and pour cold water upon it, the water as it runs off carries along with it a white amylaceous matter, which is starch ; along with this there is much saccharine and mucilaginous matter ; but the most dense and solid part of the cake remains in the hand. This is the gluten of the vegetable left alone, just as the gluten of the animal is washed pure of the red blood ; and this vegetable gluten is very tough, so that the whole cake may be drawn out into one long string. It is so tenacious and so hard when dry, that it has been long used as a cement ; and it so precisely resembles the animal gluten, that, put them together, and you can see no distinction. It shrinks also with heat, and is converted into a substance like parchment or horn. It first melts with heat, and then burns like feathers or hair ; and by distillation it gives only alkaline ammoniacal salts and fetid oils ; it wants no mark of perfect analogy with our animal gluten, and we can be at no loss to think whence all our necessary supplies arise : and flour, though it is the richest, in this highly nutritious part scarcely exceeds corn, barley, potatoes, pease, and beans, and all those vegetables called legumina, upon which chiefly we depend for bread, or a substitute for bread. These do not, indeed, contain this vegeto-animal matter directly or entirely formed ; but they consist of a jelly analogous to all the white or gelatinous parts of the human body ; as vegetable jelly, it has a vegetable character, it ferments and becomes acid ; while animal jelly, as belonging to the animal body, has other characters, it becomes putrid, and affords alkalis only : but how easy this conversion must be, I need hardly suggest.

What passes within the animal body, or how this gluten is directly applied, we never can know ; but we see how all the body is composed of gluten, and no analysis of any single part has ever disappointed us. A muscle being squeezed, and thoroughly cleansed of blood, washed in spirits of wine, and again cleaned, is seen plainly to be but a peculiar form of coagulable lymph. An anatomical preparation washed, and purified as it is, consists of mere lymph retaining its primitive shape. A bone being infused in any mineral acid, or in vinegar, its earthy parts are dissolved even to its centre ; it becomes soft and flexible, still retains the form of a bone ; but what remains is merely coagulable lymph. And though Fourcroy is certainly right in saying the coagulable lymph is that part upon which nature fixes irritability or the contractile power, he should have added, “ but this gluten is moreover in the animal body the basis of every part which possesses life ;” it constitutes, in truth, no less than nine tenths of the solids of the whole body. The membranes, ligaments, tendons, pe-



riosteums, and all the white parts of the animal body, consist entirely of this ; and it is the business of cookery to boil them down into this jelly. It is this fibrous part, then, which is secreted by the vessels for repairing all the wastes and all the accidents of the body ; when a muscle is wasted by violent action, or by fevers, or by long confinement is absorbed, gluten is secreted to fill it up ; when a bone is broken, much of this jelly is deposited in a bed for vessels to stretch into, and a new bone is quickly formed ; when soft parts are cut, gluten is poured out betwixt them ; when viscera are inflamed, pure gluten, white, and membranaceous-like, is poured out betwixt them ; when the uterus is to be prepared for receiving the impregnated ovum, gluten is poured out into the womb ; and in all these cases it is the foundation of a union with the surrounding parts. In short, this gluten forms, nourishes, supports, restores the parts of the animal body ; but far from considering it either simply, or along with red globules, as containing the principle of life, I find it as perfect in dead vegetables as in living animals ; and view it only as that particular form of matter which nature has wisely appointed for our chief nourishment and support.\*

#### THE SERUM.

The serum is the thinnest and most fluid part of the blood, which dilutes the other parts, and receives all those extraneous substances which often circulate in our system : this must be kept in view when its properties are to be told, for though it so

\* It will easily be perceived, that here I choose to sink, in this general description, all those lesser distinctions which are so imperfectly proved. Distinctions betwixt the gluten and the albumen or serum in animals, or betwixt the vegetable gluten and the starch in vegetables, I hold to be very vain ; these are but various stages of the same product ; what is less perfect in the albumen, is more perfect in the gluten ; and a little more or a little less of the oxygene or acidifying principle, makes perhaps all the difference : these parts, as they are more or less perfect, contain more or less of this principle, and are more or less ready to congeal ; both kinds of jelly, when treated with nitrous acid, give out azotic gas ; azotic gas, united with hydrogen gas, forms the volatile alkali ; and the giving out of this azotic gas to nitrous acid, or the forming of the volatile alkali in the act of putrefying, are the chief tests by which animal matter is known. Then to make formal distinctions betwixt the tendinous and the fleshy parts of animals, and to call the first gelatinous and the latter glutinous parts, as formed of the proper gluten, seems very vain ; and not less so to make essential distinctions betwixt the gelatinous parts of vegetables and those of animals, since the slight change of proportion of azot or oxygene must make the whole difference when these vegetable jellies are assumed into the living system and completely analysed.

exactly resembles the white of an egg, that some have in comparing the two, written whole pamphlets upon the subject, and named it the Albuminous Fluid, although it coagulates like gluten, although it putrefies like flesh, although it gives out upon distillation ammonia and a black and fetid oil; yet it is most natural that along with these it should contain also some foreign bodies, as a saccharine or extractive matter, belonging to vegetables, and some proportion of the oxalic, malic, or other vegetable acids.

Serum or the albuminous fluid is like whey, of a yellowish, or rather greenish colour, of an unctuous or slippery feeling among the fingers; it is slightly saline, and its salt is chiefly of an alkaline nature; it contains soda completely formed, by which it turns vegetable reds to green; it coagulates firmly with a heat much lower than that which makes it boil: being dropped into hot water, it coagulates as it falls; by 150 degrees of heat it coagulates into an albumen like the white of an egg; but if gradually evaporated, the cake which remains is quite similar to the gluten of the blood. It is upon this alkali that the fluidity of the serum seems to depend; spirits of wine do indeed seem to congeal the blood, but it is not a true coagulation, since it depends merely on the avidity of spirits for water, by which the spirit of wine takes the water to itself, thickens the serum, and makes the whole turbid; but acids produce a true coagulation by seizing that alkali on which the fluidity truly depends.

To say that lime coagulates the serum, but melts down the lymph, is by no means to establish a rational distinction betwixt the cake of gluten and this gluten which the serum holds dissolved: till some decisive difference be proved important to the whole system, I cannot but believe that they are one; nor can I, when I see the water which washes the coagulum impregnated with gluten, believe that there is any difference. Yet we need not wonder that such ignorant unmeaning distinctions as these should have been made, since the halitus of the blood, or that vapour which rises from it while it cools, was examined with a most ludicrous affectation of accuracy, though it is merely water alone, having a slightly urinous smell, from its connection with the blood.

The serum dilutes the whole mass, and no other fluid can we find so fit to hold in solution a proportion of gluten, or so fit to support the form of the red globules, or so fit to pass easily and smoothly along all the delicate vessels, without exuding through the pores. For in truth it is with the serum as with our injections; if we inject simple water, it exudes at every

pore, and the whole cavities are filled, and the whole body swelled and bloated ; but when we mix size, *i. e.* gluten, common glue, with our water, it penetrates to the extremest parts, yet still keeps in the channels of the arteries, and often returns by the veins.

The whole fabric of the blood should now be exposed in one continued view, consisting of three distinct parts, whose uses are these :

First, we see the SERUM diluting and tempering the whole, preserving its lubricous and fluid form, containing and dissolving all foreign matters which may have got access to the system, and running them off by various excretories ; for the secretions are chiefly from the serum, containing gluten enough to support the tenuity of the blood, salt enough to keep the red globules in their form, and conveying also a sufficiency of lymph into the most delicate and bloodless parts of the body : and this above all is a most singular property of the serum, that it admits freely the air to pass through and impregnate the blood ; for when the coagulum of the blood is drowned deep in its serum, if turned up and exposed to air it reddens ; which, if oil, mucilage, water, or any other fluid, be substituted instead of serum, it will not do.

Next, we see the red globules of large diameter, but in quantity very small, *i. e.* in proportion to the whole system ; of large diameters, that they may not go into the very minute vessels, and in small quantities, because they are accumulated round the heart, and in the greater vessels.

And lastly, the gluten is the most important part of the blood ; that which, being dissolved in the serum, pervades even the most exquisite vessels of the system ; the part from which all our solids are formed, and into which all our solids, and even fluids, can be resolved. But allowing for the various proportions of the water which dilutes the serum and the red globules (whose proportion to the fluids cannot be named it is so small,) and some saccharine or extractive matter which is in the serum of the blood—what is there except gluten in all the animal system ; Serum, coagulum, flesh, tendons, ligaments, bones, all are composed of it ; and when gluten is thus united to the solids, forming with them one individual body, it acquires new powers, and is indeed alive.

This analysis of the blood contains the analysis of almost all the humours or secretions of the body. Observe how nearly the urine resembles the serum, indeed the urine, like the serum, preserves the peculiar form of the red globules, and sweat is but a serum loaded with salts ; observe how little saliva dif-

fers from the serum ; observe how perfectly the serum resembles milk, since mixing serum with water produces a milky fluid, that is, a fluid which gathers cream on the top, and coagulates with acids and heat. The water of dropsies is purely serum ; the mucus of hollow passages is little else than inspissated serum ; the bile itself is said to be imitated by keeping putrid blood. In short, it is obvious that on the coagulable lymph depend all the internal secretions, *i. e.* for supplying the wastes of the system, for enabling it to grow, for repairing bruised or cut flesh, or broken bones ; that on the serum which dilutes the blood, and contains all such foreign bodies as might be injurious to the system, all the excretions, as urine, sweat, saliva, tears, &c. &c. depend.\*

I have said, "that the blood is a fluid of a rich and beautiful colour ; vermilion-coloured in the arteries, strong purple in the veins, and black, or almost so, at the right side of the heart." When we open the thorax of a living Dog, the lungs collapse, the heart soon ceases to play, the Dog languishes, expires, is revived again when we blow up its lungs :—then begins again the motion of the heart, the black blood of the right auricle is driven into the lungs ; the blood goes round to the left side of the heart of a florid red ; and this purple blood of the veins, the vermilion blood of the arteries, the change happening so plainly from access of air, is a phenomenon of the most interesting nature, and binds us to look into the doctrines of chemistry for the solution of a phenomenon to which there is in all the animal economy nothing equal.

It is the study of air and aerial fluids that has brought to light all the beautiful discoveries of which modern chemistry can boast. The simplicity of the facts in chemistry, the correctness of the reasoning, the grandeur which now the whole science assumes, is very pleasing ; and makes us not without hope, that by this science, all others, and ours in an especial manner, may be improved ; for the action of vessels will do much in forming and changing our fluids : all the rest is chemistry alone.

\* When the blood and solids of animal bodies come to be resolved in their ultimate parts, we find a variety of combinations which belongs to another science, and which in this place it were tedious to explain. But still there is one great distinction betwixt animal and vegetable matter, which should not be left unnoticed. Animal matters always when dissolved by nature, fall into a putrid state, and give only volatile alkali. Vegetables, when they dissolve, fall into fermentation, and produce acids or wine ; not that alkalies are necessarily contained in their formal state in the animal body, but that the animal body contains much mephitic or basis of nitrous air, which, combining with the inflammable air afforded by decomposed water or by their oils, forms the volatile alkali.



The older chemists were coarse in their methods, bold in their conjectures, in theory easily satisfied with any thing which others would receive. They condescended to repeat incessantly the same unvarying process over each article of the *materia medica* ; and among hundreds of medicinal plants which they had thus analysed, they could find no variety of principles, nor any other variety of parts and names than those of phlegm, and oil, and alkali, and acid, and sulphur, and coal. By this they disburthened their consciences of all they knew, pleased their scholars, and set the physicians to work, forming magnificent theories of salts, sulphurs, and oils ; for such has ever been the connection of chemistry with physiology, that good or bad, they have still gone hand in hand.

The older chemists thought that they had arrived at the pure elements while they were working grossly among the grosser parts of bodies. They could know nothing of the *aërial* forms of bodies, for they allowed these parts to escape. When their subjects, by extreme force of heat, rose upwards in the form of air, no further investigation was attempted ; it was supposed that the subject of their operation was consumed, annihilated, wasted into air, and quite gone. When they thus stopped at airs, they stopped where only their analysis became interesting or simple ; stopping where they stopped, among their oils and sulphurs, they made their science a mere rhapsody of words. Philosophy they considered so little, as not to know that the lightest air is really a heavy body, and that with weight and substance other properties must be presumed.

Modern chemistry begins by assuring us, that these airs are often the densest bodies in the rarest forms, that airs are as material, as manifest to the senses, as fairly subject to our operations, as the dense bodies from which they are produced : that it is heat alone (a substance which irresistibly forces its way into all bodies) that converts any substance into the *aërial* form : that some bodies require for their fluidity merely the heat of the atmosphere, and so cannot appear on this planet in any solid form : that others require some new principle to be added, in order to give them the gaseous or *aërial* form : that others require very intense heat to force them into this state ; but that all *aërial* fluids arise, or must be presumed to arise, from some solid body or basis, which solid basis is dilated by heat into an air. The solid basis of some airs can be made apparent, as of fixed air which proceeds from charcoal ; others, as pure air, or azotic air (the great constituents of our atmosphere,) cannot be produced to view into any solid form. But those airs which cannot be exhibited in any solid form, can yet be so combined with other bodies as to increase their weight,



and give them qualities of a very peculiar nature, and these airs can be alternately combined with a body and abstracted again, adding or abstracting from its weight and chemical properties, not only in a perceptible, but in a wonderful degree; so that these abstractions and combinations constitute some of the most general and important facts. When the old chemists, then, neglected to examine these airs, they refrained from examining the last elements of bodies at the very moment in which they came within their power.

That these must be the most material and important facts in all the science, it is easy to explain; for chemistry, ever since it has been a science, has rested upon one single point. There are certain great operations in chemistry which we perceive to have the strictest analogy with each other, or rather to be the same; the operations are, the combustion of inflammable bodies, the respiration of animals, the calcination of metals; and whatever theory explains one explains the whole. The older chemists observed, that when they burnt an inflammable body, the surrounding air was contaminated, the substance itself was annihilated, nothing remained of its former existence but the foul air; and they supposed that this inflammable body consisted of a pure inflammable principle, which was the substance which spoiled the air, lessening its bulk, and making it unfit for supporting any longer either combustion or animal life.—When an animal breathed in confined air, they found the phenomenon still the same; the animal contaminated the air, and expired itself; left the air unfit for burning or breathing, loaded, as they supposed, with the inflammable principle. When they calcined a metal (which is done merely by heating the metal and exposing it to air,) they found, as in these other operations, the air contaminated, the metal losing its metallic lustre, ductility, and all the marks of a metal,—acquiring (in certain examples) new qualities, like those of some mineral acid, and becoming of course a most caustic drug: but above all, they uniformly observed the metal to increase in weight.

To account for all these discordant changes was the most difficult part of all: it was indeed easy to say, that combustion was the giving out of an inflammable principle to the air; and to say concerning respiration, that it was the business of the air to take away continually the superabundant phlogiston of the blood; but how a metal should pass from a mild to a most acrimonious and caustic state; and above all, how by the loss of its inflammable principle it should not lose in weight, but increase in weight! This was the Gordian knot which they had to untie, and which they cut lustily, betaking themselves, in defiance of all philosophy, to the absurd project of a principle

of absolute lightness. They all agreed to call the phlogistic principle a principle of absolute levity ; and thus their doctrine stood for many years, viz. that when phlogiston, or inflammable principle, was added to the calx of any metal, as to red lead, by roasting it with any inflammable body—the metallic lustre, tenacity, ductility, were restored, and the metal became lighter withal, because it now had within it the principle of levity. But that when by heat and air it was calcined, this principle was driven out, and then the metallic lustre, tenacity, ductility, &c. were lost by the absence of the inflammable principle upon which they all depended ; but the weight of it was increased, for the principle of levity was gone. This is the brief abstract of the theory to which the very best chemists have addicted themselves down to the present times.

But the chief perfection of modern chemistry is, that its apparatus is so perfect, that it can employ exactly a certain quantity of air in calcining a metal ; it can collect that air again to the twentieth part of a grain ; it can prove whether the metal has really been giving out any inflammable principle to the air, or whether it has received matter from the air, and how much expressly it has gained or lost. Modern chemistry proves to us, that it is not the loss of any principle that endows a metal, for example, with negative powers ; but the direct acquisition of a new principle, which endows it with positive powers. Thus if you take a quantity of mercury, and expose it slowly, that is, for a long time to heat and air, the following changes take place ; it gradually loses its metallic lustre, the upper part of it assumes first a yellow and then a red colour, small red particles are seen floating on the surface of the mercury ; and these are the *mercurius precipitatus per se*, a most acrid calx of mercury. If, first, you estimate how much air has been expended during the process, you find that the weight of the mercury is increased in exact proportion ; if you put that calx into a gun-barrel, put the gun-barrel into the fire, and by mere force of heat drive out this air, you find the quantity of air exactly equivalent to the quantity expended in the process ; you find the metal grow lighter, and recover its metallic qualities and lustre in proportion as the air is expelled. In short, we find the metal heavier when combined with air, lighter when the air is driven out ; we find it having the qualities of a metal when uncombined with air, when combined with air having the qualities of a calx : then plainly this caustic form of the metal is not a negative quality, it is a positive one, proceeding from the infusion of this new principle from the air.

By such proofs as these chemistry has explained, in a most

philosophical way, how all these phlogistic processes, as they were called, depend, not on the abstraction of phlogiston, but on the addition of a new principle: that they all arise from one positive power, that the same principle gives life to fuel, heaviness (and other effects of calcination) to metals, acidity to acids, and redness to the blood. These are all performed by one power; they are all essentially one process; they are all effected by the communication of one sole principle, viz. the basis of pure air.

Upon our atmosphere and its surprising harmony with all parts of nature; with animal and vegetable life; with water, metals, acids, and all the solid bodies into which it enters—much more depends than it is easy to conceive. Could we have supposed that it was the cause, not merely of life in all living creatures, but almost the cause of all the properties that reside in the most solid forms? Could we have supposed that the air rendered heavy bodies heavier, changed metals into caustic earths, converted many bodies into acids, changed inflammable air into the pure element of water, which at least we have hitherto conceived to be pure? Yet, if there be one word of truth in chemistry, all this is true.

The atmosphere contains various gases or airs; but one only, viz. vital air, is useful to respiration, combustion, and animal life; that purer air must, like every other, arise from some solid basis; that basis cannot be shown in any substantial form, but it can be combined with many various bodies, so as to give them an increased weight and new qualities: and thence we presume to say, whenever we see a body, by such a process, acquiring such qualities, that it acquires them by absorbing the basis of pure air; for pure air is nothing but this presumed basis dilated into the form of air by heat; and when it combines with any body, it gives out its heat; so that in all these processes heat is produced. And although inflammable bodies, metals, acids, and animal blood, seem very distinct from each other; although combustion, breathing, calcination, and the forming of acids, are processes seemingly very unlike; yet they are in all their essential points the same, viz. a change of qualities and a production of heat in consequence of the absorption of pure air.

First, when an inflammable body is BURNED or consumed by fire, the basis of pure air is combining with the combustible body; the air is entering into a new combination, and therefore must give out its heat; it combines rapidly, gives out its heat rapidly, is wasted; the inflammable body burns and seems to be consumed: but if we catch that air which escapes from the inflammable body, we find it to be equal exactly to

the whole weight of the air and of the burning body that have been consumed ; and this air consists of two parts, viz. of the substance which was burnt, and of the basis of pure air. Thus, for example, when we burn charcoal or carbon, the whole substance of it, weight for weight, is converted into an air, which is called fixed or fixable air ; the same which is discharged from stoves, the same also which is found in pits, the same which oozes through the ground in the Grotto del Cane, the same which floats upon the surface of fermenting vats, and which is so much heavier than common air that it can be taken out from a vat in basons, and poured from dish to dish. Combustion, then, is a process which consists in the rapid assumption of the basis of pure air, and a consequent conversion of the burning body into an air endowed with peculiar qualities and powers.

If, then, the oxygenation of the blood be a process like this, it must differ chiefly in degree ; it might in certain circumstances become too rapid, and resemble an actual combustion ; and so in certain circumstances it does, for our atmosphere is so tempered that no more than 27 parts out of 100 consists of pure air ; the rest is food for vegetables, but not fit to maintain flame or animal life. This is the reason that even burning as well as breathing are slow processes, and that an animal, if made to breathe pure air, or vital air as it is called, gets the basis of air too rapidly united to its system, is consumed and inflamed quickly, and dies.

Secondly, the process of CALCINATION is the same in all metals ; it also is an assumption of the pure air, or rather of its basis, with a change of qualities and increase of weight : if you calcine lead slowly, it becomes first yellow, then orange, then red ; it becomes heavier, so that from 100 pounds of lead you have 110 pounds of litharge, or calx of lead : if you calcine mercury, it also becomes first yellow, then red, and much heavier than at first : if you distil any of these metals, you can by heat merely drive out the purest air from them ; they recover their brilliancy and grow lighter, because the basis of air is expelled. The basis of pure air is expelled, not in that solid form in which it was embodied by the calx, but being now combined with heat, it appears in the form of vital air ; the air is much purer than that of the atmosphere which was used in the process, because the metal absorbs or appropriates to itself nothing but the purest air, leaving the azotic or foul air behind : and finally, if you wish to see the harmony betwixt combustion and calcination, or to be assured that calcination is truly the burning of a metal, take some of this pure air, which is three times purer than the atmosphere,



and raises an intenser flame ; plunge into it a piece of iron wire, which is made red-hot ; and this wire (which would only have wasted or rusted into a calx in the common atmosphere) will in the pure air burst out into a brilliant white flame, and burn entirely while it has such air ; nay, some metals, as zinc, burn even in our common atmosphere with a most brilliant flame.

From this second process, must it not be presumed that the principle which gives an increase of weight and such singular properties to various metals, must have very interesting effects upon the blood ?

Thirdly, it is from this principle also that all acids are formed ; and as oxyd is the Greek name for acid, the great Lavoisier has thought fit to give a name to the basis of air, or that principle which is obvious only when operating in such processes as these. He adds to the Greek name for acid that verb which implies the generation of any substance ; he calls it thus oxygene, or the principle which generates acids. It were easy to show how truly this great point is supported by all the particular operations in chemistry ; it shall be sufficient to observe a few. When we burn sulphur in open air, it seems to be consumed ; but when we burn it in close vessels, still giving a free access to air, we find it converted into an acid the most ponderous of all, weighing greatly more than the sulphur from which it was procured. The operation is done in close vessels ; nothing can pass but what is known, and nothing is more certain than that the whole of this wonderful and rapid change is the mere effect of the sulphur, which is an acidifiable base, assuming the acidifying principle by which alone it can become an acid. Phosphorus being burnt in a close glass upon the point of a wire, the vital part of the atmosphere is consumed, the azotic air (which the ancients mistook for their phlogiston) remains, the whole phosphorus is changed into phosphoric acid, and the whole acid when weighed expressly equals the phosphorus which was burnt, and the air which was consumed along with it. Nay, arsenic, which is a metal, being calcined, is converted into a perfect acid. Thus we see, first, that calcination is a mere combustion, since it can be made so rapid as to be attended with heat and flame ; next we see that acidification is, like calcination, attended with heat and flame, and an acquisition of weight and of properties like those of calces. We see some metals converted into proper acids ; acids and metals mixing in qualities with each other : acids and metals are both acidifiable bases, both are capable of receiving new and similar properties, by assuming into their composition the basis of



pure air ; and in one single process the whole set of phenomena are exemplified, for in burning arsenic we have combustion, calcination, and generation of acid, all in one process, the product being named indifferently oxyd of arsenic, or white calx of arsenic.\*

But if most acidifiable bases be thus forced by combination to forsake their solid and assume their aerial form, others more singular still are recalled from their aerial form, and condensed into the fluid form of a strong acid. Thus azotic or nitrogene air, which forms the great bulk of our atmosphere, is converted by oxygenous or pure air into an acid form ;† it becomes nitrous acid, nitric acid, nitrous air, strong or weak according to the various degrees of oxygenation communicated to it ; and thus nitrous air, by its appetite for oxygene, and by its change of colour and its condensation, whenever it takes oxygene from the air, makes a eudiometer or measure for the purity of the air ; and, according to the purity of the atmosphere, more turbidness and more redness is produced in the nitrous air, and a greater loss of bulk, which may be marked on a scale.

Thus are all acids formed of an acidifiable basis, various each according to its kind, on which the variety of acids depends ; but these all become acid by the addition of one uniform principle, viz. the basis of pure air, which is the cause of acidity in all bodies : and this third great fact in chemistry may well suggest to us a higher view of our present subject ; for this principle, which bestows weight and causticity on metals, acidity on acid bases, and new properties on all it touches, must make similar, or at least important, changes on the blood, converting it into an oxyd or subacid ; and we may fairly begin our next general fact under the title of the oxydation or oxygenation of the blood.

The oxydation of the blood makes a fact no less important in physiology than those are in chemistry ; for as there are various marks of the influence of oxygene on the blood itself, there are terrible proofs of its importance in the system, and how miserable the person is who has imperfect organs or an ill oxygenated blood.

Nature, disregarding all occasional supplies, as by the ab-

\* It is necessary to add nitre to make it burn. The result is not directly an acid, but a neutral salt formed of the arsenical acid joined to the alkali of nitre ; without the help of nitrous acid it is only an oxyd or imperfect acid ; and it is necessary to use the hyper-oxygenated muriatic acid for communicating to it a sufficiency of oxygene to constitute it a perfect acid.

† *N. B.* It is necessary to inclose them in one vessel, and to pass the electric spark through them that they may unite.

sorption of the skin, the assimilation of aliments, &c. has appointed one great organ for the oxygenation of the blood, viz. the lungs. In opening the breast of a living creature we best see the connection of respiration with the great system; but it is out of the body that we can best understand its particular effects upon the BLOOD.

The most obvious effect of air is its heightening the colour of the blood. If we expose blood to fixed air, or azotic air, it continues dark; these fluids communicate nothing, they have no effect on the colour of the blood: when we expose blood to atmospheric air, it assumes a florid colour; for in the atmosphere there is a large proportion of oxygene gas: if, lastly, we expose it to oxygene gas, the purest of all air, it grows extremely florid; and whenever it changes its colour, it is by absorbing oxygene, for it reduces in the same proportion the quantity of air; what it absorbs is the oxygene or pure air, what it leaves is mephitic, unfit for combustion or animal life.\*

Blood when exposed to the air becomes red chiefly on the surface, it remains black beneath, but by turning up the clot to the air all the surfaces become red. If air be blown into a tied vein, the blood which was black in the vein becomes florid; and when the air is pressed out again, it becomes black. If the air-pump be exhausted over a dish of blood, the blood becomes dark in the vacuum: and it becomes florid when the air is allowed to rush in again. If you expose blood in a moist bladder, the blood is oxygenated through the walls of the bladder; which brings this experiment as close as may be to the phenomenon of blood oxygenated through the walls of the lungs. Though serum or milk be interposed, or urine, still the blood is oxygenated, because these are perfect animal fluids; but it is not oxygenated if oil, mucilage, or mere water, be interposed.

When we open a Frog, or Newt,† or other amphibious creature, we see a long and slender artery, accompanied by a slender vein, running from top to bottom along the whole surface of their lungs; and while their heart continues to beat, we see this pulmonic artery black, the vein red, the lungs themselves most delicate and pellucid, like the swimming bladder of a fish: even in the extremities of the human system the blood of a vein

\* Mr. Beddoes, in his last Book, makes hydrocarbon as effectual in reddening the blood as oxygen air. What are we to think of this? Is it a freak of nature or of the author?

† See Chap. III.

is dark, of an artery red ; so that surgeons distinguish venous and arterial hemorrhagies in this way.

From these facts we may understand why the blood of the womb, of sinuses, of varices, and of all stagnant veins, is so offensive and black ; and why that blood is so very pure and florid which is coughed up from the lungs. Is not the face livid in apoplexies or strangulations, in hanging or drowning, in fits of passion or of coughing, or in any accident which interrupts the lungs ? The face of a child during a paroxysm of the whooping cough, is it not completely black ? Is not the hand livid when the arm is compressed or tied up, and its blood prevented from returning to the lungs and heart ? Are not tumours dark-coloured from dilated veins which return their blood too slowly ? Are not those mulberry marks which are born with us just small aneurisms full of ill oxygenated blood ?—Then this first effect of oxygenation is a reddening of the blood. The menstrual blood, the blood of ecchymosis (as in those who have been whipt,) the blood of aneurismal bags, are all black ; and the blood of varices is so very black, that the ancients said they were filled with atrabilis or black bile. The stripes inflicted on a soldier as a punishment are at first of the most lively red, but soon become black.

The next effect of oxygenation is the endowing the blood with a peculiar stimulant power, by which it is continually operating upon the living solid : this is a power which it is continually losing ; which it is every moment giving up to the solids ; and which no other process but respiration can restore.—This stimulant power the blood gradually loses as it circulates round the body ; it is quite effete when it returns to the right side of the heart : the heart of a creature never moves, if we allow its lungs to lie collapsed ; but the heart returns to act the very instant that pure air is forced into the lungs, and so communicated to the blood. This stimulant power is most of all apparent when we force a living creature to breathe nothing but the purest air ; for oxygenated or vital air makes this process too rapid ; the pulse rises, the eyes become red and prominent, the creature seems drunk with the new stimulus, too great for its system. The universal heat of its body is greatly increased, the eyes are turgid and red, and at last a sweat breaks forth all over it ; and when dead, the lungs (it is said) are mortified or inflamed. But whatever the marks are, whether these signs of inflammation be really true, it is plain, since the creature dies, that pure air is fatal by a too rapid oxygenation of the blood. If, in our experiments upon a dying animal, we inflate the lungs with mephitic air, the heart does not act ; if we inflate its lungs with common air, the heart be-

gins to act ; if we inflate its lungs with oxygene air, the heart is irritated to a still more powerful action.

If we open the breast of a Frog and stop its breathing, we observe, first, its pulmonic blood florid, and the heart beating strongly : secondly, in half an hour the pulmonic blood has become dark, and the heart's motion has grown languid ; in a little while the pulmonic blood becomes black, and the pulsation of the heart ceases : and, lastly, the trachea of the Frog being untied, and the creature allowed to breathe again, the blood becomes florid, and the heart acts.

#### OF THE HEAT OF THE BLOOD.

The next effect of oxygene is said to be the communicating of HEAT to the lungs. But I suspect that if the small quantity of oxygene which can enter by the lungs does communicate heat, it must be not to the lungs, nor to the blood, but to the whole body through the medium of the blood. There are some who pretend to say, that when they draw in vital air, they feel a genial warmth in the breast, diffusing itself over all the body ; but it is easy to feel in this way, or any way, when a favourite doctrine is at stake, while those who know nothing about doctrines breathe the vital air without any peculiar feeling which they can explain.

There are many circumstances which make it hard to believe that there is, in consequence of the oxydation of the blood any remarkable generation of heat in the lungs. Oxydation of the blood, out of the body, is attended with no increase of heat, and yet we operate on a quantity of blood much greater than that which circulates through the lungs. We call this process not the oxygenation, but the oxydation of the blood, because we are conscious that it is an imperfect process ; it is perfect, indeed, with regard to its ultimate object, viz. that of communicating oxygene to the whole body ; but as an assumption of the acidifying principle into the blood itself, we see it to be so imperfect, the union so slight betwixt the oxygene and the blood, that it parts with it very easily ; the blood turns black again if its colour be not supported by the perpetual contact of air ; it is so imperfect, that we put it in the lowest point of saturation, and call it an oxyd or imperfect acid ; and how far it may be below the denomination even of an oxyd we do not know.

To suppose, but for a moment, that all the heat which warms the whole body emanates from the lungs, were a gross error in philosophy ; it were to suppose an accumulation of heat in the



lungs equal to this vast effect of heating the whole body. But were it so, we should feel a burning heat in the centre, a mortal coldness at the extremities, and marked differences in the heat of each part in proportion to its distance from the lungs. In fevers, we should feel only the intense heat of the centre ; we should be distressed, not with the heat in the soles of the feet or palms of the hands, or in the mouth and tongue ; we should feel only the heat of the lungs. When the limbs alone were cold, would the lungs warm them ? How could it warm them up to the right temperature without over-heating the whole body ? When a part were inflamed, how could the heat go from the lungs, particularly to that point, and rest there ?

From the lungs the heat could not be regularly diffused ; for in almost all the Amphibiae the lungs are far distant from the centre of the body, and could not communicate any degree of heat to the extremities without the greatest waste ; they would, according to this theory, have lungs for crying with, if they pleased to cry, but by no means for distributing heat. Those who have been the chief supporters of this doctrine, viz. of animal heat emanating from the lungs, have established their doctrines on very fantastical and absurd laws ; not merely of chemical changes producing heat in the lungs, but of the blood acquiring a greater capacity for heat than those substances have from which the blood itself is formed. The blood is formed from flesh, milk, wheat, rye, barley, and various other foods : these are curiously measured ; the degree of heat which they communicate to water is assumed as the truth of their absolute heat : the absolute heat of all kinds of food is declared to be greatly lower than that of the blood itself ; and this accumulation of heat in the blood is taken as a sure proof, that in respiration much heat is deposited upon the blood, it having a greater appetite or capacity of heat.

But concerning this doctrine, which in its philosophical as well as in its chemical part is now antiquated, it is allowable to say, more freely than of almost any other, that its intricacies are its beauties ; that it is a hypothesis illustrated by experiments, which have no other tendency than “ to make it look well in the face ;” and which are made with such affectation of niceness as is completely ludicrous. The author pretends to measure, to the tenth part of a degree, the proportions of heat in wheat, barley, flesh, milk, &c. Airs he also measures, showing the various capacities for heat in the different kinds of air to the tenth part of a degree ; a thing much fitter for a magician than a philosopher to undertake ; and which Dr. Crawford has executed so ill, that we are teased, or rather thoroughly exhausted, before we begin, with correcting mea-



tures and instruments and settling data ; while each new edition of the book on animal heat must be prefaced with new apologies, new confessions, new corrections, new calculations, unhinging so entirely the conclusions and calculations of former copies of it, that we find ourselves engaged, along with our instructor, in a wilderness of errors, from which we can have no hopes of being extricated.

Oxydation is a process which had no place in Dr. Crawford's views ; he never conceived that it was the presence of oxygene, as a new principle, which gave colour, stimulant powers, coagulability, and all its most useful properties, to the blood ; but he believed that pure air, uniting with inflammable air in the lungs, formed fixed air ; and this fixed air being incapable of containing the heat which it had while in the state of pure air, that heat was deposited, or, as it were, precipitated upon the blood. He maintains, that there are of inflammable air two kinds ; one capable of forming water, another of forming fixed air ; but fixed air, derived from inflammable gas of any kind, all chemists will deny. He begins his doctrine, therefore, not with a fact, but with a petitio principii ; and what is worse, his main experiment is wrong. He was extremely anxious to prove, that in proportion as air was changed by respiration, it gave out its heat to the blood ; he also wished to put respiration and combustion on one level ; and by this second thought he forgot entirely what he first had it in mind to prove. Accordingly, having inclosed a Guinea-pig in pure air, and under water, he found that the air which it had respired, communicated nearly the same heat to water that burning the same quantity of air would have done : by which he proved much more than he intended ; for he proved plainly by this, that all the heat which respiration can possibly generate is by the fixed air carried from the lungs, and he forgot to reserve any for going into the blood.

This slip of Dr. Crawford's leads us to perceive what becomes of any proportion of heat that may be generated in the lungs. In the first place, this respiration is not a rapid but a slow and gradual oxydation, for the quantity of pure air in the atmosphere is small. It is not a perfect oxydation, the blood bearing no marks of an acid, nor its oxydation causing any heat. It is not a fair nor permanent oxydation ; for blood soon loses its colour out of the body, and within the body it returns very quickly from the extremities of the circulating system into the heart, deprived of all its oxygene. The oxygene seems but slightly attached to the blood ; it is not so much united with the blood as conveyed by it ; and perhaps it is only when this principle is taken from the blood, and assimilated

with the several parts of the body, and fixed among its solids, that it gives out heat. This process of oxydation is intended rather for conveying new properties to the blood than for generating heat, and its chemical changes happen not so much in the lungs as in the extremities of the body.

But allowing it to be a perfect combination, a full oxygenation of the blood, and that this, like every other oxygenation, must give out heat exactly proportioned to the quantity of spoiled air, it is easy to perceive how this heat may be bestowed; for in respiration there is always a generation of fixed air; there is much water formed and discharged in halitus from the lungs; the heat, whatever is evolved, must be divided into three proportions: First, when a part of the oxygene attaches itself to the blood, heat will be evolved, which might be supposed to enter the blood: But, secondly, there is formed in the same moment a quantity of fixed air, which arises from a second portion of the oxygene uniting with the carbon of the blood; and this fixed air requires some proportion of the heat to keep it in its aërial form. Thirdly, a third portion of the oxygene unites itself with the hydrogen or inflammable air, and generates water; this water exhales in steam or halitus from the lungs: and how great a proportion of heat necessary to preserve water in the form of steam, is known to every tyro. Now, to prove that all the heat is expended, not upon the blood, but upon the halitus, or upon the fixed air, we have only to retort their own grand experiment upon the believers in this doctrine, viz. that the breath of an animal communicates the same proportion of heat to water that combustion does; of course none is left to pass into the blood. These philosophers do not mean to say that respiration is as rapid as combustion, or gives out the same quantity of heat in the same spaces; there are not even any two combustions, *i. e.* any two inflammable bodies, which are in this respect alike: they mean, no doubt, to acknowledge the one to be slow and the other rapid; they mean only that the same quantities of air being used in each process, the same quantities of heat will be produced; that one hundred ounces of air being burnt by a taper, and the same quantity of air exhausted by the breathing of any animal, the water which surrounds the air, in either case, will be raised to the same temperature, or, if surrounded with ice, the same quantities of ice will be dissolved. But to tell us this, is to tell us nothing; for without knowing the rapidity of the process, we know nothing of the intensity of the heat. Suppose, for example, that one of these philosophers had told us that iron-filings put into water to rust acquire the same quantity of oxygene that iron burnt in the fire does, and,

though slowly, gives out the same quantity of heat, because it can acquire no oxygene but what parts with its heat. All this is true ; but yet burning and rusting are very different, and so combustion and respiration are. While the vapour which issues from the lungs keeps to the temperature of 96°, and while the lungs and heart do not exceed in heat the rest of the body, there can be little chance of any heat being generated in the lungs, except what is balanced and carried off by the hydrogen and carbonic airs, or by the halitus from the natural secretions of the lungs.

That the animal heat is produced by the action of vessels ; that heat does not proceed from the lungs, but is produced in each part of the body—is beautifully proved by what happens in aneurism, where the artery is tied up (in the thigh for example ; ) and where we make, as it were, a great experiment upon animal heat, in the human body itself.

1st. Immediately after the operation, the pulse is stopped, the limb is benumbed, it grows cold, and sinks one or two degrees below the standard of its natural heat. This is the moment of total interruption in the great trunk, and of particular danger. 2dly, In a little while the limb begins to grow warm ; it swells, and gradually the limb, from being warm only, becomes hot, and the heat rises many degrees above the standard heat of the limb, and above the general heat of the rest of that system to which it belongs. In this second stage there is still no pulse ; which proves that the circulation in the great artery is not restored ; the heat, swelling, and slight inflammation which possesses the whole limb, plainly proceed from the universal action of all the smaller arteries, for the blood has not yet found out any one artery capable of diluting so far as to carry on the circulation easily, and restore the pulse. 3d. But in the next period the pulse begins to creep ; at last it is plainly felt ; then it waxes stronger from day to day, till in process of time it beats as vigorously as in the sound limb. Now the blood has forced and dilated some greater artery, the blood flows through the limb, as formerly, in one main channel. The smaller arteries are freed from their load, and cease from their excessive action, and, in exact proportion as the pulse returns, the unnatural heat subsides gradually, till at last it is reduced to the common heat of the body. Thus we may perceive very clearly, that it is while the communication with the system (and with the lungs of course) by the blood vessels is the most difficult, that the heat rises ; that when the free communication is restored, it falls ; that the intermediate period, in which there is plainly, from the redness and swelling of the limb, an excess of action in all its smaller arteries, is the period

of excessive heat ; and indeed' we may observe, though in a less striking way, the same phenomenon in every inflammation, or, in other terms, in every local disease, viz. the temperature changed, without any apparent dependence on that of the system at large. We perceive in the clearest manner that heat is continually formed in all the extremities of the system ; and when we think of the processes which are continually going on in various parts, we cannot but believe that oxygene is completely assimilated, and gives out its heat, not when it is received into the blood, with which it seems so slightly united, but when it is distributed through the body, and assimilated with its parts, of which it forms so important a principle. In the human body various acids are produced ; the phosphoric acid ; the lithic acid, or that which is excreted by the urine ; the *acidum pingue*, or acid of fat, for fat is a proper oxyd from which this animal acid can be easily obtained. In Ants and other animals peculiar acids are formed : these certainly are direct proofs that the oxygene is deposited from the blood.

But in reflecting upon this most difficult of all subjects, the generation of heat in the living body, many things are to be taken into the calculation, which seem, on the slightest glance, to be far more important than this deposition of oxygene from the blood. It is a law of nature, to which, as far as we know, no exception is found, that a body while it passes from an aërial to a fluid form, or from a fluid to a solid form, gives out heat. Now, what is the whole business of the living system but a continual assimilation of new parts, making them continually pass from a fluid into a solid form ? The whole nourishment of the body goes on in the extreme vessels, and is a continual assumption of new parts. The extreme vessels are continually employed in forming some acids, which appear naked in the secretions ; in forming oxyds, as the fat and the jellies of the membranous and white parts ; in the various depositions of muscle, bone, tendon, &c. for these are all continually absorbed, thrown off by the urine and incessantly renewed. They are continually employed in filling all the interstices of the body with a bland fluid or halitus ; they are continually employed in forming secretions of various kinds. In performing all this the power of the vessels may do much ; but the ultimate effect in each process must be a chemical change, and perpetual changes will produce a constant heat. Place the organ and focus of this animal heat in the centre of the body, and you are embarrassed in a thousand difficulties ; allow this heat to arise in each part according to its degree of action, and each part provides for itself.

But how then, some will say, shall this heat be regulated ? I



say plainly by the heart and lungs. The lungs regulate the stimulant power of the blood, the heart regulates the action of the arteries, in so far as regards the stimulus of fulness and distention ; and with these to regulate the centre, nothing can alter the heat of the extremities except partial actions, that is disease.

I will conclude then, that oxygene, if it do communicate heat, does so, " not to the lungs nor to the blood, but to the whole body through the medium of the blood."

#### OF THE RESPIRATION OF ANIMALS.

The effects of oxydation then are, to redden the blood, to renew its stimulant power, and to communicate heat, not so much to the blood as to the whole body through the medium of the blood, and to assist in the secretions and chemical changes which are incessantly going on in all parts of the system. This is accomplished by the perpetual and rapid motion of the blood through the lungs ; and there it is exposed to our atmosphere, which is a mixed fluid very different from what we at first conceive, or what our ignorant wishes might desire to have it ; not consisting merely of air fit to be breathed, but for the greatest part formed of an air which is most fatal to animal life, whence it has the name of Azotic Gas. Of an hundred measures of atmospheric air, we find twenty-seven only to consist of vital or pure air ; seventy-two consist of azotic air as it is called, fatal to animal life ; and one measure only is fixed air, which is also an unrespirable air. But of these twenty-seven parts of pure air, seventeen parts only are effected by respiration ; so that in respiration we use much less than a fifth part, even of the small quantity of air which we take in at each breath.

The change of the air by respiration is this chiefly ; that the quantity is diminished by the abstraction of a part of the vital air ; that there is formed a quantity of fixed air, which is generated in the lungs ; and that there is discharged along with these a quantity of watery halitus. Therefore atmospheric air, after it has been breathed, is found to have suffered these changes : First, It contains now a considerable proportion of fixed air, which is easily discovered, and even weighed, because when a caustic alkali is exposed to it, the alkali absorbs the fixed air and becomes mild. Secondly, It has less of the vital air, as is easily ascertained by the eudiometer which measures the purity of the whole : and, thirdly, all that remains is merely azotic air, unfit for animal life, or for supporting flame. The oxygene, then, in part unites itself with the blood ; in part it



forms fixed air by combining with the carbon of the lungs, in part it forms water by combining with the hydrogen of the blood. Respiration frees the blood of two noxious principles, the hydrogen and carbon, the charcoal and the inflammable air : and it insinuates a new principle, viz. the oxygen, into the blood.

Nature has appointed but a small proportion of vital air for our use : our atmosphere is so constituted as to hold but a fourth part of vital air, and of that small proportion one half only is used in the lungs. We see by this how necessary this contamination of our atmosphere is, which seems so unfavourable to life : nature intended that we should breathe slowly a modified atmosphere ! With nothing but the purest air to breathe, our life would be quickly consumed, like that deflagration of iron, which is so rapid in vital air, while it burns so moderately and slowly in the common air.

These assistances which we have from chemistry are but a promise of what that science may do ; nothing of all that we know concerning the chemistry of the blood is either perfect or sure : we have our expectations still of seeing things more completely explained ; but our expectations are not like those of Mr. Moises, who, in a certain dissertation on the blood, seems so full of his new lessons in chemistry, and so confident of his future achievements in that science, as to expect that muscular motion shall be very thoroughly explained, and that it will be found to be nothing else, in all the world, but “an explosion of hydrogen and oxygen,” and God knows what !—but it is after the manner of “a steam-engine ;” and if his scheme holds, they are to be fired off “by means of the nervous electricity of Galvani\* !”

#### OF THE RESPIRATION OF PLANTS.

But after this view of animal respiration, it is not easy to refrain from saying a few words on the respiration of plants, which bears a relation to animals of infinite importance, and indeed to all nature.

Water has all the appearance of a pure and simple element, but it is in truth a compound body, consisting of two parts ; of inflammable air for its basis, and of oxygen combined with it, in that great proportion which the great appetite of inflammable air requires : and as inflammable air, when saturated

\* Vide page 236.

with oxygene, forms not any acid air, but pure water, it has changed its name, and is now called hydrogene air. When we make water pass through a bed of charcoal, heated to a great degree, the oxygene is seized by the carbon and converted into fixed air; while the hydrogene of the water is collected in its proper form of inflammable air. When we make water fall drop by drop into a gun-barrel, heated to a high degree, we find that the oxygene calcines the gun-barrel, the inflammable air is collected in the pneumatic apparatus; and the oxygene which has calcined the iron, and the inflammable air which is received in the glass vessels, exactly account for the quantity of water which has been analysed.

Nay, we can carry this process much farther than many of the other delicate processes in chemistry; we can re-compose this water. If we mix in a jar inflammable and pure air, and fire the electric spark through them, water is instantly formed, weighing exactly the quantity of both the airs\*. Thus, both by synthesis and analysis, we prove that water is composed of pure and of inflammable air; we find (what it seems difficult to believe, though it was foretold by the great Newton) that water contains an inflammable body; we find, to our great astonishment, while we are regarding the atmosphere which surrounds us as the great magazine of air, that water, where its presence never was suspected, contains an infinitely greater quantity of vital air than the atmosphere; that our atmosphere contains  $\frac{27}{100}$  parts only, while water contains  $\frac{85}{100}$  of pure air.

We find this decomposition of water offering new connections, and great views of nature, in all the departments of vegetable and animal life; which, in this place at least, we dare not pursue. How perfectly simple the structure of the most delicate plants and flowers is, may be easily seen in the regularity of those vessels which run through them in one curve or slightly spiral line from root to flower. This simplicity of structure must be presumed from a thousand facts in gardening, very ordinary but very surprising: parts may be cut from one plant and engrafted on another; slips shoot and thrive, and grafts may be inserted with either end downwards; if with the upper part downwards, still it thrives; the upper part then sends roots into the earth, while that which should have been the root puts forth leaves. It is still a more curious proof of the simple organization of plants, that all the parts

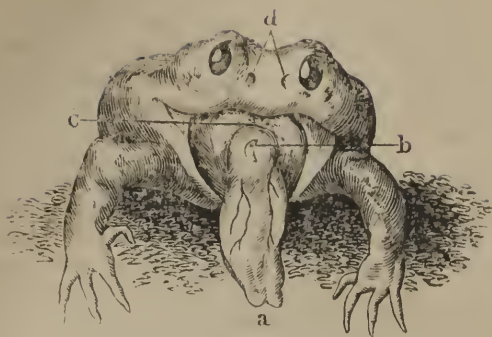
\* These beautiful experiments were first made in England by Priestly, Warletire, and Cavendish (vide Philosophical Transactions, anno 1784); and when Lavoisier was first told of water being formed by exploding inflammable air, he said it was a thing which he could not believe.

of plants, their roots, stalks, leaves, fruit, are all capable of performing the common functions apart: the branches or leaves of plants, if plunged in soil, pump up their sap as usual; even the leaves, strewed upon the surface of water, absorb the water; and if it be impregnated, for example, with fixed air, they absorb the air, decompose it, reserve the carbon, and treasure it up in their own substance, and emit nothing but the purest air.

Many things I must here pass over in silence; as, how plants perform their functions, and assimilate the principles of colour, taste, and smell, only when stimulated and aided by the presence of heat and light; how, when they absorb the atmosphere along with their other food, they use chiefly the carbonic or mephitic airs, and breathe out the pure air again, or reserve only smaller proportions, in order to form their sweets, and modify their various acids; and fit them for fermentation, by which all their most valuable products are evolved. Nor dare I stay to relate the curious harmony betwixt the airs which they thus absorb, and the ærial acids, spirits, and other products, which fermentation displays.

I have mentioned the simplicity of their organization, only that I might observe once more how perfectly they are nourished by water alone, and how their simple organization converts this apparently simple element into their own substance. For water being absorbed by any plant is decomposed thus: the inflammable air is assumed into the plant, and becomes a part of its substance\*: the oxygene is in quantity infinitely too great to be altogether digested or used; the oxygene or vital air therefore exhales from plants, in a continual stream; all that air which would poison animals is used by plants, and all the air which animals contaminate, plants renew. The freshness of the country, the delights of spring, and all that infusion of health and spirits which we feel in a morning's walk, are now no mystery to us; for at that hour the plants are by the sun and moisture roused from their sleep, and this process is begun. Perhaps there is not in all nature a more beautiful harmony than this, that the foul breath of animals gives life to plants, while the air respired by plants is useful to animals and delightful to man.

\* Fishes, many of them live entirely on water; and water alone sustains the human body for many weeks under fevers, &c.



### CHAP. III.

#### OF RESPIRATION,

OR THE MANNER IN WHICH THE OXYDATION OF THE BLOOD IS  
ACCOMPLISHED IN VARIOUS ANIMALS AND IN MAN.

**T**HOSE who are the best acquainted with the comparative anatomy, will best know how natural it is for me to illustrate this function, by comparing various animals with man ; how pleasant, how useful, it is to know these analogies, every student must feel : and it is now full time to correct many mistakes into which modern as well as ancient authors have wandered, from want of general principles, and from want of anatomical knowledge. I shall endeavour to make this chapter interesting and short.

At one time all authors believed that the lungs were moved, not by any external agent, but by some internal power residing in the lungs.

When in their first essays to investigate this subject they opened the thorax, or rather the body, of amphibious animals, they observed that the creature lay out upon the table with expanded lungs ; that the lungs continued for hours to appear like inflated bladders ; the lungs expanded, the heart playing, the creature quite alive. When they emptied their lungs for them by thrusting tubes down the trachea, or pressing the



lungs, the lungs entirely subsided ; but in a little while the lungs, at the creature's will, rose again into complete inflation ; again they appeared like two tense bladders. Surely, said they, there resides some expansile power in the lungs themselves ? But when a few of them began to pursue this mistake with serious experiments, they committed absurdities which should be noticed, for they serve to illustrate the true doctrine concerning the expansion of the lungs.

Mr. Houston, in our Philosophical Transactions, undertook to prove the following things, which, to use the words of a learned author in our university, " are so improbable as to be incredible ;" first, That the breathing of a Dog is nothing affected by any wound of the thorax, if only the lungs themselves be not hurt ; secondly, That the lungs never collapse, though the thorax be laid open ; thirdly, That when the breast is entirely laid open, the lungs continue to move, and the thorax also continues to move, but that the motion of the thorax never keeps time with the motions of the lungs. But, to do Houston justice, he endeavoured to explain away the inconsistencies of his own experiments ; and the world would never have been troubled any more with them, had it not been for a Mr. Bremond, a great academician, philosopher, and experiment-maker, who published the following suite of experiments in the academy of Paris.

His first mistake is this. " I found (says he) that having stabbed a Dog in one side only, it could run about the house and howl." This is what nobody will doubt. " But also (says he) the air which the Dog took in by the wound when it expired, was pressed out again by the wound when it inspired."— This is one cunning stroke of Mr. Bremond ; for had the air entered the chest during inspiration, that must have proceeded from the rising of the thorax, which is not the kind of respiration which he wanted to prove ; but as the air entered the chest during expiration, it proceeds clearly according to his principles, that the lungs in squeezing out their air have a contractile power ; that they contract by their own motion, and leave the ribs, and so make room for the air.

" Next (says Mr. Bremond,) I opened the thorax of a living Dog, and there I saw, that when the lungs contracted the thorax dilated, and when the thorax contracted the lungs dilated." But, in fact, it means no more than this, that often in these agonies produced by such cruel experiments upon animals, or by actual wounds in the human body, the diaphragm, chest, every thing which contributes to breathing, is so closely contracted, and the pressure is so great, that the lungs are actually compressed and protruded : so that his seeing, as he says, the

lungs dilated, that is, squeezed out, when the thorax contracted, is like the ignorance of a child looking from a carriage-window, who believes and wonders at the trees and houses running backwards. But as no experiment-maker ever allows his experiments to remain incomplete, Mr. Bremond finishes his by the following daring assertion, "that always when he made his incision no more than three inches long, the lungs dilated themselves with so much violence that they drove out the air before them, protruded themselves through the opening, and made the blood jerk out at all points."\* In short, he repeats this mistake in every possible form, viz. that the motions of the lungs and thorax are directly opposite to each other; that the lungs are contracting while the thorax dilates, and the thorax contracting again when the lungs dilate. When I open a Frog, it fills its lungs with perfect ease after both its breast and belly have been entirely cut away. "If admitting air into the thorax could really make the lungs collapse, why do not those of the Frog collapse?" This is such gross ignorance as should not have been endured in one reading papers before the Royal Academy of France. He is farther back in physiology than Oligerius, Jacobæus, or Malpighi.—The Frog has a respiration peculiar to itself, or at least to its kind.

#### FIRST SPECIES OF RESPIRATION, VIZ. BY A DIAPHRAGM.

Under this title I shall explain the respiration of Man, and of animals like Man; which have heavy lungs, of a strong fleshy texture, a prodigious number of blood-vessels passing through them, their lungs lodged entirely in the chest, and their respiration performed by a diaphragm.—I mean to arrange respiration according to the mechanism of those organs by which it is performed; and place in the first order that of Man, and animals which in this point resemble Man; and I say respiration by a diaphragm, for this is indeed the only use of a diaphragm. The support of the great blood vessels, the compression of the viscera, the expulsion of the urine and fæces, the ridding the womb of its burden; all could have been performed by the pressure of the abdominal muscles alone! the diaphragm is added merely for breathing.

\* If one word of this were true, what would become of those who had adhesions of the lungs? Surely if the lungs and thorax moved in opposite directions, the one contracting while the other dilated, the force of the lungs never could pull down the thorax.—Such patients must die.

Forsaking, for a moment, authority and minute anatomy, let us explain it in the shortest and most intelligible way.—The diaphragm divides the thorax from the abdomen : it is strong, muscular, and acts with great power, enlarging the thorax ; it is convex towards the breast, and concave towards the belly : when it acts, the belly is protruded, the diaphragm becomes flat, the thorax is enlarged, and a vacuum would be formed, but that instantly the lungs follow it and prevent a vacuum ; for the lungs are free in the thorax, the air has free access to go down into the vesicles of the lungs ; and so when the diaphragm retires, the lungs follow it, being dilated by the pressure of the air which enters by the trachea.

But this protrusion of the belly excites the abdominal muscles to re-act ; their pressure restores the diaphragm to its natural form ; when pressed back again by the abdominal viscera, it rises in the thorax, becomes again convex towards the lungs, the thorax is reduced in size, the lungs are compressed, and that air is driven out again which they had just received.—The thorax also moves in concert with the diaphragm : and this motion is most curiously arranged ; for, first, the intercostal muscles lift the thorax for respiration, in the very moment in which the diaphragm is pressing down, and consequently at the instant when the abdominal muscles, which are attached to the lower borders of the thorax, are relaxed, so that they suffer it to rise. Next, the thorax is to be compressed and pulled down by the abdominal muscles ; and this happens at the very instant in which the abdominal muscles re-act against the diaphragm ; so that the abdominal muscles, while they thrust back the diaphragm, pull the lower edges of the thorax down with great power.

Thus in Man, and almost all animals, the respiration is performed by a diaphragm.

#### SECOND SPECIES OF RESPIRATION, VIZ. THAT OF BIRDS.

BIRDS are supposed to breathe like Man, but have in fact no diaphragm to divide their body ; they have vesicles, or air bags extending through the whole body, and connected with the true lungs ; their sternum and ribs expand over the whole, and by their motion move the air vesicles, which blow the air through the true lungs ; while the true lungs, far from having any thing to do with a diaphragm, never move.

Every one skilled either in anatomy or physiology must know, that one of the greatest physiologists of our times has

written a long paper about the respiration of birds, little understood, and in proportion much admired ; of which function he is so thoroughly ignorant, as to explain how they breathe with a diaphragm ; and until I set this point right, my arrangement is good for nothing.

“The diaphragm of fowls (says Mr. Hunter, is thin, transparent, and membranous, and runs across the abdomen.” But if thin, membranous, and transparent, it can perform none of the functions of a diaphragm, and must be merely such a membranous interseptum as some Amphibiæ and Reptiles have, supporting the viscera, or confining them in their place. But he thinks to make good his point by acknowledging the imperfection of this diaphragm ; and adding, that it is moved by certain small muscles, which arise from the inner surface of the ribs, and pull the diaphragm and lungs down. He still persists in calling it a diaphragm in the very sentence in which he informs us that “it is perforated in many places with holes of a considerable size.” Since Mr. Hunter is so bold as to say of other authors, that they have too limited notions of a diaphragm, we may be allowed to say, that his notions of it are as much too liberal as theirs are too confined. But descriptions and arguments of this kind, where the author is entirely wrong, should not be tediously refuted, nor answered in any other way than by a simple statement of the case.\*

The anatomy of a fowl’s respiratory organs is plainly this.—The trachea having descended into the thorax, divides into two branches ; of which one goes in a simple and ordinary manner into each side of the lungs. The heart, which lies immediately upon this division of the trachea, sends into the lungs two great pulmonic arteries, and receives in return two veins. The lungs themselves are very small, dense, and bloody ; they are somewhat of the shape of the human lungs ; they are seated in the very uppermost part of the chest, are closely braced down to the back, and are indeed in part nixed in among the ribs, which in birds have their edges very deep.—

\* For the respiration of birds, i. e. for raising and depressing the thorax, I see many muscles having a very strong analogy with those of Man. The pectoral muscles are amazingly strong, and their scapulas absolutely fixed, so that these could raise the breast with great power ; but I suspect that no such power is needed, that the elasticity merely of the sternum and ribs raises them. There lies under these, upon the back, a very strong muscle like our serratus posticus. There lies on the inside of the ribs a set of three beautiful muscles like large intercostals ; they are quite insulated from all other parts, are seen instantly upon opening the belly : these are what Mr. Hunter calls Muscles of the Diaphragm ; but in truth the breast of a bird is pulled down strongly by its short yet strong abdominal muscles, and rises again by its own elasticity with little help ; and these are merely intercostal muscles.



These are the true lungs for oxydating the blood ; they never move ; the air passes through them in the following way.

These lungs cannot move, because they are braced down by a membrane very thin, and cobweb-like, yet very strong. This membrane is a peritoneum, lining at once the whole thorax and abdomen (which still are not parted from each other), and it is a covering to the lungs, liver, and other viscera ; but also the same cobweb-like membrane forms cells, which fill the whole cavity from the neck down to the anus, and from the breast-bone to the back ; and which are so attached to all the surfaces, being, as I have said the lining membrane, that as the breast moves these cells must move.

These cells appear at first sight quite irregular ; and Mr. Hunter gives but an idle description of them along with that of the septum, which he calls the diaphragm : but I hold it as a principle, that although we may not see it, yet all is orderly in the animal body ; in fact the order of these cells is extremely regular : first, there is a membrane which comes down from the breast-bone in a perpendicular direction till it touches the viscera ; it runs the whole length of this common cavity of breast and abdomen ; it enters into the great cleft of the liver, and so divides the liver into two lobes, serving as a ligament for the liver, as a mediastinum to divide the great cavity into two, and also as a sort of root or basis for the cells of either side : though beautifully transparent, it is very strong. At the upper end of this mediastinum touches the heart, and there expands into a very large bag exquisitely transparent, which is at once an air-cell and a large pericardium. Next, at its lower end, it touches the gizzard, or stomach, and forms a large cell surrounding it. Behind the liver, which fills all the upper part of this great cavity, and the gizzard which fills all the lower part, lie all the intestines, which are also surrounded with many cells : at the sides the cavity is occupied by three or four large cells extending from the middle membrane to the flanks of the bird. And, lastly, when we look into those greater cells which are nearest the lungs, we see clearly many openings, very large, oblique, running flat under that part of the membrane which braces down the lungs, so as to communicate the air from the lungs to all the cells very freely.

Now let me add, in one word, that the essential parts of respiration are these : first, there is no diaphragm, no division of breast and belly, the stomach lying upon the rectum in the pelvis ; a true and muscular diaphragm could not exist in birds, having nothing to do in their scheme of respiration. Secondly, the true lungs are small, high in the back, quite immoveable, so that no diaphragm nor no power of vacuum



could unfold them ; and these lungs are perforated at every point, so that they could not expand by air. Thirdly, what has been confounded with the true lungs is the vast congeries of abdominal cells, which are of use only in lightening the creature that it may fly, and in forcing the air through the true lungs. Fourthly, there is in the place of a divided abdomen and thorax, with long abdominal muscles, no proper abdomen, a long thorax, a high sternum, and very elastic ribs, extending along the whole body till they almost meet the pelvis, making the abdominal muscles very short ; and the air-cells all along adhere to the inner surface of these bones.

With these points clearly before us, we cannot mistake the mode of respiration in birds. The thorax does the whole ; the thorax is raised, and immediately the cells are expanded, by which two functions are performed ; for the air which comes into the cells, passing through the lungs, oxydates the blood, and the cells become full at the same time so as to make the body lighter. The thorax is depressed again, and the air, which passes now a second time through the lungs, may a second time oxydate the blood, for it is not thoroughly spoiled ; and what is spoiled is diluted with the air of many cells, which respiration cannot empty at one stroke.

The final cause also is plain. Had the lungs in a fowl been solid and fleshy as they are in man, (or even in any other creature,) and at the same time sufficiently large to perform, without the help of those air bags, all the functions of lungs, they must have been large and heavy in proportion to the body of the fowl ; they must have occupied much room, and added much to the weight. But the lungs of a fowl are very dense, very small in proportion to its system, very full of blood, quite fixed, and undilatable ; the rapid course of the air through them backwards and forwards enabling them in their business of oxygenation to do much with little. In short, there are two functions to be performed in birds : first, the oxydation of the blood, which is performed by the small fleshy, contracted lungs, which lie immoveable in the upper part of the thorax, and through which the air blows continually as through a furnace, while they are quite passive : and secondly, The lightening of their bodies for flying\*, which is performed

\* Although I say the lightening the bird for flying, I do not mean to affirm absolutely, that it is either for flying, that they are made light ; for I have given, on the contrary, an example in a bird which seldom flies, viz. the common fowl ; and I have added a plan of the Ostrich's cells, which is a swift-footed bird, and never flies : nor do I even affirm that it is for the sake of lightness that these cells are thus provided. Perhaps one chief use is blowing through the true lungs to



*The Ostrich's Lungs*  
*drawn by the Parisian dissectors*

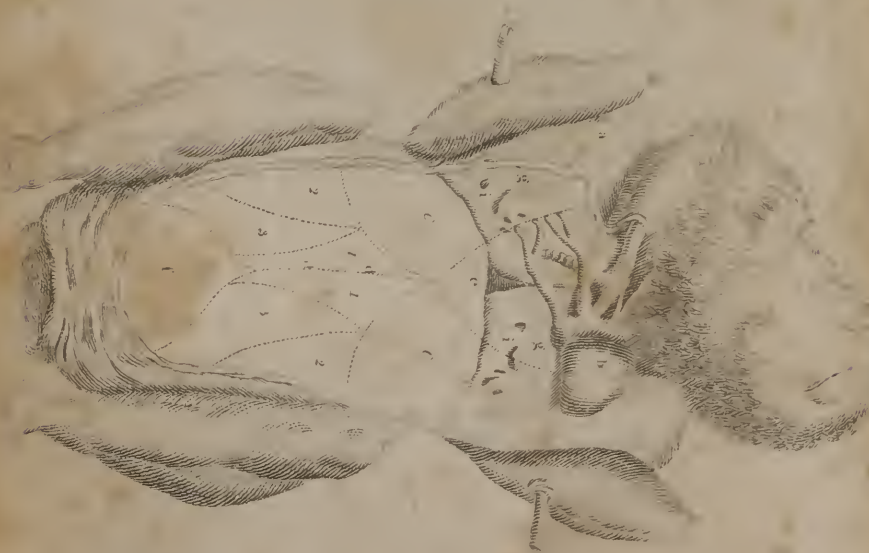
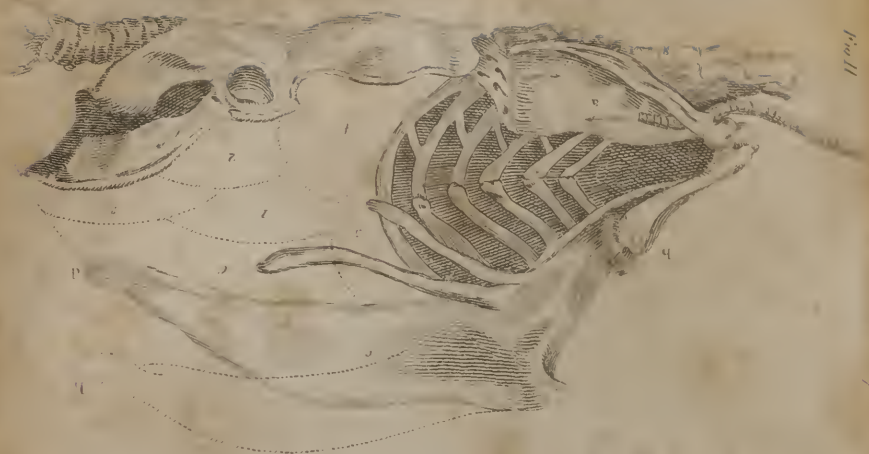


Keorr 10

*a* The Heart lodged in one great Air Cell *b* the Stomach and  
*c* the Intestines surrounded by other great Cells. *d* the trachea  
 branching towards the lungs. *ee* the true lungs firm fleshy  
 very small & fixed down to the backbone. 123 other great Air  
 Cells in immediate contact with the Lungs & communicating  
 with all the other Cells. the holes *ggg* & are the openings by w<sup>h</sup>  
 the Cells communicate with the Lungs & with one another.







by the abdominal cells; and the confounding of the abdominal cells with the true lungs, and the describing of a diaphragm where none can be, was like to have put us all wrong†.

### THIRD SPECIES OF RESPIRATION, VIZ. THAT OF AMPHIBIA.

THIS species of respiration differs from the two first in these respects; it differs from the respiration of Man, because there is no diaphragm; it differs from that of birds, for there is no chest covering the lungs: there is a short sternum, no chest, no ribs by which the lungs may be moved, there is no vacuum formed in their respiration; they fill the lungs by the working of their jaws, or, in other words, they swallow their air just as we swallow our food.

The Frog, the Newt, the Chameleon, the Tortoise, and many other creatures, breathe in this way; and as one of the most curious mechanisms for respiration, I shall represent that of the Frog. I have placed at the beginning and end of this chapter two drawings, in which their organs of respiration are seen; for, as I have just explained, their organs of respiration are not in the belly, nor in the lungs themselves, but in the mouth. At (a) is seen its tongue of prodigious length; it is not like the tongue of any other creature, hinged far back in the mouth, but it is fixed in the chin to increase its length,

oxygenate the blood; yet I should think lightness were a chief use, for the cells are far too large for this office alone of ventilating the lungs: and they are so diffused as to enter even into the bones of fowls, where the air is so freely admitted, that if you break a bone which has such an air cell in it, for example the shoulder-bone of a fowl, you produce an emphysema.

#### † PLANS of the RESPIRATION of BIRDS.

In the first Plan is seen—(a) The trachea dividing into branches—(b) The heart sending great pulmonic arteries to the lungs—(cc) The true lungs shaped like the human, but exceedingly small, dense, and bloody—(d) The thin and delicate membrane, which forms a mediastinum—(e) The great air cell in which the heart lay—(f) The cell where the stomach lay—(1, 2, 3, 4, 5,) A number of cells, very large, which surround all the viscera, and fill the whole abdomen—(6, 6,) Two large cells which lie nearest the true lungs—(gg) The true lungs, which lie close to the back-bone.—At (ii) is seen on each side one of the many holes by which the true lungs give out their air to the abdominal vesicles. Figure 2d shows the manner of their respiration; for the air-vesicles are seen again (1, 2, 3,)—filling the whole abdomen. The true lungs are seen at (a)—lying close by the spine, and as high as the root of the neck; and the length of the sternum and ribs, which are marked (b, c, d, &c.)—show that the fowl is all chest, and that every time the chest rises to the line (bbb)—the vesicles are dilated, and the air passes through the lungs in the direction (i)—and every time the breast is pulled down by the abdominal muscles, which are marked (k)—the air is driven out again through the lungs in the direction (m),—the lungs being all the while motionless, and passive merely.

while at the further end it is forked. We see it launching out this monstrous tongue in catching flies ; perhaps also with this it rakes mud. At (*b*), behind the root of the tongue, is the slit-like opening of the trachea ; this is what is called the glottis in the human subject. We see this rima opening and gasping for air when we keep the mouth thus distended ; it has no epiglottis or valve to defend it ; its own contraction is sufficient, for when closed you cannot even guess at its place ; besides, the jaws force down the air into it, and the long tongue carries the food over it into the gullet. At (*c*) is seen the opening of the gullet, which when dilated is as wide as its jaws ; it looks more like the stomach opening directly into the throat ; and this great width requires a very strong muscle to contract it, and makes a great circle of rugæ. At (*d*) is seen the most important part of all, the nostril of the Frog, with which it continually breathes, never opening its mouth.

Looking carelessly upon this creature, we do not perceive that it ever breathes, for it lies plunged over the mouth in water. It is never seen to open its mouth ; there is no motion in its sides like breathing ; in short it does not seem to breathe ; and when it is provoked, (or rather through fear), though it still keeps its mouth closely shut, its sides and back rise, and it blows itself up apparently by some internal power. But when we observe the creature more narrowly, we perceive that there is a frequent motion of its jaws, or rather of that skinny and bag-like part of its mouth which covers the lower jaw. We are apt now to fall into a worse mistake, for this bag under the jaw is alternately dilated and contracted, the mouth is never opened to take in new air ; the creature seems to live all the while upon one mouthful of air, and seems to be playing it backwards and forwards betwixt its mouth and its lungs.

But, lastly, when we observe its nostrils, we find that there is in the nostrils a twirling motion for each movement of the jaws, which makes the whole process perfectly simple to our comprehension ; for a Frog breathes by the nostril alone, it cannot breathe by the mouth ; it never raises its mouth above water, nor opens it but to catch flies or other food. If you keep its mouth open, you see it presently struggling for breath ; for its respiration goes on in the following way : its broad jaws are continually shut ; they lock into each other by grooves ; the mouth is completely close, and forms a sort of bellows, of which the nostrils are the air-holes, and the muscles of the jaws which come from the os hyoides draw in the draught by their alternate contraction and relaxation ; and the nostrils lie so obliquely over the hole in the skull, which is represented at (*a*) in the Plate at the end of this chapter, that the

least motion of them enables them to perform the office of a valve. First there is a twirl of the nostril which lets in the air ; then a dilatation of the bag under the jaws, by which the mouth is greatly enlarged and filled with air ; then a second motion of that bag, by which the mouth is emptied and the lungs filled ; then there is a slight motion of the sides of the creature, by which the muscles of the abdomen expel the air again ; and then the twirl of the nostril and the motion of the jaw succeeds again ; so that with these creatures inspiration is the swallowing of the air by their broad expanded jaws, with their coverings driving it down into the lungs ; and expiration is the contraction of the abdominal muscles driving it out again ; and these two motions, when we observe a Frog attentively, are as perfectly regular as respiration in a man. Their muscles of respiration are not the muscles of the belly but the muscles of the jaws ; and this causes the uncouth broadness of the jaws in Frogs, Newts, Lizards, Serpents, Turtles, &c.

Now we shall no longer wonder why the Frog never opens its mouth ; why it never seems to breathe ; why, after opening its belly, the lungs still project ; why, after emptying its lungs, it can fill them again at will, not by any peculiar power in the lungs, but by blowing them up with its jaws. If you gag the Frog and keep its mouth open, it cannot fill them, because it cannot breathe ; if you plug its nostrils, it suffocates, though not soon ; if you keep its mouth open by force, you soon find it struggling for breath ; and looking into its throat, you see the glottis opening from time to time.\*

The Newt (or as it is called in this country, the Ask) breathes with the jaws and nostril like the Frog ; it has, like the Frog, a constant motion by short strokes of the bag under the jaw (which bag is formed by the membranes of the mouth, covered and moved by the *genio-hyoidei* and *mylo-hyoidei* muscles ;) but we observe that every minute, or less, it stops as if intending some particular motion ; then gradually the bag swells out under the lower jaw to a great size ; then the air contained in it is puffed down into the lungs with a sudden flap of the bag ; and in proportion as the jaws are emptied the long sides of the creature are heaved up.

The Toad, the Chameleon, the Green Lizard, breathe exactly in the same way. The Chameleon has the flat broad jaws of the Frog ; they lock into each other, and it never opens its

\* Dr. Monro in his explanation of Plate 16. shows us very obligingly the diaphragm of a Frog, marked (c).—This diaphragm is mentioned a second time in explaining the same Plate.



mouth ; it swallows its air in mouthfuls, drives it downwards into its lungs ; its lungs are of a vast extent, stretching from the jaws all along the abdomen : it is the vast size of its lungs, almost concealing the abdominal viscera, that makes Gessner say, "that of the entrails of a Chameleon the lungs only are visible." The air it swallows in greater or smaller quantity as its needs or fears prompt it. When you alarm this timorous animal, it fills its sides just as a Frog swells out its back ; and either in this greater respiration, or in its ordinary breathing, we see it pressing the air onwards from cell to cell ; and we see the motion proceeding from its jaws to its breast, and all along its sides, till its lank form is quite puffed up almost to bursting.

All these creatures have, in addition to their peculiar respiration, a peculiar kind of lungs, thin, membranous, and extremely delicate : the lungs even of so great an animal as the Crocodile are, when inflated, very delicate and transparent, of a rose-colour or slight red, consisting of delicate vesicles, and exactly like the Frog's lungs. The lungs of the Frog are in shape like a fir cone, with the stalk of the cone on each side fixed to the side of the heart. But these conical lungs of each side are delicate, silvery, perfectly transparent, divided within into innumerable cells like a honey-comb ; and these also are so extremely delicate, that though the outside membrane is as transparent as a soap-bubble, the divisions can hardly be seen, except by inflating and drying the lungs, and then cutting them. The lungs of the Ask are still more beautiful, as a specimen of what are called membranous lungs ; for the creature is very long in the body, its lungs run down along all its sides ; they are about the size of a common earth-worm or writing quill ; they end like a blind gut ; they are of a bluish white, exquisitely transparent, like the swimming bladder of a fish.

It is the nature of membranous lungs to oxygenate but a very small quantity of blood ; they are membranous, only because there is not that vast profusion of arteries, veins, and strong vesicles, which there is in the human lungs. The pulmonary artery and vein are always, in the membranous lungs, extremely small in proportion to the vast system which they serve. There cannot be better examples of this fact than these two drawings of a Frog and of a Newt : in the Frog is seen the small artery and vein spreading more suddenly over the lungs ; in the Ask is seen the same artery and vein, running down more directly, and for a greater length along its worm-like lungs ; in both we see the artery to be little bigger than the ramular arteries of the Frog's tongue at the head of the chapter. The manner of its coming off from the aorta is seen in the first





*In the Frog a a is the Liver b the Spleen c the Stomach d the Intestines e the Heart ff its conical vesicular Lungs — In the Neut a a the Liver b the Stomach c the Intestines d Ova in the Ovaria or Egg beds e the Heart ff Thin vesicular Lungs which are long like intestines & transparent like the swimming bladder of a fish g the Bag of the Jaws by which the lungs are blown up*



plan in the book, where figure 2. represents truly the Frog's heart ; and there we may observe how small a proportion the pulmonic artery bears to the rest of the arterial system.

From these peculiarities of the membranous lungs, it is plain that the oxydation of the blood is a process of small importance in their system, that this process being of little value with them, they are the better enabled to go into the water, and to want breath for a time. But chiefly it appears, that the meaning of this peculiarity is not so much to give them the privilege of Amphibiæ, in allowing them to go into the water ; for many creatures, as the Chameleon, all the tribe of Lizards, Newts, Toads, Serpents, &c. have these lungs, and yet never approach the water : but that the chief use of it is to establish in this class of animals a peculiar constitution, a permanent, almost inexhaustible, irritability, and a tenaciousness of life ; which, I believe, no creature, whether of the land or the water, wants, which has membranous lungs. And when we are told that these creatures can be kept two days under water, as a proof of their being Amphibiæ, I cannot but consider it as a very childish proof ; for, in the first place, we see them breathing with wonderful regularity when out of the water ; when plunged into the water, we see them very soon struggling for breath ! and if they can live for two days without air, it is only because they could bear any other kind of injury with equal ease, and could live two days without their heart or their head.

#### FOURTH SPECIES OF RESPIRATION, VIZ. THAT OF FISHES.

In this species of respiration the creature breathes neither water nor air, but water mixed with air, and this office is performed by gills in place of lungs.

The reason why I have called this a species of respiration, needs to be very fully explained ; for, though little observed, it is a certain fact, that a creature, without any apparent change upon its system, can do well, having its blood oxygenated at one time by gills, at another time by lungs. The Frog, for example, lives long in the water ; while it does so, it may be considered as a fœtus which cannot breathe : the young frog which has not yet acquired its proper and natural respiration, breathes like a fish. For the first fourteen days after hatching from the egg, and while the Tadpole is very small, it has gills, which are two long, projecting, fimbriated appendages like fins ; by the thirty-sixth day these appendages are taken into the jaws, and form four rows of gills on each side, regular, and like those of

a fish ; but at the same time, this fœtus has its lungs within the body, not to be used till it come out into the air, when the lungs assume their function and the gills shrink. The same system in this instance, which was at first served by gills is in the end oxygenated by lungs.

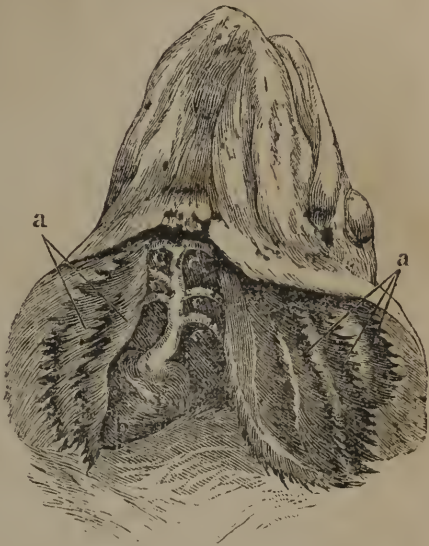
The motion of the gills in fishes is a true and perfect respiration : for, in the first place, if there be no air in the water, or not enough of air, they cannot breathe ; distilled water is to a fish what the vacuum of an air-pump, is to a breathing creature : if you exhaust water with an air-pump, if you boil it, if you distil it, if in any way you deprive it of its air, fishes cannot breathe in it, but come up to the surface and gasp for air. If you take a fish out into the air, it is the same with plunging any breathing creature into water, it gasps and dies. Fishes cannot breathe in air wanting water, for that element is not accommodated to their species of lungs : nor in water wanting air, for then there is no oxygene : and we find, upon extracting the air from water which fishes have breathed, that it is contaminated, exactly in the same way with air which had been breathed by any breathing animal, that it differs very little from that in which a candle has burnt out. This is the reason that when many small fishes are inclosed in a narrow glass, they all struggle for the uppermost place, and that when in winter a fish-pond is entirely frozen over, you must break holes for the fishes, not that they may come and feed, but that they may come and breathe ; without this, if the pond be small, they must die.

In the respiration of fishes, there are two curious points to be considered : first, The manner in which their respiration is performed ; and secondly, The manner in which their blood, when thus oxydated, is distributed over the body.

The red part or gills, which serve as lungs, lie under a broad scale, which defends them from all extraneous bodies, or hurt, or pressure of any kind, for they are exquisitely delicate.— Their respiration is like the Frog's in this respect, that they swallow the water with their mouths ; and in this it is like the fowls, that they drive it through among their gills, which lie perfectly passive like the true lungs of a fowl.

A fish's gills are ranged in semicircles under the great flap which covers them four or five semicircles on each side ; the fish opens its mouth wide, fills it with water, shuts the mouth, then drives the water backwards, so that it lifts the great flap and makes its way out behind, and rushes with a sort of stream through among the red gills, raising each semicircle from another, and making the water play freely round each feathery-like process. It seems to me, that wherever this mixture of water and air is used, there must be some force to give impres-

sion to the air upon the blood. The depth to which fishes go, and the pressure of the water, must give some effect in impressing the air upon the lungs. The gill must play more or less strongly according to various depths, just as the fish must swim more strongly against a ruder stream. Some fishes, as the Trout, Perch, Salmon, Herring, have more open gills, yet they do not want this power of impressing the air more or less strongly against the gills. The Eel and the flat fishes, as the Skate, have their gills more concealed. They swallow the air by the mouth, and breathe it out by holes in their side. The shell-fishes give the most curious example (and none more singular than the oyster) of very regular and beautiful gills; and therefore I have given two slight marginal drawings; the first of which shows the heart and lungs at (a)—The heart, which may be seen beating about 40 in a minute at (b)—The whole of the gills as they lie out upon the side of the Oyster, and bear a very large proportion to its body, at

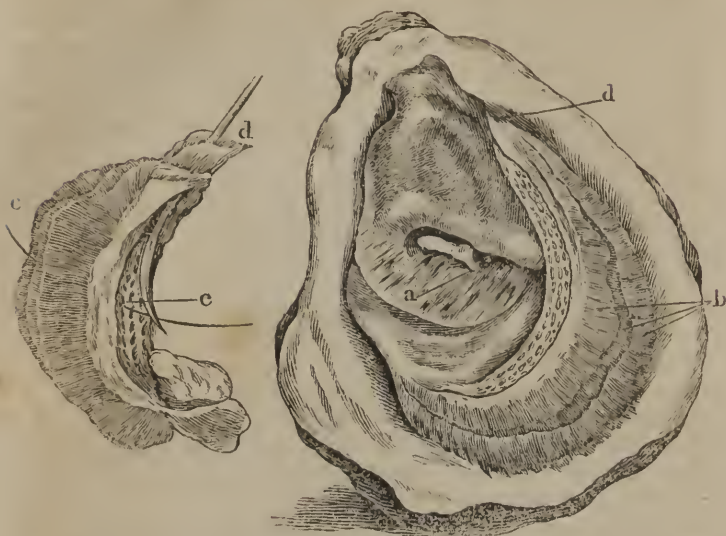


a. a. Gills of a Trout.....b. Its Heart.....c. c. The Arteries of the Gills.

(c)—The canal, partly opened, in which the water passes to the gills from the mouth (d)—And at (c. figure 2.) is seen, separated from the body, a long canal opened; before it was laid open, it was somewhat of a triangular figure within; it constitutes the basis of all the circles of gills; it contains the most beautiful ranges of holes that can be seen in nature, by which, as is very plain, the water is admitted to each feather of each gill. The fish swallows the water by its mouth, which is at (d, figure 1.)—drives it down into this great canal, and so out again. It is by this, I am persuaded, that merely the soaking of a fish's gills in water would not do, for they might have lain abroad, as indeed they do, and soaked very securely in a shell-fish; but the water must be applied with a degree of force proportioned to the condition of the lungs, or the needs of the



system; and every fish, whatever be the mechanism of its respiration, has this power.



Having explained this first point, viz. the mechanism of their gills, I proceed next to explain the circulation of their blood, how their blood is oxydated, and how it is distributed over the body.

A fish and an amphibious animal have both of them the simple heart, consisting of one auricle and ventricle, but with this singular variety, that the Frog, for example, wants the heart belonging to the lungs, a small artery only from the common system performing the office; while the fish again wants the heart, which should circulate the blood through the body; and has that heart only which belongs to the lungs. The whole blood of the fish passes through this single heart, and therefore the whole mass circulates, parcel by parcel, through the gills, for every time that it circulates through the body. We shall begin its circulation, then, at the heart. First, The whole blood of the body is returned into the heart of a Skate,\* for example, by two great veins (*aa*)—These two great veins deliver it into a vast auricle, or reservoir rather, which lies over the heart (*bb*)—The auricle delivers it into a strong ventricle (*c*)—whose action is further strengthened by the action of its aorta,

\* From this reference to the figure of a *Skate* it would seem that the author intended to introduce a plate, which however we do not find in the London copy.

which from the heart up to (*d*),—where the valves are, is very muscular and powerful, and constitutes, in a manner, a part of the heart. But this great vessel must in this species of circulation change its name, for it really is not an aorta, has nothing to do with the body: both the heart of a fish, and this its only vessel, belong entirely to the lungs or gills, and as these are called the bronchiæ, this is the bronchial artery. The gills of this fish are five in number on each side, and on each side the bronchial artery gives out two branches (*e* and *f*)—which serve the five gills:—(*e*) the lower branch is large, and serves the three lower gills—(*f*) the higher branch, which goes off like one of the arms of a cross, serves the two upper gills.

Secondly, These arteries being distributed along the gills, divide into exquisitely small branches producing that feathery appearance which is so beautiful. Those minute subdivisions of the bronchial vessels expose the blood to the air. This may explain to us how in the human lungs the exposing of the blood, even with the interposition of membranes and of the arterial coats, may be sufficient for the oxydation of the blood. All the blood thus oxygenated is returned by veins, corresponding exactly in number and arrangement with their arteries; and the heart being turned aside, as in figure 2. and all the other viscera taken out, the veins are seen accompanying their arteries and emerging from the gills at (*g g g*)—and they are seen at (*h*)—to form the aorta.

Thirdly, The aorta (*i*)—is formed by the veins of the gills, and the veins of the gills lie close upon the skull of the fish, and the aorta upon the back-bone; and this vessel is in one sense a vein, since it is a continuation of those veins which return the blood of the gills; but both in office and form it is a true aorta; in office, because it distributes blood to the whole body; and in form, because it no sooner swells out into the shape of an aorta than its coats grow hard, strong, muscular, fit for its office, while those of the veins from which it is formed are pellucid, delicate, and very tender. The aorta is full of the oxydated blood of gills; and although, by the delicate circulation of the gills, it has lost all communication with the heart, it circulates this oxydated blood through the body to all the muscles, glands, viscera, &c. without the intervention of a new heart.

The veins which return the blood of this aorta are the ordinary veins; they arrive in two great branches at the heart, and need not be further explained.

I will not be at the trouble to repeat the tedious calculations of authors concerning the immense surface which the gills ex-

pose : let the student look to the gills, and he will presently, with the help of this short sketch, understand how the whole function goes on.



N<sup>o</sup> 1



FIFTH SPECIES OF RESPIRATION,

VIZ. THAT OF INSECTS.

There is in this kind of respiration no breathing organ like the lungs, but tracheas or air-tubes by which air enters into all parts of their body.

What is most perplexing in this species of respiration is the prodigious quantity of air which these creatures receive ; the little connection betwixt the air-tubes and the heart ; the impossibility of tracing blood-vessels from the heart to the various parts to nourish them ; and the clearness with which we see their air-tubes branching over all parts of their body. The stomach, bowels, and other viscera, the legs and wings, even the very scales of insects, have branches of the air-tubes dividing over their surfaces like the delicate vessels of leaves and flowers. In short, the magnitude of these air-tubes is quite surprising ; and their branchings are so minute, delicate, universal over all the body, that it looks almost as if the air-tube had exchanged functions with the heart and arteries.

It is plain by these expressions of admiration that I do not mean to attempt so difficult a subject as this at present : I only mention difficulties which it is surprising that others have not declared and investigated, for nothing can be more interesting. The little that we do know shall be simply and plainly told.

The forms of insects are often very strange, their lives very irregular, sometimes in water, sometimes in air; many of them begin in Worms, and end their lives as Flies and Moths; and according to these varieties of their form, or life, or generation, their air-tubes are various.

Sometimes, as in the common Bee, they have nearly the form of lungs: they begin like two bags, resembling those of the *Alga Marina*, or sea-weed, in shape; and these bags distribute pulmonary tubes, with occasional bag-like dilatations in the course of the tubes, through all the body. More commonly the air-tubes of insects are direct tubes, mere tracheas, of a very singular construction; they have rings like the tracheas of animals; they have a delicate membrane covering these rings and forming them into a tube: the tube continues always rigid like a flexible catheter, or other tube of twisted wire not liable to collapse: they begin by many open mouths opening along the sides of the insect, and they terminate in myriads of vessels, which, in their forms and progress over the various parts of the body, resemble blood-vessels more than it is easy to conceive. These air-tubes being thus rigid, are always full of air, and by their refractions through the transparent parts of the insect's body they give it in the microscope a great degree of brilliancy; as for example in the Louse, whose air-tubes makes the brilliant lines and points which are contrasted like a silvery colour with the dark and opaque parts; or in the Mite, which is as beautiful in the microscope as the Louse; and when the larger insects are prepared by drying and varnishing, and preserved in turpentine, the air-tubes are beautiful. Of these curious particulars, the openings of the air-tubes are best seen in the Worm from which the common Butterfly is produced; we count these holes down the sides one, two, three; we name them *puncta*



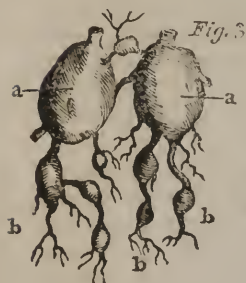
*respiratoria*, *spiracula*, or most commonly *stigmata*: (vide figure 1.) Their transparency and brilliancy is well understood from the view of the microscopic Louse, figure 2. That particular form in which they resemble more the lungs of animals is seen in the pulmonic bags (*aa*)—and the tracheas or air-tubes (*bb*)—of the common Bee, (figure 3.) Their exquisite branchings through the various parts are well



seen in the drawing of the air-tubes which run along the wings of a Bee (figure 4.) or those which twist and ramify



round the intestines and stomach of a Worm ; and it is not to be forgotten, that though the beginnings of these tubes in their great tracheas and near the puncta respiratoria are quite transparent, their extreme branches are beautifully white like vessels filled with chyle, or rather one might be apt to mistake them for nerves.



Of the way in which this function is performed, there must be more varieties than we can know or comprehend : this we may safely conclude from the little that we do know, finding the variety so very great.

Almost all insects have their puncta, like those of the Caterpillar, ranged along the side, and inosculating like those of the Louse from branch to branch : often the puncta open along the sides ; but in place of inosculating from branch to branch, all round one side, they inosculate across the belly, the one side communicating with the other. This is best observed in the small Worm from which the Bee proceeds (vide Fig. 6.) which is a magnified drawing of the Bee-worm. And here it must be observed, that, as in other insects, always the stigmata or breathing points correspond neatly with the folds or rings while it continues a Worm, and with the scales or divisions of the body when it becomes a Fly ; in the Bee-worm also the inosculations answer to the flexures or joints of the body.



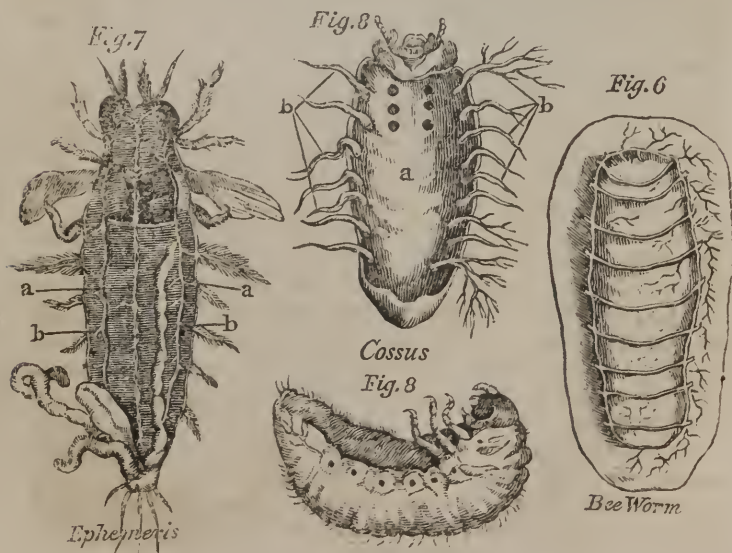
Often when the insect lives in water, it has only two puncta respiratoria : these puncta begin either in the snout or in the tail ; they are the openings of two great air-tubes which run down each side of the insect like two aortas, and the insect has means of rising to the surface, takes down a bubble of air along with it, and discharges a bubble of air before it rises again : of this nature are the air tubes of that Worm from which the *Ephemeris* proceeds. The sketch of the *Ephemeris* and its air-tubes is given in figure 7.—This Fly has but two spiracula ; they are so small towards the neck, where their commencement is, that their mouths cannot be easily found. The two great air-tubes (*aa*) are seen like two aortas running all along the body, and their minuter branches (*bb*) are seen ramifying beautifully upon the abdominal muscles and other parts. Many insects are aquatic when first they are hatched from the egg. They have little gills which serve them while they continue in the water, as, for example, the *Ephemeris* Fly ; but along with these gills they have the ordinary structure of air-tubes, and the day on which they emerge from the water, the gills shrink, and the air-tubes begin their function ; and these changes succeed each other very rapidly in all insects, but most especially in the *Ephemeris*, which is destined to live but one day.

It is most of all singular, that in some insects the number of respiratory points, or puncta, changes according to the various conditions or stages of their existence. For example, a Worm which crawls among the dust, since it must breathe less easily, has more puncta than when it has changed its state to that of a Fly, and has its puncta very freely exposed to the air : in the *Rhinoceros Beetle* the Worm has more puncta respiratoria, and closer, because it crawls on the ground amidst mud or dust ; they are less numerous in the Fly, as its air-holes are always more freely exposed ; and when the Beetle is actually flying, those puncta which were closed by the cases of the wings are fully opened ; so that the insect breathes more freely, and perhaps its body is lightened, so that it flies more easily : it is also particular, that in the full grown Beetle, though the puncta be less in number, the lungs are enlarged, they both change their form and become more capacious ; for the tubes are mere tracheas or straight lines, with direct branches in the Worm, but in the Beetle they are dilated from point to point into air-bags.

Insects in general are bred in eggs, transformed into Worms assume then the form of an aurelia, that is, of a Fly, small but full formed, with its legs drawn up, its wings plaited and folded, ready at all points to burst from the covering which

surrounds it ; for both in posture and in the membranes which surround it, it resembles a fœtus. In these three stages it still is nourished by air-tubes : they open by puncta respiratoria while it remains a Worm ; the same puncta still serve it while it is wrapped up an aurelia or concealed Fly ; when the Fly bursts out, the same puncta, the same tubes, which have served in its former stages, serve it still ; only this is most curious, that when from a Worm it proceeds a Fly, the skin which it rids itself of (crawling out of it and pushing with its feet) carries off along with it many of the internal parts ; the mouth, the anus, and especially all the respiratory tubes, lose an internal skin, at the same time that the old skin or slough is pushed off from the outward surface of the body ; and when the puncta are thus changed, they are left more open than before, and often their number is changed. For the drawing of this slough or skin (*a*)—from which the Worm has just disengaged itself, and the old air-tubes (*b*)—inverted, and adhering to the cast skin, see figure 8. which is the figure of the *Cossus*, an affected name by which Mouffet and others have chosen to distinguish the Worm from which the Horned Beetle proceeds.

These are the various ways by which insects are supplied with air ; and nothing can be more interesting than to observe the vast proportion of air which they draw in, as if they lived upon that element ; the infinite care with which Nature has guarded this main function in insects, ordaining so many vari-

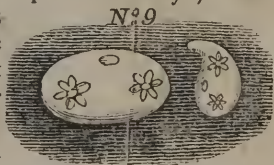


ous ways by which they may in some sense fill their system with air. The variety of ways is changed, and suited, as I have observed, to their various ways of life, and to the various conditions and stages of their life ; while they are Worms, when they are involved fœtuses, and when they have burst their shell and are full grown. In short, Worms, Aureliæ, Flies, Beetles, Bees, and all forms of insects, have all of them their tracheas by which they breathe a wonderfully large proportion of air.

There can be no mistake concerning the function of their air-tubes and of their heart ; it is ignorance or inattention only that can cause confusion : the heart of a Caterpillar, of a Snail, of the Worms from which various Flies are produced, are seen distinctly through their transparent body, running down their back in form of a tube, sometimes slightly oval, sometimes having frequent dilatations, always throbbing with distinct and equal strokes.

Nor can there be any mistake that it is air they breathe ; for before we dissect an insect, we must kill it ; the contortions of a live Caterpillar prevent all deliberate dissection, or even a view of the parts ; we may poison the insect, as with turpentine or spirits ; we commonly drown it : this is done by immersing it in a little tepid water. Nay, we find a thing which is at first inconceivable to be really true, that notwithstanding the inosculation of the air-tubes with each other, which seems to provide against all such effects, when we close up the stigmata of an insect one by one, the parts become in the same proportion paralytic ; if we varnish over the stigmata of one side, that side becomes paralytic ; if we varnish over the stigmata of both sides up to the last holes, the insect lives, but in a very languid condition, it survives in a kind of lethargic state for two days, without any pulsation in its heart ; if we also stop the two highest holes, it dies.

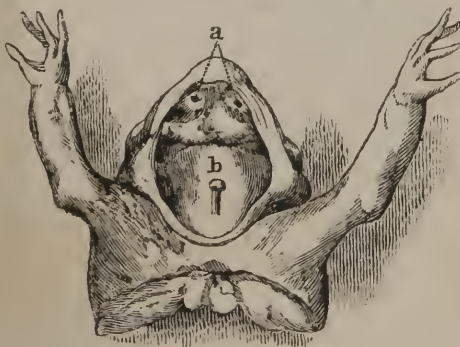
Of all the examples of respiration, that which is reported by Spallanzani is what I most wonder at, and cannot but doubt. In acescent liquors, or the juices of animal bodies, animalcules are seen plainly with simple glasses, moving sometimes rapidly, sometimes slowly ; but never hitherto has any author pretended to see their lungs or heart. Mr. Spallanzani says, " that these animalcules are elliptic bodies ; that in the centre of each ellipsis he sees two stars, which are in constant alternate and regular motion, whether the creature rests or moves. Each star-like body has in its centre a small globe, and every three or four seconds



the globules are blown up slowly to three or four times their natural size, and as slowly compressed again ; and every time that the radii are inflated the central globule subsides. On one side of these star-like bodies there is an oval part, which is continually agitated with a trembling motion : he calls the star-like bodies lungs, and the oval body he thinks is the heart.”—Spallanzani surely has forgotten that he is speaking of lungs in an aquatic insect : if these star-like bodies have any such use, they must be gills.

These are the animalcules which Buffon called organic germs, and from which, as materials and pieces, he built up the animal body. But if all this be true, then the day is come which he little expected, when the organic particles, on the faith of which he built all his system of generation, are proved to be living and moving animalcules, voracious of food, devouring each other, breathing air, and having a visible pulsating heart ; animalcules deposited from the atmosphere, and generating like other insects of their kind.

Thus we are convinced of the importance of respiration, and the absorption of air in all living creatures, from Man even to the meanest reptile : and not least needful in the last and lowest order, which receive in proportion a fuller supply of air than fishes, amphibiæ, or Man ; one point chiefly confounds the little knowledge that we have on this subject, viz. that many insects live best in the foulest air.



a. *The Nostrils*....b. *The Tongue*.

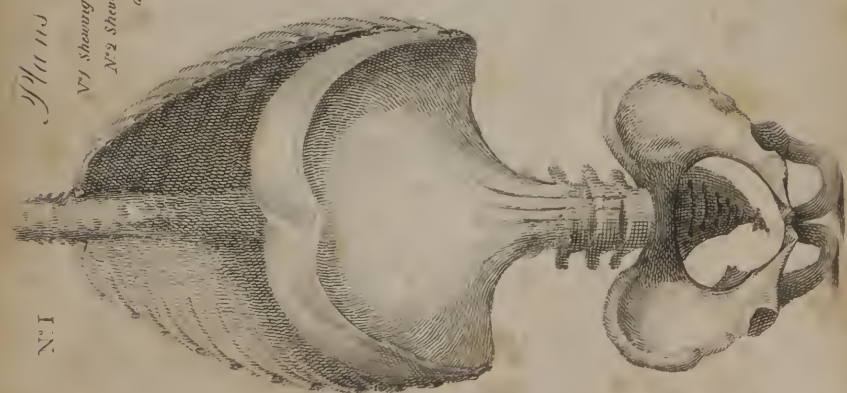




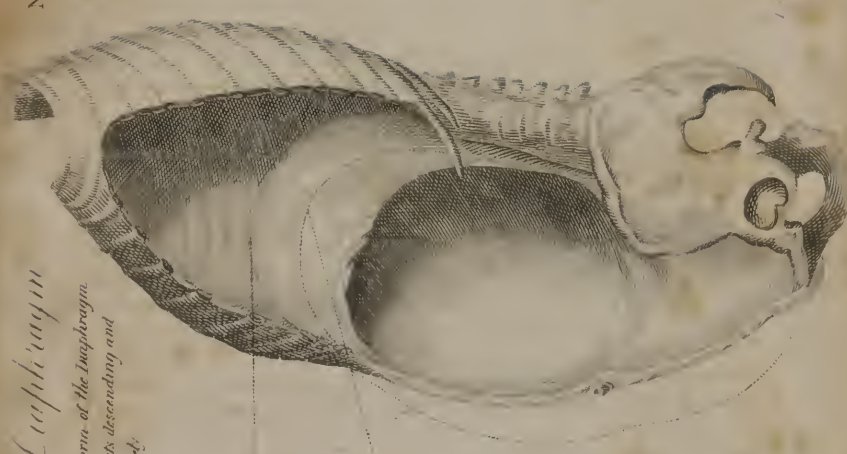


# Plans of the Diaphragm

N<sup>o</sup> I



N<sup>o</sup> II



N<sup>o</sup> 1 Showing the Place and Form of the *Diaphragm*  
N<sup>o</sup> 2 Showing the Effects of its descending and  
ascending alternately.

Expiration

Inspiration

## CHAP. IV.

## OF THE PECULIARITIES IN THE CIRCULATION OF THE FÆTUS.

THE peculiarities of the fætus all relate to the oxydation of the blood, and are such chiefly as fulfil the circulation of the blood without any need of its passing through the lungs, enabling the fætus to live without that function in its mother's womb.

1. We are assured that the blood which comes to the fætus through the umbilical vein is pure, or of greater value than that which the fætus returns to the mother's system. Either this blood is restored to all its properties merely by passing through the mother's system, and what is thus drained off from the extremities of the mother's system is more than sufficient for the life of the child ; or, without such direct communication, the placenta performs to the fætus a function equivalent to that of the lungs. Then this blood, whose value and properties must be lost, if pushed through the circulation of the liver, passes only in part through the liver, while a chief share of it goes by a side passage, which is called the DUCTUS or CANALIS VENOSUS, under the liver, directly to the heart.\*

2. This blood does not pass through the circulation of the lungs ; perhaps it ought not to pass ; for there being no respiration, no air admitted to the lungs, the blood might rather be contaminated ; perhaps it cannot pass, the lungs never having been expanded with air : but, however that be, there is a side passage for conveying it from the right to the left side of the heart clear of the lungs. For this use is the FORAMEN OVALE, which is an opening of no inconsiderable size betwixt the right and left auricle of the heart ; its area is as large as that of the vena cava ; and it is sufficient, without the help of the ductus arteriosus, to convey the blood freely from right to left.

3. The DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS serves quite another purpose ; for though the circulation of the aorta is well maintained in the adult body by the force of one ventricle only, yet in the fætus one ventricle will not suffice. In the fætus the heart must push

\* N. B. The canalis venosus is marked in the plan.

its blood not only through that system of vessels which is within the body, but also it must push it onwards through a second circle of vessels, viz. those of the placenta ; for the iliac arteries do not descend into the thigh and pelvis of the fœtus, but the iliac artery itself, with little diminution (very small branches only being given downwards into the pelvis and thigh), turns upwards along the side of the bladder ; and these two arteries going out from the navel, form the umbilical cord ; and the heart of the fœtus has to give life and action not only to its own internal system, but to these two arteries comprehending the chief bulk of the aorta, which run out to the distance of three feet along the umbilical cord, and which make wonderful convolutions in the placenta, and terminate with extreme minuteness upon its surface. It is this which occasions the necessity of the ductus arteriosus, which is merely a union or inosculation of the pulmonic artery with the aorta. This union is formed by a great branch of the pulmonic artery in the fœtus, joining the aorta below its curve. This great branch (for it is greater than the two branches which go to the lungs) is named the ductus arteriosus, and may be defined an inosculation betwixt the pulmonic artery and the aorta, so very large, that it gives the aorta of the fœtus twice its natural size and proportion, and enables the blood of that artery to have the full force of both ventricles ; of the left ventricle through the aorta, and of the right ventricle through the ductus arteriosus by one synchronous stroke.

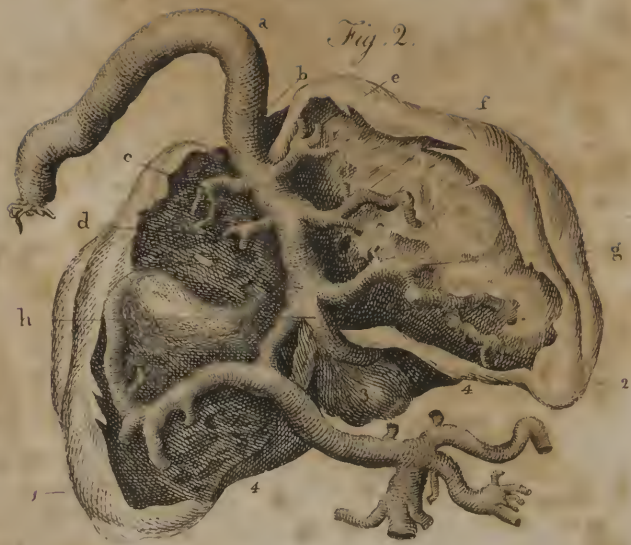
4. The contaminated blood of the fœtus must be returned to the mother, or at least to the placenta ; for which purpose the two iliac arteries are reflected along the side of the bladder as I have just explained. I say the iliac arteries without reserve, because the hypogastric and femoral arteries, that is, the arteries of the pelvis and thigh, though they are the largest branches of all the body in the adult, are in the fœtus, extremely small ; and thence that smallness of the lower extremities compared with the largeness of the head, which characterizes the child, and which it takes years to redress.

#### DUCTUS VENOSUS.

THUS have I defined these parts and their uses, in order that their strict anatomy may be the more easily explained ; and the part first mentioned, viz. the ductus venosus, is the part the most difficult to be understood, and never without the help of a plan. In my plan I have endeavoured to elucidate these points.







F Kearny, sc.

Vena Cava Abdom



First, The mere anatomy, connections, and inosculations of the vessels ; showing how the umbilical vein brings in the blood of the mother ; how that vein spreads in the liver and feeds all its left side with blood ; and how the ductus venosus carries part of that blood away from the circulation of the liver, conducting it directly onwards to the right side of the heart.

Secondly, I have endeavoured to explain what parts of the liver each branch supplies, and how these vessels lie in the liver of a new-born child.

Thirdly, I have contrasted with this the change of form in these same vessels, when, as happens in the adult, the form of the liver is changed, and the ductus venosus and the umbilical vein are obliterated, and gone or converted into ligaments of very trivial use or size.

The blood from the maternal system transmitted through the placenta, and oxydated, or having undergone some change equivalent to oxydation, comes down along the umbilical vein :—the vein enters by the navel, adheres to the inner surface of the abdomen, enters into the liver at the top of that great transverse cleft which divides the liver into two lobes ; and after entering the liver, it begins, as if it were the regular and peculiar vessel of the liver, to distribute branches through its substance from right to left.

In figure 1.—(*aa*) shows the umbilical vein—(*b*) the point at which it enters the liver—(*c, d, e, f,*) branches given to the substance of the liver, till at last it gives off (*g*)—a very great branch, which is indeed the chief trunk for the left side of the liver ; it branches out in the liver like the opposite trunk, (*m*)—But I cut it off short, lest it should confuse the plan. Next comes (*h*)—the ductus venosus, whose office is important, but whose size is not quite what we should suppose. It comes off direct from the umbilical vein ; its course is short, and a little curved ; it joins at (*i*)—the largest of the hepatic veins, *i. e.* of those great veins which return the blood from the liver, and along with it goes directly into the right auricle of the heart, which is marked (\*).—This, perhaps, might suffice as a description of the ductus venosus ; but it is convenient and will make a clear subject, to finish that circulation of which this ductus venosus is one of the chief difficulties.

This I consider as the end of the umbilical vein, for here its circulation ends : or, if it sends blood into the right branch of the vena portæ, its proportion is but small. But the VENA PORTÆ (which is just the collection of all the abdominal veins into one trunk,—of the splenic vein (1)—of the mesenteric vein (2,)—of the hemorrhoidal vein, *i. e.* the vein from the

pelvis (3);—the vena portæ, I say, composed of all these veins, is the true vein of the liver.

The branches of the vena portæ are gathered into a trunk at (*k*)—that trunk enters the liver at (*l*)—it divides into two great transverse branches at (*m*) and (*n*)—the one serving the right side of the liver and the other the left; but in the fœtus this left branch (*n*) is not known as the limb or left branch of the vena portæ, but looks rather like the right branch of the umbilical vein; indeed, it is named so by Mr. Bertin.

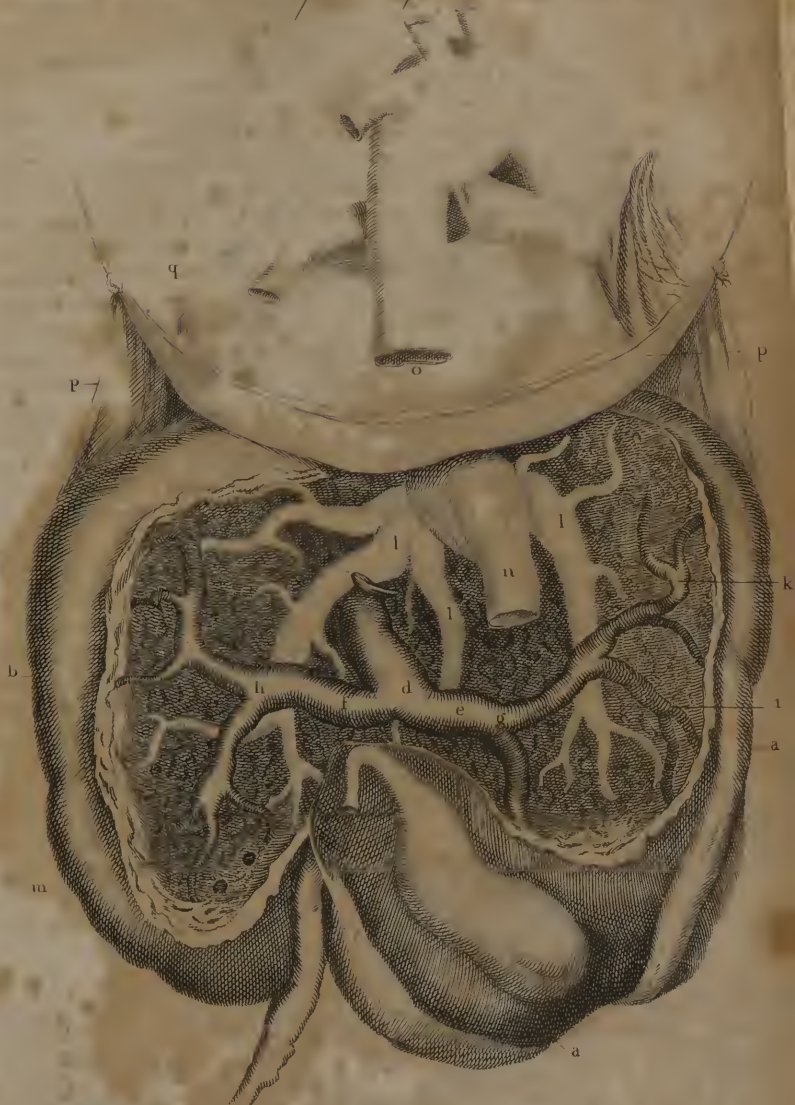
But that I may not convey vague uncertain notions of vessels apart from the organ which they are to supply, I have in figure 2. laid these vessels upon an outline of the liver; by which I am sure to explain correctly, 1. How the umbilical vein (*a*) enters at (*b*) into that great longitudinal cleft which parts the liver into two lobes. 2. How it begins, as if it were the peculiar vessel of the liver, to distribute its branches (*c*, *d*, *e*, *f*), from right to left. 3. How the last great branch (*g*) of the umbilical vein is the left trunk for supplying the left side of the liver with blood. 4. How the ductus venosus (*h*) goes off in the most direct manner from the umbilical vein, and the fairest for receiving its full proportion of blood; and how it carries that blood directly onwards to the back of the liver, or that part which touches the diaphragm, and there the ductus venosus enters the heart.\*

But my third plan explains the adult liver as if these branches had never existed. The two first plans show what are its veins in the fœtus. This third plan shows what are its proper and permanent veins; for those peculiar veins which we find in the child are accommodations for the fœtus, are ranked among the peculiarities of the fœtus, and are, when the child is born, obliterated by a new circulation; and what is very curious, by a circulation which goes through the same vessels in a retrograde course.

In this third plan I represent the liver of the adult; I consider only the vena portæ, which is its proper vein, and I give the vein and the liver itself a new and more simple form. This plan is drawn from an adult liver, most of its substance being dissected away.—(*a*) Marks the right lobe—(*b*) the

\* The lobes of the liver in figure 2. are marked thus:—(1) The great right lobe—(2) The great left lobe—(3) The little lobe, or Lobulus Spigelii, lying betwixt them; and it should be remembered, with regard to the position of the liver in this drawing, that it stands upright, as if pulled up by pulling at the umbilical vein (*a*)—or at the round ligament, which is the same thing (for the vein is converted into this ligament), so as to bring it into a perpendicular posture, and show the back line of the liver (4, 4,)—where it touches the spine and diaphragm.

# Third Plan of the Liver



*w* is the Vena Cava Abdominalis *o* is the place where the Cava enters the Right Auricle *p* is the Diaphragm upon which the Right Auricle lies and the heart and arteries are seen above the Diaphragm *q* being the apex of the heart





left—(c) the Lobulus Spigelii. These are sufficient to mark the more important points, and I have not spared the substance of the liver in other parts where vessels were to be shown.—(d) Is the shape of the vena portæ tied after injection, and cut short and twisted a little so as to make it stand almost perpendicularly—(e) and (f) are the two great lateral branches going to the right and left sides of the liver; and this cylindrical part of this very great vein is called the sinus of the vena portæ. It is so formal, lies so fairly at right angles with the vena portæ, goes so regularly into two equal limbs, the branches too, even when spreading in the liver, are so formal, that it looks more like a piece of human mechanism than any thing belonging to the living body: it appears so here, not from the stiff and awkward forms which a plan must have, but because it is thus in nature. The right branch (g) is distributed very formally to the right side of the liver:—(h) The opposite branch is distributed as formally to the left; and there is no mark or note by which it can be known that this left branch had ever proceeded from the umbilical vein, or been filled by it, or been any thing but what it now appears, the left branch of the vena portæ corresponding most regularly with the right. And in the same way it may be observed, that the middle veins of the liver (i, k, l, m,) are now plainly known to be legitimate branches of the vena portæ, though they appeared in the fœtus to be proper branches of the umbilical vein: they are named so by Bertin and others, the best anatomists; but that they are plainly not so, because the umbilical vein (since these branches go off at an angle) filled them only by a backward course, while here in the adult they are filled by their natural trunk, the vena portæ, in a more natural way.

Now, by glancing the eye from the circulation of the fœtus to that of the adult, we observe these changes: first, the liver of the fœtus has blood circulating in two directions; the right side of the liver is filled from the vena portæ, the left side by the umbilical vein. The liver of the fœtus having two veins has a large quantity of blood, a growth larger than that of any of the viscera; and indeed the liver alone seems to fill all the upper region of the abdomen. This is changed when the child is born; the umbilical circulation is cut off and the liver of the child ceases to grow but in proportion to the other parts\*.

\* One is forced to speak this unphilosophical language, though the size of the liver in the fœtus is as just and well proportioned to the fœtus, as that of an adult body is to an adult body.

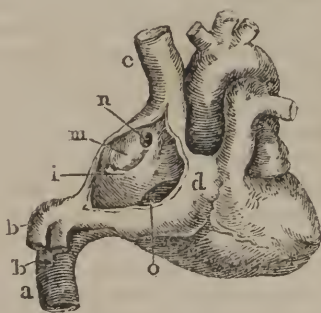


Next, we observe in the fœtus how the umbilical vein runs into the left branch of the vena portæ, insomuch, that the left branch of the portæ has not any determined form; nor has the sinus venæ portæ, or the horizontal shaft of this vein, that peculiar and formal shape which I have already observed. This shape, then, of the sinus venæ portæ, is not to be looked for in the child, and is not found in these plans.

Again, we find in the adult those blood-vessels obliterated which served such peculiar uses in the fœtus; the blood which flowed formerly into all the left side of the liver by the umbilical vein now comes along the venæ portæ; these veins are now working their blood forwards in a retrograde course; the blood which flowed once in the direction (*i*) No. 2. runs now in the direction (*k*) No. 3.

In this plan are seen also the hepatic veins, or branches of the vena cava, in the liver. These three great veins marked (*III*)—are the returning veins, which carry back to the heart that blood which the venæ portæ (assuming the office of an artery) circulates in the liver; and it is with one of these that the ductus venosus joins before it enters the heart.

*Plan of the Foramen Ovale.*



EXPLANATION of the PLAN of the FORAMEN OVALE.

(*a*) The ascending cava, with its hepatic branches (*b b*)—(*c*) The descending cava.—(*d*) The right auricle, where it lies against the roots of the aorta and of the pulmonic artery—(*i*) The isthmus Vieussensii, as it is called, or circle which surrounds the oval hole—(*m*) The valve of the foramen ovale—(*n*) A small opening, which we always find towards its upper part—(*o*) The opening towards the ventricle.—This plan is intended chiefly for showing the true place of the foramen ovale; its anatomy and just form is better represented in the true drawing which ends this subject.

## FORAMEN OVALE.

THE foramen ovale, the second peculiarity of the fœtus, is a hole of no inconsiderable size, transmitting the blood freely from the right to the left side of the heart. Its use is obvious, even from a general view of the system; and when we look more closely into its mechanism, its uses are completely explained. Its valve being placed on the side of the left auricle, perfectly settles (and that by the only authentic proof) the course of its blood: and, satisfied with the description which I am now to give, I decline all disputes about the nature of this opening, or its valve. This is a subject which disputes may perplex, but cannot explain. Another reason which I have for declining such controversies, is this: it is an easy matter to impose upon a whole academy, easier by far than upon one ingenious man: and thus it came to pass that in the French Academy each theorist brought dissections of the heart and foramen ovale suited to his own doctrines; each, when convenient, changed his ground a little, and brought new dissections; and thus valves and auricles, fœtal and adult hearts, double Cats and human monsters, made their annual exhibitions in the halls of the French Academy: the Society never sickened nor tired, and the raree-show lasted exactly one hundred years.

What kind of doctrines were current as such a time it is almost superfluous to explain; yet I think it not amiss to remark two examples, of obduracy on the one hand, and of ingenuity on the other, in two of the greatest men. Mr. Mery had conceived notions about the circulation of the blood in the fœtus, which can hardly be explained;\* but it was one point essential to his doctrine, that the blood in the fœtus moved directly from the left auricle to the right. He was forced to deny that the foramen ovale had a valve; and this doctrine he continued, with many quirks and tricks, to maintain to his dying day. Mr. Winslow agreed with Mery; he said, that the foramen ovale had no valve; that though it had a membrane, that membrane performed nothing of the office of a valve; that the blood passed freely from right to left, or from left to right, as occasion required; that thus the two auricles were as one. He forgot for a time that there is but little circulation in the

\* All that can be done towards the explaining it in one word is this: He "fancied that the right cavity of the heart was so large, and the left so small, that always the left side was obliged to disgorge again upon the right side; and this was the meaning of the blood rushing through the foramen ovale from the left side to the right."

fœtus lungs, that the right auricle is filled with all the blood of the body, while the left is filled very sparingly by the pulmonic veins. From these data it is plain, that the balance must always be in favour of the right auricle ; that it always must be more full of blood ; that without some valve the blood must rush with a continual pressure from right to left ; while, again, the place of the valve is itself a demonstration that the blood cannot pass from left to right. Winslow, when he some years after perceived that he had spoken idly upon this subject, left Mr. Mery among his foolish arguments and dissections, and retracted all that he had written with a manliness of spirit which deserves to be recorded.

The foramen ovale is not strictly oval, but is rather round. In the plan it appears oval, because there I have endeavoured to represent the condition of the vessels when the heart is dilated and the vessels full ; but when we lay it out for demonstration or for drawing, it appears, as in the drawing, of a rounded shape.

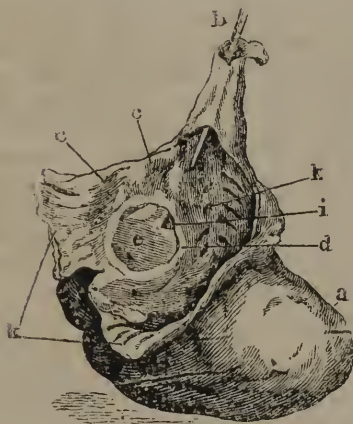
The oval hole is in the partition betwixt the two auricles at its very backmost point ; for, in fact, the auricles touch each other only behind ; at their fore part they are separated by the roots of the aorta and pulmonic artery, as may be seen in any of the plans. We look, then, for the foramen ovale at the very backmost part of the right auricle ; or rather it is placed so high in the auricle as to seem to belong rather to the root of the cava descendens.—A ring rises round the borders of the hole, very prominent, and exactly like the ring of the meatus auditorius internus in a child.—This was named ISTHMUS VIEUSSENI ; but this conceited name of isthmus, which Vieussens gave it, is quite unintelligible, and it must be changed for that of the CIRCULUS FORAMINIS OVALIS, the ring or circle of the oval hole. This circle is thick at its edges ; very strongly muscular, like the muscoli pectinati of the auricle : in so much that authors of some character have thought this a sphincter for the oval hole. There is no doubt a kind of decussation of the fibres at each end of the oval hole ; so that these fibres, forming a sort of pillar on each side or edge of the foramen, the name of Pillars of the Ring, or COLUMNÆ FORAMINIS OVALIS, is less exceptionable ; though these pillars, or any thing deserving such a name, will not be easily found by one beginning anatomy.

The valve of the oval hole lies entirely on the left side, as the round edges of the right side may demonstrate. By taking the blunt probe, we find we can lift it towards the left side ; but being pushed towards the right side, it rises into a sort of bag, and opposes the probe. The valve is perfectly transparent ; it

seems delicate, like all the other membranous valves, but is really strong. There is often left, after the closing of the valve, a small opening at its upper part. The valve closes soon after birth : the hole is so large, that this membrane forms a very large share of the partition betwixt the auricles ; its transparency is such, compared with the rest of the walls, that it is as distinct in a boy, or in an adult, as in a fœtus.

This is the anatomy of the oval hole, and of its valve ; and this proves, and any one who examines it will entirely be convinced, that the blood of the fœtus passes through it from right to left.\*

*True Drawing of the Foramen Ovale.*



This heart of a fœtus had all its parts cut away, except the ventricles (*aa*)—the vena cava, with a blow-pipe in it (*b*)—and the wall or partition betwixt the auricles (*cc*)—which is here unfolded, to show the foramen ovale. The muscoli pectinati, or muscular fibres of the auricle, are well seen at (*kk*).—(*d*) Is the circle of the valve, the annulus foraminis ovalis.—(*e*) Is the valve itself.—(*i*) Is the small opening in the upper part of the valve, where the valve falls slack, and ready to open.—(*m*) Is one of the tricuspid valves, or of those valves which guard the right auricle ; and both this and the valve of the foramen ovale, appears so bright against the blackness of the heart, because they are transparent, and the light is made to shine through them, which is the best way of demonstrating the valve of the foramen ovale.

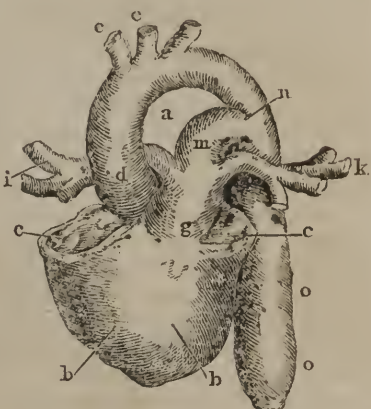


## DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS.

THE ductus arteriosus I have defined a great inosculation betwixt the pulmonic artery and the aorta ; not for the purpose of conveying away that blood which should pass through the lungs, but for giving to the blood of the aorta the propelling power of both ventricles : and how well it is able to perform this office will be easily seen from the drawing on my margin.\*

The pulmonic artery of the adult divides, as has been marked in all my former plans, into two great arteries, one going to the right side, another to the left ; but in the fœtus there arises a middle branch betwixt these two. It is larger than both put together ; it is in the middle, and so comes most directly from the heart ; it goes in a straight line towards the aorta, and joins with it immediately below the arch. This is the ductus arteriosus, the centre branch of the three branches into which the pulmonic artery of the fœtus is divided. It is bigger than the aorta in the fœtus ; it gives the full force of the right ventricle to the blood of the aorta, in addition to that of the left. In the adult it is so thoroughly obliterated, that by the most careful dissection we can show no other vestige of it than a cord-like adhesion of the aorta and pulmonic artery.

*Ductus Arteriosus.*



These, then, are the chief peculiarities of the fœtus ; † but the

\* This sketch is taken from a little preparation made on purpose, where a quill was thrust in so strongly betwixt the ductus arteriosus and aorta, as to separate them unnaturally, and leave a space (*a*) betwixt them—(*bb*) Marks the two ventricles—(*cc*) the place from which the two auricles were cut away to make every thing clear.—(*d*) The root of the aorta, known by (*ee*) its carotids.—(*f*) Is the root of the pulmonic artery—(*i*) the right and (*k*) the left pulmonic arteries—(*m*) the ductus arteriosus or middle branch, running into the aorta—(*n*) the place where they join—(*o*) the aorta increased in size by this addition.

N. B. This heart is but a very little under the natural size in a new-born child

† The umbilical arteries must be explained in another place.

conclusions which have been drawn from this mechanism are, as I suspect, very far wrong. But this I can in no shape prove, till I shall have first represented the real condition of the fœtal heart. First, then, let it be observed, that every drop of blood which comes into the system is, either by the powers of the placenta, or by communion with the mother's system, oxydated blood. One part of this blood, indeed, passes through the circulation of the liver before it reaches the heart, while another passes, more directly through the ductus venosus ; but both are mixed, and the blood is all of one quality when it arrives at the auricle, in order to fill the heart, and to begin its course round the body. Now, since the blood is all of one quality, Nature could have no cause for dividing such blood into two portions ; one to pass through the lungs, the other to pass over the body. She could have no motive for employing, as in the adult, two hearts. The design of Nature plainly is, to prepare a double heart, and keep it in reserve for the circulation of the adult, but to use it as a single heart in the fœtus. And see how simply this is accomplished. The two auricles communicate so freely by the foramen ovale, that they are as one : the two ventricles both deliver their blood into one vessel, the aorta ; and they are also as one. The blood arrives by the cava, fills the right auricle, and in the same moment fills, through the foramen ovale, the left auricle ; so that the auricles are as one, and filled by one stroke ; the two auricles act at once, and so the ventricles also are filled by one stroke ; the aorta receives the blood of both ventricles at one stroke. So that, in the strictest sense of the word, the fœtus has but one single heart, the heart of the body (the function of the lungs being performed by the placenta, far from its proper system ;) and when the function of its own lungs begins, then Nature, by the simplest of all mechanisms, divides the two hearts, that they may perform each its peculiar function. First, the flow of blood into the lungs deprives the ductus arteriosus of blood ; and, secondly, this flow of blood coming round to the left auricle of the heart restores the balance, presses down the valve of the foramen ovale and makes the partition betwixt the auricles entire. In short, while the oval hole and ductus arteriosus are open, it is a single heart ; and when they close, as they do the moment the child is born, it becomes the double or perfect heart.

Now the mistake which all physiologists have fallen into is this. They have not observed that no creature can live with a single heart, which has the oxydation of its blood performed by lungs. A fish lives by a single heart, because its blood is oxydated by gills, not by lungs : insects live with a single

heart, as their lungs, or the branches of their lungs, are distributed like arteries over all their body: the fœtus can live with a single heart, because its blood is oxydated by the placenta. And that this idea may make a more determined impression, it will be good to prove, that the function of the placenta actually is equivalent to the function of the lungs; and that it is the placenta itself that produces this change upon the blood, I am the rather inclined to believe, because we see the veins and arteries of the Chick spreading over the membranes of the egg, and we can observe the artery sending dark coloured blood into these membranes, while the vein brings back florid or oxydated blood.

If, during child-labour, the umbilical cord falls down before the head of the child, at first it is not pressed but beats strongly, and the fœtus is felt struggling in the womb; but when, after a few pains, the head descends into the pelvis, the cord is pressed betwixt the head and pelvis, the pulse falters, ceases; the child ceases to stir in the womb; and if not born in a few minutes is irrecoverably dead, and is black in the face like one strangled or drowned. When a child comes with its feet or other parts of the body first, the head being last delivered, is difficultly delivered; the accoucher struggles long in bringing out the head; the umbilical cord is compressed all the while, and the child dies. The ductus arteriosus, nor the oval hole, cannot save the child, for it dies because it is deprived of the function of the placenta, which is the fœtal lungs; and this is the cause why it appears like one suffocated or drowned.

When the child is born, lay it upon your knee, the cord being uncut, and you will observe that the one function declines exactly as the other strengthens: that if the child do not breathe freely, the cord will continue to beat steadily, the placenta still continuing to perform the function of the lungs: that when the child begins to cry freely, the pulse of the cord and the function of the placenta cease at once. If the child breathe freely, but yet do not cry, and you tie the cord, it is instantly forced to cry for a fuller breath; and if a rash person tie the cord prematurely, when the child neither cries nor breathes, he cuts off the function of the placenta before the function of the lungs is established, and often the child is lost: this, in the hurry and officiousness of ignorant women, happens every day. If even after two days the child's breathing be much interrupted by coughing, crying, or any spasmodic affection of the lungs, Nature seeks again the function of the placenta, and the pulse returns into the cord so as to raise it from the belly of the child. These things prove what the best

physiologists have forgotten, or have not known, that the fœtus has, in the function of the placenta, something equivalent to the function of the lungs.

One great mistake then runs through the whole of physiology. It has been universally believed that the free and easy transmission of the blood was the chief use of the lungs, as if they had acted like fanners to flap on the blood from the right to the left side of the heart. They affirmed, that either continued distention, or continued collapse, hindered the progress of the blood; and they also believed universally, that if but the ductus arteriosus or foramen ovale, or any thing, in short, were left open to let the blood pass, that person might live in spite of hanging, drowning, or suffocation of any kind.

This will be found to be the most perfect of all absurdities; and to alledge such a thing against all authors requires some kind of proof: it will suffice, if I prove it against a few of the most eminent, so much were the older authors wedded to this misapprehension of the dilatation of the lungs being useful only by driving forwards the blood, that, in the Parisian dissections, we find the following experiment made on purpose to prove the fact. "We have also made another experiment (say the Parisian dissectors\*) to know more distinctly the necessity of the motion of the lungs for the entire circulation of the blood. An injection being made by the right ventricle of the heart into the artery of the lungs of a dead Dog, it happens, that if one continue to make the lungs rise and sink alternately by means of bellows put into his trachea, the liquor pushed into the artery does easily pass and go through the vein into the left auricle; but when one ceases to blow, it passes not but with a great deal of difficulty," (page 262.)—Which doctrine is dilated into its full absurdity in the next paragraph. "Having viewed the difference of structure in a Tortoise and in a Dog, it is easy to give some probable reason of the phenomena of these experiments; and the reason is, that it is necessary that these vessels shall be dilated for the receiving of the blood of the right ventricle of the heart, and that they may be afterwards compressed in expiration to press out the blood, and make it pass into the left ventricle." Swammerdam indeed says, concerning the Frog's lungs, that an artery goes over them, which has no other purpose but to nourish the lungs; and that it is of the nature of those called bronchial arteries in

\* *N. B.* This was a wheel within a wheel; it was a committee of the great academy, who were separated into a smaller society for investigating the organization of all strange animals; and a very pretty account they gave of them, as shall be seen presently.



**Man.** But the College of dissectors have plunged still deeper into this remarkable blunder; for they say (page 261.), in speaking of the lungs of Newts, Frogs, and other creatures which I have represented as having a pulmonic artery extremely small in proportion to their system, "that in such creatures the lungs have merely that quantity of blood passing through their substance which is necessary for their own particular nourishment;" which is saying in the plainest terms, that they have lungs (only, I suppose, that they may be like other creatures); but their lungs are of no manner of use, except to nourish themselves.

One should have thought that the folly of this opinion would have appeared more striking in proportion to the earnestness of these arguments, and that no subsequent author would have deigned to honour such an opinion so far even as to notice it: but behold the celebrated Haller not only adopts this notion very fully, but enriches it with further explanations, saying, "that the vessels are all, during the contraction of the lungs, forced into numerous angles and joint-like folds; that the angles are made even, and the passages of the blood more direct upon the expansion of the lungs." As if, forsooth, the lungs (which, as I shall presently demonstrate, scarcely move in respiration) folded and closed upon each other like the wings of a Butterfly or Beetle\*. Santorini also represents the vessels of the lungs as thus collapsed, plaited, and folded a thousand various ways "assaissê et replié de mille manieres differents, &c."—"One effect of expiration (says Haller) is so to compress all the arteries of the lungs, that they cannot receive the blood from the ventricle of the heart so freely as they are wont to do†.

"It must seem very strange for me, after saying that inflating the lungs restores an animal after apparent death, and recovers the drowned, to affirm that long continued respiration is fatal‡; and yet we need not look long for the cause of this; for during this long continued inspiration, much blood must be

\* "*Præterea, in vivo animale, cujus cor contrahitur, et in arterias pulmonales sanguinem data vi emittit omnino nunc sanguis in eas arterias facilius, atque adeo celerius irrumpit, postquam delectus retardatricibus plicis, recta nunc sunt.*"

† Verum alter effectus expirationis est utique pulmonis arterias ita comprimere, ut ne pari facilitate sanguinem a suo cordis ventriculo recipiant.

‡ "Paradoxum videri possit ab inspiratione sanguinis in pulmonem commeatum expediri: inflato etiam aëre, quod genus est magnæ inspirationis, animalia moribunda reviviscere, et sanguinis per pulmones iter revocari: et tamen hanc eandem, adeo faventem sanguinis per pulmonem motui inspirationem, sola paulo diuturniori continuatione, anxietatem primo incredibilem facere, deinde, si vel volun-

gathered in the lungs, but none can get out\*." Nothing is attributed, in his explanation, to the want of air, but all is attributed to the obstruction of the blood: yet if this were all, Amphibiæ would need no lungs, fishes would need no gills, insects could need no air-tubes; for none of these assist the motions of the heart. Monro, who puts Haller to rights in every thing else, follows him in this. "In all amphibious animals, therefore," says Monro, "every part of the body may receive a considerable portion of blood, although the respiration and free passage of the blood through their lungs be interrupted," &c. (p. 21.) And the celebrated Blumenbach, the man most admired on the continent for his Physiology, says, at p. 80, "*Post extremam respirationem redeunti per venas cavas sanguini via sueta in pulmones nunc collapsos præcludatur†.*"

Thus I have proved, that it has been the opinion down to the present day, that the collapse or over-distention of the lungs are both equally opposite to the easy passage of the blood: but instead of going round about the matter slyly, as some lesser authors have done, I like rather the manner of the Reverend Dr. Hales, who says plumply, "that suffocation consists in the falling flat of the lungs," (p. 271.) He talks in this way, because, like Buffon, Derham, Des Cartes and some others, he was a philosopher by inclination, and by force a sort of an anatomist.

Now, the condition of the human lungs is quite opposite to all this; and also (in respect of distention) is less different from the lungs of reptiles than it is easy for any one bred up in the old doctrines to conceive.

In expiration the lungs do not even collapse in any sensible degree. Let us take for our data the common calculations concerning the quantity of air in the lungs, and let us see what they will do towards proving this opinion. The lungs are supposed to contain at the time of their utmost fulness about 220 cubic inches of air. When we continue breathing in a natural and easy way, we draw in and expel alternately about 40 cubic

*tatis violento imperio tamen aer in pulmone retineatur, vel ab alia causa intra pulmonem copiosior servatur, denique sanissimum et fortissimum hominem subito interire."*

\* "*Hujus nunc anxietatis et suffocationis, et denique mortis causam non est arduum invenire. Adparet enim, ab inspiratione diutius continuata, sanguinem in pulmonem quidem advenire, et congeri, exitum vero ex pulmone non invenire.*"

† Mr. Kite, one of the latest writers on the recovery of drowned persons, has the same notion. "We inflate and empty the lungs (says he,) in order by their expansion and contraction to force the blood across from the right to the left side of the heart,"—and he expresses himself as perfectly indifferent what kind of air be used, foul or pure is all one.

inches of air: but when we choose to force respiration, we find that we can expel without danger or harm 70 inches more; we can expel 110 inches of air, leaving only 110 inches remaining in the lungs. Now let us, for a moment, observe how little danger or distress it occasions when a forced respiration is made—such as is used in coughing, laughing, speaking, crying, expelling the child, urine, or fæces, bracing up the body for the lifting of heavy weights, or other violent occasions, for which such forced respirations are by nature reserved. Let us notice how much forced respiration exceeds the ordinary respiration, and how small a proportion the quantity of an ordinary breathing, viz. 40, bears to 220, the whole quantity of air within the lungs. Reflecting thus what large inspirations of air we may take, and how very little we do take, we begin to perceive how gentle the motion of the lungs must be.

There remains always within the lungs a great mass of air, which I will call the permanent dilatation of the lungs, which, from the first movements of the child, from the hour of birth till death, and even after death, must remain in the lungs.—This mass, equal to 220, cannot be entirely breathed out; even the utmost force of respiration expels but the half; this is never done but on extraordinary and most urgent occasions, which do indeed disturb the circulation; as coughing, laughing, crying, or running do. But this great mass is seldom so moved: it is regularly and gently agitated by the change of 40 parts of the 220 which we expire and draw in again at each breath: we do not empty and fill the lungs at each breath; there is on the contrary, a permanent expansion of the lungs, and a mass of air always in them; there is along with this a gentle and regular agitation; and there is changed at each respiration a small proportion of this mass of air. Our lungs are little different (in respect of distention) from those of *Amphibæ*: for their lungs also, as I have described in the Frog, are permanently expanded, and at each respiration a little dilated and contracted; the air a little changed, a little moved, a little renewed; the change is in both cases placid and gentle, and hardly to be perceived.

With these opinions concerning the state of our lungs, nothing can appear to me more coarse than the notion of their being entirely filled and emptied at each breath; nothing more ignorant than the supposing them to fall flat, as Hales expresses it, so as to hinder the motion of the blood: and the grossness of this opinion appears in its true light when I put down this last proof, viz. that for each act of respiration there are four pulses of the artery, or four strokes of the heart. Is it not plain, then, to the meanest apprehension, that if the blood

moves twice through the lungs in expiration, and twice during inspiration ; or, in other words, if there be four strokes of the artery for each respiration, and if each of the four pulses be equally strong, that the blood passes through the lungs in all states and conditions with equal ease ?\*

It is also universally believed, and it is indeed a most legitimate conclusion, from this doctrine of the collapse of the lungs hindering the passage of the blood, that if but the foramen ovale or any passage be left open to let through the blood, that person will live without breathing.

It has been affirmed, that the Seal, the Beaver, the Otter, have the foramen ovale open. In the Seal, the Parisian dissectors found the oval hole open as in a child ; but when they came to the foramen ovale of the Beaver and Otter, they found them, and sore against their will, quite close. In their disappointment they could have said any thing ; but all that they thought prudent to say was that the Beaver had not been in the water for a long while, not even to refresh himself,† and the Otter had been close penned up in his hut at Versailles ; and so the foramen ovale had closed in these poor beasts quite close ; and behold they were no longer Otters and Beavers, but little better than dogs.‡ Although Haller § declares that he had found the foramen ovale open in a man who was hanged ; though Ræderer, Cheselden, and many creditable witnesses, have testified the same ; still there has gone along with these confused doctrines about the foramen ovale a kind of dream (like that concerning the transfusion of the blood,) that if but the foramen ovale could be preserved open, Man even might be made an amphibious creature. At first this notion began to peep through the mists of this doctrine : and you

\* Their old and favourite experiment, so often repeated by Hooke, Croone, and others before our Royal Society, viz. of blowing up the lungs of a Dog, and then compressing them, is good for nothing : for there the thorax is cut clean away ; the permanent distention of the lungs is entirely lost ; and then, no doubt, there is such a collapse of the lungs, as may, or rather must, hinder respiration ; for the lungs are alternately distended to the greatest degree, and then emptied as completely.

† The Beaver sits in his hut just up to the hips in the water, and builds his hut so that he may sit just up to the hips.

‡ " Cette ouverture qu'on appelle le trou ovalaire dans le fœtus, fait l'anastomose par le moyen de laquelle le sang va de la veine cave dans l'aorte sans passer au travers du poumon ; et c'est apparemment pour une même usage que ce passage se trouve dans le veau marinique dans le fœtus, à cause du besoin que l'un et l'autre ont de se passer de la respiration, sçavoir le veau marin pendant qu'il est plongé dans l'eau, et le fœtus pendant qu'il est dans le ventre de sa mère, où il est certain que les anastomoses servent à décharger le poumon de l'abondance du sang qui le suffoqueroit."—Vid. *Acad. de Sciences*. Anno 1699. page 149.

§ Vol. Part 2. p. 11.



might find an author, when he had dissected a person with the foramen ovale open, insinuating by oblique notions, what a vast pity it was that the man had not known, during his life, how kind nature had been to him, and what a perfect diver he was! while another says plainly, on a like occasion, "what a pity it was that this child did not live!" we should have seen almost an amphibious human animal, at least a most notable diver.\* On this slender ground they told the most wonderful tales, among which Pechlinus's story of the Tronningholm gardener is one of the prettiest. "The ice having broken, the gardener, in trying to help out some others, as frequently happens, slipt in himself into a place full eighteen yards deep.— There he no sooner touched the bottom, than he felt as if you had clapt a plaster over his mouth: his feet stuck fast, his body became rigid, and he stood there as stiff as a stake, with no one of his senses about him, except only that he thought he heard all the while the Stockholm bells ringing most pleasantly; and there he stood for sixteen hours, the folks seeking him up and down, and wondering where he could be: at last having found him, they hooked him out with a pole; and after much warming, and rubbing, and working, and giving him hot drinks, they got his blood to circulate, and brought him to life again. He had sense enough, however, he said, to feel their hook; and indeed they had angled so ill, that his head was all bruised, and he had terrible headachs: but, however, the Queen-Mother gave him a good pension, and he was sixty-five years of age when Pechlinus wrote."† This is one of the many sto-

\* Mr. Cheminau says, "On auroit vue avec étonnement un Homme presque amphibie comme le Tortuë." Page 38.

† Hortulanus Tronningholmensis etianum vivens, annos natus 65, pro illa ætate satis adhuc valens et vegetus, cum ante 18 annos alii in aquas delapso opem ferre vellet, forte fortuna et ipse per glaciem incautius procedens, aquas incidit 18 ulnas profundas: *ubi ille, corpore, erecto quasi ad perpendicularum, pedibus funda adhæsit.* Constitit sic per 16 horas, antequam produceretur in auras. Dixit autem, simul ac infra aquarum superficiem fuit demersus, *statim obriguisset totum*, et, si quem tum habuit motum et sensum; amisisset nisi quod sonantes Stockholmii campanas etiam sub aquis obscuris percipere sibi sit visus. *Sensit etiam statim sesse velut vesiculam ori applicasse*, adeo ut aqua nulla os penetraverit, in aures vero transirum, etiam sentiente illo, habuerit; atque inde auditum suum debilitatum aliquandiu esse. Hoc statum dum 16 horas permansit frustra quæsitus, tandem repertum, conto in caput infixum, cujus etiam sensum se habuisse dixit, fundo extraxerunt, sperantes ex more aut persuasione gentis revicturum esse. Itaque pannis linteisque productum obvolvunt, ne aer admitti possit perniciosus futurus subito illapsu! Custoditum sic satis ab aëre sensim sensimque tepidiore loco admovent mox calidis adoriuntur fasciis, fricant, radunt, et sufflaminatum tot horis sanguinis corporisque motum negotiosa illa opera reducunt: denique antapoplecticis et genialibus liquoribus vitæ reddunt et pristina mobilitati. Retulit is atque ostendit se etiamnum in capite circumferre vestigia violentiæ a conto illatæ et cephalalgis vexari gravissimis. Et propter hunc ipsum casum, religiose a popularibus, et hujusce rei testibus probatum Serenissimæ Reginæ Matris munificentia et annuo stipendio est donatus."

ries of men preserved by the foramen ovale not having been shut. At first, I say, this opinion began to peep out in hints and reflections ; then it strengthened into wonderful tales of people being recovered who had been under the water six days ; till at last a great genius undertook to make water-whelps upon a new principle, viz. with the foramen ovale open. This great genius was the Count de Buffon. Indeed even this very year a very celebrated author, Dr. Beddoes, forgetting, perhaps, how successful Buffon is, tells us (page 41,) that "by frequent immersion in water the association betwixt the heart and lungs might perhaps be dissolved, and an animal be inured to live commodiously under water for any time."

Let us move just a step backwards in this new trade of making amphibious animals, and observe how the celebrated Buffon succeeded. "I procured a pregnant bitch (says Buffon) of the large greyhound kind ; and when just about to litter, I fixed her so in a bucket full of warm water, that her hinder parts were entirely covered. In this situation she brought forth three puppies which, after being disengaged from their membranes, were immersed in a fluid nearly of an equal temperature with that of the amnios. After assisting the mother, and washing the puppies in this water, I suddenly removed them into a pail of warm milk, without allowing them time to respire. I put them into the milk in preference to the water, that they might have an opportunity of taking some food, if they found a desire for it. I kept them immersed in the milk for more than half an hour ; and when taken out of it, all the three were alive. They began to breathe, and they discharged a quantity of fluid matter by the mouth. I allowed them to respire about half an hour, and again immersed them in the warm milk, where they remained another half hour. I then took them out ; two of them were still vigorous, but the third seemed to languish ; I therefore ordered it to be carried to the mother ; which besides the three brought forth in the water, had littered other six in the natural manner. The puppy which was born in the water and had continued one half hour in warm milk before it was allowed to breathe, and another half hour after it had respired, seemed to be very little incommoded ; for it soon recovered, and was as active and lively as those which had received no injury. Of the six that were brought forth in the air, I threw away four ; so that there remained only two with the mother, besides the one that had been littered in the water. I continued my experiments upon the other two which had been twice immersed in the milk : after allowing them to breathe about half an hour, I plunged them a third time into the milk, where they remained another half hour. Whether

they swallowed any of the milk, I could not determine ; but when removed, they appeared to be nearly as vigorous as before their immersion." " I pushed these trials no farther : but I learned enough to convince me, that respiration is not so indispensibly necessary to the existence of a new-born animal as to an adult ; and that by employing certain precautions, it is perhaps, possible to keep the foramen ovale open ; and, by this means, produce excellent divers, or a species of amphibious animals, which would be able to live equally in air or in water."

I am sorry to say that I cannot pay Mr. Buffon the compliment of thinking that he was deceived in so simple an affair as this ; yet he certainly could not succeed. I leave it with my reader to judge what shall be said of Mr. Buffon ; for it was not the foramen ovale that he was to keep open, if he wanted to make *Amphibiæ* ; but, since the function of the placenta was just cut off in these whelps, and since he did not allow them the office of the lungs, he was to seek for some other third function, which could stand in place of the functions of the placenta and lungs ; and since no such function has yet been observed, I judge from all the principles which I have laid down, that Mr. Buffon was telling a vain-glorious idle tale ; that he was conscious that he had succeeded in no degree ; and that he could no more have converted them into amphibious animals, than he could have made them what they were, viz. plain whelps. "*Sed quis fallat omnisciam, ut sic loquar, naturam ? Illa non colludit nostris erroribus, et quod ignorantia celaverat suo detegit tempore.*"



## CHAP. V.

### OF MALCONFORMATIONS OF THE HEART, AND OTHER CAUSES, PREVENTING THE DUE OXYDATION OF THE BLOOD.

WE are at no period of life, from the cradle to the grave, exempted from those diseases which prevent the due oxydation of the blood. They often are born with us ; they often

overtake us when advanced in life ; they cause an anxiety and misery, which exceeds all other distress : pain and suffering of every other kind humanity can bear, but the feeling of instant dissolution is what the noblest mind sinks under. We know by the pale and subsiding countenance how awful the inward feelings are, and woe be to him who has not feeling enough to sympathise with this distress, and an anxious desire to understand the cause, and to alleviate the misery, of inward diseases which he cannot cure !

These are seducing motives, and might of themselves have drawn me on to give this slight sketch of the malconformations and diseases of the heart : but I feel also the stronger motives of duty and necessity ; for truly, without some knowledge of the ill organized, irregular, and diseased heart, the structure and functions of the heart in its sounder state would be but poorly understood. This sketch, then, is the last part of this anatomy of the heart.

While the following history serves to correct our notions of the mechanism of the heart, we must also observe how it explains and illustrates up to a much higher point the combined functions of the heart and lungs, viz. the oxydation of the blood. Perhaps nothing can better explain the effects of a full and healthy oxydation, than a sparing oxydation of the blood, such as produces disease.

The *fœtus* alone can live with its single heart ; it lives in the womb by its having a heart different from that of an adult. A *fœtus*, then, being born, cannot live with that heart which served it in the womb ; and Nature, as I have explained already, divides the single heart, and there is then a heart for the lungs and a heart for the body. But if any fault in the organization prevent this separation of the heart ; if the foramen ovale be preserved open ; or if there should be any hole in the septum betwixt the ventricles of the heart ; if the pulmonic artery do not admit the blood, now that the child is born, and should breathe the air ; if the aorta arise from the right ventricle, so as to carry off all the blood from the lungs ; or if the aorta be so displaced, that its mouth stands in part over both ventricles, so as to receive the blood of both—then the organization, movements, functions of the heart, are all wrong ; no blood passes into the lungs, the child cannot live ; it either dies immediately in convulsive struggles, or lives in misery but a few years.

It is not in this rapid enumeration that these varieties of malconformation can be understood, nor yet do they deserve to be minutely detailed. I shall keep the middle path ; and those of my readers will easily follow me who have studied



the mechanism of the heart ; concerning which this subject will recall to their memory all the important facts.

The most usual of all these disorders of the heart is some fault in the pulmonic artery ; and that disorder again is fruitful of others : for if the pulmonic artery cannot receive its blood, the foramen ovale cannot close : then the blood cannot circulate nor pass into the lungs when they first expand ; then the office of the right heart is taken away, it has no power but to drive the blood with struggles through the foramen ovale into the left heart ; the left heart then drives this blood, unoxysated as it is, into the aorta : the heart is now a single heart ; it is the left heart alone that receives or circulates the blood : either it labours but for a few pulses, and then the child, after a convulsive struggle, expires ; or there is some degree of opening in the pulmonic artery, a little blood passes through it into the lungs ; the child is by that enabled to struggle with its convulsive pangs for eight or ten days, and then expires.

Such a scene the celebrated Dr. Hunter once witnessed ; and there was, I perceive, in that heart a peculiarity very much to be admired. The chief fault was in the pulmonic artery, which was contracted into a solid substance or cord absolutely and completely impervious, so that the lungs had never received one drop of blood by the pulmonic artery. And here I must stop to notice one thing which I have always suspected, and which this dissection proves, viz. that though it is natural to believe, and the best physiologists suppose it, that some blood, as much at least as to support the form of the pulmonic vessels, passes through the fetal lungs ; yet here is direct proof that a well nourished child may be born capable of breathing, and in which the pulmonic vessels are all free except at the heart, in which not one drop of blood ever has passed into the lungs. But chiefly it is to be observed, that this child, with its pulmonic artery quite impervious, could not have struggled a single day, far less ten days, without some proportion of oxydated blood ! and accordingly we find that it had a small portion, just such as supported life for a few days ; which small proportion is obtained thus : the blood went to be oxydated, not from the right ventricle into the pulmonic artery, but from the left ventricle into the aorta ; from thence into the ductus arteriosus ; and then, by a retrograde course, backwards through the lungs ; and then by the pulmonic veins it was returned oxydated into the left side of the heart, from whence it came. This child accordingly lived a few days, and could not live longer : because this difficult circulation was continually accumulating a quantity of black blood in the right side of the heart.

This child, then, had a heart resembling that of the Newt or Frog; for the pulmonic artery was closed, and the right heart of no value; the left heart pushed its blood into the aorta, and the aorta, as we may express it, sent a side branch into the lungs. In this first instance, then, of malconformation, the child could not live, because it wanted the pulmonary artery, and of course the office of the right ventricle: it had but a single heart.

Next to this disorder of the pulmonic artery, viz. being obliterated or being closed, is this: that the aorta, in place of arising distinctly either from the right or from the left ventricle, is so placed, that its root stands directly over the septum ventriculorum, or partition of the ventricles; that the partition is perforated with a large hole, opening a very free passage from side to side; and that the heart being cut up, we find, upon thrusting down the finger into the aorta, that it passes with equal ease into the right or into the left side of the heart—All which we are the less surprised at, when we remember that in the Chick in ovo, the parts of the heart are all separate pieces, which are joined one to another; and that in the fœtus of other creatures, in the Frog for example, the auricle, ventricle, and artery, are first seen at a distance from each other, and then joined\*.

In this conformation of the heart, the single heart appears again in a new form, and the office of the right or pulmonic side of the heart is well nigh annihilated. First, the pulmonic artery is small, sometimes almost close: secondly, the aorta, arising as well from the right as from the left ventricle, carries off one half of that blood which should be circulated through the lungs: and, lastly, that blood, small as it is in quantity, which has passed through the lungs, is brought round to the left side of the heart; but the left side is not as it should be, close, to keep this purer blood for the circulation of the body, but it is mixed with the blood of the right side, through the perforated septum, so that its virtues, as oxydated blood, are diluted or almost lost.

If the pulmonic artery were unaffected, and the aorta placed equally over both ventricles, then the one half exactly of that blood which should be oxydated would undergo the change. But in all these malconformations, the root of the pulmonic

\* I do not mean to argue, that when we first see them, they are so little connected, that one could be awkwardly joined to the other, nor that they have no real connection, because it appears as if they had not: but merely this, that as they seem, like the parts of the eye, to be organized in separate pieces, I should sooner expect an unnatural displacement of the vessels of the heart than in the middle of the femoral artery.

artery also is in fault ; it is narrow ; it is so small, that at first opening such a body it alone attracts the eye ; its mouth is sometimes so beset with a sort of fleshy granulous papillæ, that there is hardly left opening enough to pass a silver probe. The degree of contraction in the pulmonic artery is the true measure of all the oxydated blood which that system can receive ; but in such a system the quantity is still farther reduced by various accidents of the organization. Thus, for example,—The pulmonic artery is, we shall suppose, but one third of its natural size, and the original quantity of oxydated blood is proportionably small ;—next, the foramen ovale, being open, carries off much blood towards the left auricle ; the aorta, planted over the right ventricle, carries off also much blood.—But let us suppose, that still as much remains as to fill the pulmonic artery to its full ; when the pure blood comes round to the left side it is mixed through the foramen ovale, and through the breach of the septum, with a quantity of black blood, which is continually accumulating upon it ; and the small quantity of oxydated blood is, if I may use the expression, drowned in the general mass.

That I may explain the point of its accumulating a little farther, let me repeat, that even in a child which has died on the tenth day of such a disorder, the heart is crammed with dark-coloured blood : that in those children which have lived two or three years under such a distress, the heart has been greatly enlarged : that in a boy dissected by Sandifort, who died at fifteen, the thing that was first seen upon opening the body was, not the lungs covering the heart and lapping over it, but a large mass, lying betwixt the lungs, oppressing them, and pushing them aside in every direction. This was the pericardium covering a heart of enormous size, filling the thorax, and reaching almost to the first rib ; very little of the right lobe of the lungs, and none almost of the left, was to be seen ; the veins in the upper part of the thorax, viz. the subclavian and jugulars, were choaked by the pressure, and much distended ; the heart itself was full of blood, and the coronary veins so turgid, that it resembled a most minute and beautiful injection of the heart.

But it is most of all singular, that this heart was so enlarged, that the great veins (which are indeed as reservoirs for the right side of the heart,) and especially the upper cava, dilated along with it in such a degree, that there was felt distinctly a pulsation in the neck by a sort of back stroke every time the heart beat.

Still a child, even with a heart so ill organized, may strug-

gle through all the weakness and all the diseases of childhood\* for a few years ; but they are years of complete misery ; and still, as is proved by much sad experience, the boy cannot live, but must die.

Another conformation, the strangest of all, is that in which new parts are added to the circulating system, as if with design to make it resemble the heart of an amphibious creature ; for it happens sometimes, that there is as it were a third heart interposed. For example, the two vena cavae end in the right auricle, the pulmonic veins enter into the left auricle and the right and left ventricles receive their blood from their auricles in the usual way : yet the right ventricle sends out no pulmonary artery, the left ventricle sends out no aorta ; but both of them pour their blood into a middle ventricle, and the arteries go out from it : and here, as the blood is fairly delivered by both ventricles into this third ventricle, and as the pulmonic artery and aorta both arise from it, there is, of course, a fair division of the blood ; and of the quantity which should be oxydated, exactly one half undergoes that change. This is somewhat like the heart of the Turtle ; it is plainly the structure of an amphibious heart, a single heart ; for though there be three cavities, yet are they single in their function ; it is a single heart with half oxydated blood. Such a heart is sufficient for amphibiae, or for the fœtus, but not for a child, which must breathe and have a double heart.

These are a few of the varieties of the imperfect heart ; but the sufferings of children who are born with these imperfections, the marks of imperfect oxydation, and the manner of their life and death, was a chief motive for entering on this subject.

When the heart is so imperfect that the child lives but a few days, its sufferings are slight, and not lingering, so that we cannot mark them : they are not explained to us by any account of its inward feelings : they are all accumulated into one terrible struggle, in which we see the worst marks of ill oxydated blood.

The child is born well and healthy, it cries and draws its breath, it is removed from the mother ; the function of the placenta ceases, but there is no other to succeed it : the child turns black in the face, struggles for breath, and is convulsed ; and without any apparent cause it seems in the agonies of death : but yet it lives, it becomes black all over the body ; the

\* Sandifort attended a puer cœruleus, who, in addition to his chief disease, passed through the small-pox and measles safely, and attained the age of fifteen.



blackness never goes off except when it changes sometimes into a deadly ash-colour. The child continues for a few days labouring under almost unceasing convulsions which, growing gradually weaker, it at last expires; and while it lives, the heart palpitates, sometimes it throbs so, that it can be distinguished at a distance by the eye. Dr. Hunter, in the child which I have already mentioned, laid his hand upon the breast, and the throbbing which he felt there was terrible to him.

When the child has the heart so formed as to admit into the lungs even a very small proportion of blood, it struggles through the first years of life, and its protracted sufferings can be more easily observed. Then no mark of ill oxydated blood is wanting; every thing is the reverse of health, or the natural appearance flushed and florid of a growing child; its colour is always dark, its motions languid and powerless; it is cold, so that the parents must keep it carefully wrapped in flannels and furs to preserve any thing of vital heat; its breathing is difficult and distressed; fits come upon it at times; and if the child has begun to walk, the least hurry, or fear, or quick step, even walking across the room, brings a return of the fit: in which the extremities are deadly cold, the face black, the breathing one continued struggle, and the end of the fit is the obtaining of a degree of relief, which happens in a most singular way.

The coldness, the liver, the languor, the fainting, the struggles for free breathing, are all marks of ill oxydated blood.—The convulsive paroxysm is a sure consequence of the want of stimulus and force, and of blood accumulating at the right side of the heart. If, then, the child fall down in this paroxysm, it is the very surest proof that ordinary respiration will not save him from the struggle; if during the fit he breathe so that he recovers, and that presently his strength, colour, spirits, every thing, is in a degree restored; then is it plain that the respiration during the fit, imperfect as it appears to us, is really more effectual than ordinary respiration.

When we observe which is the most natural way of obtaining relief, and notice the very peculiar manner in which these children breathe, we shall understand why they are breathing best when we believe they are hardly getting breath, and how they are recovering slowly when we think them labouring in the greatest danger. The child feeling the growing oppression at its breast, if it be young, signifies a desire to be turned upon its face; if not indulged, it contrives to turn itself that way before its hard struggle begins. When the child begins to breathe hard, it drives out the air with a sudden exertion, and apparent pain; he remains longer without respiration than an adult

could do; his expirations are attended with a sort of scream. What can this way of breathing mean? To my apprehension it implies that kind of breathing which I have called forced respiration, and no other plainly can serve.

The ordinary respiration, by which we draw in 40 cubic inches of air, has failed; the fit is approaching, because that quantity of air will not suffice. However rapidly the child breathes, however rapidly the heart palpitates, it will not do, because there are but 40 inches of pure air mixed with the whole of that great mass which remains always in the lungs.— Then the child, driven by instinct, provides for the fullest respiration: it turns upon its face, that the weight may help to compress the thorax; it forces with all its power, and seems to cease from breathing, and refrains a long while in that state, because it is emptying and compressing the lungs. Then its purpose is accomplished; the lungs are more emptied than in ordinary respiration; it draws in the largest draught of air, utters a sort of scream, seems quiet again; and again, by pressing its breast, and by contortions (convulsive like of its body,) it empties its lungs at a distant interval, and receives again the fullest draught of air. It is this forced respiration that brings into the lungs 70 cubic inches of air more than the usual respiration does. This, then, is three times more effectual than ordinary breathing; and when a boy grown up to those years in which he knows the warnings of his disorder, and has found out this relief; when such a boy by pressing upon the corner of a table, or by throwing himself upon the ground, prevents or alleviates his paroxysms, in what way can it be but by practising for a time this deeper respiration? pressing the chest, forcing and compressing the lungs beyond their usual degree of collapse, and so obtaining a fuller draught, a draught of 110 inches of air, to be mixed with the 110 inches which must always remain in the lungs?

After half an hour of a kind of breathing, most awful to behold, but much more effectual than common breathing, the child recovers slowly. The boy, when advanced a few years, knows how to prevent the fit; but the child of two or three years old knows only how to struggle with it: yet this struggle being a more effectual breathing, the child is relieved at once from an anxiety, and oppression, and throbbing, which precedes the fit for many days; the languor goes off, the heat in some degree returns, and the lips acquire a vermilion colour and the skin a higher tint, which last for many hours after the fit is gone.

In those children, again, which have the heart so formed that they may live not two or three years only, but to the age

of 15 years, it naturally happens that the symptoms follow each other in their course very slowly; and the ill oxydation of the blood in this its slower progress it is very curious to observe.

There is one thing in the economy of the fœtus very singular, viz. that while it is receiving much oxydated blood from the mother, but a small portion goes through the ductus venosus directly to the heart, much of it circulates through the liver, and is spoiled (we must suppose.) What then can this mean? Surely the child, the chick, the fœtus of every kind, needs less of this principle of oxygene: the fœtus lives (if this be so) like an amphibious creature; perhaps it has little oxydated blood; yet being totally deprived of that little, it soon dies. Perhaps the fœtus, living the life of an amphibious creature, does not want also that peculiar tenacity of life which characterises that class; for the struggles and sufferings which a weakly infant endures, before it parts with life, are matter of observation even among the vulgar. For this reason I believe it is that children, having a heart so ill arranged that absolutely they cannot live beyond the years of puberty, yet during the first year feel no complaint, and seem thriving and healthy; the vegetating life of a sucking child saves it from all dangers of hurried respiration and rapid pulse.—But when it leaves the breast; when it begins to stir and move; when its blood, moving languidly, begins slowly to accumulate at its heart; when the properties of its living fibres change, so as to require a fuller supply of oxygene from the blood—then the ill colour, languor, palpitations, slighter fits, and all the marks of its disease, begin; and often its colour gradually changes, and it becomes the *puer cœruleus*, or livid child, before we can perceive by any other marks how dangerous a condition it is in.

In one child\* the first year had elapsed before the very slightest of those complaints came on, which ended in death at a very distant period of 15 years. At first its finger nails were observed to be livid, yet not continually; the colour varied, but still the nails were unnaturally livid, so as to alarm and surprise the parents: but there was as yet no reason to desire advice. The child seemed healthy, began to use its legs, and in the second year it walked alone.—Next it happened, that one day after being forced to take a medicine, not without some resistance, his face was on the following day freckled with red spots, which soon changed to a livid hue. Now the lassitude and chillness came on; motion or exercise were more and more oppressive to the boy; till at last when he fa-

\* Vide Santifort.

tigued or hurried himself, the hands and feet became livid, the mouth and tongue became almost black, and last of all, those fits came on in which the whole body becomes livid or black.

This is the progress of this darker colour of the body ; but his other complaints also advanced with a very slow and regular pace. He increased in stature, his appetite was good, he complained of great lassitude, of headach, with a sort of gravitating pain, of anxieties, especially during the winter months, and of such extreme coldness, that neither fire in winter nor summer's sun could warm him ; he never felt heat except when just wrapped up and newly laid in bed.

Now the blood began to accumulate ; the struggles of the heart began ; and so terrible were the throbbings of his heart at times, that they might be seen or even heard. Actual fainting succeeded ; the poor boy, now eleven years, of age, knew that he was to die ; he said, that " no one could know or cure his illness, and that no one could imagine what feelings he had here at his heart."

Motion was now quite impossible ; upon the slightest effort saliva flowed from his mouth, a fainting fit ensued, and he continued for a little while blind. All that he was wont to delight in was now indifferent to him ; he could not move ; his face was turgid, his eyes prominent, his feet were swelled with an œdema, his eyes dead and heavy, expressive of some inward distress ; when he was put to bed his anxieties were very great, and thus he died a slow and miserable death.

Sometimes a chi'd wants spirit or strength to strive against the lassitude of this disease. A girl under Vasalva's care lived to her fifteenth year ; but from her infancy, from her very birth, she had lain in bed, partly on account of sickness, but chiefly on account of extreme weakness. She had a short and difficult breathing, and her skin was tinged all over with a livid colour ; her quiet state saved her from the suffocating paroxysms ; but her heart was just like all the others, the foramen ovale open, and the pulmonic artery closed.

These, then, are the marks of ill-oxydated blood : a livid colour, coldness which nothing can remove, oppression and anxiety of the breast, palpitations and difficult breathing ; and when the blood is by passion or motion hurried too fast towards the right side of the heart, then come fits, which last a longer, or shorter time in proportion as they have been long delayed, and which end in death. And last of all, I would rank among these consequences an imperfect nourishment, for all the boys have been small, most of them particularly slender ; and one boy especially, of fifteen years of age, is mentioned by Hunter, who, in respect of tallness, was just what you should expect at



his years, but slender to a wonderful degree ; not as if wasted by consumption, but as if by natural habit. His form was quite surprising, so that Hunter could give no idea of his shape, otherwise than by comparing his body with that of a Greyhound ; and his legs, he says, put him in mind of those of a Crane, or some tall water-fowl.

The consequences must be alike, whether it be that the heart sends no blood towards the lungs, or that the lungs cannot receive that blood ; and the malconformations of the heart are hardly more frequent than those of the lungs ; and both, we may be well assured, are infinitely more frequent than we suppose ; especially when we observe how many children die suddenly, discoloured, and in convulsions ; and how many of those advanced in years have lived very miserable with complaints in the breast.

A young man of twenty-four years of age, by birth a Pole, and at the time of his death a soldier in the German service, had been continually oppressed from his cradle upwards with difficult breathing and anxieties at his breast. He had been three or four times relieved from slighter complaints of the breast ; but at last the bleedings and demulcent medicines failed : he lay ill in the military hospital two months, where of course his complaints were correctly known. He had none but the slighter degrees of difficult breathing ; when one day sitting up in bed he suddenly expired. Being opened, the right side of the lungs was found to be totally wanting ; not destroyed by disease, as we have often seen, not oppressed by water nor eroded by pus, but entirely wanting ; a peculiarity which he had from his mother's womb, for it was attended with a peculiar arrangement of the vessels. On the right side there was no vestige of the lungs, not even the smallest button to mark where they might have been ; there was no branch of the trachea for the right lobe intended by Nature, but both the legs of the trachea plunged into the left lung, which was large : there was no forking of the pulmonary artery to give a branch to the right side, but the whole trunk of the pulmonic artery plunged into the left lung.

But if one should suspect that there might have been once a right branch, the lungs destroyed, and the mouths curiously united by that mucus which the membranes of the viscera, and the pleura especially, throw out when inflamed ; there are still other cases which must remove all our doubts, especially that of a young man\*, who died in a very lingering way, and in whom before his death there was plainly perceived, along

\* Under the care of Dr. Heberden. Vid. *Acta Vendobonensis*.

with his slight anxieties, a pulsation in the right side of the breast. Upon opening his body, there was found in the left side neither lungs nor heart; nor, upon the most careful examination (seeking for the wasted lung), could there be found the smallest remains of lungs, bronchiæ, pulmonic arteries, or the slightest evidence that any such parts had ever been. But the surest proof of this remains behind, for the heart stood in the right side of the chest; it stood perpendicularly, quite upright like a Dog's; it gave out a right pulmonic artery, but there was not even the smallest vestige of any artery having been appointed for the left lobe. We must not say, yet his chest may have been full enough of lungs and heart, and he may have had a well-oxydated blood; in which case it was no very dangerous derangement that his lungs were all on the right side, more than if his liver had been on the left. But let us notice that the aorta was extremely small; the diameter of the aorta is the true measure of the blood which is received from the lungs. Where the aorta is small, surely the lungs are not good, nor the system fully supplied with oxydated blood.

We also know that though the vessels of the lungs themselves may be natural and well arranged, the lungs may still be amiss; they may want the proper structure of cells in which the blood should be exposed; they may be encumbered with tumours arising out of their substance, by which they will be prevented from dilating. One is pleased to find in old authors good descriptions of diseases which have remained for ages unknown; and among these I reckon that of the celebrated Spindler, whose description I admire as much as that of any succeeding author.

The child of a certain prince having died after a few days of great suffering, Spindler opened the body, and found all sound and right, except that there were seated upon the two lungs two tubercles of a variegated red colour, as were the lungs themselves; which tumours, no doubt, hindered the passage of the blood, which he expresses with a correctness in respect of physiology quite unknown in those times. "*Quæ vomicæ procul dubio hujus asphyxiæ causæ extitere denegata circulatione ex dextro in sinistrum cordis ventriculum.*" His description of the disease so long before it was properly understood is curious: "During the eight days in which the child lived, it had never cried strongly nor clearly, had never sucked, had never been regular in its bowels, breathed as if its sides had been blown up; it was suddenly seized with a fit, which seemed epileptic, soon went off, but soon returned; the whole face and body became first red, then of a copper colour;

the breathing was interrupted, the eyes immoveable, the feet and hands lay almost lifeless ; it suffered at least a hundred of these fits before it expired."

To enumerate those cases where a defect of the lungs were the consequence, not of malconformation, but of disease, were a business quite inconsistent with my design : yet I wish to record these two.—First, It has been long observed, that by long continued suppuration, the lungs are often so wasted that not a bud or particle of them remains : sometimes these patients survive, dragging on a languid and miserable existence, enjoying no freedom, life, nor spirits ; and the cause of their frequent ailments is discovered at their death. The lungs also may be thus compressed even by the mere pressure of water within the chest, which has caused such a subsiding, or rather absorption, of the lungs, without any ulcer of their surface, that one lung has been oppressed till it became no more than three lines in thickness ; and indeed it was not easily found : so Haller says in his *Commentary upon Boerhaave*. But of all the strange things which Haller or any man has ever related, what he tells in the following words is the most incredible ; at least it is so improbable as to be incredible. "A man having died of a lingering disease occasioned by a fall, the left lobe of the lungs was not to be found ; that side of the chest was full of a coagulable serum ; but the *asperia arteria* and large arteries and veins (a thing which I never could have believed, had I not seen it myself) opened with gaping orifices into the cavity of the thorax, as if they had been cut across ; so that it was very hard to conceive what had prevented the blood from pouring out." Haller, p. 34.

Secondly, In the *peripneumonia notha* there is not merely an inflammation of the pleura, as the name expresses, but of the lungs themselves ; and it is not from inflammation, pain, fever, or acute suffering, that they die ; but because the lungs are entirely crammed with blood ; the heart can no longer move ; they are not sensible of their dangerous state, but are suffocated in a moment, and die without a groan. It seems more frequent in other countries, than in this, though no country is exempted. When this disease comes upon a place, it comes with all the frequency and destruction of an epidemic disease ; and the sudden unexpected deaths are terrible. *Vasalva* found an old gentleman going abroad in the morning, and prevented him, questioning him about his complaints, which he himself thought very slight : but *Vasalva* gave notice privately to the servants to expect nothing better than their

master's death; and notwithstanding all assistance, he was that very evening dead.

The pulse is weak, the cough slight, the difficulty of breathing more anxious than painful; the face sunk in the features and flushed, or rather of a lurid colour, except when it is cadaverous, pale, and sallow; the suffocation is sudden; the lungs have, as Morgagni expresses it, a liver-like, solid consistence; they have no longer the cellular appearance of lungs, for their bronchiæ are crammed with blood; their common cellular texture is also full of exuded blood; they are dense, solid, very heavy, and black, and they sink in water like the lungs of a fœtus. The heart is so curbed in its actions, that it gives but a small, feeble, and trembling pulse: and even in a few days (as in the fœtus having an imperfect organization) the heart is wonderfully dilated and enlarged, and filled with fluid and grumous blood. Haller laments the death of friends by this terrible disease, and especially of his own son, "whose body he gave to be opened by those skilled in dissections."

PERHAPS the heart may be too small for the system to which it belongs; and this, I doubt not, had been the case with that boy in whom Kerkringius found it so small, that though the boy was nine years old, the heart (*i. e.* the ventricles) was no bigger than that of a fœtus; and the whole heart, auricles, ventricles and all, was no bigger than that of a child born at the full time. But in proportion as the heart was small the vessels were large, not at all aneurismal, but of such a size, and scarcely of such a size, as might suit the heart of a boy of nine years old. This boy had for five years been hectic; that is to say, he had been troubled with no formed disease, but with continual distress, anxiety, weakness, and quick pulse. This heart was plainly inadequate to the functions of any system; but the case is too slightly sketched for us to find any decided marks of ill oxydated blood.

But that the heart may be too big for its system, is a melancholy fact; for when it becomes relaxed, it enlarges, and as it grows in bulk loses in power. That the heart is enlarged merely by weakness, by submitting to dilatation, by wanting sufficient power to free itself of accumulating blood, is very plain; for in the plague, in low and pestilential fevers, even in nervous affections, it sometimes enlarges, and from a temporary becomes a mechanical and fixed disease. How often do we read in the preface to such dissections of enlarged heart, "he was of a melancholy temperament, of a slow and sedentary life, oppressed by misfortunes, and struggling with vexations and grief." In the angina pectoris, which is in its



first attack no organic disease, we often find the dilated heart pale and tender, so that the fingers may be pushed through its flesh.

While the heart gradually enlarges, the system changes, and accommodates itself to its powers. There is little distress; often we find a heart enlarged to a degree such as we never could have suspected before death. But slowly there is formed such an accumulation of ill oxydated blood as oppresses the vital powers, and chokes the motions of the heart, and draws after it those other disorders which are already in part explained.

Of the mechanical consequences which follow the enlarged heart, those chiefly attract our attention which prevent the due oxydation of the blood.

First, The dilatation of the heart draws after it a dilatation of the great veins, so that they become reservoirs as it were; and the auricle and veins both enlarge so, that the office of the auricular valves is quite lost; the veins feel, or rather the column of blood in the veins feels the back stroke from the heart, and it is perceived even in the neck by a strong pulsation.—Secondly, These veins, and this monstrous heart, so fill the chest, prevent the blood of the neck descending, and so push aside the lungs, as to compress them to the last degree that is consistent with life.—Thirdly, The enlarged heart accumulates much blood in the system which before did not exist, and that blood dark coloured and unfit for the purposes of life. The proportion betwixt the great mass of ill oxydated blood lingering in the veins and about the heart, is increased so very greatly, in opposition to the very small quantity which can now be oxydated in the lungs, that such persons are exposed every moment to the greatest dangers; and the least accident which draws out more black blood from the veins, and hurries it towards the heart, quite overcomes them. Then there is an agonizing and fearful struggle; the heart often struggles, and often frees itself; but in most cases those who live in this condition do, after many escapes, fall down suddenly dead. “A very learned man having this enlargement of the heart while he was still walking about in his ordinary health, his heart would often stop for three or four pulsations, as if struggling with its load, *velutque expulsionem moliretur.*”<sup>\*</sup>—Fourthly, In this enlargement of the heart, although sometimes there is a perfect and equal pulse, though sometimes also the disease scarcely shows itself till very far advanced, and after many

<sup>\*</sup> Vesalii, lib. i. cap. v.

years of slow increase ; yet the heart being continually loaded, and often struggling, cannot free itself at one stroke of all its blood ; then, stroke succeeding stroke in a confused irregular way, there is a weak, irregular, intermitting, fluttering pulse.—Fifthly, But Nature, wonderful in her ways, sometimes finds relief from this in the regular constitution of these parts ; for while the heart dilates, and becomes more powerless as it dilates, the aorta (being but poorly filled) contracts in proportion as the heart dilates, and accommodates itself to the small quantity of blood which such a heart can give out : and thence the wonder sometimes expressed at finding an aorta extremely slender joined often to an enormous heart.

“ In opening the body of a shoemaker, says Morgagni, whose heart was wonderfully enlarged, seeming as if you had joined two hearts, what chiefly struck us was the smallness of the aorta, more suitable to a delicate woman than to a man of good stature as this was. The aorta, from its passing under the diaphragm to its great division in the pelvis, was very small. This Morgagni first of all believed was owing to some stricture at the diaphragm ; for the aorta did not pass as usual under the legs of the diaphragm, it passed through a peculiar hole ; but he found this tendinous hole quite large and free.—Still he believed that all the disorder of the heart arose from the contraction of the aorta, and that again from the crooked posture in which those sit who are of this trade. But that often the artery is contracted in favour of the enlarged ventricle, I am able to prove better than by this case of Morgagni’s.—In the first place, the distorted posture of his shoemaker can have no effect ; for we must not forget how limber, flexible, and free from disease, the aorta is in those who have the unhappiness to be deformed, and in whom the aorta follows the spine so closely, that often the bones almost meet in their distortions, and hide it. I have cut out these aortas sometimes and laid them on boards, to show the strange angles which they make with such perfect safety. Next I have to observe, that where the auricles and ventricles dilate in old people, the aorta also dilates : for there the aorta is old, partly ossified ; its muscular coat stiff and incapable of action ; it is, in short, as weak as the heart itself, and yields along with it to the accumulated blood. But in younger men, the aorta being muscular and strongly contractile, this phenomenon ensues : that as the heart increases in size and weakness every day, it struggles with less effect against the accumulation ; its pulses are imperfect ; it delivers less blood into the aorta ; the aorta, less perfectly filled, is not excited by the same power which formerly filled it and kept it full : therefore it contracts gradually

and slowly ; it preserves still its healthy constitution ; it is limber, pliant, and sound, in its muscular coat. In short, this doctrine of Morgagni's implies only a stationary condition of the aorta ; this other theory implies an active contraction.—Now Morgagni's shoemaker was a portly man, but his aorta was smaller than a woman's. Even this case of his own implies an actual contraction ; since, had this man's aorta continued stationary, it must have been still the aorta of a man of good stature, joined to a large heart. But a perfect proof is this : I have a heart which it would not be easy to describe ; it is not only as big as two hearts joined, but I may say, with Bartholine, "*ut sæpe in Bobus non magis sit aut ponderosior.*" The heart is bigger actually than an ox's ; it is bigger, I think, by the whole size of its two great auricles ; it is injected with wax ; it weighs more than four pounds, and is two feet in circumference ; but the aorta is no bigger than the femoral artery at the groin, very straight and even in its diameter, very slender, and with coats which plainly have been very thin and suitable to such an artery. Here the artery is equably and fairly contracted to one fourth of its natural size, which supposes a natural and sound condition of its coats : and one of two things must have happened, either the artery must have contracted first, opposing the heart and causing it to enlarge ; but then its violent contraction, like the urethra contracting in opposition to the bladder, would have thickened it into a strong muscular tube : or, secondly, the artery must have contracted gently, and gradually in favour of the dilatation and weakness of the heart ; and then it would remain (as this artery really was) very soft, delicate, and limber ; in short quite natural—I suspect also that where the aorta is enlarged, there is required a strong, small, and muscular heart ; because I have an aorta enlarged to a very great degree, the heart being extremely small. These accidents will be noticed chiefly where, in young people, there happens such disproportion of muscular power betwixt the heart and its vessels ; but in the aged, all the parts are but too much disposed to disease, and the whole will enlarge.

These, then, are the chief consequences of that enlargement of the heart which often so fills the thorax and loads the diaphragm, that it falls down under the weight of the heart ; then the heart is felt lower than natural ; and the disorder is named by most authors the prolapsus cordis. In a young man of twenty years of age, the most miserable creature I ever saw, I have felt a prodigious heart beating as if quite in the abdomen : at the pit of the stomach the pulsation was particularly strong ; it must have been mistaken for an aneurism of the

cœliac artery, had not the heart been felt beating from the navel almost to the collar-bone.

Whether we are to allow, that the blood sometimes does coagulate and form polypi in those enlarged hearts, I believe no man in the present state of our knowledge will venture to decide. That the blood should coagulate thus firmly, while within the body, and that not in a corner of the circulating system but in the heart itself, where always there must be some motion, it is not easy to believe; nor that such coagulations should remain there, be washed pure by the current of blood, so as to have a leathery colour, and to be firm and strong; that such coagula should entangle the valves and columnæ carneæ, shoot up into the great vessels, and hinder the movements, and close, in some degree, the openings of the heart, is quite unlikely: yet if there be such a thing, this must stand as the description of a polypus of the heart. I incline then rather to the opinion of the able and diligent Kerkringius, who calls them pseudo-polypi, bastard polypi, mere clots of blood; of which he produces drawings from the pulmonic veins, the liver, the heart, the brain, &c. wherever great veins are.

That when the heart is monstrously dilated, clots may be formed in it, very large, filling all its cavity, but still happening chiefly in the moment of death, or during its slow approaches, I believe from what Vesalius relates; who, "in the heart of a nobleman, found two pounds of a dark coloured flesh; upon which lump, the heart, of monstrous size, was extended like a gravid uterus." But this black flesh, since it was unconnected with the walls of the heart, was a mere clot; which, had it come really from the womb, Vesalius would have called a false pregnancy, an ovum deforme, or what the vulgar call a mole.

This, and all the lesser polypi, those strings of coagulum which entangle the columnæ, and stretch upwards into the vessels, are really formed in the moment of death. But it is not to be forgotten, that many of the most eminent men have thought quite the reverse of all this. Polypi, when first noticed, seemed a strange and awful and frequent cause of death. Having once believed and wondered at such a thing, people did not even like to be disabused; and when Kerkringius called them pseudo-polypi, the whole physicians, like a hive of bees, swarmed out upon him at once. Tulpus, Malpighi, Pechlinus, ridiculed this opinion. Pechlinus was so offended, that he could not refrain himself from low and mean language. "True polypi there certainly are, says he, but these polypi of Kerkringius are indeed pseudo-polypi, and every blind shaver knows them abundantly well;" (*tam est vulgaris et lippis ton-*



soribus notus.) "The shop-boys, says Pechlinus, make such polypi, by pouring vitriolic acid into the veins." Yet with all his bitterness, Pechlinus has not proved, to my satisfaction, either by his arguments, or by his cases, that polypi exist : but he made many believe him, for the ignorance of that time is very singular. "Dr. Petrus Russe tells us, that he had once found a polypus in the longitudinal sinus of the dura mater, of a quarter of a yard long : "Let this be put down," says he, "as one proof at least that polypi are sometimes found higher than the nose." What must have been the confusion of their notions, who could thus jumble the ideas of a polypus of the blood-vessels and a polypus of the nose ?

They even mistook such clots for living animals. Dr. Edward May sent from England to the celebrated Severinus a description of an Eel which he had found in the cavity of the heart. He entitles it, with some propriety, "*Historia mirabilis anguis bifidi.*" It is, indeed, a wonderful story ; they describe head and tail, and all fairly, as if it had been *bona fide* a living creature, and tell us how its head was sticking to the inside of the heart (where you may suppose it was biting,) and how its body was very white and very strong, and its arms or tails, I do not know what to call them, red.— But what amuses one most of all is the important air of these communications betwixt Severinus and Dr. May ; and then Severinus, warning his pupils against incredulity, and telling them, "that though wounds of the heart are really mortal, yet ulcers of the heart certainly are not mortal ;" by which he means, that while the Eel was alive it was continually biting the heart.\* In short, from these things, we perceive that we need not look into books for any satisfaction on this delicate point ; that we must depend upon ourselves, and make a better use of all future occasions ; for unhappily there are no good histories attached to those dissections in which the coagula have been most like to those of a long formal disease.†

The heart, which is so often dilated by weakness, is sometimes reduced in size by an increase of strength and action.— It becomes dense, firm, thick in substance, but small in its cavity ; it appears to be dilated without, but is, in fact, contract-

\* It is certain enough that small worms are found not only in the œsophagus, but in the aorta too, of Dogs and other animals. Vid. Morgagni's *Adversaria*. For plenty of real worms in the heart, producing St. Vitus's dance in boys and hysterics in girls, vid. *Skenkius*. page 272.

† A case more like this disease than almost any other, is a very melancholy and affecting story of a Mr. Holder, an apothecary. Vid. *London Medical Journal* by Simmons, and *London Medical Communications*.

ed within. This thickening of the walls of the ventricles is what I cannot understand, though I have cut many such hearts with the utmost care. There is no ossification of the valves, no straitening of the aorta, nor any other obstruction to excite the heart. There is no enlargement of the auricles, nor dilatation of the veins, no disease of the arteries, nothing appears but a thickening, and enlargement, and condensation of the walls of the ventricles, a proportionate enlargement of the columnæ carneæ, and a proportionate narrowing of the cavity of the heart itself. Upon opening such a heart, one would almost pronounce it natural. If one should speculate upon its peculiarities, he would (finding the heart strengthened, and its valves and vessels all sound) pronounce that it would cause rather a vigorous circulation and strong health: yet I shall never forget the miseries I have seen patients endure from having such a heart. They have often a full and bloated habit of body (at least so I have chanced to observe,) a pulse weak at all times, but trembling, and hardly sensible, when a fit of difficult circulation approaches; then the pulse vanishes, the patient sometimes faints; the anxieties, oppressed breathing, languid pulse, actual faintings, and all the intermediate conditions less than fainting, but like it, and infinitely more miserable, make their chief sufferings. After struggling long under this disease, the patients grow languid for a few days, often become dropsical, and then die.

The variety of symptoms which those suffer who have this simplest of all the diseases of the heart is very surprising, and puts to nought all our conjectures about certain signs indicating particular diseases of the heart. We cannot be surprized that in great enlargements of the auricles, or vast aneurisms of the aorta, or in those enlargements in which something like polypi are found, and where, as Mr. Holder often said of himself, the circulation seems to go on for a time in one corner, as it were, of the heart; in all such cases, we cannot wonder at there being heard noises like the rushing of water. But how such should be heard in this thickening of the heart, I cannot conceive: yet it is certain that one gentleman, whose disease came upon him all at once, and while perfectly at rest, with the sudden sense of something bursting within; who had moreover for several years a palpitation which could be felt outwardly, and a plunging noise, which at times the by-standers could hear very loud; who died in the end in great distress,—had yet none of these ossified valves, enlarged aorta, nor other organic affections, which there was so much reason to suppose, but merely this thickening of the substance of the heart.

Among the diseases of the heart we may reckon the dilata-

tion of the aorta, a disease more frequent than all the others; and more dreadful. It is a disease more frequent in the decline of life; it is then a disease of weakness; it arises from a cause quite different from that which is commonly laid down. The celebrated Dr. Hunter believes that it arises from that predisposition or weakness which naturally belongs to the form of this part, viz. a sudden angle of the artery, exposed in the most direct manner to the whole force of the heart. Dr. Hunter also believed, that no sooner is Nature sensible of this danger, than she seeks to prop up the artery; and for this end thickens its walls till it ossifies by slow degrees. Haller's theory is different from this, and comes nearer to the truth; for he makes these scales of ossification not the consequence, but the cause of the disease. He says, the artery becoming scaly, and partly ossified, no longer yields to the force of the heart; and the heart thus excited to a higher action is itself dilated, and at least forces also the aorta. In truth, neither of these is the true theory; but the aorta in aged persons beginning to ossify, has its middle or muscular coat annihilated, and its outer and inner coats thickened, by the same process. Its muscular power is lost; it is no longer capable of withstanding much less of seconding, the stroke of the heart by a second stroke; it ceases to act, suffers itself to be dilated, and in a few years grows into a dreadful disease. I never saw an old aorta without some specks of ossification, or rather of calcareous concretion, nor an aorta so affected which was not dilated in proportion pretty nearly to the degree of this thickening and ossification; at which we need not wonder, since we find not a bone (as it is usually called ossified aorta,) but a vile calcareous concretion substituted to its muscular coat. Nature is not at this time, as Hunter supposed, building up and strengthening the walls of the aorta against this disease; but taking down slowly that fabric which has lasted its appointed time.

However produced, it is an awful disease; for every organ, when once deranged, especially if it be one as active as this is, never stops in its course; and this especially ends early or late in some terrible kind of death. Sometimes, increasing in size, it destroys all the surrounding parts and bursts within. Sometimes it bursts into the chest, and then the patient drops suddenly down; sometimes into the trachea, and then the cause of the sudden death is known: for the patient, after violent coughings and ejections of blood by the mouth, expires. Sometimes it beats its way through the ribs, destroys the vertebræ, affects the spinal marrow; and thus the patient dies a less violent or sudden death. Most frequently, the tumour rises towards the root of the neck, is felt beating there, destroys the

sternum, bursts up the ribs, dislocates and throws aside the clavicles, appears at last in the form of a great tumour upon the breast, beating awfully.—A dreadful state! and with nothing to keep in the blood but a thin covering of livid skin, which grows continually thinner, till, bursting at last, the patient expires in one gush of blood.

But nature can seldom bear all this distress; the patient dies before this awful scene commences; for the aorta often so fills the chest, so oppresses the lungs, chokes the trachea, and curbs the course of the descending blood, that the system, with a poor circulation of ill-oxydated blood, is quite exhausted! And thus, though the patient is saved from the most terrible scene of all, he suffers great miseries: he feels sharp pains passing across his chest, which he compares with the stabbing of knives and swords; terrible palpitations; often an awful sense of sinking within him; the sound within his breast as if of rushing waters; a continual sense of his condition; sudden startings during the night, and fearful dreams, and dangers of suffocation; until with sleepless nights, and miserable thoughts by day, and the gradual failing of an ill-supported system, he grows weak, dropsical, and expires.

How, except by attributing them to some peculiar weakness, to some inward predisposing cause, shall we account for all these terrible diseases of the heart? Albertine ascribed them so entirely to the passions of the mind, that he gives this as the chief reason why in the lower animals\* such accidents are not found. This is strange philosophy; for who does not know that the human passions are remarked only because they should be under continual restraint and controul? while those of animals pass thus unnoticed by Rammazini, only because they are wild and furious, and we do not expect that they should be restrained. The wild and ungovernable spirits of animals would produce such diseases surely, if such causes could; but whether they do produce them, neither Rammazini nor any of us know; we are too careless of this kind of dissection.

Often, as I have explained, these complaints lie dormant for years, till on some violent exertion the patient begins to feel them; and when questioned by his physicians, being himself also extremely anxious to recollect the cause, and always willing to satisfy his physician, he remembers some violent exertion, some paroxysm of passion, some fit of coughing,

\* Had Rammazini never seen a Dog enraged, nor a wild Bull, nor untamed Horse, nor a Cat with its back up?



or something even less important than all this ; and tells how from that day he does not think he has enjoyed an hour of health.

That these disorders will arise from too violent exertions, independent of all predisposition, we have every reason to believe. Sometimes from blows, more frequently from shocks or falls (for I have formerly noticed how little there is, except its vessels, to support the heart, or hang it within the chest); but most frequently of all have we reason to suspect those kind of exertions which are accompanied with a rapid pulse and hurried respiration. Of this kind I must surely reckon all exertions disproportioned to the strength, and most of all in the time of weakness and convalescence. Do we not observe how in scurvy, upon the smallest exertion, the men drop down dead? how when a ship is in danger, and they are pumping day and night with a weakly crew, these also fall down dead? Do we not often remember, that after fevers, young Men, having made rash exertions during their state of weakness, have brought upon themselves this dreadful disease? Do we not see that boxers, horse-jockeys, and all the tribe of athletics, cannot make these exertions unprepared? And what is their course of training, but a spare diet of generous food, with regular exercise, and gradual exertions; till, at last, the two great functions of respiration and circulation accompanying each other, are brought to the highest pitch; and the man become capable of exertions, before impossible or dangerous; now familiar and easy to him? For examples of this danger, let these suffice: a delicate man, little accustomed to fatigue, having alighted from his horse and tied it carelessly, it escaped; and all day long he chased it, till, quite exhausted, he was forced in the evening to give over, breathless and palpitating, a hundred times during this vain pursuit. From that day he never had one moment's comfort. In about a year after two throbbing tumours appeared upon his breast; and, in the course of the second year when he came to me, these tumours covered all the breast, throbbing in a most alarming degree, each of them bigger than two fists. At this time he had walked with tolerable ease three miles to see me; but in less than four months he was dead, having lived in the greatest misery.

When I cut out the heart, I took also the sternum along with it. I found an aneurism of the aorta filling all the chest, two fair round holes betwixt the cartilages on each side of the sternum, by which the two tumours were filled; the ribs and sternum were not eroded, but the intervals betwixt the cartilages dilated; the two tumours were, when the sternum was

cut away, like two great flat cups, cymbal-shaped, one a little larger than the other, and each capable of containing about a pound of blood.

It has been known to happen, that a young man, travelling on foot too far, has died in a few days of a prodigious enlargement, with pulsation of the heart. But the case which comes nearest to that which I have just related, is that of a man about 47 years of age, who had fallen into the hands of robbers. These men, unwilling to commit direct murder, carried him into an unfrequented place in the forest, and there tied him to a tree. Sensible that no human ear could hear his cries, he made the most violent struggles, but without success. At the distance of six hours he was found by a hunter accidentally passing that way, and saved; but not long, for his struggles had produced an aneurism of the aorta, of which he died. Upon opening his body there were found two aneurisms; one in the arch of the aorta, and one in the left subclavian artery.

The many cases in which aneurisms seem to proceed less directly from strains, blows, falls, and other mischances, I will not stop to explain; for a thousand such examples cannot prove that there did not exist an absolute predisposition in each individual case. But as I began with representing the marks of ill-oxydated blood in a child, I shall conclude with representing the condition of a man, which, even by a regular history, could not be represented more faithfully than in this single case.

I attended, says Morgagni, the most excellent Marquis Alloysius Pallucci, commander of the Pontifical forces at Rome; a man who deserved a longer and a happier life. His disease was an aneurism in the breast: he could neither lie down, nor go to stool, nor take nourishment, but almost instantly a paroxysm was brought on, which threatened instant suffocation, and sometimes seemed like death itself. He never went to bed; he continually rested on a chair to avoid all motion; but instantly upon the attack of difficult circulation, he would leap from his seat, and run to the open window, in hopes of breathing there more freely: yet even there he was used to draw his breath with a stertor, his face was quite livid, he passed his urine and fæces without consciousness; often the breathing was so very difficult, so interrupted, that even the snoring ceased, and he seemed dead, and fell forwards, apparently lifeless, into the arms of the two servants, who continually supported him on either hand. This was the degree of his distress.

But after all these dreadful reports of diseased heart, must

it not be a comfort for us all to know, that often the most simple affections, such as we call nervous, from peculiarity of constitution, or from ill health, resemble these organic diseases, so that all the physicians on earth could not pronounce upon the case? In short, often those which appear to be at first the most awful diseases, turn out in truth the most trivial and temporary. Palpitations and quick breathing are the most usual signs. Palpitations, says Sckenkius, may arise from tubercles, abscesses, or congestions of blood; from worms, from stones in the heart, from poisons. But why distress us with the catalogue of these and many other horrible things, till first he have explained palpitation to us as a common but merely nervous disease, which many feel but few complain of?

Were a man to study only these examples of organic disease, he must of course believe that there were no other, and think that every palpitation portended death; while palpitation is, in truth, the nervous disease of boys and girls, of women, or of weakly men: it alarms the young and the robust; while, in fact, organic disease belongs rather to advanced life, and comes seriously upon us at a time when all fears about palpitations are past and over.

I like what Galen says (*Lib. de Loc. Affect. cap. ii.*) "*Palpitatio visceris hujus, pluribus integra valitudine degentibus, cum adolescentibus tum adultis, subito, sine ullo alio manifesto accidente, evenire visa est.*" I think it dangerous to add what follows; "*atque omnes eos sanguinis detractio juvit;*" for I know such bleeding to be but a temporary relief, more than counterbalanced by a permanent loss. This text I shall explain a very little, and then conclude: for palpitation is, indeed, the disease of boys and of young men, as I have just explained, but not of the aged, in whom chiefly we find organic disease.

Palpitation is like that fluttering which fear brings on; the heart rises in its action till it throbs, and beats against the ribs; it is strongly felt, it is even audible to the by-standers, and still it is but a nervous disease. Its intermissions usually distinguish it from any organic disease; its paroxysms last for many days or weeks; and for weeks or months again it goes quite away. We see it relieved by a jaunt, by living from home and in company, by leaving all business and thoughts of business quite behind: we see the causes which bring it on as plainly as we know the cause of marsh fever, or the plague. The confinement even of a boil will cause it; the confinement of severe study is sure to cause it; and severe study, with an anxious mind, in a young man unused to study; neglected

where he is, and at a distance from all his friends, are sure to produce this distress. "My son," says Wierius, "while at Bologna pursuing his studies, had this afflicting palpitation, accompanied with a capricious, frequent, and intermitting pulse; but by bleeding (which the older physicians never neglected,) and care and relaxation from his studies, he got quite well." This is the palpitation which the older authors distinguished by the name of *palpitatio cardiaca*, marking it as proceeding from the stomach; equivalent, in the language of the present time, to the calling it a nervous disease.

These, then, are the habits, in which it occurs, and this its cause: and there remains but two things to be shortly observed, or rather to be proved, viz. that it is sometimes as alarming as an organic disease is; and that bleeding is dangerous in an extreme degree, or at least that it does not, as Galen affirms, "always bring relief."

"Sanctius Velasco, son of the Count Velasco, had a palpitation of the heart so terrible, that I and many by-standers often heard it distinctly, as if a stone had been plumped into a jug half full of water.\*" Yet this boy got entirely well, and his physicians made themselves very happy in the thought that they had cured him, by a sacculus of aromatic herbs steeped in wine applied to the region of his heart; and by the same aromatics, or cardiacs as they called them, given along with his food.

I prove the second point, viz. the danger of bleeding, by a most alarming case, delivered by Morgagni, which I fear might (if it had so pleased the writers) have had in the records of medicine many precedents; it wholly destroys the authority of Galen's rule, and plainly instructs us never to bleed. "A boarding-mistress, having a slighter palpitation of the heart, was bled with some appearance of relief: but after two days her palpitations returned with such violence, that the breast seemed at every stroke to be lifted up; she had withal pain, fever, and difficult breathing. They continued bleeding her first in the arm, which did no good; then in the foot which was absolutely fatal; for in an hour after she died, the pulse becoming quicker instantly, and falling gradually lower and lower, and giving less resistance to the finger till she expired." In her viscera both of the belly and of the thorax, every thing was entire, sound and natural; and it had been well for the physicians who attended her, had they remembered that the very name of *palpitatio cardiaca* implies a course of proceeding quite the reverse of this.

\* Christoph. a Vegas *Ars Medendi*, lib. iii. sect. 6. cap. 8.



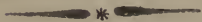
Thus the simple disease of nervous palpitation is often ill understood, and the patient's health abused, and his miseries and agony of mind, and his real disease, all increased, by the serious looks of his physicians, when, perhaps, it is but a very simple case.

The French physicians, in a very formal consultation, made a very public mistake of this kind, in the disease of *Marinus de Caballis*, ambassador at Paris from the Venetian State.—He complained to them of his palpitation, and of his intermitting pulse, and they concealing nothing of their opinion from him, prognosticated the very worst; advised him to demand his audience of leave, to go off for his native country, and there to make his will, settle all the affairs of his family, and then compose himself for his last hour. Having obeyed them in all things, he arrived in Italy very disconsolate and dejected, and their prognostic was well nigh fulfilled. But, like a man who would have another throw for one precious stake, he called a consultation of the college; among whom, happily, was *Victor Trincavelli*, then professor in the university of Pavia; who, perceiving that such tremors of his pulse proceeded entirely from the great charge of important matters which lay heavy upon his mind, assured him of recovering his health. He ordered frequent bleedings, which the peculiar fulness of his habit seemed to require; and by cordial medicines he was entirely restored, and lived long;—a man of great science, and skilful in many languages. After this sad journey, he performed with much honour to the state two splendid embassies to the Emperor and to the Turks.

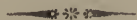
Let no one in future pronounce so rashly; it is time alone, and various modes of living, that can explain to us whether there be in any individual case a fixed disease. Nor would I dare to speak of the organic diseases of the heart, without explaining more fully an idea which *Alburtine* has shortly and simply expressed. “Formerly, in diseased respiration, any vitiated structure of the heart and precordia were unheard of; but after observations being several times repeated in dead bodies, the same names are too much heard of and too much dreaded in the living.”

## BOOK II.

### OF THE ARTERIES.



#### GENERAL PLAN OF THE ARTERIES.



##### AORTA.

THE arteries of all the body, (excepting only those of the lungs employed merely in oxydating the blood) arise from one trunk, the aorta; which we must describe as of great size, since we compare it with other arteries, but which is wonderfully small, considering that it is of its branches only that the whole body is composed.

Those will have the truest notion of the distorted form of the aorta who have studied the anatomy of the heart. Its root is deep buried in the flesh of the heart. In the Tortoise we see the flesh of the heart rising round the root of the aorta, and endowing it with the power of a second ventricle: in the Frog we find its internal surface beset with a triple row of valves, and its coats are like those of a ventricle, they are so exceedingly strong: in Man we find it plainly muscular, surrounded in circles with great fibres, and having much muscular power.

The beginning of the aorta, then, lies deep in the flesh of the heart; it is there that it gives off its coronary arteries; it bulges at its root into three great knobs, which mark the place of its three valves, and are called the lesser sinuses of the aorta; it is large at the root, it grows smaller as it rises, it mounts upwards and backwards from the heart, till it begins to form its arch or curvature; its direction is first towards the right side

of the thorax ; looking backwards, it turns in a very distorted manner, where it forms the arch ; it strides over the root of the lungs, going now to the left side and backward, till it touches the spine ; its arch lies so upon the forking of the trachea, that its aneurisms often burst into the lungs : it then applies itself close to the spine, so that in aneurisms the pressure of the aorta often destroys the vertebræ ; and now lying along the left side of the spine, and with the œsophagus running close by it, it passes down through the thorax, and from that to the belly under the legs of the diaphragm.

This, then, may serve as a short description of the aorta, which is the root of all those arteries which we proceed now to explain. Its structure is strong, muscular, and continually active, performing the office of a second heart. When in old age it begins to lose this muscular power, to have its fibres embarrassed with chalky, or as they are called bony concretions, it is no longer able to resist the force of the blood ; it is not dilated into aneurisms, because of the acute angle which it makes, and the direct impetus of the blood, for many other arteries turn backwards with very acute angles ; the arteries tied in aneurisms, amputations, and on other occasions, do not dilate ; the inosculation which save a limb after the operations for aneurism, receive the blood in a retrograde course ; and the angles are often very acute, yet they do not dilate too much.—The arteries under joints are oftener bent than straight : the aorta of deformed people follows closely the deformity of the spine, and makes such singular angles that after once seeing them no one will talk of angles occasioning dilatation. The aorta, when dilated, in nine of ten cases is covered with white spots ; it is diseased ; they are aged people, and almost always the dilatation begins from the heart.



THE aorta, then, is the trunk from which the general tree of the arteries is to be explained.

From the arch of the aorta go off three great arteries, which rise to the head, or bend sidewise towards the arms, and so nourish all the upper parts of the body. Of these three arteries, the first is a great one, which contains, if I may so express it, the RIGHT CAROTID and the RIGHT SUBCLAVIAN, and divides so as to form those two arteries, about one inch after it arises from the arch ; the next is the LEFT CAROTID ARTERY going to the head ; the third is the LEFT SUBCLAVIAN, going

to the left arm. These three branches occupy all the arch of the aorta.

#### RIGHT SUBCLAVIAN.

THE right subclavian goes off from the aorta in a more direct course than the left; it is thought to receive the blood more fully; perhaps, also, it is rather larger than the left subclavian: but, at all events, there is something peculiar in the mechanism of the right arm; most probably it is the peculiar form or direction of this artery that gives to the right arm a superior dexterity and strength. When Horses are to be broken, we find the chief difficulty to consist in teaching them to move equally with both feet, for they prefer the right; when a Dog trots, or when he digs the ground, he goes with his right side foremost, and digs chiefly with his right foot; and in these creatures we find the same arrangement of these arteries as in ourselves. When we lose our arm, the left hand acquires by use all the strength and dexterity of the right. Since, then, either arm can acquire this dexterity, and since the right leg is stronger by its dependence upon the motions of the right hand, we have every reason to believe, that the preference given to the right hand has some physical cause, and that it is the peculiar form of this artery, viz. going off more directly on the right side, and that those who are ambidexter must have the right as well as the left subclavian going off as one independent branch.

There is another peculiarity which has occurred. The arch sometimes gives out four branches, and the left subclavian, arising first from the arch, has passed behind the trachea, betwixt the trachea and the œsophagus. The subject dying of difficult deglutition, which has subsisted from childhood, it has been attributed to the pressure of this preternatural artery, an effect which I cannot easily believe; and it has been proposed to rank it as a new and certainly incurable species of the disease, under the title of dysphagia lusoria, as arising from a *lusus naturæ* of this artery.

#### CAROTIDS.

THE next branch of the arch is the LEFT CAROTID. The two carotids mount along the sides of the neck, are felt beating strongly, and seem much exposed. They retire for protection behind the prominency of the thyroid cartilage. They divide



into external and internal carotids under the angle of the jaw. The EXTERNAL CAROTID supplies the neck, the face, the inside of the throat ; and the reader will have chiefly to observe its course all along the neck, its branching at the angle of the jaw, and the operations and wounds about the throat, neck, face, and especially about the root of the ear.

#### LEFT SUBCLAVIAN.

THE left subclavian is the third branch of the aorta. Each subclavian artery varies its name according to the parts through which it goes. This great artery of the arm is named SUBCLAVIAN under the clavicle, where it gives branches to the neck ; AXILLARY in the arm-pit, where it gives branches on the one hand to the scapula, on the other to the breast. It is named BRACHIAL where it runs down the arm, and where there are few important branches ; and, finally, its branches, into which it divides at the bend of the arm, are named RADIAL, ULNAR, and INTEROSSEOUS, because they respectively run along these parts, the radius, the ulna, and the interosseous membrane.

#### THORACIC AND ABDOMINAL AORTA.

THE aorta, after completing its arch, passes through the thorax, giving but few branches, and those very slender. But the ABDOMINAL AORTA, as soon as it has emerged from under the legs of the diaphragm, gives three great abdominal arteries : first the CÆLIAC, going in three branches to the liver, the stomach, and the spleen ; secondly, the SUPERIOR MESENTERIC, which furnishes all the small intestines ; and, thirdly, the LOWER MESENTERIC, which supplies most of the great intestines down to the rectum. The arteries of the kidneys and of the testicles follow these, and then the aorta divides into two great branches for the pelvis and legs.

THE ILIAC ARTERIES are the two great branches into which the aorta divides within the abdomen, and these again are each subdivided into two great arteries ; the INTERNAL ILIACS to supply the pelvis, the EXTERNAL ILIACS to go to the thigh.

#### INTERNAL ILIACS.

THE INTERNAL ILIAC supplies the bladder, the rectum, the womb, with lesser arteries ; but its great arteries go out by the

openings of the pelvis to supply the very large muscles of the hip and thigh. Thus the *GLUTÆAL*, a very great artery, turns round the bone, goes out by the sciatic notch, and goes to the glutæal muscles. The *SCIATIC*, almost equally large, turns down along the hip opposite to the glutæal, which turns up. The pudic, of great size, also turns out of the pelvis, turns inwards again towards the root of the penis, and belongs entirely to the private parts, as its name implies.

#### EXTERNAL ILIACS.

THE *EXTERNAL ILIAC*, when it passes out of the abdomen, takes the name of *FEMORAL ARTERY*: it divides into two vast arteries a little below the ligament of the thigh: the one goes deep, belongs to the muscles, is called the *PROFUNDA*; it furnishes all the thigh, and it might with the strictest propriety be named the femoral artery. The *FEMORAL ARTERY*, as we call it, is the other great branch, which continues superficial, runs obliquely down the fore part of the thigh, gives few and but trivial branches to the thigh, and is really destined for the leg. When the artery turns inwards towards the ham, it is named *POPLITEAL ARTERY*; and, like the artery at the bend of the arm, this one at the bending of the knee divides into three great branches, which, like those of the arm, take their names from the bones along which they run; the *ANTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY* lies on the fore part of the tibia; the *POSTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY* runs along the back part of the tibia; the *FIBULAR ARTERY* runs along the fibula; and these great arteries terminate by making arches with each other in the sole of the foot, in the same manner that the *RADIAL* and *ULNAR ARTERIES* join in great arches in the palm of the hand.



This slight plan I have chosen to throw out before my reader, that the succeeding parts may seem more methodical, and that he may have at a slight glance the chief parts of his task before him; and knowing all his duty, he cannot be inattentive to that on which the lives of his fellow-creatures must so often depend.

## CHAP. I.

## OF THE ARTERIES OF THE HEAD.



## SECT. I.

## OF THE CAROTID ARTERIES IN GENERAL.

THE carotid arteries are also named the *Arteriæ Cerebri*, as if they were the sole arteries of the brain ; and the ancients, either ignorant or forgetful of there being any other arteries for the brain, or not observing that the vertebral arteries might convey blood enough for the functions of the brain, did actually name the carotids the *Arteriæ Soporiferæ* ; believing that, if they were tied, the person must fall asleep.\* How a person might die from having the great arteries of the head tied, I can most readily conceive ; but how he should rather fall asleep, and not die, is quite beyond my comprehension : and yet many of the best anatomists, in the best age of anatomy, have abused their time repeating these experiments. Valsalva, Van Swieten, Pechlinus, Lower and especially Drelincurtius in his *Experimenta Canicidia*, and many others, spent days and weeks in tying up the carotids of Dogs. What does all this imply ? Surely a strong belief in tales which would disgrace the *Arabian Nights* ; tales concerning a manner of tying a cord round the neck of a She-goat, or even of a young Man, so that, without hurting them, they should be made to sleep or wake, according to the bidding of the spectators.

Costæus first tells this tale : “ *Circumforaneous mountebanks* (says he†) often perform this miracle. They tie a ligature round the jugular veins of a She-goat ; and they tighten it and relax it from time to time, so that at their pleasure the animal falls down motionless and stupid, and at their bidding leaps up

\* The name which we use, viz. that of carotids, is synonymous in Greek with *Arteriæ Soporales*.

† *Diquisitiones Pathologicæ*, lib. 6. cap. 6.

again with great vigour." The most incredible tales soon followed, and soon crept into otherwise good and useful books. Even Hoffman seems not unwilling to believe that the Assyrians had been in the use of tying up the jugular veins in their young men before circumcision, that they might feel less pain. A serious operation, God wot! for so slight a cause. Even Morgagni talks more seriously of the She-goat, and of this snibbing of the young men of Assyria, than one could wish in respect to the character of one so truly great as Morgagni\*. But the person the most celebrated in this affair was Realdus Columbus; and the wildest and most barefaced tale that ever was told, is that delivered by his pupil Valverdu in his *Anatomy of the Human Body*.

"The carotid arteries (says Valverdu) being tied up, or any how obstructed, the person grows stupid and falls presently into a profound sleep. This experiment I saw at Pisa in the year 1554. It was performed upon a young man by the celebrated Columbus in the presence of a great many gentlemen and strangers, with no less misery to them than amusement to us (the pupils), who though we knew the cause, ascribed it altogether to the black art." But if any one word of this were true, Valverdu would have told us, and been proud to tell us, by what particular operation, ligature, or pressure, this strange thing was performed; and Columbus himself, the author of this new amusement, would surely have dropped some hints about it in some place or other of his works. But from the modest silence of the master, and the secrecy of the pupil, we have reason to believe it is untrue; and if Columbus did ever venture to exhibit such a mean piece of legerdemain, he put himself quite upon the level with the quack and his She-goat. The quack, indeed, was much beyond him in point of merit, since it must have been far easier to teach a clever young Man to fall down or start up than to teach all this to a She-goat.

Galen has explained it well, saying, "that physicians and philosophers, tying the carotid arteries, tie in along with them the recurrent nerves which serve for the voice; and if they will have silence to be sleep, no doubt the creature is mute

\* The celebrated Cant not only believes this most powerfully, but reasons upon it in the following manner: "Ruffus Ephesius, lib. 1. cap. 34. hanc soporem adferre negat, hinc aliud nomen permetteret; sed Realdus Columbus publice in theatro demonstravit hunc effectum præstari hæc arteria: itaque nomen retinebimus, UTPOTE rei CONGRUENS. Sic enim quotidie experimur post prandium somnolentiam, quam facile deducere possumus ab effectu hujus arteriæ; nam ventriculo extenso premitur aorta descendens, quo sanguis copia majori ruit in carotides; quæ hinc extensæ comprimunt cerebrum quodammodo, quo motus animales non ita expedite absolvuntur, verum vitales augentur motus, quæ ambo sunt in somno." *Tab. Cant impetus faciens*, p. 6.



after their awkward operation ; but no other function is hurt neither then nor afterwards."

This is the truth, and the whole truth nearly ; for if but one Dog lives after both carotids are tied, nothing can be more certain than that those which die must have suffered by some awkwardness or disease. Is it wonderful that, after such a cruel tedious operation as this is, the Dog should be exhausted, should be weakened by loss of blood, should feel sore, and hang his head and droop, and let the slaver fall from his jaws ? that he should skulk in corners, look sidelong, be jealous, and not easily moved from his hole ? These are what they have thought fit to call drowsiness and signs of sleep ; but it is such drowsiness and such sleep as would have followed such a cutting-up of the creature's neck, whether the experiment-maker had touched the carotids or not. The creature lolls its tongue, hangs its head, closes its watery and heavy eyes, is drowsy, or, in other words, feverish for many days : it eats with all the voracity of a Dog, but with difficulty, and slowly, owing to the swelling of its throat ; and if it dies, it dies from the same cause. Nothing is more certain than that these are the only particular effects, and that the carotids of a Dog may be tied without any other danger than that of the wound.

There is nothing new under the sun. We are continually tantalized with old tales in new forms. Who would expect to find at this very day a practical application of the She-goat and the Assyrian young Men ? One author has published to the world, "that a young Lady, of a nervous and delicate constitution, subject to nervous distresses in a wonderful variety of forms, but more especially in the head, sometimes afflicted with headaches, sometimes with delirium, sometimes with convulsions, was relieved by compressing the carotid arteries."—Often by compressing the carotid arteries, this gentleman prevented the delirium ; "for all these complaints proceeded from a violent palpitation of the heart with the stream of blood rushing violently towards the head." He has seen this compression bring on a stupor ; he has seen it bring on a profound sleep. Is it not a pity that he had not attended more to the history of this business, and joined to these facts the story of the She-goat and the young Men of Assyria ?

If what Dr. Parry says be true, that in lean people, in women at least, we can, by reclining the head backwards, compress the carotids entirely against the forepart of the neck with the finger and thumb ; why, then, we need have no fear of hemorrhagies of the nose, wounds about the jaw, cutting the parotid gland, or operations about the tonsils or tongue ! But there is a dangerous mistake here ; for there is (as I know by

much experience) a wide difference betwixt preventing the pulse of an artery and suppressing the flow of blood through it. In the case of a Man fainting during any great operation, if you are holding in the blood with the point of your finger upon some great artery, you feel the pulse there, while the face is deadly pale, the extremities cold, and the pulse of the wrist and of all but the largest arteries gone. In fainting, even the heart itself is not felt to move : and yet it moves, and the blood circulates : how else could a person lie in a hysterical faint for hours, I had almost said days ? I have tried, in great operations near the trunk of the body, to stop the blood with my hands ; but though I could suppress the pulse of the femoral artery with my fore finger, I could not command its blood with the whole strength of my body, but have seen it with horror rush as freely as if my hand had not been there. In short, I suspect Dr. Parry's belief of his stopping the carotids with his finger and thumb, is as vain as Dr. Monro's expectation of compressing the abdominal aorta by pushing with his fist against the belly.



THE CAROTID ARTERY, having emerged from the chest, runs up along the neck by the side of the trachea, a single undivided artery, without twig or branch, till it touches the jaw. The length of this artery gives us a fair opportunity of observing, or proving, if we choose, that arteries are cylinders, and not, as they once were supposed, of a conical form. But the cylindrical form of this artery should not occupy our attention so much, as that peculiarity of direction which, though apparently exposed, keeps it safe ; or those important connections which make it so dangerous either to cut or to tie this artery.

First, The carotid artery, from the place where it emerges from the chest up to the angle of the jaw, is continually receding from the fore-part of the throat, is getting deeper and deeper by the side of the trachea, at last the strong projection of the larynx or cartilaginous part of the tube defends it ; and when it has got to the angle of the jaw, it lies there so deep under the ear, betwixt the ear and the jaw, in a sort of axilla, as we may call it, filled with fat and glands, that it is almost out of reach of danger, unless it be sometimes of the surgeon's knife, but rarely of wounds.

This continual retreating of the carotid artery, deeper and deeper as it rises along the neck, saves it from the attempts of suicides : it is rarely cut, or when cut, it bleeds so that no igno-

rant person can command it, and the surgeon is too late. But although tumours and aneurisms are rare, and through unwillingness and a well-grounded fear such patients are usually left to take their fate ; yet there may happen cases in which it may be necessary to do so bold a thing as to tie this artery.

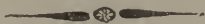
Secondly, The connections of the carotid, as it rises along the neck, must determine our judgment, if ever any such case should occur. To stop the growth of an aneurism, to allow the extirpation of other tumours about the jaw, to save a patient from dreadful bleedings of the throat, or from the hemorrhagies of deep wounds, when, for example, a patient is stabbed in the neck, or a ball passes through the mouth and under the angle of the jaw ; these may, in some unlucky moment, present themselves as motives for tying the trunk of this artery, when all its great branches are torn. But always the observation of Galen is to be remembered, that the nerves accompanying these arteries are liable to be tied together with them.

Let us recollect how the carotid artery, jugular vein, and eighth pair of nerves, come out from the skull, for it is almost at one single point. The carotid artery enters by a hole in the petrous bone ; the jugular vein comes out by a larger hole in the same bone, the foramen lacerum ; immediately behind it the eighth pair of nerves, or the par vagum, goes out through a division of the same foramen lacerum, separated from the vein only by a little cross slip of the dura mater ; and so the carotid artery, jugular vein, and eighth pair, touch each other at the basis of the skull. Through the whole length of the neck they continue the connection which is thus early begun. They are, indeed, inclosed in one sheath of cellular membrane, so that what touches the one almost inevitably affects the other. The par vagum being the great nerve of the viscera, at least of the stomach, strictures upon it or wounds are certainly fatal. A surgeon might easily, if it were possible for him to be called in time, take up the gaping mouth of the artery safely when it were cut across ; yet in most of such cases the nerve being also cut, the operation would be fruitless. But as for a deliberate dissection of the skin, the artery beating furiously, and the parts embarrassed with any tumour, and the operator alarmed with a deluge of blood from the veins : that, I think, would be a bold step. In short, the necessity of any such operation is reduced to the accident of tumours or wounds about the angle of the jaw ; in which cases, the sponge thrust down into the wound will almost always check the blood.

When the common carotid has risen to the angle of the jaw, it divides into two great arteries, one going to the outside of

the head, the other to the brain ; the one of course named the EXTERNAL, the other the INTERNAL CAROTID. Some of the most eminent anatomists are incorrect when they say, that the carotid artery gives no branches till it arrives at the larynx.— They say so because the first branch goes to the larynx ; but, in fact, the carotid passes much beyond the place to which it is to give its first branch, for instead of branching at the larynx, it does not do so till it arrives at the corner of the jaw ; there, as I have observed, it can, as in an axilla, lie deep and safe ; and the laryngeal artery, which is the first branch of the carotid, turns downwards again to touch the larynx.

The first division, then, of the carotid artery is into the external and internal carotids ; and the external carotid gives branches so interesting to the surgeon, yet so numerous, that it is at once very desirable and very difficult to get a knowledge of each : arrangement is here of more importance than in any order of arteries, though extremely useful in all.



#### ARRANGEMENT OF THE BRANCHES OF THE EXTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY.

THE external carotid gives three sets of arteries ; each of which, having a plain and distinct character, cannot be forgotten, nor their direction, nor their uses, nor their relative importance, misconceived ; for if we consider but the parts along which the carotid artery passes, as 1. The thyroid gland ; 2. The tongue ; 3. The face ; 4. The pharynx ; 5. The occiput ; 6. The ear ; 7. The inside of the jaws ; 8. The temple :—if we remember thus the order of these parts, we shall not forget the order in which the branches go off.

But it will be further very useful to observe, that these many branches divide themselves most naturally into three sets.

1. The branches which go off from the carotid forwards are peculiarly important ; one of them goes to the thyroid gland, another to the tongue, and a third to the face ; parts which, to say no more, are peculiarly exposed ; but they are, besides, the subject of many particular operations.

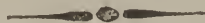
2. Those branches which go backwards and inwards as the pharyngeal, the auricular, and the occipital arteries going to the ear, the pharynx and the occiput are both extremely small, and also run so deep, that wounds of them are rare and of less



importance, and fortunately those branches are the only ones which it is difficult to remember.

8. The great artery which passes behind the lower jaw, named maxillary artery, and the temporal artery which lies behind the jaw, imbedded in the parotid gland, must be studied with particular care; the difficulty of cutting tumours here, the course of the temporal artery in which we bleed, and which, lying imbedded in the parotid gland, demonstrates the absurdity of talking about cutting out the parotid gland, since plainly it cannot be done; and lastly, the terrible hemorrhagies which often happen from the throat, nose, tonsils, &c. gives an importance to these two branches above almost any other.— They should be very familiarly known to the surgeon.

These, then, are the three divisions of the external carotid artery which are to be described.



## FIRST ORDER,

INCLUDING the arteries which go forwards to the thyroid gland, tongue, and face.

### 1. ARTERIA THYROIDEA.

THE THYROID ARTERY, often also named the upper laryngeal artery, comes off from the external carotid almost in the very moment in which it separates from the internal carotid, and sometimes (the thyroid being always a very large artery) the carotid seems to divide into three branches, viz. the INTERNAL CAROTID, the EXTERNAL CAROTID, and THYROID arteries.

The THYROID, then, goes off the first branch; its place is behind the angle of the jaw; it goes downwards and forwards in a very tortuous form, till it arrives at the thyroid gland, upon which it is almost entirely expended; but yet it gives some branches, or rather twigs, of which the following are the chief:

1. One superficial branch goes upwards to the os hyoides, and sends its twigs sometimes under, sometimes over, the os hyoides: it belongs chiefly to that muscle and to that piece of membrane which join the os hyoides with the thyroid cartilage, named musculus hyo-thyroideus. This branch is both long

and beautiful ; it meets its fellow of the opposite side with free inosculations ; it supplies cutaneous twigs, and twigs to the platisma myoides.

2. A second superficial twig goes downwards to the lower part of the thyroid cartilage, where it meets the cricoid, and there gives little arteries to the mastoid muscle, jugular vein, and skin.

3. There is another branch which proceeds frequently enough from this second one : it belongs entirely to the larynx, for which reason the thyroid is often named the superior laryngeal artery : it dives immediately betwixt the cartilages of the larynx ; it enters betwixt the thyroid and cricoid cartilages, carries in along with it a twig from the eighth pair of nerves ; it gives its twigs to the epiglottis, and to all the small muscles which lie under cover of the thyroid cartilage, and which move the little arytenoid cartilages ; and then passes outward emerging from the larynx, and appears again supplying the cryco-thyroideus muscle.

4. The fourth branch of the thyroid is properly the main artery, or continuation of this branch into the substance of the thyroid gland ; it applies itself to the side of the gland, nourishes its substance by a great many small branches into which it is divided. These branches are all oblique, tending downwards and forwards. Their course is upon the side of the gland, because, indeed, the gland consists chiefly of two lateral lobes, and hardly any of the gland, or only a small portion crosses the trachea ; consequently this artery does not inosculate so much with its fellow of the opposite side as with the lower thyroid, which comes from the subclavian artery, and whose branches, mounting upon the lower part of the gland, have pretty nearly the same degree of obliquity with those of the upper thyroid.

## 2. ARTERIA LINGUALIS.

THE LINGUAL ARTERY is one of which the four branches are nearly of an equal size, and which of course require all of them to be equally well remembered. It is next to the thyroid, comes off immediately above it, goes forwards towards the os hyoides, and at the same time upwards towards the tongue ; but all along it lies flat upon the side of the tongue upon its flesh or muscles, and gives the following branches.

1. Upon passing the horn of the os hyoides, it gives first one twig of less note backwards to the constrictor pharyngis, at the place where that constrictor arises from the horn of the

os hyoides (viz. the constrictor medius;) and it gives another branch forwards round the basis of the os hyoides, where it meets its fellow: and to those who are acquainted with the muscles which arise from the os hyoides, it is needless to say what muscles it supplies.\* This, which is named the *RAMUS HYOIDEUS*, seems to be very necessary, because it is a very constant branch; and when it does not come from the lingual, it infallibly arises from some other, commonly from the labial artery.

2. *DORSALIS LINGUÆ* is a branch which goes off from the lingual at the insertion of the stylo-glossus muscle into the tongue; it turns first outwards a little and then inwards over the root of the tongue, where the arteries of the opposite sides meet, and form a sort of net-work. Its chief branches are directed backwards towards the epiglottis and mouth of the pharynx amygdalæ, &c.

About the middle of the tongue, or about half way to the chin, measuring along the jaw, the lingual artery forks into two branches; the one below the tongue, the sublingualis, belongs to the sublingual gland and surrounding parts; the other remaining at the root of the tongue, belongs to the tongue itself.

3. *SUBLINGUALIS* then arises next; it comes from the side of the artery next the tongue; it runs under the sublingual gland, covered like it by the genio-hyoideus muscle, and emerges only when it arrives at the chin, where it terminates in the skin. Its branches are chiefly to the sublingual gland, which lies over it, and to the genio-hyoidei and mylo-hyoidei muscles and skin, for these are the parts which immediately cover it.

4. The *ARTERIA RANINA* is the larger branch of these two; it runs along the root of the tongue quite to the tip of it. In this course it is accompanied by its vein, which appears on the inside of the mouth when we turn up the tip of the tongue. This is the vein which the older physicians were so fond of having opened in sore throats; the artery is that which we are so apt to cut in dividing the frenulum linguæ; an awkwardness from which a great many children have died.

*N. B.* It runs along the genio-glossus, which is the innermost muscle of the tongue.

\* Viz. the hyo-glossus, digastricus, mylo-hyoideus, the coraco-hyoidei, sternohyoidei, and hyo-thyroidei.

## 3. ARTERIA LABIALIS.

THE labial artery is named occasionally the EXTERNAL MAXILLARY artery, to distinguish it from one which goes off at a higher point, and goes to the inside of the jaw ; or ANGULARIS, because it goes to the corner of the mouth and there divides ; or FACIALIS, implying, that it supplies the face, as indeed it does as far as the angle of the eye and forehead, where there are other small arteries. Haller adheres to this name of LABIALIS, and in compliment to him we adhere to it.

This artery is still carefully kept down in the deep angle ; although it is to come out upon the jaw, yet it is not exposed till it actually makes its turn : it lies under the stylo-hyoideus and the tendon of the digastric muscle : it is very tortuous, that it may move along with the jaw, and lies still so deep, even when it approaches the jaw-bone, that it is forced to make a very violent and sudden angle when turning over it. This sudden turn, which is sometimes almost a circle, is made, as it were, in the heart of the great submaxillary gland, the artery being buried under it. The labialis is a very large artery, very tortuous ; sometimes one great trunk gives off two important arteries at once, the lingual and the facial ; in which case they separate just at the angle of the jaw, where the artery, dividing the substance of the gland, is quite imbedded in fat. When we consider how deep this artery lies according to this general description, and the parts which it passes along, it becomes easy to foresee what branches it will give, and to trace them in imagination.

1. Where it lies the deepest upon the side of the pharynx, it sends a branch directly upwards, which goes straight to the arch of the palate, spreading its small twigs upon the arch of the palate, upon the velum palati and upon the uvula : it usually has two small branches for supplying these parts, one superficial and one deep ; and thus the labial gives a particular artery to the palate, name ARTERIA PALATINA INFERIOR.

2. It gives a particular artery to the tonsil, which arises at the point where the stylo-glossus begins to mix with the other muscles of the tongue. This little artery penetrates the walls of the pharynx upon which it lies, and spreads its many twigs upon the tonsil and tongue.

3. While passing through the submaxillary gland, dividing it as it were, into two parts, the labial artery gives a great many small twigs into the substance of the gland itself ; and after these it gives many twigs to the tongue, the skin, the muscles, &c. Of these, two chiefly are remarkable ; one, which goes



to the pterygoid muscle chiefly, though it also gives branches to the constrictors of the fauces and palate, and to the root of the tongue ; and another artery, more constant and regular, which breaks off at the place where the labial artery curls and bends to turn upwards : it runs superficially, and goes straight forwards to the root of the chin, where it is named *ARTERIA SUBMENTALIS* : it turns upwards over the chin to the face at the middle of the chin, and often inosculates with some of the arteries of the face : it sometimes comes from the sublingual artery.

But the artery having emerged from betwixt the lobes of the submaxillary gland (for this artery in a manner divides it into lobes,) and from among the fat with which it is surrounded, makes a sudden turn over the angle of the jaw at that point where we feel it beating strongly ; and then mounting upon the face, begins to give a new set of arteries.

1. A branch to the masseter muscle ; for the labial artery passes over the jaw, and up the face, just at the fore edge of the masseter muscle ; and this branch inosculates with a twig descending over the surface of the masseter from the temporal artery.

2. The labial artery ascending in the hollowest part of the cheek, and lying flat upon the buccinator muscle, gives out small branches to it, which inosculate chiefly with the transversalis faciei, another branch, and a very great one, coming from the temporal artery across the face. Here also the main artery has still a very serpentine line, on account of the continual motions of the part.

3. Before the artery comes to that point where it is to give off the coronary artery of the lower lip, it gives a branch named labialis inferior ; which artery belongs to the lower part of the lower lip : its branches go to the triangularis and quadratus muscles, which lie on the chin and on the side of the chin, and also to the lower part of the orbicularis oris. This branch inosculates particularly with a twig, which comes from within the lower jaw through the mental hole, and with its fellow, and of course with the coronary arteries which run immediately above it, viz. in the red part of the lip.

The artery now divides into two branches, one for each lip, named the *CORONARY ARTERIES*, because they always surround the lips entirely ; though their manner of going off is not perfectly regular. The lower coronary artery is usually smaller, and is to be named the branch, while the upper one not only surrounds the lip, but mounts along the side of the nose ; it is larger ; and is therefore to be considered as the continued trunk. We frequently observe the upper coronary

larger on one side of the face, and the lower coronary larger on the other.

4. The LOWER CORONARY comes off about an inch or more from the angle of the mouth, at that point where the triangularis oris and many other muscles meet. It goes directly forwards to the angle of the mouth, enters into the lower part of the lip, and runs along the red pulpy part of it, where with the finger and thumb it can be felt beating. It inosculates with all the arteries formerly mentioned; as the submental, the twig which comes through the hole near the chin, the inferior labial artery, and with its fellow. With all these it inosculates so freely, that it signifies little from which side your injection is driven: it goes freely all round the lips, and the arteries are every where equally filled.

5. The UPPER CORONARY ARTERY we are to consider as the continued trunk. The labial artery is still rising, and still tortuous, when it arrives at the angle of the mouth; runs into the border or fleshy part of the upper lip, and runs along it till at the middle of the lip it meets its fellow of the opposite side, with a very free inosculature: yet the two arteries do not terminate here, but usually two very delicate arteries ascend towards the point of the nose, along that little ridge from the nose to the lip which we call the *filtrum*; and almost always two considerable arteries run up by the sides of the nose, one on each side; give off branches to the *alæ nasi* and to the cheeks; and growing gradually smaller, they arrive at last near the angle of the eye, and inosculate pretty freely with that artery, which is named *ophthalmic*, because it first nourishes the parts of the eye with many branches, and then comes out of the orbit at the corner of the eye, where, though small, it may be felt beating distinctly.



## SECOND ORDER.

THE second set of arteries, which go backwards from the external carotid, comprehend the pharyngeal, the occipital, the auricular.

## 4. PHARYNGEA INFERIOR.

THE LOWER PHARYNGEAL\* is a small slender artery ; which gives no branches deserving to be numbered ; it stands alone, and should be described as one simple artery, whose small branches spread all about the throat in the following manner.

This artery is smaller than any other branch of the carotid yet enumerated. It arises opposite to the lingual artery ; and as it arises from the inner side, it comes out in a manner from the fork betwixt the external and internal carotid arteries : it rises upwards very slender and delicate ; it lies deep in the neck, upon the fore-part of the flat vertebræ, or rather lies upon the flat face of the longus colli muscle.† After rising in one slender artery, single, without branches or connections, it begins all at once to give twigs.

First, It gives branches inwards to the throat ; for one twig surrounds the lower part of the pharynx about the root of the tongue, and sometimes goes forwards along with the glosso-pharyngeal nerve into the tongue. Another twig goes to the middle of the pharynx, and wanders towards the velum palati, giving branches to the amygdalæ. And still another goes higher towards the basis of the skull ; it also gives twigs to the velum palati, to the back of the nostrils, to the upper part of the pharynx where the upper constrictor lies (viz. that which comes from the basis of the skull,) and it gives small arteries to nourish the basis of the skull ; as, to the os sphenoides, to the cuneiform process of the occiput, to the point of the temporal bone, and to the cartilage of the Eustachian tube.

Secondly, It sends branches outwards to the mastoid muscle, to the jugular vein, to the ganglion of the intercostal nerve, and to the dura mater of the eighth pair ; and one particular branch, very small and delicate, goes along conducted by the great jugular vein, enters together with it into the skull, and makes one of the arteries of the dura mater, but it is a very delicate twig. In general one artery only of the dura mater is known or mentioned ; but here we have seen, besides the great artery of the dura mater, lesser arteries entering to it by all the perforations at the basis of the skull. The pharyngeal actually terminates in the dura mater, passing through the foramen lacerum anterius, and sending also a branch in together with

\* It is named lower pharyngeal, to distinguish it from one which comes downwards from the internal maxillary. Vide p. 285.

† When dissected, it must be taken out in a manner from behind the œsophagus. The carotids must be raised outwards before it can be seen ; for it lies under them, betwixt them and the throat.

the jugular vein. The occipital artery also sends one with the jugular vein, one by the foramen mastoideum, and one by a small hole in the occiput. The temporal often sends one through by the hole in the back part of the parietal bone.

### 5. ARTERIA OCCIPITALIS.

THE OCCIPITAL ARTERY is also a simple artery, distributing its twigs about the ear, over the occiput, and down the back of the neck, and having no branches of sufficient importance to be particularly marked.

It arises next to the pharyngeal from the back part of the carotid ; and lying particularly deep, it not only is covered at its root by the other branches of the carotid, but is covered in all its course by the thick muscles of the neck, except just where it is passing round the mastoid process.

At first the occipital artery lies close in among the bones, passing over the transverse process of the atlas, crossing the root of the great jugular vein, and passing under the root of the mastoid process, so as to lie at this place under the belly of the digastric muscle. Still as it encircles the occiput, it passes along very deep under the bellies, first of the trachelo-mastoideus, and then of the splenius and complexus, and emerges only when it arrives at or near the middle ridge of the occiput ; and lastly, it rises with many beautiful branches over the back of the head, to meet the branches of the temporal artery.

In this course the occipital artery sends out the following branches :

1. Branches to the biventer which lies over it, and to the stylo-hyoideus muscle ; and there is one longer artery which attaches itself to the root of the mastoid muscle, and passes along that muscle, to inosculate with the thyroid arteries, or with the lower cervical arteries, which mount upwards as this descends.

2. Next it gives, like the pharyngeal, a small artery, which goes backwards along the jugular vein ; and having entered by the foramen lacerum, attaches itself within the skull to that part of the dura mater which lies under the lobes of the cerebellum.

3. The occipital artery, as it passes under the ear, sends out to it a small posterior artery, which goes to the little lobe of the ear, and creeps up along its posterior border.

4. At this point the occipital often gives another artery, which passes upwards behind the ear, and is named the POSTERIOR TEMPORAL ARTERY.



5. The occipital artery, as it passes under the trachelo-mastoideus and splenius, gives branches to these two muscles; and it sends out from betwixt the trachelo-mastoideus and complexus a long branch, which descends along the neck a considerable way; and after having further supplied the splenius, complexus, and also the deeper muscles of the neck, it terminates by inosculating with a branch from the axillary artery, which as it crosses the neck is named transversalis colli.— This descending branch of the occipital inosculates also with the vertebral arteries through the interstices of the vertebræ.

Having pierced the belly of the complexus, the artery now rises over the occiput in small and beautiful arteries; the chief of which belong to the occipital belly of the occipito-frontalis muscle and to the skin: it finally ends in inosculations with the back branches of the temporal artery. But of these extreme twigs of the occipital, two are remarkable, because they pass through the skull to the dura mater; one through a small hole in the occipital spine, and one through that small hole which is behind the mastoid process. Sometimes the hole is in the temporal bone, but more frequently in the suture which surrounds the back part of the temporal bone.\*

#### 6. ARTERIA POSTERIOR AURIS.

THE POSTERIOR ARTERY OF THE EAR is the smallest and least constant of all the arteries which go off from the carotid; for it is often wanting, or often comes from some branch, and not from the carotid itself; often from the occipital, sometimes from the pharyngeal artery; it can scarcely be reckoned as a regular branch of the carotid. This artery also, like the pharyngeal and occipital, gives out no distinguished branches which we need to mark; it chiefly belongs to the ear, it gives branches to the cartilage of the external ear, it sends a larger branch through the stylo-mastoid hole to the internal ear, and the rest of its twigs go to the integuments, or to the bones.

THE POSTERIOR AURIS arises much higher than any of those arteries which have been just described; it does not come off from the external carotid till it reaches the parotid gland; or, rather, it arises where the carotid is plunged into the substance of that gland; it passes directly across under the styloid process, and over the belly of the digastric muscle, and then goes up behind the ear; in this passage it gives branches to the pa-

\* Viz. the additamentum suturæ squamosæ.

rotid gland, and to the biventer muscle, the parts on which it lies ; next it gives a twig, which furnishes the root of the cartilage of the ear, and perforates the lowest part of the cartilage, so as to spread itself upon the drum of the ear ; and this branch, named *ARTERIA TYMPANI*, is particularly large in the child, which has a peculiar conformation, a preternatural membrane covering the drum of the ear.

Its next branch, the *ARTERIA STYLO-MASTOIDEA*, is the most remarkable, for it is of considerable size, enters the mastoid hole, while the corda-tympani, or great nerve of the face, comes out : it is a chief artery of the internal ear ; for it gives branches, 1. to the tympanum, one of which beautifully surrounds the bony circle, and then spreads upon the membrane itself ; 2. to the muscle of the stapes, to the semicircular canals, to the cells of the mastoid process and its delicate vessels ; which arteries, when well injected with size, paint the walls of the cavity of the tympanum, and of the semicircular canals.

The main artery having given off the *arteria tympani* and this stylo-mastoid artery, and having passed the stylo-mastoid hole, becomes properly the *arteria posterior auris*, rising behind the ear, and giving its branches to the skin and mastoid muscle, and to the muscle behind the ear (*posterior auris*,) and to the bone and periosteum, chiefly about the mastoid process ; then its small branches play round the back part of the concha or shell of the ear ; and, lastly, the artery, still mounting behind the ear, ends in small twigs, which go to the fascia of the temporal muscle, and which of course inosculate above the ear with the temporal artery.



### THIRD ORDER.

THE third order of arteries includes the termination of the external carotid artery in the temporal and maxillary arteries, which is after the following manner :

The artery having entered into the parotid gland, lies there absolutely imbedded in its substance ; and of the two arteries in which it terminates, one passes directly through the substance of the parotid gland, emerges before the ear, mounts upon the temple, and is named of course the *TEMPORAL ARTERY* ; it performs here in the temple the same office which the occipital does behind, viz. it supplies the pericranium, mus-

cles, and skin : all this is very simple. But the other branch, in which (since it is exceedingly large) one would say the carotid terminates, goes off from the temporal with a sudden bend, sinks very deep under the articulation of the lower jaw, terminates in a lash of branches at the back of the antrum Highmorianum, and there gives branches to the lower jaw, the upper jaw, the inside of the cheeks, to the temple (deep arteries which lie under the temporal muscle,) to the upper part of the pharynx, to the nostrils, and to various other parts : it is this artery too which gives off the chief artery of the dura mater. The description of so great an artery, so widely distributed, becomes both difficult and important.

#### 7. ARTERIA MAXILLARIS INTERNA.

THE INTERNAL MAXILLARY ARTERY turns off from the temporal artery while imbedded in the substance of the parotid gland, and about the middle of the upright branch or process of the lower jaw-bone. It passes betwixt the lower jaw-bone and the outer pterygoid muscle ; it then goes forwards till it touches the back part of the antrum maxillare, and terminates in a lash of vessels betwixt the back of the antrum and the pterygoid process ; and, finally, it ends at the sphenomaxillary fissure, or, in other terms, at the bottom of the socket of the eye, where it gives the infra-orbitary artery, and a branch to the back of the nostrils.

In all this course the internal maxillary artery is extremely tortuous : first, It rises with a high and round turn at that point where it goes off from the temporal artery ; then it bends suddenly downwards, where it passes betwixt the pterygoid muscle and the jaw-bone ; then, as it approaches the back of the antrum, it rises with a third bending, and continues rising with very great contortions, till it ends in a lash of small vessels at the back of the eye and nostrils.

Before this artery gives out its greater branches, which require to be marked with numbers, it very generally gives some small twigs, nameless, and of less note : as a small twig to the ear, and the glands around it, another which gets into the tympanum to the muscle of the malleus, and a branch of it sometimes goes into the skull by that hole named foramen ovale, by which the fifth pair of nerves come out, and goes to that part of the dura mater which covers the sides of the sella turcica.

1. Of the larger branches which the internal maxillary gives out, the first is the ARTERIA MENINGEA, the great or

**MIDDLE ARTERY of the DURA MATER.** It goes off from the maxillary just where it leaves the temporal artery. Sometimes before entering the skull it gives small branches to the pterygoid muscle, to the mouth of the Eustachian tube, to the os sphenoides, and sometimes through that bone to the dura mater; but the main artery passes through what is called the spinous hole, which is in the very extreme point or spine of the sphenoid bone: it is this artery of which the surgeon should be particularly aware, and which touches the parietal bone at its lowest corner in the temple, and spreads from that point all over the dura mater like the branches of a tree. But besides these, its chief branches, which spread thus upon the parietal bone, on its inner surface, it gives smaller ones, which go into the substance of the bone, or into the ear, and sometimes through the orbit into the eye. Thus first several smaller twigs go into the substance of the os petrosum to nourish it; the holes may be seen about the rough part, where the os squamosum and os petrosum are united; next two twigs enter into the aqueduct by the small hole on the fore part of the petrous bone, one keeping to the canal itself, the other going to the cavity of the tympanum, and to the inner muscle of the malleus; and, lastly, one or two small twigs pass through the outer end of the foramen lacerum into the orbit, and go to the lachrymal gland.\*

2. The **LOWER MAXILLARY ARTERY** is a slender and curious artery, which belongs chiefly to the teeth of the lower jaw, and which runs all along in a canal within the jaw-bone. The internal maxillary proceeds nearly an inch before it gives off this branch; and then, while lying under the pterygoid muscle, it gives it off a long and slender artery, which enters the jaw-bone at that great hole which is betwixt the condyloid and coronary processes; then runs all along within the jaw-bone, surrounding each of the teeth with arteries at the bottom of each socket. About the middle of the jaw-bone it divides into two branches, which proceed together in the bony canal, till one of them emerges upon the chin at the mental hole, inosculating there with the arteries of the face, viz. the labial and submental arteries, while the other goes onwards to supply the roots of the fore teeth also, and to meet its fellow within the jaw-bone at the chin. The nerve for the lower jaw enters along with this artery; the vein of this artery accompanies it,

\* Sometimes the great and proper artery of the lachrymal gland, instead of arising from the ophthalmic or proper artery of the eye, arises thus from the artery of the dura mater.



but lies under it in a separate canal, though still in the same line. The artery itself, before it enters into the hole of the lower jaw, commonly gives twigs to the inner pterygoid muscle which covers the hole. Considering the size of this artery, we cannot wonder at profuse bleedings from the teeth, or rather from their sockets.

3. THE PTERYGOID ARTERIES — While the artery is thus crossing betwixt the jaw and the pterygoid muscle, it gives branches to the external pterygoid muscle, both into its substance and over its surfaces. The number of these pterygoid arteries is variable and unimportant.

Next, while the maxillary artery is passing in a contorted form under the zygoma, where the temporal muscle is lodged, it gives off two arteries, which are called the DEEP TEMPORAL ARTERIES, to distinguish them from the proper temporal artery, the only one which we feel outwardly, and which is superficial. Of these two deep temporal arteries, one runs more outwards, viz. towards the ear, the other runs more inwards, viz. closer upon the bone; whence the one is called the DEEP EXTERNAL, the other the DEEP INTERNAL, TEMPORAL ARTERY.

4. The DEEP EXTERNAL TEMPORAL ARTERY arises where the maxillary is passing under or near the jugum; it is of course near the coronary process of the jaw-bone. This branch then passes along the tendon of the temporal muscle, and ends in that muscle, giving branches also to the external pterygoid muscle; it is a short artery, and not very important by its size.

5. The deep internal temporal artery arises farther forwards, viz. where the artery is close upon the back of the antrum; from which point, mounting directly upwards, it passes in the very deepest part of the temporal arch, viz. that which is formed by the cheek-bone. It is longer and more important than the outward branch, supplies the deepest and thickest part of the temporal muscle, mounts pretty high upon the temple betwixt the muscle and the bone, and often, where it lies behind the cheek-bone, it sends a branch through that bone into the orbit which supplies the fat and periosteum of the socket, and in some degree also the lachrymal gland.

6. The ARTERY OF THE CHEEK is a very regular artery, in so far as regards its destination, viz. for the cheek; but in its origin it is extremely irregular. It has not often the importance of coming off as a distinct branch from the maxillary; but comes off rather more frequently from some of its branches, as from the deep temporal artery just described, or from the alveolar or infra-orbital arteries, which are presently to be described. This artery perforates the buccinator muscle.

and is spent upon it, and upon the other muscles of the cheek, as the zygomaticus and levator labii; it ends, of course, by inosculations with the arteries of the face.

7. The ARTERY OF THE UPPER JAW serves much the same office with that of the lower jaw, viz. supplying chiefly the sockets of the teeth; whence it is named ARTERIA ALVEOLARIS. It is an artery fully as large as that of the lower jaw; it begins upon the back of the antrum Highmorianum, and runs round that tuberosity towards the face and cheek with very tortuous branches. Its branches are distributed first to the buccinator and fat, which fills up the great hollow under the cheek-bone, and also to the cheek-bone itself, where it is connected with the jaw-bone. Secondly, Other branches perforate into the antrum Highmorianum by small holes, which are easily seen upon its back part or tuber, and some of these branches go into the sockets of the backmost teeth. Thirdly, A more important branch than any of these, the branch indeed from which it has its name of alveolar artery, enters by a hole into the substance of the jaw-bone, and goes round in the canal of the teeth just as the artery of the lower jaw does, giving branches to each socket. The curlings of this artery upon the back of the antrum are very curious; and while its deeper artery furnishes the teeth, some of the superficial branches go to the gums.

8. The INFRA-ORBITAL is so named from the hole or groove by which it passes all along under the eye, from the back of the nostril till it emerges upon the face. The infra-orbital, and the branch last described, viz. the alveolar artery, generally come off from the maxillary by one common trunk; the alveolar goes forwards and downwards by the back of the antrum; the infra-orbital mounts upwards, and enters the spheno-maxillary hole, or rather it comes off just at the spheno-maxillary hole, which is the great slit at the bottom of the eye. As the artery enters its proper canal at the bottom of the eye, it gives some twigs to the periosteum and to the fat of the socket; as it passes along its canal in the bone, one branch dives down into the antrum through the bone; for this plate of bone in which its groove runs, is at once the floor of the eye and the roof of the antrum; within the socket it gives twigs also to the deprimens oculi, and to the lower oblique muscle, to the lachrymal sac, or even to the nostrils; when it emerges from the socket by the infra-orbitary hole, it terminates in the levator labii and levator anguli oris, and in inosculations with the arteria buccalis, labialis, and especially with the nasal branch of the ocular artery. This infra-orbitary artery is ac-

accompanied through the canal, and out upon the face, with a small nerve of the same name, viz. the infra-orbitary nerve.

After this the maxillary, though nearly exhausted, still sends out three small arteries, in which it terminates irregularly, sometimes one, sometimes another twig being larger. Of these three, one goes to the palate, one to the pharynx, one to the nostrils.

9. The UPPER PALATINE ARTERY arises near the infra-orbital; and from that point, viz. the speno-maxillary slit, it descends along the groove, which is formed betwixt the pterygoid process and the palate bone; and when it has got down to the palate, one lesser branch turns backwards through the posterior palatine hole, and expands upon the velum palati; the other larger branch is the great palatine artery, for it comes through the anterior or larger palatine hole; the artery itself is large, it runs all along the roof of the mouth betwixt the pulpy substance of the palate and the bone; in this progress it gives little arteries to the sockets of the teeth, and it frequently terminates, not merely in the palate itself, but in a small artery which runs up through the foramen incisivum, or hole under the fore teeth, into the cavity of the nose. This artery is also accompanied with a corresponding palatine nerve.

10. The UPPER PHARYNGEAL ARTERY is the highest of all the branches of the internal maxillary; it goes off at the back of the orbit, opposite the speno-maxillary fissure; it ascends along the sphenoid bone to the place of the sphenoidal sinus, and along the upper part or arch of the pharynx, where that bag adheres to the basis of the skull; it also goes along the sides of the pharynx; its twigs are of very diminutive size; some go into the substance of the sphenoid bone to nourish it by small holes both over the cells and in the alæ: a branch goes towards the pterygoidean or vidian hole,\* where it inosculates usually with a branch from the internal carotid artery, sometimes with the lower pharyngeal, or with the meningeal arteries.

This artery ends in small branches which play round the mouth of the Eustachian tube.

11. The NASAL ARTERY is the last branch of the internal maxillary. It passes through the speno-palatine hole;† by

\* This is the hole by which the recurrent of the 5th pair goes backwards from the nose into the skull.

† Observe, this is not the speno-maxillary slit so often mentioned; which is a slit-like opening lying between the wing of the sphenoid bone and the upper jaw-bone; for it is at the bottom of the socket; and whatever parts enter it go to the eye. The speno-palatine hole is betwixt the sphenoid and palate bones; it is at the back of the nostrils, and the branch which enters it belongs to the nostril.

this opening it comes into the nostril at its upper and back part ; the twigs go, one shorter to the backmost of the æthmoid cells, another to the cells of the sphenoid bone ; one longer branch goes to the back part of the septum narium ; and one branch, the longest of all, often passes both the upper and lower spongy bones (along the lining membrane of the nose, giving twigs to the antrum as it passes,) till it inosculates with that twig of the palatine artery which rises through the foramen incisivum into the nose. This nasal artery often has two branches.

### 8. ARTERIA TEMPORALIS.

THE TEMPORAL ARTERY, if we consider its straight direction, may be regarded as the termination of the internal maxillary artery. When the maxillary artery bends away from it to go under the jaw, this goes directly forwards through the substance of the parotid gland, mounts before the ear, and as it passes alternately the parotid gland, the face, the ear, it gives its three chief branches to these parts, and ends in that temporal artery which runs along the side of the head under the skin, which we feel, and even see distinctly, beating, and which we open when bleeding in the temples is required.

The temporal artery is named SUPERFICIAL because of its lying under the skin only, above the fascia of the temporal muscle, while the deep branches from the maxillary artery lie under the muscle. The temporal artery passes just before the meatus auditorius, and behind the branch of the jaw-bone ; it pushes its way through the substance of the parotid gland, and there it gives its first branches, commonly seven or eight in number, but quite irregular, into the substance of the gland itself ; next it gives off to the face an artery of very considerable size ; which arises from the same part of the artery with these parotideal branches, viz. under the zygoma and within the gland : like them it goes off almost at a right angle, and is like one of them, but larger, nearly of the size of a crow-quill ; it pushes sidewise through the substance of the parotid, emerges from it upon the face just below the cheek-bone ; runs across the cheek in the same direction with the parotid duct ; it is named from this direction TRANSVERSALIS FACIEI. Its branches go to the joint of the jaw-bone, the masseter, buccinator, parotid gland, &c. and terminate in inosculations with all the arteries of the face.

Next the temporal artery, as it rises towards the zygoma, and of course approaches the angle of the jaw, gives an artery



which is proper to the articulation of the jaw. This artery belonging to the joint of the jaw is often named *ARTERIA ARTICULARIS*. After having sent its two branches to the articulation of the jaw, it sends another artery to the ear, which divides into two twigs; one of them going round the back part of the ear, assists the branch of the stylo-mastoid artery in forming the little circular artery of the tympanum; while another branch, penetrating through the slit which is in the articulation of the lower jaw, goes to the muscle of the malleus.

But before it reaches the zygoma, the temporal artery gives another branch, which is named the *MIDDLE TEMPORAL ARTERY*, to distinguish it from the deep temporal arteries which lie under the whole thickness of the temporal muscles, and the superficial temporal, which lies above the fascia; for this middle temporal artery lies under the fascia: but on the outside of the muscle it arises from the main artery just under the zygoma, rises over the zygoma, and then pierces its way under the fascia of the temporal muscle, and under that covering gives branches to the temporal muscle, the artery itself still rising and passing obliquely forwards towards the outer corner of the eye, where one of its twigs often goes to the *orbicularis oculi*, and inosculates with the *ophthalmic artery*.

About this point, or rather above the zygoma, the temporal gives off those small arteries, irregular in number, which are named *ANTERIORIS AURIS*, the anterior arteries of the ear, and which play all round the fore part of the ear.

The temporal artery having now emerged from the parotid gland, and from the thick fascia which covers it, makes a sudden serpentine turn before the ear; and then rising about half an inch perpendicularly, it forks with a pretty wide angle into two arteries, which are named the anterior and posterior temporal arteries. These lie quite superficial under the skin, above the fascia, and are distributed in this manner: first, the *ANTERIOR TEMPORAL ARTERY* goes directly forwards to the naked part of the temple, runs up the side of the forehead with a very serpentine course; it is here that in old men we see its contortions and pulsation very distinctly; it goes round arching forwards and upwards from the temple towards the top of the head. It belongs chiefly to the skin and frontal muscle, and that tendinous kind of sheath which covers the cranium; it gives some branches to the orbicular and corrugator muscles; it forms often a superciliary arch with the proper frontal artery; it often sends off a branch very early towards the outer corner of the eye, which is entirely destined for the *orbicularis oculi*.

The *POSTERIOR TEMPORAL ARTERY* is the last branch of

all. It arches backwards over the top of the ear ; it turns thus backwards till it meets the branches of the occipital artery ; it deals its branches from either side upwards and downwards, i. e. towards the ear, and towards the top of the head in great profusion, till it is quite exhausted. These branches belong to the skin chiefly and to the pericranium ; and the smaller twigs pierce the outer tables of the skull, and go into the bone in great profusion for its nourishment.



## CONCLUSION.

It would surely be wrong to conclude the description of a system of arteries so important as this, without attempting to interest my reader in this piece of anatomy, by observing a few anatomical and surgical facts.

That arteries are not tortuous to favour the extension of parts, but rather because they have been extended and long pushed by the current of blood, is a fact very manifest to any one who considers the condition of many of these arteries which I have just described. When we first observed the thyroid, lingual, and labial arteries ; when we consider that the tongue, the throat, the lips, are moveable and dilatable parts—we are apt to say that such arteries are tortuous to favour those motions. But when we remark the curling form of the alveolar artery, where it lies against the back of the antrum ; of the occipital artery, where it lies firm against the bone ; of the temporal, where it rises along the side of the head—we perceive clearly that this curling has nothing to do with dilatation.—And Dr. Hunter's observation of the arteries of the womb being tortuous, to allow of extension, is not like the observation of so great an anatomist, but of one who had not considered many of the chief arteries in the body : for the womb itself has its arteries more tortuous at the end of pregnancy than at its commencement ; and the stomach, the bowels, the bladder, although they suffer greater and more sudden distention than the womb, have arteries which are very straight in their course. Are there any curling arteries in the muscles which contract to one half their diameter ? are there any in the joints which twist and bend so freely ? are there any curling arteries in the whole system of a child ? are there any arteries in the whole system of an aged person which want this tortuous form ? In short, this tortuous form has no relation to the dilatation of the

parts : it is merely a consequence of the long continued pressure of the blood : it is this only that can account for the slowly increasing tortuosity in the temples or hands of an old man, or the sudden tortuosity which the newly dilated artery assumes after the operation for aneurism.

Next it is natural to observe, as a thing which may prevent confusion in the student's mind, how irregular (after all our attempts at arrangement) the smaller arteries unavoidably must be ; how natural it is that each particular part should draw its blood from all the arteries which are near or round it. The ear has its posterior artery peculiar to itself ; but it has also an anterior artery from the temporal, where it lies under the parotid gland ; and it has even a superior auris from that branch of the temporal artery, which bends round towards the occiput, and arches over the ear. The dura mater has its great middle artery appropriated to itself, a peculiar branch, the first of the maxillary artery ; but it has besides small assisting arteries, entering by almost every point at the basis of the skull ; and especially it has arteries from the maxillary, by the mouth of the Eustachian tube, from the pharyngeal, running in by the hole for the great jugular vein ; and from the occipital both by the hole of the jugular vein in the basis of the skull, and also by the small occipital hole in the back part of the skull, close by the temporal bone. The throat also, though it has many peculiar arteries, derives its branches from a great many sources ; as from the lingual artery by twigs, which cross the root of the tongue ; from the labial artery by branches, which go to the tonsil, tongue, and palate ; from the pharyngeal artery, many branches not confining themselves to the pharynx, stretch forwards to the palate, tongue and tonsils ; and lastly, the maxillary artery gives a profusion of branches to all parts of the throat. These may serve as hints by which the student, if he wishes to become a correct anatomist, may trace the inosculations ; or for the surgeon, if he wishes to separate the study of this minute anatomy from that of the greater arteries.

The surgeon's interest in understanding these arteries is, indeed, very strong. It were impossible to enumerate all the various occasions on which this piece of anatomy may be useful ; but, surely, one may easily say enough on this subject to attach the young surgeon to the diligent study of these arteries.

Among the various motives for diligence, I would mention these ; the terrible hemorrhagies which he is daily called to stop, when suicides, though they have not cut the carotids, have cut the great arteries of the thyroid gland ; the necessity

of thinking about the tumours of the gland itself, for I have had the unhappiness to see a person perish by suffocation while consulting physicians forbade any operation ; and I had no other than the melancholy privilege of watching, for many hours, the last struggles of a person, who had the day before been walking through all the rooms in tolerable ease and health. Could nothing have been resolved on ? Must we always submit to this ? Might not an incision in the fore part (where few arteries are) have at least uncovered the trachea, given a temporary relief, and made the tumour suppurate more freely ? The extirpation of the tongue, which is mentioned with horror, would be a less terrible operation to one acquainted with these arteries ; the extirpation of all tumours under the jaws is dangerous ; the cutting out completely the parotid gland is a thing quite impossible, since the greatest of all the arteries, viz. the temporal and the maxillary, lie absolutely imbedded in the gland. What shall we think, then, of those surgeons who talk in such familiar terms of cutting out the parotid gland ? Bleedings from the nose have been so often fatal, that Petit is celebrated to this day for a discovery which he never made, viz. the way of plugging the nose so as to stop this bleeding. Have not the French Society been busy renewing inventions for securing even so small an artery as that of the dura mater ? In the hare-lip operation, in cutting cancers, in dissecting tumours from all parts of the face, the surgeon commands the blood only by knowing these arteries. Cowper the celebrated surgeon and anatomist, had his head so full of this project, that instead of waiting for hæmorrhage during his operation, he cut off, two days before, the chief source of the blood. He was going to cut out the parotid gland ; and two days before, he placed a small button of caustic on each side of the labial artery where it lies upon the cheek, passed a ligature under it, tied it firm, and then proceeded to his operation next day. But this great anatomist made at one stroke two grievous blunders : he missed, for want of knowledge, the chief arteries of the parotid gland, for they come from the temporal artery ; and, if I mistake not, he had tied the vein, for most assuredly it is the fascial vein which he is describing in his twelfth table from Bidloo.—How terrible the extirpation of tumours from the gums, throat, tonsils, &c. I need not say ; where the surgeon always uses burning irons instead of needles, where not unfrequently the patient dies.



## SECT. II.

OF THE ARTERIES OF THE BRAIN, SPINAL  
MARROW, AND EYE.

## § 1. OF THE ARTERIES OF THE BRAIN.

**T**HE INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERIES are named the ARTERIÆ CEREBRI, as being the chief arteries of the brain ; while, in truth, the brain is also supplied by two other arteries nearly equal in size, viz. the vertebral arteries, which, though they do indeed arise from a different trunk, viz. the axillary artery, yet are so entirely destined for the brain, give so few branches before they reach the skull, are so important when they arrive there, and above all make so large a communication with the carotid arteries, that without a description of the vertebral arteries, any description of the carotids must be defective ; they unite so with the carotids as to form but one great system of vessels for supplying the brain.

The two greatest functions of the animal body, those of the womb and of the brain, the one for the life of the individual, the other for the continuation of the species, are the most liberally supplied with blood. The womb has on each side two arteries ; it has two spermatics, and two hypogastrics, and the inosculation of these vessels are very large and free. The brain has two great arteries on each side ; it has two carotids, and two vertebral arteries ; they are infinitely larger than those of the womb ; their inosculation is so particular, that there are no others like them in all the body : the injection of any one artery easily fills the whole ; the preservation of but one artery saves the life of the creature, when the others are stopped.

These four arteries alone convey to the head the fifth part of the whole mass of blood. This is the calculation of the older authors ; and even those who would settle it at the lowest point still acknowledge, that the carotid and vertebral arteries receive at least the tenth part of all the blood of the body. The brain then, which weighs not a fortieth part of the whole body,

receives one tenth of all the blood ; a proportion which must occasion surprise.

Besides the profusion of blood which thus rushes into the brain, the impetus with which it forces its way seems dangerous ; and Nature also seems to have provided against the danger. We cannot be but sensible of this danger ; for the slightest increase of velocity occasions strange feelings, if not absolute pain. We cannot run for any length of way, nor ascend a stair rapidly, nor suffer a paroxysm of fever, nor in short have the circulation quickened by violent exertions, by emotions of the mind, or by disease, without feeling an alarming beating within the head ; we feel it particularly in the carotid canal where the artery passes through the bone. If it continue from disease, or if we persist in our exertions, giddiness, blindness, ringing of the ears, come on. Haller remembers, that while he was lying in a bad fever, he suffered so much from the pulsations of the carotid artery within the skull, that his head was lifted from his pillow at every stroke. I wish he had said, "seemed to be lifted from his pillow at every stroke ;" for it was rather a sickly feeling than what could actually happen.

Did this vast column of blood rush directly into the brain, we do not know what might be its effects ; but surely they could not be harmless, since Nature has provided against it in Man, and in the lower animals which hang their heads, with a peculiar care. In Man, this blood is retarded chiefly by the tortuous course which the artery is obliged to follow, and by that long bony canal which, by holding the carotid as in a sheath, must suppress its violent action, and at least prevent its being dilated by force of the blood, when, as often happens, the lower part of the artery is more full and tense. Perhaps also it may have some effect, that the carotid, as it lies by the side of the sella turcica, is not naked and free, but is inclosed in a venous sinus, which consists of cells like those of the male penis, and in the heart of which the carotid lies bathed in the blood.

It is also peculiar in all the arteries of the brain, that they do not enter in trunks into its substance. This seems to be a violence which the soft texture of the brain could not bear ; but all the arteries having perforated the dura mater, attach themselves to the pia mater, a delicate membrane, which is the immediate covering of the brain ; which follows all its divisions, lobes, and convolutions ; which enters all its cavities, and lines its internal surfaces as it covers the external. To this membrane of the brain the arteries attach themselves : it conducts them every where along the surface of the brain, and into its

cavities ; and when the arteries are to enter into the substance of the brain, they have already branched so minutely upon the pia mater, that they enter into the pulpy substance in the most delicate twigs ; so that having injected the brain, at whatever level you cut into it, you find its white surface dotted with red points regularly, and like the dots of a pin.

But in the lower animals, especially in the Calf, the Deer, the Sheep, which hang their heads in feeding, there is a provision of so singular a nature, that we can have no doubt that these contortions of the great trunks and minute divisions of the smaller arteries in Man have the same final cause ; for in those creatures the carotid, before it enters the brain, first divides into innumerable smaller arteries. Not one of these is sent off for any particular function : they are immediately re-united again, and gathered together into one trunk ; and then the force of the blood being thus broken, the artery divides a second time into branches of the ordinary form, which enter safely into the substance of the brain.

It is still further supposed, that the arteries of the brain have this peculiarity, distinct from all others in the body, that as they enter the skull they lay aside one of their coats, and that of course the arteries of the brain are peculiarly weak. That the arteries of the brain want that outward coat of cellular substance which all arteries passing through other cavities or along the limbs have, is no doubt true, and so far they are thinner : but how much they are weakened by this loss, it is not easy to say ; for they want none of the coats which are essential to the constitution of an artery ; and this cellular coat, though it constitutes much of the thickness of an artery, has, I believe, but little to do with its strength. Yet true it is, that the arteries of the brain, either from being weaker in themselves, being less supported, lying upon the soft and pulpy substance of the brain, are more frequently burst by falls, or even by the slightest accidents, than the arteries of any other part, even the limbs, however much exposed. Our injections burst them very often ; the slightest blow or fall upon the head often produces an internal effusion of blood, which occasions death ; but that the arteries of the brain are so delicate as to be burst by a false step, so as to produce a fatal aneurism within the brain, is a truth perhaps not commonly known.

A young woman, carrying in her arms her first child, about six months old, slipped her foot with a slight shock ; but it was on plain and even ground, and she did not fall down. In the instant of this shock she was sensible of a sudden pain in the right side of her head : it was so peculiar, that she said she could cover the point with her finger ; and though slighter

at intervals, this pain never left her to the moment of her death. She walked home, went about her little family-matters, suckled her child; but was seized that evening with sickness, not violent like that of any sudden disease, but rather like the easy vomiting of a pregnant woman.

She continued very sick, with slight headach; but still was out of bed all day long, went about her household affairs, and had no symptom which could lead one to suspect her very dangerous condition, or what a dreadful accident had happened. She got up during the night after this accident for some cool drink, felt herself extremely giddy, was obliged to support herself by a chest of drawers which stood by her bedside, and went to bed again immediately. On the evening of the second day she got out of bed, made tea as usual, was out of bed during the evening, had no complaint, except the continual sickness, slight pain of the head, and giddiness still slighter. That night she expired. Her pulse all along had beat low and weak, and never more than 60 in the minute.

When I was brought to open the body, I heard nothing of the pain of her head, though it was fixed and constant, and without that nothing could be more puzzling than this combination of circumstances. First, the sudden slipping of her foot, and the incessant sickness which ensued, suggested the idea of hernia; but no such secret was known among her relations; and upon opening the abdomen, no hernia was found, neither open nor concealed, as in the thyroid hole.

Next we were informed of a palpitation, which had been usual with her. It appeared that she had complained chiefly about the period of her first menstruation, and some years before her marriage. It seemed to be hysterical merely; but upon opening the thorax, we found the heart wonderfully enlarged and crammed with a dark and grumous blood.

But next a new scene opened upon us; and this enlargement of the heart appeared to arise like that of the liver, which so often accompanies fractured skull, from the languid action of the heart and torpor of all the system in those who lie even for a few days comatose.

Now, for the first time, I was informed that the shock of slipping her foot had caused a sudden pain of the head; that it was pointed, confined to one single spot, incessant, accompanied with perpetual vomiting or desire to vomit, and with giddiness during the night.

Upon opening the head, I found the dura mater of a most singular appearance; livid, or rather like the gizzard of a fowl, with green and changing colours. Having cut it open, the pia mater appeared like red currant jelly, with fresh coa-



gulated blood so firmly attached to it, that it seemed as if driven into its very substance and incorporated with it. Upon cutting and tearing open the pia mater, each convolution of the brain was surrounded and separated from that next it by coagulated blood. Upon cutting into the ventricles of the brain, that of the right side was found to contain four ounces of entire and coagulated blood; the cavity at first view was like opening a ventricle of the heart; the blood, very dark and firmly coagulated, was forced out by the pressure of the surrounding parts; the coagulum became gradually firmer and whiter, till it turned to a very firm stringy clot, which stuck in the mouth of the middle artery of the brain. Being carefully examined, it was found to be sticking firm in the mouth of the artery which had burst, as if by the separation of two of its rings. The blood, which thus filled the right ventricle, had also made its way down in prodigious quantity into the third and fourth ventricles, quite into the occipital hole; but the opposite ventricle of the same side it had not filled.

The quantity of blood ascending to the head is exceedingly great; its free circulation in all the arteries is perfectly secured; and the plan of its distribution is extremely simple, for the carotid entering by the os petrosum gives three branches. First, A branch which unites the two carotids with the two vertebrals, and forms the fore part of the circle of Willis. Secondly, It gives an artery to the great middle lobe, whence it is named the great middle artery of the brain. Thirdly, An artery which is named anterior cerebri, as belonging to the fore part of the brain. But the vertebral, as it arises through the occipital hole, lies upon the cerebellum, and supplies all the cerebellum, and also the back part of the brain. One branch goes to the back part of the cerebellum, another to the fore part of the cerebellum, a third branch goes to the back part of the brain; and thus there is formed betwixt the carotid and the vertebral, by means of the great inosculation of the circle of Willis, one great set of vessels; which should first of all be described free from all the interruptions of trivial arteries, which go off from point to point, but of which the destinations cannot be important, which are hardly known, which do not go in any two subjects the same way.

## OF THE INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY.

THE internal carotid artery leaves the external carotid at the angle of the jaw : it is so inclined to contortions, that at this point it even bulges, and seems the outermost of the two. In mounting along the neck, it is tied by cellular substance to the fore part of the rectus or straight muscle of the neck, and it is also connected with the par vagum and intercostal nerve ; the ganglion of the intercostal, or sympathetic nerve, lies by its side ; the nerve, before it forms this ganglion, comes down small and thread-like through the same canal by which the carotid passes into the skull.

The contortions of the carotid are great, both before and after its passage through the bony canal ; but within the canal it is forced to particular and successive bendings, such as indicate plainly some design of Nature ; for the canal for the artery is long and tortuous, while the nerves and veins pass through plain and simple holes. When the carotid first presents itself to enter the skull, it is curved, and is a little behind its hole ; it bends forwards and inwards a little, and so enters the canal ; in entering the canal it rises almost perpendicularly upwards, but soon bends forwards again, lying, as it were, upon the floor of the canal ; then it bends again upwards and forwards, to emerge from the canal ; by which turn the portion of the artery which is engaged in the canal has the form of an *Italic S*. Even after it gets into the skull, it must still bend once more sidewise and forwards, as if to meet its fellow, and to get to the side of the sella turcica ; then it goes directly forwards till it touches the anterior clinoid process ; and then doubling back, or returning upon itself, it rises perpendicularly ; and so perpendicular is this last turn, that when cut across, the mouth of the artery gapes perpendicularly upwards : here it begins to give its branches to the brain.

It is by the side of the sella turcica that the CAVERNOUS SINUS surrounds the artery. This sinus is formed by the two plates or lamellæ of the dura mater, parting from each other, and leaving an interstice full of cells, like those of the penis or of the placenta. It is filled with blood, by communication with several of the smaller sinuses or veins about the basis of the brain : the ophthalmic veins bring into it the blood from the eye ; four or five small veins descending from the fossa Sylvii bring blood into it from the middle parts of the brain ; the sinuses of the os petrosum (both on its upper and lower grooves) open into it, one high, another lower down, and that circular sinus or vein which surrounds the root of the optic

nerves opens into it from either side. All this blood is poured into the cells, bathes the carotid artery which lies naked in it, and by the side of the carotid artery lies also that small nerve of the sixth pair which begins the great intercostal nerve, naked in the blood; it is tinged by the blood, and its branches retain the tinge some way down the neck.

Vieussens first discovered this curious structure; Ridley denied it, and Haller at last in his turn confirmed it. Vieussens believed that the sinus which deposited this blood conveyed it away again. Haller says that this is the peculiar office of that vein which accompanies the carotid artery, and which is named the *vena sodalis arteriæ carotidis*. It was once supposed that certain small arteries opened also into the sinus; but it has neither arteries, nor pulsation.

Thus we trace the carotid through its canal, through the cavernous sinus, up to the side of the sella turcica, and about to enter the brain, to give off the arteries of the brain. But before we describe these, it will be easy to count shortly those little twigs which it gives off in the canal and in the sinus.

The carotid artery seldom gives out arteries before it enters the skull; it is a *lusus naturæ*, when it does happen that the occipital or pharyngeal arteries come off from it.

The first twig, which in any case it gives off, is sometimes a small artery, which returns downwards along with the upper maxillary nerve;\* next a small twig, accompanied by a branch from the meningeal artery, goes into the tympanum by way of the *aquæ ductus Fallopii*; and next, while the artery is within the sinus cavernosus, it gives out two little branches, the one forwards the other backwards, named ARTERIES of the RECEPTACULUM.

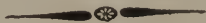
1. The little artery which goes backwards from the sinus or receptaculum goes chiefly to that part of the dura mater which covers the posterior clinoid process, and which covers the cuneiform process of the occipital bone; it gives twigs to the 4th, 5th, and 6th pair of nerves and to the pituitary gland; in short, to all the parts at the back of the sella turcica; it ends in inosculation with those twigs of the vertebral artery, which come off from the vertebral before it enters the skull.

2. The little artery which comes out from the receptaculum to go forwards, arises where the carotid is crossed by the 6th pair, mistaken for a nerve by those who suppose that the intercostal arises from a branch of the 5th pair. The distribution of this little artery is nearly the same with that of the first,

\* The second branch of the 5th pair.

for it belongs to the 3d, 4th, and 5th pair of nerves, and to the pituitary gland.

The carotid having risen to the anterior clynoid process, gives out there a small artery, no bigger than a crow-quill, which enters directly into the orbitary hole, accompanies the optic nerve into the eye, furnishes the eye, the eyelids, the muscles, and the lachrymal gland, and sends out branches upon the forehead, viz. the frontal arteries in which it ends.— This is a short history of the *OPHTHALMIC ARTERY*; which as it furnishes all the arteries of the eye, must be described apart.



#### DIVISION OF THE INTERNAL CAROTID.

THE carotid, now about to enter into the brain, divides at the sella turcica into three arteries; one to the fore lobe, another to the middle lobe, and a third to form the circle of Willis. These arteries are usually so numbered that the communicating branch is first described, next the anterior artery of the brain, and lastly the middle artery of the brain. But of this arrangement no one who is accustomed to observe the course of this artery can entirely approve; for when the carotid rises from the side of the sella turcica, it divides into its three branches all at once, in a tripod-like form: the middle branch of the tripod is largest; the next, which goes forwards to the fore lobe of the brain, is smaller; the third, which is the communicating branch, goes backwards to unite with the vertebral artery and form the circle of Willis, is the smallest of all. The middle artery of the brain then is, from its great size, to be regarded as the trunk.

#### 1. ARTERIA MEDIA CEREBRI.

THE middle lobe of the brain is separated from the anterior lobe by a very deep sulcus or furrow, which is named *FISSURA SYLVII*. This fissura Sylvii is formed by the transverse process of the sphenoid bone, or, in other words, by that very sharp line which runs out laterally from each of the clinoid processes, and which parts the fore lobe, which lies in the shallow part of the skull upon the orbitary processes of the frontal bone, from the middle lobe, which is the largest of all, and lies in the



deepest part of the skull behind the clynoïd processes. The MIDDLE ARTERY OF THE BRAIN having risen from the side of the sella turcica, runs straight along this fossa Sylvii, and is really the continued trunk of the carotid ; it is larger than the artery at the wrist ; it goes directly outwards, viz. towards the temple : it runs along the fossa Sylvii, and is lodged deep in that cleft ; where it lies deep, it divides into two great branches, one deep and one superficial ; it gives some branches to the anterior lobe, but it is chiefly limited to the middle lobe of the brain ; its branches to the posterior lobe, or inosculation with any branches of the basilar artery, are comparatively few.

Thus the artery ends by passing into the substance of the brain. But nearer the sella turcica and before it enters into the fossa Sylvii, it gives some small and delicate arteries ; the consideration of which seems to be unimportant at first view, but which is really useful in explaining the anatomy of the brain. It gives small twigs to the pituitary gland, to the optic nerve, to the tentorium, and especially to the pia mater covering the basis of the brain. Among these small twigs certain sets of arteries make a very distinguished figure.

1. There is one small artery which runs up into the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle, and forms that great plexus which lies along the floor of the ventricle, named PLEXUS CHOROIDES. This, then, is the ARTERY of the CHOROID PLEXUS.

2. There is a set of arteries, of considerable number, but varying in respect of number, small as sewing threads, which inosculate repeatedly with each other, and which are scattered widely and beautifully over the crura cerebri and basis of the brain, forming in the pia mater a plexus or web of vessels.—This part of the pia mater is named velum from its beauty and delicacy ; and this is what Wepfer, among other older authors, considered as a species at least of the rete mirabile : but that name implies a peculiar office, as in beasts, which this delicate net-work of vessels cannot have.

## 2. ARTERIA ANTERIOR CEREBRI.

THE FORE ARTERY of the BRAIN comes off from the middle artery at right angles nearly ; for the great or middle artery runs directly outwards towards the temple, while this second artery runs directly forwards along the fore lobe of the brain.—It is named sometimes the artery of the corpus callosum, because that of two great branches into which it is divided one goes to that part of the brain. The corpus callosum (a most absurd name for any part of the brain) is the white and medul-

lary substance where the two hemispheres of the brain are joined; and upon separating the two hemispheres with the fingers, the corpus callosum is seen like a large white arch, and the artery of the corpus callosum is seen also arching over its surface.

The anatomy of the *arteria anterior cerebri* may therefore be explained thus: first, it goes off at right angles from the middle artery of the brain, which is to be considered as the trunk, and there it often gives small twigs to the olfactory and optic nerves: next the two anterior arteries of each side, while they go forwards as if towards the *crista galli*, bend a little towards each other; they almost meet, but do not absolutely touch; they form a communication with each other, which of course is exceedingly short, but pretty large. It is this short communication which completes the circle of Willis at its fore part. This cross communication betwixt the arteries of the opposite sides passes just before the *sella turcica* and pituitary gland, and exactly in the middle it sends off an artery, which goes down into the third ventricle, and gives branches to the fore part of the *fornix* and to the *septum lucidum*.

After this communication, both arteries rise, with a large sweep along the flat surface of that deep division which the *falx* makes betwixt the two hemispheres of the brain; there each divides into its two great branches; one attaches itself to the corpus callosum, or that arch which we see upon holding apart the two hemispheres; it arches along with the corpus callosum so as to describe a semicircle; it is the larger of the two branches; it is named *ARTERIA CORPORIS CALLOSI*: the other branch keeps upon the flat surface of the brain, where the one hemisphere lies flat upon the other, and it rises in a beautiful arch within the *pia mater*, dividing into beautiful and very minute ramifications before it enters actually into the substance of the brain.

These two great branches of the anterior artery are well distinguished by Wepfer by the names of *arteria profunda* and *arteria sublimis* (the deep and superficial of the anterior artery,) as there is a deep and a superficial branch of the middle artery. The arch of the *arteria anterior cerebri* overhangs in a manner that of the artery of the corpus callosum, and both of them inosculate under the *falx* with the arteries of the opposite side.

### 3. *ARTERIA COMMUNICANS*.

THE COMMUNICATING ARTERY goes as directly backwards from the middle artery as the anterior artery goes forwards.—

It is small, proceeds backwards, and a little inwards ; it goes round the sides of the corpora mamillaria, and is about a quarter of an inch in length before it meets the vertebral artery ; and though it does give off small twigs, as to the infundibulum, to the optic nerve, to the crura cerebri, and especially one of greater size, to the choroid plexus ; yet all these are trivial arteries, such as every trunk at the basis of the brain gives off. It is not its twigs that are to be observed, but itself only that is important, as forming one of the largest and important inosculation of the body. It unites the middle artery of the brain, which is the trunk of the carotid, with the posterior artery of the brain, which is the first and greatest branch of the vertebral artery.

This anastomosis is the circle of Willis, too remarkable not to have been very long observed ; it was drawn by Veslingius and by Casserius ; it is but ill represented by Bidloo and by Cowper : it is not a circle, but is right lined, and of course angular : it is of very unequal size ; in one body it is large, in another smaller ; often even in the same body it is irregular, the one side being large and the other small.

This inosculation brings us round to the first of the vertebral arteries, viz. the ARTERIA POSTERIOR CEREBRI ; for the vertebral artery gives two arteries to the cerebellum, and one to the back part of the brain.



## OF THE VERTEBRAL ARTERY.

THE vertebral artery, though but the secondary artery of the head, is a principal one of the brain, and conveys a very great proportion of blood ; and its turnings and windings before it enters the skull are almost as particular as those of the carotid itself. The vertebral is among the first branches of the subclavian artery, and comes off from it where it lies across the root of the neck. The two lower ganglions of the sympathetic nerves lie over it, and their threads surround its trunk, making curious net-works round it. The artery then enters into the canal prepared for it in the transverse processes of the vertebra, commonly getting in by the 6th vertebra : but in this it is irregular, sometimes entering into the 7th or lowest ; and it has been seen entering into the uppermost hole but one. In this canal it ascends in a direct line from the bottom of the neck to the top ; but like the carotid it makes great contortions

before it enters the skull : for when it has reached the second vertebra, its transverse process being rather longer than those of the lower vertebræ, the artery is forced to incline outwards ; and the transverse process of the atlas or first vertebra being still much longer, the artery in passing through it is carried still farther outwards ; it is forced to make a very sudden turn, and is quite exposed. When the artery has passed through the transverse process of the atlas, it makes another very sudden turn, lies flat upon the circle of that vertebra, so as to make a large hollowness or groove upon the bone, and then it enters the foramen magnum by rising in a perpendicular direction ; and then again it bends and inclines forwards, laying flat along the cuneiform process of the occipital bone, where it soon meets its fellow, and the two uniting form the basilar artery.

This basilar artery lies, with regard to the bone, upon the cuneiform process of the os occipitis, and runs along it from the foramen magnum to the sella turcica ; with regard to the brain, it lies upon that great tubercle which is named the tuber annulare or pons Varolii ; as it lies upon the tuber annulare, it marks it with a large furrow ; and as it goes along in one great trunk, it gives out from each side little arteries, which belong to this tuber annulare. These also make smaller furrows on its surface.



The vertebral artery has, like the carotid, its three great branches.

#### 1. ARTERIA CEREBELLI POSTERIOR.

THE POSTERIOR ARTERY, or LOWER ARTERY of the CEREBELLUM, is small and not regular. It comes off from the basilar artery either immediately after the union of the vertebrals, or from the vertebral artery immediately before the union. It is often smaller on one side than on the other, and sometimes it is wanting on one side. It moves downwards in a sort of retrograde course betwixt the accessory nerve of Willis and the group of fibres which form the eighth pair, and dives in betwixt the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata.— Its larger branches spread out upon the pia mater, and then enter into the medullary substance. They belong to the ce-



rebellum, to the spinal marrow, and some of them to the pons Varolii. But there are also smaller and particular twigs, as twigs to the eighth and ninth pairs of nerves : one also which enters into the fourth ventricle, to form a sort of velum or choroid plexus there : and as this posterior artery winds downwards under the cerebellum, it gives many branches about the vermis, and small twigs which run betwixt the lower point of the pons Varolii and the pyramidal bodies.

Next the ARTERIA BASILARIS proceeds forwards along the pons Varolii in one great trunk : now the pons Varolii is just the tuberosity produced by the crura cerebri and cerebelli, meeting and uniting to form the spinal marrow. The corpora olivaria and pyramidalia are just two bulgings at the root of the spinal marrow ; and as every great artery, whatever its destination may be, gives twigs to those parts which it passes over, so does the basilar artery ; giving twigs first to the corpora olivaria and pyramidalia, next to the crura cerebelli and to the crura cerebri ; and as it runs along the pons Varolii it distributes little arteries to it from right to left. These little arteries also mark the sides of the pons with small furrows, which are seen when the arteries are dissected away. One of these transverse arteries, longer than the rest, looks like another posterior cerebri. It goes to the seventh pair, or auditory nerve, in the following way : the seventh pair of nerves proceeds from the back part of the pons Varolii ; and as it goes forwards, the two nerves which it consists of, viz. the portio dura and the portio mollis, are separated from each other by a small and very beautiful artery which shoots in betwixt them, and enters along with them into the ear. The basilar artery also gives twigs to the fifth and sixth pairs of nerves which arise from the fore part of the pons, as the seventh pair arises from behind.

Arrived at the fore part of the pons Varolii, the vertebral artery gives off almost at one point four great arteries, two to the right hand and two to the left. These are the anterior cerebelli and the posterior cerebri.

## 2. ANTERIOR CEREBELLI.

THE ANTERIOR ARTERY of the CEREBELLUM, or the upper artery as it is called, goes off at right angles from the basilar artery, and bends round the crura cerebri to get to the cerebellum. It gives its branches first to the crura cerebelli, to the cerebellum, and to the vermis. Secondly, There is a greater artery going over all the upper part of the cerebellum,

(where it lies under the brain,) and also another which keeps closer to the brain than to the cerebellum, branches over that velum or delicate part of the pia mater which is interposed betwixt the cerebellum and brain ; and going along it supplies the crura cerebri, and arrives at last at the place of the nates, testes, and pineal gland, and attaches itself to them. Some of the twigs go down into the fourth ventricle.

### 3. ARTERIA POSTERIOR CEBEBRI.

THE POSTERIOR ARTERY of the brain goes off immediately after this, is like it, runs parallel with it, is larger, goes to the posterior lobe of the brain, and receives near its root the communicating artery from the carotid, which forms the circle of Willis. Where this posterior cerebri and the anterior cerebelli run parallel with each other, the third pair of nerves rises betwixt them. The posterior cerebri first gives a small twig on either side to the bottom of the third ventricle which runs so far forwards as to give branches to the thalami, centrum geminum, infundibulum, and to the crura fornicis. Then the main artery bending like that last described round the crura cerebri, and passing deep into the great division betwixt the cerebellum and brain, arches upwards towards the back lobes of the brain ; but before it arrives there, it gives first small twigs to the crura cerebri, and then another notable artery (though small) destined for the internal surfaces of the ventricles. This is a chief artery of the choroid plexus ; it enters the lateral ventricle by the posterior horn ; goes along with the cornu ammonis ; helps to form the choroid plexus ; inosculates of course, with the choroid arteries from the carotid ; and twigs also go from this artery to the nates, testes, and pineal gland, or in other words, to the velum which separates the cerebellum from the brain, which closes the ventricle behind, and which covers the pineal gland, and is a membrane or velum to it also ; the pineal gland, nates, and testes, being situated neither in any of the ventricles, nor on the surface of the brain, but betwixt the surface of the brain and cerebellum, where the one lies upon the other.

After this second branch to the internal surfaces, the great trunk of the posterior cerebri branches profusely like a tree all over the back part of the brain, inosculating forwards with the middle artery of the brain, and also with the artery of the corpus callosum.

Thus is the whole brain supplied with blood ; and next in order come the arteries of the spinal marrow.



## § 2. OF THE ARTERIES OF THE SPINAL MARROW.

I HAVE mentioned none of those smaller arteries which the vertebral gives off before entering the skull, because being destined chiefly for the spinal marrow, they belong to this second class.

The vertebral artery, as it mounts along its canal towards the head, gives at each step, or as it passes each vertebra, a delicate twig ; these little arteries pass through the intervertebral spaces, go to the deeper muscles of the neck, and inosculate with the thyroid and cervical arteries. In like manner, other small arteries go inwards to the spinal marrow at the place where each nerve comes out. They enter into the sheath of the spinal marrow, and inosculate with the chief arteries of the medulla spinalis.

As the vertebral passes through the atlas, both above and below that bone, it gives out much larger arteries to the muscles, as to the recti, trachelo-mastoideus, and complexus, inosculating largely with the occipital artery : often there is at this point one large and particular artery going out to the back of the neck.

Again, as the vertebral passes through the occipital hole, it gives out a little artery, which accompanies the trunk itself up through the foramen magnum, and goes to that part of the dura mater which covers the cuneiform process, and there it inosculates with the twig of the carotid, which enters along with the jugular vein. This is the posterior artery of the dura mater.

Next come the arteries of the spinal marrow, the anterior of which comes out from the trunk of the vertebral artery ; the posterior (though it also sometimes comes off from the vertebral before the basilar is formed) more commonly comes off from the posterior cerebelli.

### 1. ARTERIA ANTERIOR MEDULLÆ SPINALIS.

THE ANTERIOR ARTERY of the spinal marrow is the larger of the two. It was discovered first by Willis ; it had been

looked upon, till the time of Vieussens, as a nerve accompanying the spinal marrow ; because, when empty of blood and uninjected, it is white, and not unlike a nerve. This spinal artery begins within the skull by two branches, which unite as they proceed down the spine. These two branches arise one from each vertebral artery, at the very point where the vertebrals are about to unite to form the basilar trunk : each artery passes down its own side of the spinal marrow, betwixt the corpora olivaria and the corpora pyramidalia ; each artery, before it leaves the skull, gives twigs to the tuber annulare, and to the pyramidal and oval bodies, for they are the beginnings of the spinal marrow ; and soon after emerging from the skull,\* the two spinal arteries join so as to form one anterior spinal artery. This joining is usually at the top of the neck, or rather within the skull, but sometimes so low as the last vertebra of the back. Almost always they join within the head or near it ; and the anterior spinal artery which they form descends along the spinal marrow in a furrow which it forms for itself. The peculiar office of this artery is to supply the spinal marrow and its sheath, which it does by sending continual branches into the substance of the spinal marrow ; while other branches go into the sheath itself, and pass out from the spinal canal along with those nerves which go out from the spinal marrow, accompanied by little processes of the sheath, which are named *processi denticulati*.

But this artery, being extremely small, would be soon exhausted, were it not reinforced with small arteries coming into the sheath : these pass through the vertebral interstices into the spinal canal, and are derived from every artery that passes near the spine. Thus in the neck the spinal artery receives twigs from the vertebral arteries, and from the thyroid and cervical arteries ; in the back it receives twigs very regularly from each of the intercostal arteries, and it receives its twigs from the lumbar arteries when it has got down as low as the loins.

But this spinal artery which is continually diminishing, at last fails in the loins ; and where the cauda equina begins, viz. in the canal of the os sacrum, the medulla is no longer supplied by a spinal artery, but by the small branches of the sacral arteries, which enter by the ten holes of the sacrum.

Of those adventitious branches which reinforce the artery of the spinal marrow as it descends through the spine, each gives

\* The artery which accompanies the ninth pair or lingual nerve, often comes from the anterior spinal artery.



several other branches ; they give twigs to the muscles of the spine, twigs to the substance of the vertebræ themselves, twigs to the sheath of the spinal marrow ; and, finally, twigs which inosculate with the spinal artery, and which sink into the nervous substance to nourish it.

## 2. ARTERIA SPINALIS POSTERIOR.

THE POSTERIOR SPINAL ARTERY differs in all essential points from the anterior : first, there are two posterior spinal arteries which arise, not from the basilar or vertebral arteries like the anterior, but usually from the arteria anterior cerebri ; and they are smaller than the anterior spinal artery : secondly, these two arteries give small twigs to the bottom of the fourth ventricle, and then go round from the fore to the back part of the medulla oblongata ; but there, instead of uniting like the beginnings of the anterior artery, they continue separate, run down the spinal marrow as two distinct arteries, with very frequent inosculations betwixt them. This artery is also unlike the other in respect of its termination, for it disappears at the second vertebra of the loins. Its inosculations with the arteries from without are very free.



## § 3. ARTERIES OF THE EYE.

THE arteries of the eye come from one branch only, the ophthalmic artery, the branch which the carotid, when it touches the anterior clynoid process, sends into the orbit along with the optic nerve. But small as this original artery is (no bigger than a crow-quill,) the system of arteries which arises from it is very great ; whether we consider their number, the irregular parts which they supply, or the great inosculations which they form even with the outward arteries of the nose and face.

These are reasons for setting this order of arteries apart ; and even with all possible care in the arrangement, it is not easy to deliver an orderly intelligible history of this artery. The ophthalmic artery supplies not only the eye itself, i. e. the globe, but it supplies also all the apparatus, if I may so call it, of the eye, i. e. the muscles, the lachrymal gland, the eye-lids, and even the forehead and nose.

1st, It sends a great branch, which leaves the ophthalmic artery, and takes its own course outwards and upwards along the eye, to supply the lachrymal gland where it is exhausted. 2dly, the ophthalmic supplies the eye itself, both by that artery which enters into the centre of the optic nerve, called *arteria centralis retinæ*, and also by other arteries which are named the ciliary arteries ; because they go onwards to the fore part of the eye, where the ciliary circle is. 3dly, the muscles are supplied by an artery which comes from the same place nearly with those ciliary arteries. 4thly, there are two arteries which go down through holes in the socket into the bones and cavities of the nose ; and these, as they perforate chiefly the *æthmoid* bone, are named *æthmoidal* arteries. 5thly, and lastly, those arteries which go out upon the forehead and nose are so directly from the trunk of the ophthalmic artery, that they must be regarded as the termination of it. This is the system of vessels which comes now to be described, and this is, perhaps, the best order for the description.



## FIRST ORDER.

### 1. ARTERIA LACHRYMALIS.

THE LACHRYMAL ARTERY is the first branch of the ophthalmic ; but, in order to know its place correctly, we must first observe how the ophthalmic artery enters the eye. It comes off from the carotid, where that artery touches the *clynoid* process ; and is so close upon the process, that the setting off of the ophthalmic is almost covered by that projection. It then dives under the optic nerve, and appears on the outer side of it ; and as the artery goes along through the orbit, it makes a spiral turn till it completely surrounds the nerve.

The lachrymal artery goes off from the ophthalmic immediately after entering the orbit,\* though sometimes it arises from the artery of the *dura mater* ; and then it enters by the *foramen lacerum*, which is the next opening to the optic hole. It goes off from the ophthalmic about two or three lines after it has entered the socket. It goes all along the outer side of the

\* Sometimes it goes off one or two lines before the ophthalmic enters the optic hole, sometimes from the middle of the artery.

orbit, because the lachrymal gland lies in the outer corner of the eye. When it reaches the gland, it is branched out and entirely expended upon it, except that it sends some small twigs forwards to the eyelid. Of these vagrant branches, one twig goes to the periosteum of the orbit, perforates the cheek bone, and so gets into the hollow of the temple, inosculating with the deep temporal artery; while another little branch goes to the tarsus of the upper eyelid, and another to the tarsus of the lower eyelid, and thus ends the lachrymal artery.



## SECOND ORDER.

IN the second order are included the arteries which go to the eye itself, viz. the *ARTERIA CENTRALIS RETINÆ*, and the *CILIARY ARTERIES*; of which arteries there is none more curious than the *arteria centralis retinæ*.

### 1. *ARTERIA CENTRALIS RETINÆ*.

THIS artery is so named because it perforates the optic nerve, runs up through its very centre or axis, enters into the cavity of the eye through the very centre of the optic nerve, and spreads its branches all over the retina. It usually arises from the ophthalmic artery, where it turns in the middle of the orbit over the upper part of the optic nerve;\* it plunges into the nerve; and this artery, or rather the artery and vein, both (for the vein accompanies it) make so large a canal in the centre of the optic nerve, that it stands quite open and gaping when the nerve is cut across; and was long known to the older anatomists by the name of *porus opticus*, before the meaning of this orifice or hole was understood.

When this artery arrives within the eye, it branches out most beautifully upon the retina. The angles and meshes which this artery makes give the name of retina or net-like to the whole; for the pulpy part of the optic nerve expands into a very thin and delicate web which resembles mucus. This web has all its strength from these branches of the central artery. The branches of the artery, and the mucus-like expansion of the nerve, lie in two separate layers; and hence some anatomists reckon the retina a double membrane.

\* It may be found arising from the ciliary arteries, or sometimes from the muscular.

The *arteria centralis* having given off sidewise these innumerable branches to the retina, still goes forwards, plunges through the substance of the vitreous humour, does not stop till it arrives at the back part of the lens, and is of course the *ARTERIA CENTRALIS OCULI*, the central artery of the eye itself. This central artery can no more be seen in the adult eye than the arteries of an unprepared bone ; but by injecting the small arteries of the eye of a fœtus, of a sleek Calf, or of any young animal, the *arteria centralis oculi* is found to distribute its branches in the following way ; as it goes forwards through the centre of the eye-ball, it gives off its delicate arteries from side to side, which go along the partitions of the vitreous humour (for the vitreous humour is divided every where by membranes into small honeycomb-like cells.) These cross arteries inosculate with those of the retina, and are plainly the arteries which secrete and support the vitreous humour. The central artery stops when it comes to the back of the lens : it is scattered in a radiated form, as if by the resistance, into a great many branches. These branches go round all the capsule of the lens, and meet again on its fore part ; where, uniting into one or more small arteries, they pass onwards into the opening of the pupil, and help to form that membrane which in the fœtus shuts out the light, protects the eye, and vanishes very gradually.

So the *arteria centralis retinæ* passes first through the centre of the optic nerve ; next through the centre of the vitreous humour ; next, after going round the capsule of the lens, it passes through the posterior chamber of the aqueous humour, and terminates in the centre of the pupil. But as these last arteries, viz. of the pupil, vanish soon after birth, we may consider the central artery as ending in inosculation with those arteries, which coming upwards along the sides of the eye along with the retina, form a strong circle of arteries at the root of the ciliary process.

## 2. ARTERIÆ CILIARES.

THE ciliary circle is known, upon looking outwardly at the eye, by that white line which borders the iris, and separates the iris or coloured part of the eye from the white or colourless part. That circle marks the place where there is a great concourse of arteries. The *corpus ciliare*, or ciliary body, is the part within the eye which lies flat upon the fore part of the vitreous and crystalline humours, which is like a second iris behind the first, which is extremely vascular, and corresponds with the



ciliary circle without. This corpus ciliare is radiated (that is a consequence of the peculiar order and arrangement of its vessels, which run in rays from the ciliary circle, *i. e.* from the circumference towards the centre.) These radii coming from the ciliary circle are called the ciliary processes; so that the ciliary circle, corpus ciliare, and ciliary processes, are all parts of the same vascular organ. This is the part of the eye to which all those arteries go which are next to be described.

1. Two arteries of considerable size go off from the sides of the ophthalmic artery: these go along the sides of the optic nerve; they go towards the ball of the eye; and the one on the outer side of the eye is named **EXTERNAL CILIARY ARTERY**, that on the inner side of the optic nerve is named the **INTERNAL CILIARY**.

2. These two divide themselves again into two subordinate branches: one of them as soon as it touches the eye, that is, just beyond the implantation of the optic nerve, enters its substance, and is spread out on its choroid coat in a great number of branches, which are named **CILIARES BREVES**, the short ciliary arteries: the other goes further forward upon the eye before it enters, and even after it enters it still goes forwards to the very fore part of the eye before it divides; hence named **CILIARES LONGÆ**.

3. The **ANTERIOR CILIARY ARTERIES** are some small and uncertain branches, which come sometimes from one source, sometimes from another, but most commonly from the muscular branches; and they go along with the muscles, and consequently enter the eye at its fore part just where the recti muscles are inserted. But, though small, these anterior ciliary arteries are of considerable number.

From the places at which these several arteries enter the ball, one might guess *a priori* how they will be distributed through its coats.

First, The short ciliary arteries do not all of them arise from the ciliary trunk; but of this great number of very small arteries, many arise from the muscular branches. As soon as they touch the eyeball, they enter into it near the insertion of the optic nerve, pass through the sclerotic coat, leaving for its nourishment a few twigs; they divide so, that just after they have entered, we can count twenty-five or thirty all round the root of the optic nerves, which go forwards in a radiated form, and are completely diffused upon the choroid coat, which they cover with an inner membrane, or rather tissue of vessels, named **tapetum**, or **tunica Ruyschiana**. This coat of vessels lines the choroid all the way forward to the lens, goes still onwards to the fore part of the lens; and

then turning down upon the lens at right angles, it meets with the anterior vessels, and forms the ciliary circle, and the ciliary processes or radii, which are about thirty; so that the short ciliary arteries having formed about thirty branches in entering at the back part, they now terminate by a like number at the fore part of the eye. A few twigs go still forward upon the uvea and iris, so as to make a very important connection of all the vascular parts of the eye.

Secondly, The LONGER CILIARY ARTERIES enter the sclerotic a little further forward, penetrate at a greater distance from the optic nerve, they penetrate the sclerotic a little before its middle; but still they continue entire, or they give but very small branches. When they approach the ciliary circle, they divide into two or three long arteries, which go off at right angles, embracing a corresponding quarter of the ciliary circle: from these arms their branches meet each other, and are now joined both by the shorter ciliary arteries and by the anterior ciliary arteries; by which conjunction an arterial circle is formed which corresponds with the outer circle of the uvea, and is called the OUTER CILIARY CIRCLE: this again sends radii of vessels, perhaps thirty, inwards, which meeting form a second circle, the INNER CILIARY CIRCLE.

Thirdly, The anterior ciliary arteries again enter the eye at its fore part, and immediately unite with these, as has just been explained; they help to form the ciliary circle, which is the great conjunction of all the internal vessels of the eye.



### THIRD ORDER.

IN this order are included the MUSCULAR ARTERIES, which are the least regular of all the branches of the ophthalmic artery. From one or other branch of the ophthalmic there generally arise two muscular arteries; the one for the upper, the other for the lower muscles.

#### 1. ARTERIA MUSCULARIS SUPERIOR.

THE UPPER MUSCULAR ARTERY consists of small twigs, which go chiefly to the levator palpebræ and rectus superior; and these, though they sometimes arise as two small twigs from the ophthalmic artery itself, yet in general come off ra-

ther from that artery which, as it goes out by the supra-orbital hole, is named the supra-orbital artery. These muscular branches of the supra-orbital, then, supply the upper muscles of the eye, as the levator palpebræ, the obliquus major, the rectus superior, and the sclerotic or outer coat of the eye.

## 2. ARTERIA MUSCULARIS INFERIOR.

THE LOWER MUSCULAR ARTERY is very generally an independent artery, and pretty large. It comes off from that part of the ophthalmic artery where it is giving off the ciliary arteries. This muscular branch is large enough to give off sometimes the arteria centralis retinæ, and often some of the short ciliary arteries arise from it; it is so long as even to reach the lower eyelid. The muscles which it supplies are all those which lie on the lower part of the eye, as the deprimens oculi, abducens oculi, obliquus minor. It also gives variable twigs to the sclerotica, the optic nerve, the periosteum of the orbit, and sometimes to the adnata and lower eyelid.



## FOURTH ORDER.

THE set of arteries which stand next in order are those which go down into the nose through the æthmoidal bone, whence they are named æthmoidal arteries. The æthmoidal arteries are, like the other branches of the ophthalmic, pretty regular in their destination, but far from being regular in the manner in which they arise.

### 1. ARTERIA ÆTHMOIDALIS POSTERIOR.

THE POSTERIOR ÆTHMOIDAL ARTERY is so named because it passes through the posterior of two holes which are in the orbit at the joining of the æthmoidal with the frontal bone.\* It is an artery by no means regular in its place, coming sometimes from the ophthalmic trunk, sometimes from the lachrymal artery, very rarely from the supra-orbital artery. It is

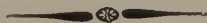
\* In describing the skull, these are named the internal orbital holes,

of no note : it is the smaller of the two æthmoidal arteries ; it goes through its hole, and is scattered upon the bones and membranes of the nose. While it is circulating its twigs among the æthmoidal cells, it inosculates, of course, with the nasal arteries of the external carotid.

## 2. ARTERIA ÆTHMOIDALIS ANTERIOR.

THE anterior æthmoidal artery is rather more regular and more important ; it passes through a larger hole, and is itself larger ; it comes off more regularly from the ophthalmic trunk, and it goes not down into the nose, but upwards into the skull.

The ophthalmic artery, much exhausted by giving off many branches, has risen over the optic nerve, has completed its spiral turn, and has just got to the inner corner of the eye, where the æthmoid hole is, when the anterior æthmoid artery arises from it. It arises just behind the pulley of the upper oblique muscle, plunges immediately into its peculiar hole, and, passing along a canal within the æthmoid bone, it merely gives twigs to the frontal and æthmoidal sinuses, and passes up by one of the largest holes in the cribriform plate of the æthmoid bone. When within the skull, it is under the dura mater, betwixt it and the bone ; it goes to the dura mater and to the root of the falx, and some of its delicate twigs turn downwards again into the nose, through the small holes of the cribriform plate accompanying the branches of the olfactory nerve.



## FIFTH ORDER.

THE fifth order of arteries is very numerous, including all those which send their twigs outwards upon the face. They are the supra-orbitary artery, the artery of the upper eyelid, the artery of the lower eyelid, the artery of the forehead, and the artery of the nose.

### 1. ARTERIA SUPRA-ORBITALIS.

THE supra-orbitary artery is so named from its emerging from the socket by that notch in the superciliary ridge which



we call the supra-orbital hole. It comes off from the ophthalmic artery at the place where it gives off the ciliary and lower muscular arteries : it so often gives off the arteries which go to the upper muscles of the eye, that some have named it the superior muscular artery. It passes onwards, giving twigs to the levators of the eye and of the eyelid, and to the upper oblique muscles, and to the periosteum ; and before it arrives at the supra-orbital hole, it divides into two twigs ; of which one lies deep, and supplies the periosteum of the forehead, inosculating with the temporal artery ; the other lies more superficial, but still is covered by the orbicularis and corrugator supercilii, on which muscles it bestows all its branches.

## 2. ARTERIÆ PALPEBRALES.

THE TWO PALPEBRAL ARTERIES arise from the ophthalmic after it has passed the tendon of the obliquus superior, when it has in a manner emerged from the socket, and is lying at the inner angle of the eye : there it commonly gives off two small arteries, one to the upper and one to the lower eyelid ; and often the two arise by one trunk.

ARTERIA PALPEBRALIS INFERIOR.—The ARTERY of the LOWER EYELID is the branch of the two which goes off the first ; but it is the smaller and less regular of the two. Its twigs go one to the union of the two tarsal cartilages, to the caruncula lachrymalis, and to the adjoining part of the adnata ; another goes deeper, viz. to the lachrymal sac, and even into the æthmoid cells ; and a third twig runs along the margin of the tarsus, named tarsal artery, supplying the Maibomian glands.

ARTERIA PALPEBRALIS SUPERIOR.—The ARTERY of the UPPER EYELID arises along with the lower palpebral or near it ; it gives few branches ; one keeps to the angle of the eye, and supplies the orbicularis oculi, the caruncula, and the tunica conjunctiva ; another having pierced the fibres of the oblique muscle, runs along the borders of the tarsus, inosculating with a similar branch of the lachrymal artery, and forming an arch along the upper tarsus as the other does below.

## 3. ARTERIA NASALIS.

THE NASAL ARTERY goes off at the edge of the orbit, rises over the lachrymal sac, and over the ligament of the eyelids : it first gives a twig upwards to the root of the frontal muscle ;

then another goes down over the lachrymal sac, and after giving branches to the sac, goes to the orbicularis muscle, and inosculates with the infra-orbitary artery; and lastly, the most remarkable branch of this artery, from which indeed it has its name, runs down upon the side of the nose, making a beautiful net-work, and inosculating with the last branch of the labial artery which runs up to meet it.\* This is quite a cutaneous artery; many of its twigs go to the skin; it is felt beating strongly; it was often opened when arteriotomy was more regarded than it is now.

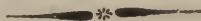
#### 4. ARTERIA FRONTALIS.

THE FRONTAL ARTERY is now to be distinguished from the supra-orbital; for the supra-orbital rises deep in the socket, emerges by the supra-orbitary hole, passes along chiefly betwixt the bone and muscles, and makes no remarkable figure upon the face: while this, the frontal artery, is larger, keeps chiefly upon the surface of the muscles, is quite subcutaneous, has nothing to do with the supra-orbitary hole, and rises beautifully upon the forehead. It is a delicate and slender artery, not so large as the nasal, and looks like one of its branches; it gives off first a branch to the eyelids, named superciliary artery, which supplies the root of the frontal and the upper part of the orbicularis muscles; it sends an ascending branch which dives under the frontal muscle, and belongs chiefly to the os frontis and pericranium. This is the little artery which often makes a perpendicular groove in the os frontis. The chief branch of the artery continues subcutaneous, is felt beating along the forehead, belongs chiefly to the skin of the forehead and to the hairy scalp, and mounts to the top of the head, to the place of the fontanelle, where it has free inosculations with the temporal artery.

This last branch is the end of the ocular or ophthalmic artery, of which the branches are so irregular in their origin, that the most diligent anatomists have declined that part of the description, and yet have arranged the branches upon that scheme, viz. the points from which the several twigs arise: whereas I have thought it more prudent, since the branches are regular in respect of the parts which they supply, to arrange them according to those parts, viz. the lachrymal gland, the eyeball, the muscles, the æthmoid cells, the face; an order

\* Some of its branches absolutely penetrate the cartilages of the nose, and so get access to the Schneiderian membrane, and supply it with blood.

which also very nearly corresponds with the order in which the arteries arise. The learning and remembering these arteries, it is right to acknowledge, is a task more difficult than useful ; more suiting the severe anatomist, than the practical surgeon ; who yet, if he do his duty, will learn all ; and as he learns much, must expect to forget much.



## CONCLUSION.

Before I leave this difficult subject, I stop one moment to explain a point which might leave some confusion in the reader's mind ; and regarding chiefly those little arteries which belong to the membranes of the brain.

It is of great importance in studying the brain, to know the manner in which its membranes are connected with it ; and it is especially to be remarked that the internal surfaces, or, in other words, the cavities of the brain, need to be supported, nourished, and supplied with blood as much as the external surface ; and that for this end the pia mater turns inwards and lines all the cavities of the brain.

At different points the pia mater and its arteries take various forms, and are called *RETE MIRABILE*, *VELUM*, or *CHOROID PLEXUS*, according to that form.

The *RETE MIRABILE* has already been explained, as being that division and reunion of the branches of the carotid artery by which the force of the ascending blood is broken before it enters the brain. In many of the lower animals this provision of Nature is most curious and particular ; but in Man it would appear, that the erect posture in which he walks, the contortions of the carotid artery as it enters the skull, the manner in which it lies in the cavernous sinus, and, finally, the minute division which it undergoes by spreading over the pia mater before it enters the brain, are sufficient. In Man there is not the smallest vestige of a rete mirabile : and whenever we find a rete mirabile described in Man (as often it has been described,) we find invariably that it means no more than the plexus of delicate vessels which go out from the first twigs of the carotid artery, either to supply the membranes or to enter into the cavities of the brain ; and accordingly we find these authors calling it “ a beautiful beginning of a rete mirabile ; ” “ an imperfect rete mirabile,” &c.

The *VELUM*, as it is called, is that netted form which the

pia mater assumes often about the basis of the brain, whenever the smaller arteries are numerous; for the inosculations of the arteries are like a net-work; the arteries, full of blood or of injection, are opaque and are very apparent; while the membrane upon which they run is lucid, diaphanous, and is scarcely seen. A velum or net of this kind appears on every smooth and uniform surface of the basis of the brain; but the most remarkable of all is that which lies betwixt the brain and the cerebellum. It is named *velum interpositum*; and at this place insinuates itself (betwixt the brain and the cerebellum) into the back part of the lateral ventricles, where it covers the nates, testes, and pineal gland.

The *PLEXUS CHOROIDES* again is merely another variety or form of the pia mater. The great choroid plexus is a membrane which lies upon the bottom of each lateral ventricle: it is netted and extremely vascular, not unlike the chorion of some animals, whence it is named. It consists partly of arteries, but chiefly of veins; it conveys some blood to the internal surfaces of the brain, but returns much more.

But although the choroid plexus of the two lateral ventricles be the chief one, the third and the fourth ventricles have each their plexuses or vascular webs. The chief points by which these vascular webs of the pia mater enter, are by the anterior and posterior horns of the lateral ventricles; at which points, and indeed at all the lower parts of the brain, the ventricles must be considered as shut, since these vascular linings, as they enter, adhere on all sides: but may also be considered as open, since they admit these membranes, since they are shut only by their slight adhesion, and may be opened by pulling the parts gently asunder.

This, then, is a general explanation of that vascular part of the pia mater which covers all the basis, and lines all the cavities of the brain. It is one continuous membrane, under the various titles of *rete mirabile*, which some older anatomists use; of *velum*, a name chiefly repeated by Haller: and of *plexus choroides*, a name universally used for that net-work of vessels, which lies out upon the floors of the ventricles. It will be seen hereafter how greatly a knowledge of these inflections contributes to the right understanding of the brain and its parts and cavities.



## CHAP. II.

## OF THE ARTERIES OF THE ARM.

THE subclavian arteries arise from the arch of the aorta. The left subclavian arises from the extremity of the arch, and just where the aorta is turning down towards the spine. It is longer within the thorax, runs more obliquely to pass out of the chest, receives in a less favourable direction the current of the blood. But the right subclavian arises from the aorta by that artery which is called the *ARTERIA INNOMINATA*; for it is an artery which can have no name, being neither the carotid nor the subclavian, but a trunk common to both. It is large, rises from the top of the aortic arch, receives the blood in the most direct manner; from which physiologists have deduced those consequences which have been already explained.\*

The artery of the arm, as it proceeds, changes its name according to the parts through which it passes. It is named subclavian within the breast, axillary in the arm-pit, brachial as it goes down the arm, and when it divides at the bending of the arm, its two branches are named the radial and ulnar arteries, after the radius and ulna, along which they run, until at last they join to form vascular arches in the palm of the hand.

Nature has thus arranged and divided the parts of this artery; and the study of its branches becomes easy to those who will first condescend to observe this simple arrangement and the parts through which it goes. 1st, While the artery is within the breast, it lies transversely across the root of the neck; it supplies the neck, the breast, the shoulder; it gives all its branches upwards into the neck, or downwards into the breast: upwards it gives the vertebral to the inside of the neck (if I may use an expression which cannot now be misunderstood;) the cervical, which goes to the outside of the muscles of the neck; the thyroid, which goes to the thyroid gland. While it gives off from its opposite side downwards, and into the chest, the mammary, which goes to the inner surface of the breast; the upper intercostal artery which serves the space betwixt the uppermost ribs; the mediastinum and pericardium;

\* Douglas says the left is shorter, which I can by no means understand.

and even the diaphragm, though far distant, receives branches from this mammary artery.

2. When the artery, having turned over the sloping part of the chest, glides into the axilla, and lies deep there betwixt the scapula and the thorax, what parts can it supply, or what vessels can it give off, but scapular and thoracic arteries? Its branches accordingly are three or four slender arteries to the thorax on one hand, named the four thoracic arteries, which give twigs to the glands, the pectoral muscles, and the breast or mamma; and on the other hand it gives off first great articular arteries which surround the joint, and still great scapular arteries which surround the scapula, and nourish all that great mass of flesh which lies upon it.

3. But when this artery takes the name of the humeral artery, and passes along the arm, it must be simple, as the arm is simple; for it consists of a bone of one mass of muscles before and another behind: the artery of course runs along the bone undivided, except that it gives off one branch, which runs parallel along with the main artery, and which running deeper among the flesh, is named muscularis or profunda.

4. It divides at the bend of the arm, in order to pass into the fore-arm in three great branches. In wounds thus low, all danger of losing the arm from wounds of the artery, unless by the gross ignorance or fault of the surgeon, is over; we do not attend so much to the parts which it supplies, or, in other words, to its inosculation, as to the parts against which the great branches lie. We observe here, as on all occasions, the artery seeking protection, and running upon the firmest parts: its three branches now pass; one along the radius, another along the ulna, a third along the interosseous membrane.

5. In the palm of the hand we find the artery still following the order of the bones; and as the carpal bones are as a centre or nucleus, upon which the metacarpal and finger-bones stand like radii, the palmar artery forms a complete arch, from which all the fingers are supplied by arteries, issuing in a radiated form.

Of all these subdivisions the subclavian artery is that which seems the least important to know; and yet without a perfect knowledge of it, how shall we understand many important arteries of the neck or shoulder? How shall we understand the anatomy of the greatest of all the nerves, viz. the sympathetic nerve which twists round it? How shall we judge rightly of tumours near it, or of aneurisms which so often mount along this artery from the arch of the aorta until they are felt here?—Of the second division of the artery, viz. where it lies in the axilla, the importance is most unequivocal;

since every attempt to stop hæmorrhagies, by compressing this artery, requires a knowledge of it; since every full bleeding wound near this place alarms us, and requires all our knowledge: since every tumour that is to be extirpated opens some of its branches; since we cannot cut off a cancerous breast, or the glands which should be taken along with it, without cutting the thoracic arteries.—Next, the artery of the arm, simple as it is, interests us greatly. It is this simple artery which is hurt in aneurisms; it is its delicate, I had almost said capillary, branches, which are to establish a new circulation, and to save the limb. We have indeed no apprehensions of losing the limb for want of blood (the continual success of our operations having established this point;) yet it is most interesting to observe the extreme smallness of these branches, as an assurance to us in other cases of danger; though I do indeed believe, that there cannot in any simple wound in any limb be the smallest danger from this much dreaded obstruction of the blood.

The arteries of the fore-arm are more interesting still; for if we will be so selfish as to consider the difficulties of the surgeon merely, wounds of the arteries in the fore-arm are very distressing. These arteries lie deep among the muscles, drive their blood (when wounded) through the whole arm, and either occasion a difficult and most painful dissection, or cause a deep and gangrenous suppuration; so that whether the surgeon be so dexterous as to secure the arteries, or so timid as to leave the arm in this woful condition, the patient is to undergo such sufferings by pain, or by a long disease, as must interest us greatly.

The arteries even of the wrist and hand, though small, are important. The difficulty of managing wounds of these arteries stands but too often recorded in all kinds of books for us to doubt the fact. If many have died after frequent bleedings from these arteries, though under skilful hands, what ought we not to submit to in the way of study and labour to acquire and to retain a knowledge of these arteries; since by that alone every thing that is surgical in tumours, aneurisms, amputations, is well or ill performed according to our degree of knowledge; and since, according to our degree of knowledge, we are disengaged in our minds, and have free possession of our judgment, to do any thing which may be required? In short, as we proceed along this artery, we shall perceive that each division of it rises in importance; or at least, that if wounds about the axilla be more dangerous, they are proportionably rare; that if accidents about the wrist or hand be less danger-

ous, they are, however, more frequent, so as to deserve every degree of attention.



## I. OF THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

THIS artery is so named from its passing under the clavicle by which it is protected ; and we include under this division all that part of the artery which lies betwixt the arch of the aorta and the outside of the clavicle, where the artery comes out upon the chest. Here the artery is of a very great size ; it lies directly across at the top of the chest, and root of the neck ; and like a cylinder or axis, it gives its branches directly upwards and directly downwards to the throat, to the neck, and the parts within the chest. Upwards it sends the vertebral, the thyroid, the cervical, and all the humeral arteries ; downwards it sends the upper intercostal artery, and also the internal mammary, which, besides its going along the inner surface of the chest, gives branches to the pericardium, mediastinum, thymus, and other parts.

### 1. ARTERIA MAMMARIA INTERNA.

THE INTERNAL MAMMARY ARTERY is the first which the subclavian gives off ; it is of the size of a crow-quill, long, slender, its ramifications very beautiful. On each side of the chest the mammary artery passes down along all the inner surface of the sternum, and ends at the cartilago ensiformis in numerous inosculation with the epigastric artery ; for the epigastric arises from the femoral at the groin, just as this does from the subclavian at the top of the chest, and runs upwards along the belly, as this the mammary runs downwards along the breast till they meet each other midway. This is an inosculation, which fifty years ago was much noticed. Physiologists deduced the most important consequences from it, ascribing the connection of the breast and womb to the flux and reflux, to the alternate stoppage and acceleration of the blood in these vessels ; although the sympathy of the breasts and womb is plainly a connection which Nature has established upon other laws, upon a kind of sympathy such as we see every where in the system, but can in no instance explain.

The course of the mammary artery and the order of its



branches, is this: it goes off from the lower and fore part of the axillary artery; it lies on the outside of the membranous bag of the pleura; and considering the pleura as ending in an obtuse and rising apex, the mammary artery lies at first a little behind the pleura, its first movement is to rise and turn with an arch over the top of the pleura or bag which incloses the cavity of the chest; there it descends again, and passes betwixt the ribs and pleura; the artery runs along the inside of the thorax under the middle of the cartilages. At the seventh or eighth rib the mammary itself emerges from the thorax, and becomes an external artery; it first sends a branch towards the ensiform cartilage, which plays round it, and then it goes to the upper part of the abdominal muscles by two distinct branches, the one of which is internal, the other external. The internal branch goes into the belly or substance of the rectus muscle, descends nearly as far as the navel, and inosculates with the epigastric artery. The external branch turns off to one side, goes rather to the lateral muscles of the abdomen, especially to the two oblique muscles, and it inosculates more with the lumbar arteries; and so the mammary ends. But as it passes down along the chest, it gives the following branches:

First, Where it is passing the clavicle, bending to go downwards, it gives a small retrograde branch which follows the course of the clavicle, and goes to the muscles and skin of the neck.\*

Secondly, It gives an artery, or rather arteries, to the thymus *ARTERIÆ THYMICÆ*. These are in the adult extremely small, because the gland itself is so; but in the child the gland is large, the upper part lies before the trachea, the lower part lies upon the heart, or rather upon the pericardium betwixt the two lobes of the lungs: the upper end then is supplied by the thyroid arteries; the middle part is often supplied by a distinct and particular branch, viz. by this *ARTERIA THYMICA* coming from the mammary, but this is far from being always so; the lowest part of the gland has twigs from those arteries which properly belong to the mediastinum, upon which it lies, or to the pericardium or to the diaphragm.

Thirdly, The mammary gives also the upper artery of the diaphragm, its lower artery being the first branch of the aorta within the abdomen. This upper artery of the diaphragm is named *ARTERIA COMES NERVI PHRENICI*, because it accompanies the phrenic nerve. The phrenic nerve is passing from

\* Sabbatier is so confused, and copies Haller so ill, that he mistakes this for the transversalis humeri, which is really an important artery.

the neck (where it arises) into the chest, by the side of the axillary artery, when it receives from the mammary this small artery which goes along with it; and this artery, which is so extremely small that nothing but its regularity can give it any importance, goes down through the whole chest, accompanying the phrenic nerve over the pericardium till they arrive together on the upper surface of the diaphragm, and spread out there. This artery, small as it is, gives twigs as it passes along to almost all the parts within the chest.

Fourthly, The mammary gives an artery to the pericardium, which may be called the UPPER PERICARDIAC ARTERY; and which is of such importance, that generally when it does not come off from the mammary, it comes from the subclavian itself, or even from the aorta. It belongs to the upper and back part of the pericardium.

Fifthly, The pericardium has another artery from the mammary, which belongs to that part of the heart which is united to the diaphragm: it is thence named by some *ARTERIA PHRENICO-PERICARDIACA*.

Sixthly, The mammary gives many small arteries to the mediastinum; for the mammary is covered only by the sternocostalis muscle, which is often hardly visible in Man, so that the artery may be said to lie upon the pleura, betwixt it and the ribs. The mediastinum is just that doubling of the pleura which descends from the sternum to the spine, and of course many small arteries go down from the lower surface of the sternum along the pleura into the mediastinum, and by that to the pericardium, or even to the membrane of the lungs; for the pericardium is one inflection of the pleura and mediastinum, and the covering membrane of the lungs is another.

The mammary, as it goes downwards, sends branches through the interstices of the ribs; two twigs pass through each interstice, going to the intercostal muscles, and to the muscles which lie upon the thorax, as the pectoral muscles; also to the mamma, to the obliquus externus abdominis, and to form loops of inosculation round the ribs with the proper intercostal and thoracic arteries. These twigs pass through the interstices of the six or seven upper ribs, but at the seventh the artery itself comes out. They are too numerous and too small to be either counted or named.

Seventh, The mammary, before it terminates in the two branches, of which one keeps the middle and goes to the rectus muscle, while the other goes outwards to the oblique muscle, as already described, gives about the place of the sixth rib a branch which in place of passing out of the thorax, keeps to its inner surface, goes downwards along the seventh, eighth,

and ninth ribs, makes its inosculations there with the intercostal and other arteries, and ends in the side of the diaphragm, and in the transverse or innermost muscle of the abdomen, which indigitates, as we call it, with the diaphragm. From this destination it is sometimes named the *RAMUS MUSCULO-PHRENICUS*.

## 2. ARTERIA THYROIDEA INFERIOR.

THE LOWER THYROID ARTERY, whose branches go to the neck, the shoulder, and the thyroid gland, arises from the fore part of the subclavian artery, close upon the origin of the internal mammary. It is there covered by the root of the mastoid muscle. It buds out from the root of the great axillary artery, in the form of a short thick stump, which immediately divides whip-like into four small and slender arteries.

1. The main branch of this artery is again named the *ramus thyroideus arteriæ thyroideæ*. This thyroid artery is the first great branch; it does not ascend directly, but moves a little inwards towards the trachea, from which the root is a good deal removed: it bends behind the carotid artery, is tortuous, ascends by the side of the trachea till it touches the lower lobe of the thyroid gland; it spreads upon it like a hand, inosculates very freely with the upper thyroid artery, and nourishes the gland. This branch moreover gives some twigs upwards to the lower constrictors of the pharynx and to the œsophagus; but its chief arteries, beside those which plunge into the gland, are its *TRACHEAL ARTERIES*. These tracheal arteries, two or three in number, are reflected along the trachea, turn down with it into the chest, and reach even to the bifurcation of the trachea, where, inosculating with the intercostal arteries, they form a most beautiful net-work.

2. The ascending thyroid artery, or *thyroidea ascendens*, is a small and delicate branch, which lies pretty deep, going off rather from the back part of the artery; it supplies all the deep parts of the neck, and even penetrates the *vertebræ*; it soon divides into an irregular number of branches; the artery keeps almost close to the naked *vertebræ* lying under most of the muscles; its general tendency is upwards, surrounding the neck in a spiral form. Its chief twigs are, first, some which go towards the surface, *i. e.* to the muscles which lie over the artery, as to the *scalenus*, the *mastoid muscle*, the *levator scapulæ*, and the *splenius*; and twigs of this artery play over the *rectus capitis* and the anterior surface of the *vertebræ*, and attach themselves to the eighth pair of nerves, and to the gangli-

on of the sympathetic nerve. Its deeper arteries again go to the intertransversarii and other muscles which lie closer upon the neck; and these are the branches which pass in through the intervertebral holes, and penetrating the sheath of the spinal marrow, and following its nerves, inosculate with the spinal arteries.

3. The transverse artery of the neck, or transversalis colli, is an artery of the same kind with the last, viz. chiefly destined for the muscles, but more superficial. It passes obliquely round the neck outwards and upwards, goes under the trapezius muscle, and covered by it sends branches as far as the occiput. Its twigs are distributed thus: first to the mastoid muscle and to the skin; next to the trapezius, levator scapula, and splenius; then a long branch passing obliquely upwards over the splenius, and under cover of the trapezius, gives twigs to those muscles, and ends in inosculation with the lower branches of the occipital artery; and lastly, another branch goes downwards towards the scapula and shoulder.

4. The last branch of this artery is the TRANSVERSALIS HUMERI; an artery so important in its destination, and so irregular in its origin, and so frequently arising as a distinct and particular branch, and having so little relation to these trivial branches of the thyroid artery, that I shall describe it by itself.

### 3. ARTERIA VERTEBRALIS.

THE vertebral artery arises next from the upper part of the subclavian artery; and running upwards and backwards but a little way, it plunges into the hole destined for it in the vertebræ: and it has been already described through all its course both within the bony canal and within the brain.

### 4. ARTERIA CERVICALIS PROFUNDA.

THE deep cervical artery comes next in order; it is generally the least important of all the branches from the subclavian artery, and the least regular in its place. It often comes from some other branch, and often it is entirely wanting; its course resembles a good deal that of the transversalis colli, *i. e.* it goes to the deepest muscles of the neck, and to the vertebræ, and ends about the occiput; it usually arises from that part of the subclavian artery where it is just going to pass, or has already passed, betwixt the scaleni muscles. Its branches are



few in number, it gives branches to all the *scaleni* muscles ; others also which play over the anterior surface of the *vertebræ* and the deep muscles of the neck, as the *spinalis colli*, *intertransversarii*, the root of the *splenius* and *trachelo-mastoi-deus* ; the *complexus* also receives a branch which usually inosculates with the *occipital* artery.

##### 5. ARTERIA CERVICALIS SUPERFICIALIS.

THE SUPERFICIAL CERVICAL ARTERY is still less regular, being very often supplied by the thyroid. Its course is directly the reverse of the last, running rather outwards and downwards, or in other words, belonging rather to the shoulder than to the neck. The subclavian artery has got from under the muscles, and has passed the *scaleni* a little way before it gives off this superficial cervical. This artery immediately attaches itself to the plexus of the brachial nerve, and is indeed hidden in the plexus : its first branch is given to the plexus, but its next and chief branch goes across to the top of the shoulder ; it sends branches to the *levator scapulæ*, *trapezius*, and even to the skin ; while a deeper branch goes to the *splenius* and *complexus*, where these muscles arise in the neck ; and when this artery is large, it sends branches along the margin of the scapula, which go even to the *serratus major*, *rhomboides*, *latissimus dorsi*, &c.



AFTER enumerating these jarring names, I perceive the necessity of arranging once more those arteries which go to the neck. Let the student then observe, 1. That the *vertebral* artery goes to the brain, that the *cervical* arteries belong to the muscles of the neck. 2. That the thyroid gives two arteries to the neck, the *thyroidea ascendens* and the *transversalis colli*. 3. That when a second set of arteries for the neck begins to be enumerated, the name is changed ; that of *colli* is dropped, and that of *cervicis* adopted. 4. That as there are two branches of the thyroid going to the neck, viz. the ascending thyroid and the *transversalis colli*, there are also two entire arteries going to the neck, and which come off immediately after the thyroid, viz. the *cervicalis profunda* more constant, and the *cervicalis superficialis* which is less regular.

## 6. ARTERIA INTERCOSTALIS SUPERIOR.

THE UPPER INTERCOSTAL is given to supply the intercostal space betwixt the two uppermost ribs, because the aorta which gives out all the other intercostals, regularly one for each rib, does not begin to give them off till after it has made its turn downwards ; of course it leaves the two upper ribs without arteries. To supply this, then, is the office of the superior intercostal artery, which is about the size of a crow-quill, and goes off from the subclavian generally next after the vertebral and thyroid arteries. It comes from the upper and back surface of the subclavian trunk ; it turns downwards and backwards, and lodges itself by the side of the spine in the hollow where the spine and the first rib are joined, and where the first thoracic ganglion of the great intercostal nerve lies. Before it takes its place betwixt the ribs as the intercostal of the two upper spaces, it sends a branch upwards upon the face of the lower vertebræ of the neck, which is given to the scaleni, to the longus colli muscle, and to the nerves ; next it gives off the highest intercostal artery for the space betwixt the first and second ribs, which artery divides into two branches ; one perforates the thorax, and goes out upon the back, and supplies the muscles which lie flat upon the back of the chest ; while another branch, the proper intercostal branch, runs along betwixt the ribs.

Next it gives off a second intercostal artery, which also has its external and internal branches, and of which a branch inosculates over the third rib with the uppermost intercostal of the aorta. Besides these, it gives also small branches to the œsophagus, which inosculate with the tracheal arteries ; and it gives branches to the spinal marrow, which pass into the canal along the holes for the nerves ; and which not only supply the sheath, but also inosculate with the arteries of the spinal marrow itself.

## 7. ARTERIA SUPRA-SCAPULARIS.

THE SUPRA-SCAPULAR ARTERY, or the superior scapular artery, is one of such magnitude, is so different in size and destination from the cervical and other small arteries of the neck, that it ought to be described apart ; though of great size and importance, it is yet so little known, that Sabbatier does not even describe nor name it.

The SUPRA-SCAPULAR ARTERY very often comes off from

the **THYROID** artery ; in which case it is the last in order of all the branches of the thyroid, that is to say, the nearest to the shoulder, and then it is named **TRANSVERSALIS HUMERI**, because of its going across the root of the neck to the shoulder. Sometimes it arises from the **cervicalis superficialis** ; but then it is a small artery, and I suspect it reaches in such cases no further than the tip of the shoulder, and does not descend to the scapula. Often I see it arising as a distinct artery, large, very long, tortuous like the splenic artery, and almost equalling it in size ; running across the root of the neck, till at the top of the shoulder it dives under the acromion process ; and then passing through the notch of the scapula, supplies all the flesh of its upper surface.

The reason of my naming it supra-scapular artery, is its passing thus over the scapula, while another, the largest branch of all those proceeding from the subclavian artery, is named **subscapularis**, from passing under the scapula.

To repeat the origin then of this supra-scapular artery, it arises sometimes as an independent artery, and is so great, that we wonder that it does not always do so : often it arises from the thyroid, is its last branch, and is named **TRANSVERSALIS HUMERI**, authors not observing that it belongs absolutely to the scapula ; it rarely arises from the **cervicalis superficialis** ; and when it does so, it is small : often in a strong man it arises apart ; and when it does arise from the thyroid or cervical arteries, it is so large as to annihilate as it were all the other branches of the artery from which it arises.

Where this artery passes out of the chest it is covered only by the root of the mastoid muscle ; and it gives twigs to the mastoid, to the muscles which ascend to the throat, to the subclavian muscle, to the fat, jugular vein, and skin.

Next it gives a superficial branch to the skin, **trapezius**, and other superficial parts about the shoulder.

Next it turns over the acromion process, passes through the supra-scapular notch, with many windings and contortions ; spreads itself over all the outer surface of the scapula, both above and below the spine, and is the sole supra-scapular artery. The manner of its spreading is this ; having passed through its hole in company with the supra-scapular nerve, the instant that it has passed the hole and begins to lie flat upon the scapula, it sends off two branches, one on either hand at right angles ; and of these one goes along the upper border of the scapula towards its basis, the other goes in the other direction towards the shoulder-joint, and circles round the upper side of the spine or ridge of the scapula.

The main artery having first perforated the scapular notch,

and given these two small branches, next makes a second perforation, viz. by passing under the root of the acromion process; and then it again divides into large branches, in which it ends. The one branch runs along the root or base of the spine or high ridge; the other branch runs nearly in the same direction, but lower down, viz. nearer that edge where the great subscapular artery runs; and with which, of course, it makes many free inosculations.

This artery lies so across the neck that it may be cut, especially in wounds with the sabre; and in a big man it is of such size as to pour out a great quantity of blood. It is necessary for the surgeon to remember the great size of this supra-scapular artery, its long course over the shoulder, at what place it arises within the chest, and how it may be compressed. But in another sense also it is peculiarly important; for the supra-scapular artery makes inosculation with the lower scapular artery, freer, and fuller than in almost any other part of any limb. One can hardly force tepid water through those small arteries which support the arm after the operation for aneurism; but the inosculations of this supra-scapular artery are so free, that often, though I have tied the arteries with great care, the very coarsest injection has gone round by it; and when I desired only to inject the head, I have found the arteries of the arm entirely filled. The conclusion which this leads to in wounds of the axillary artery is too obvious to need any further explanation.



## II. OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY.

THIS artery assumes the name of axillary, where it lies in the arm-pit or axilla. The scaleni muscles being attached to the ribs, the artery passes first through betwixt the first and second scalenus; next it passes out from under the arch of the clavicle, where it was protected; then it falls over the breast in a very oblique direction; it inclines outwards towards the axilla, lies flat upon the slanting convexity of the chest, is covered by the pectoral muscles, because the pectoral muscles arise from the clavicle, under which the artery passes; but far from being protected, it is so far exposed as to be easily felt beating, and it is at this point only that it can be rightly compressed. It declines still outwards and downwards, till at last it gets so deep into the arm-pit, and so much under the scapula,



as to lie betwixt the serratus anticus and subscapular muscles. There it is rightly called the axillary artery. In this hollow it lies safe, protected by the deep borders of the pectoral muscle before, and of the latissimus dorsi behind, surrounded with fat and glands, inclosed within the meshes of the plexus, or great conjunction of nerves, which go to the arms, surrounded also by all the veins of the arm, which twine round it in a wonderful manner. Here it gives off the thoracic arteries to the thorax, and the scapular arteries to the shoulder. In short, the axilla itself is a complicated study ; but in all that respects the arteries it may be made very easy and plain. But let the surgeon remember that it is only by a perfect knowledge of the arteries, a bold stroke of the knife, and a masterly use of the needle, that the patient is to be saved from bleedings after wounds hereabouts ! for the old story of compressing the axillary artery above the clavicle is now of no credit with any surgeon of knowledge or good sense.

As the artery turns over the borders of the chest, it gives one or two twigs to the adjacent parts, as to the scaleni, and to the great nerves which lie over the artery, and to the serrated muscle, where it lies under the scapula : but these branches are so small that it is unnecessary either to number or describe them. The thoracic or external mammary arteries are the first important branches ; they are four in number, and they are named after their place or office.

#### 1. ARTERIA THORACICA SUPERIOR.

THE UPPER THORACIC ARTERY, being the first, lies of course deep in the axilla. It comes off about the place of the first or second rib ; it lies betwixt the lesser pectoral and the great serrated muscles ; it gives its chief branches to these muscles, and it also gives other branches to the intercostal muscles and the spaces betwixt the ribs. But, upon the whole, it lies very deep, is small, is so short that the next is entitled thoracica longior ; it is an artery of little note.

#### 2. ARTERIA THORACICA LONGIOR.

THE LONG THORACIC ARTERY is more important, supplying all the great pectoral muscles and the mamma. It was named the external mammary artery ; but we are the more willing to change the name, since it has no likeness to the internal mammary artery ; is in no respect a counter-part to it ;

it might be named the pectoral artery. It is long, not tortuous, but straight and slender, and about the size of a crow-quill. It is needless to describe an artery so variable in its branches as this is; it is sufficient to say, that after giving small twigs to the axillary glands, it terminates with all its larger branches in the pectoral muscle, mamma, and skin, and in inosculations with the intercostals and internal mammary; it is very long, descending sometimes so low as to give branches to the oblique muscles of the belly.

### 3. ARTERIA THORACICA HUMERARIA.

THE THORACIC ARTERY of the SHOULDER goes off from the upper and fore part of the axillary artery. Its place is exactly opposite to that of the *mammaria superior*, viz. under the point of the coracoid process, insomuch that Haller has named it *thoracica acromialis*. It is a short, thick artery; it bursts through the interstice between the pectoral and deltoid muscles, and appears upon the shoulder almost as soon as it comes off from the main artery; it resembles the thyroid in shape, being a short thick artery, terminating all at once in a lash of slender branches, which go over the shoulder in various directions: but I never could observe any order worth describing. One deeper branch goes to the *serratus major*, a branch goes along the clavicle, gives it the nutritious artery, and then goes on to the pectoral muscle, and to the skin of the breast: it gives small branches to the axillary glands, and larger ones to the deltoid and pectoral muscles and skin of the shoulder, for this is very much a cutaneous artery. The chief branch is that which is last named, running down betwixt the deltoid and pectoral muscles: and the most curious branch is a small artery which accompanies the cephalic vein, and runs backwards along the course of the vein, a small and beautiful branch.

### 4. ARTERIA THORACICA ALARIS.

SOMETIMES, though not always, there is a fourth thoracic artery. When it exists, we find it close by the last artery; its branches, which are sometimes numerous, belong entirely to the cup or hollow of the axilla; it goes to the glands and fat, and thence its name of *ALARIS* or *AXILLARIS*. This is the deepest or backmost of these mammary arteries; it attaches itself to the lower border of the scapula, and we often see it

running along the lower border a considerable length, and giving branches chiefly to the subscapularis muscle.



THESE are the four mammary arteries which go to the breast. The arteries which go to the scapula follow next, and are only three in number ; one, which is the counterpart of the supra-scapular artery, is the greatest branch from the axillary artery, supplies the lower surface of the scapula, and thence is named SUBSCAPULAR ARTERY ; one, which, as it is reflected round the joint by the outside, is named the EXTERNAL CIRCUMFLEX ARTERY : and one, which, as it turns round the inner side of the joint, is named the INTERNAL CIRCUMFLEX ARTERY.

#### 5. ARTERIA SUB-SCAPULARIS.

THE SUBSCAPULAR ARTERY is of a great size ; it is hardly described in books, I might say is hardly known to anatomists. Douglas, and most especially Sabbatier, have scarcely named it, though it is in fact one of the largest arteries in the body, being absolutely as large as the axillary artery, from which it takes its rise.\*

The greatest mass of flesh in almost any part of the body is that which lies under and around the scapula in a strong man ; and this artery supplies almost all that mass. It goes off from the axillary opposite to the neck of the scapula, just under the long head of the biceps brachii : it no sooner comes off from the axillary artery, than it attaches itself to the lower border of the scapula ; and as soon as it comes to the edge of the scapula (but sometimes lower down the edge, viz. where the head of the biceps comes off) it splits into two great branches ; one of which goes to the upper, and one to the lower surface. But to describe each little artery among such a mass of flesh, or to expect to find them regular, would be very thoughtless ; the general course of them only can be described. First, The greater branch which goes to the lower surface of the scapula,

\* It is named often scapularis inferior or infra-scapularis ; it is better named subscapular, both to harmonize with the name subscapular muscle, to which it belongs ; and also to contrast with its counterpart, the supra-scapular artery, which comes from the subclavian artery.

is the proper trunk of the subscapular artery ; it divides into two great branches, which course all over the lower or hollow surface of the scapula : one of these is deeper, runs downwards along the naked border of the scapula, lies under the muscles upon the flat bone, and supplies the inner surface of the subscapular muscle with many branches. It sends a branch upwards, which runs along the inner surface of the neck of the scapula, runs still forwards under the root of the coracoid process, and its extreme branch goes round by the basis of the scapula to make an inosculation with the larger branch.

Secondly, The larger branch keeps nearer the surface, and supplies all the outer side of the subscapular muscle. Its general course is round the scapula, down the fore edge, then round by the lower angle, then up by the line of the basis scapulæ, encircling it with what might be named a coronary artery. It first gives branches to the teres major ; then passes down along that muscle to the angle of the scapula ; then turning along the angle of the scapula (which it does not do without leaving many branches behind,) it runs in a waving line all round the basis scapulæ, till it arrives at the upper corner, where it ends in free inosculations, both with its own deeper branch, and also with the supra-scapular artery which comes along the shoulder.

Now this great branch, with all its arteries, belongs entirely to the lower surface of the scapula ; but the branch which leaves it at the neck of the scapula turns round under its lower edge, gets to the upper surface of the scapula, runs in under the infra-spinatus and teres major muscles, betwixt them and the bone ; and although the supra-scapular artery from the shoulder supplies chiefly the upper part of the scapula, yet it is chiefly above the spine that that artery circulates, while the lower parts of the infra-spinatus and the teres minor muscles are left to be supplied by this reflected branch of the subscapular artery : thus this reflected branch gives its arteries, first to the teres, then it enters into the hollow under the spine, and besides supplying the infra-spinatus and the bone itself, it also makes a circle, though a shorter one, and inosculates with the supra-scapularis, just as the other branch of this same artery does on its lower surface. This branch descends nearly to the corner of the scapula before it begins this inosculating circle ; but it sends also another chief branch round the neck of the scapula, which advancing towards the supra-scapular notch, inosculates very largely with the supra-scapular artery.

Thus is the scapula encircled, and supplied with a wonderful profusion of blood by two great arteries ; one, the SUPRA-SCAPULAR ARTERY, coming across the neck, over the shoulder,



and through the scapular notch ; another, the SUBSCAPULAR ARTERY, which comes from the axilla to the lower flat surface of the scapula, and divides at the edge of the scapula into two great branches ; one of which keeps still to the flat surface, while the other turns over the edge of the scapula, and supplies in part its upper or outer surface.

#### 6. ARTERIA CIRCUMFLEXA POSTERIOR.

THE POSTERIOR CIRCUMFLEX ARTERY is a very large one. It arises either along with, or immediately after, the great subscapular artery ; the place of it is of course settled by the place of the shoulder-joint, for it belongs so peculiarly to it that it is sometimes named the *Humeralis*, sometimes the *Articularis*, sometimes the *Reflexa Humeri*. It goes off between the subscapularis and *teres major* muscles ; it passes in between them to get to the joint ; it then turns round the shoulder-bone, accompanied by the circumflex nerves, just as the supra-scapular artery is accompanied by the supra-scapular nerve ; it ends, after having made nearly a perfect circle, upon the inner surface of the deltoid muscle.

Its branches are, first, Twigs to the nerve which accompanies it, and to the capsule of the shoulder-joint.—Secondly, Branches to the coraco-brachialis and short head of the biceps, and to the triceps, and a twig to that groove in which the tendon of the long head of the biceps lies.—Thirdly, It sends large branches to the subscapularis, to the long head of the triceps, &c.—And, lastly, The artery, far from being exhausted by these branches, goes round the bone, turns over the joint under the deltoid muscle, and ends in a great number of branches, still accompanied by branches of the nerve, which are distributed in part to the capsule, but chiefly to the lower surface of the deltoid muscle, where it lies upon the joint.

#### 7. ARTERIA CIRCUMFLEXA ANTERIOR.

THE ANTERIOR CIRCUMFLEX ARTERY, which goes round the fore part of the joint, bears no kind of proportion to that great artery which passes round the back. The anterior goes off from the same point nearly with the posterior, or sometimes arises from the posterior itself ; it takes a direction exactly opposite ; it keeps close to the shoulder-bone, passes under the heads of the coraco-brachialis and biceps ; encircles the head of the *os humeri* just at the root of the capsular ligament, and

goes round till it meets and inosculates with the posterior circumflex artery. I never could find those muscular branches which are said to go to the scapula, or have found them very trivial; the whole artery belongs to the bone and its parts; it encircles the root of the capsule with a sort of coronary artery; it gives twigs to the capsule, the periosteum and the tendons, which are implanted into the head of the bone; and having given twigs to the heads of the biceps and coraco-brachialis, it gives off its only remarkable branch, which is indeed regular and curious; it is a small branch which runs down along the bone in the groove in which the tendon of the biceps lies.



CONCERNING the axillary artery in general, there is more to be observed than this occasion will allow. But these things must not be passed over in total silence. In the first place, the artery, as it passes over the border of the chest, and after leaving the arch of the clavicle, is felt beating, and there only can it be compressed.

The compressing of the subclavian artery with a tourniquet or with the thumb, attracted at one time so much attention, and incited so many to speak about it, that it came to be thought important, and has been ever since esteemed practicable; and yet even those who have spoken the most confidently have taken the thing merely upon vague report, have neglected to read the proper books, have described the way of compressing as above the clavicle, not knowing that it should be done below it. Camper, in his "*Fabrica Brachii Humani*," first mentioned what he had demonstrated in his class, viz. that it could, by placing the thumb under the point of the coracoid process, so compress the axillary artery against the second rib where it lies upon it, that even the strength of a syringe could not push an injection through it.\* And those who learn

\* In cadaveribus plus semel in publico theatro monstravi, comprimi posse integram arteriam; ligabam arteriam aortam infra arcum, rescabam deinde axillarem dextram, ac siphone axillarii sinistræ adaptata fortiter aquam impellens, solo digito eo modo moderare potui subclaviam, ut ne gutta quidem efflueret: quod quanti momenti esse queat in amputatione humeri in articulo nemo non videt. In vulneribus sclopetariis, aliisque circa humeri articulum inflictis, sanguinis profusionem similiter compescere, si non penitus sistere possemus. Vid. *Camper*, lib. i. p. 15 — The plain reason why we are able thus to compress the artery in the dead subject is the want of resistance in all the muscles. If ever it be possible in the living body, it must be when the strength is low, and the circulation very languid, after the patient has fainted with loss of blood.

things by hearsay, have said that "the subclavian artery could be compressed by thrusting the thumb in above the clavicle;" although, in fact, the arch is so deep, the muscles so strong, and the artery so little exposed, that this is absolutely impossible.

From my speaking with a seeming interest about the preference of one of these two places to the other, it may be thought that I believe this piece of knowledge useful: quite the reverse! I know it to be dangerous; I know it to be less practicable than authors report and believe; and I repeat what I said on a former occasion, that "it is easy to stop the pulse of an artery, but quite another matter to stop the flow of blood through it." We thrust down our hands and compresses, and rest with our whole weight upon the artery; it seems stopped, because the pulse is stopped; but the first stroke of the knife shows us how far we are gone in a dangerous mistake. I may say, without breach of confidence, that I have seen one gentleman trust to it, who will never trouble himself about it again. He was a dexterous surgeon; and in a great aneurism of the axilla was deluged with blood at the first stroke of the knife, and saved his patient only by a plunge of the great needle.

Secondly, It is much to be lamented that we cannot really suppress the blood; not merely because it would make every wound less dangerous, but because it would greatly facilitate operations which we are called upon every day to perform.—Would it not be pleasant if we could cut the cancerous breast without the loss of blood? or search into the axilla with perfect deliberation, and cut diseased parts out with the knife, not tearing them in a brutal manner with our fingers? Yet still, by studying this piece of anatomy, the surgeon knows both from what source all the arteries which bleed upon the surface of the amputated breast come, viz. the long mammary artery; and also that in any very dangerous situation it would be easy to command all the bleeding orifices by one dip of the needle, the axilla being open. He also knows that the thoracica alaris and the short thoracic artery supply all the glands, and that these lurk too deep in the axilla to be secured otherwise than by a compress: so that these arteries are in fact opened by tearing with the fingers, and are stopped by thrusting in a sponge. He knows also how many large arteries there are, especially about the scapula, of which the bleeding must resemble that of the axillary artery itself; he will judge of the nature of the wound by the pulse; and he will act with great advantage in all doubtful cases by remembering these great arteries of the scapula, which either bleed outwardly

most furiously, or if they seem to stop, it is only by filling the axilla with blood.

Thirdly, The connection of the artery with the axillary nerves, though it must be more fully described in another place, must yet be observed here as a relation too important to be omitted. The artery passes along with the nerves through the interstice of the *scalenus* muscles ; the nerves, which consist of no less than seven pairs, make by their mutual connections a sort of net, which is called the plexus or the axillary nerves. This plexus has its meshes formed, not by small divisions, but chiefly by the seven great cords. This broad plexus lies over the artery as it comes out from the chest ; the artery perforates the plexus, or passes through one of the largest meshes in the cavity of the axilla ; and when we extend the arm, for example, to cut out an axillary gland, the great veins lie nearest the knife, or lowest in the axilla ; the plexus of nerves next ; and last of all the artery which has just perforated the plexus of these great nervous cords ; three nerves are below the artery and two above ; and when the arm is luxated, and the shoulder-bone pushed downwards, the head of it is so pressed against the net of nerves, and the artery is so compressed betwixt the head of the bone and the mesh of nerves, that I have very seldom failed to find the pulse almost entirely suppressed in luxations of this kind.

This connection, viz. with the nerves, is a very interesting one. It is plainly such that the artery cannot be hurt without a wound of the nerves ; it has never been known that the artery has been cut in the axilla without the arm being lamed by this wound of the nerves : also the nerves cannot be hurt without the artery being in danger ; but it does escape sometimes ; of which, among other examples, this is one of the most singular.—I have seen the artery escape in wounds when the nerves were hurt ; but how it could escape the stroke of a blockhead's needle in the following case, I am at a loss to conceive. A Woman came to me with a great string hanging in her axilla, and along with her came her surgeon. He had about three months before cut off her breast for a cancer, and moreover some glands from the axilla, from which there was a bleeding ; and of course, as his fingers could not go deep enough, he took a needle proportionably large, struck it down into the arm-pit, and tied all up. When he brought his patient to me, there hung from the arm-pit, not a surgical ligature, but a good large tape ; the axilla was a large gaping and terribly fetid ulcer ; I passed my finger into it, and felt the arteries beating around it, and the tape firm about some cord of nerves, whether one or more I could not tell ; the Woman's fingers were as



crooked as a bird's talon, and her arm hung by her side quite useless and lame. I made the surgeon feel the nerve with his finger, and offered to cut out the ligature safely ; but he carried away his patient, that he might, though at a long interval, finish the operation himself.

The breast had been long healed, and the cord acted as an issue in the axilla. How near the edges of this needle must have been to the great artery, it is terrible to think ; and it is most providential that such accidents do not happen daily, considering how much this crooked needle is used in deep places, where it is least fit to be used.

### III. OF THE BRACHIAL ARTERY.

THE brachial artery is that division of the artery which is marked by the tendon of the great pectoral muscle ; for as that is the fore border of the axilla, all above that is axillary, and all below it brachial artery, down to the bend of the arm, where it divides into the radial and ulnar arteries. The brachial artery runs close along the os humeri on its inner side, here the bone is most naked ; and this is the line in which we feel the artery beating, and apply the cushion of the tourniquet.

To describe, as some authors have done, each insignificant and nameless branch which this artery gives off, were to make a simple matter intricate beyond all enduring. The whole matter is this : As the artery goes downwards, lying exactly on the inner side of the arm bone, and directly in the middle betwixt the biceps on the fore part and the triceps behind, it gives frequent branches to each. Those going to the biceps are short, small, pretty regular, and exceedingly like each other all the way down the arm ; and they are thus frequent, and very short, in consequence of the artery adhering closer to the sides of the biceps. Not one of them can be distinguished, or is worth naming. Those which it sends downwards to the triceps are (in consequence of that being a large muscle, with several thick and fleshy origins) both longer and more tortuous, and more important ; and they accordingly have some of them appropriated names. Of these arteries going down towards the back part of the arm, and working their way among the muscles, three chiefly are to be observed. First, the *arteria profunda superior*, which goes round the back of the arm to the exterior muscles, and is often named the upper muscular artery. Secondly, another like it, called *arteria profunda inferior*, or the lower muscular artery.—Thirdly, the *ramus anastomoticus major*, which anastomoses

round the elbow with the branches of the ulnar artery. These three chiefly deserve notice.

### 1. ARTERIA PROFUNDA HUMERI SUPERIOR.

THOSE arteries, which in the limbs go deep among the fleshy parts, as in the arm or thigh, have always one of two names, either profunda or muscularis, and often both. The upper deep muscular artery of the arm is about the size of a crow-quill, or larger ; it goes off from the inner side of the brachial artery, just where the tendons of the latissimus dorsi and teres are inserted, and very often it arises from the great artery of the scapula, or that of the joint, viz. the sub-scapularis, or reflexa humeri.

The PROFUNDA turns downwards and backwards round the bone ; it glides in betwixt the first and second head of the triceps ; there it divides within the thick flesh of that muscle into two chief branches, or the two branches sometimes part immediately after their common origin, or sometimes they go off apart from the humeral artery. One of these, perforating the biceps muscle, turns quite round the bone ; and Monro the Father, who gave us the name of spiral nerve, named this also, very properly, the muscular spiral artery : so this artery also, as well as the supra-scapular and circumflex arteries, has its accompanying nerve. This long artery runs down the back and outside of the arm ; it descends quite to the outer condyle of the os humeri, and by branches round the olecranon, and over the outer condyle, it inosculates very freely with the radial artery.

The other branch of the profunda superior runs down the inner side of the arm, gives many branches to the triceps, and coraco brachialis ; gives a few also to the biceps and deltoid muscle : its longest branch, the proper termination of the artery, runs downwards till it touches the inner condyle, as the posterior branch does the outer condyle ; and this inner artery communicates with the outer branch round the olecranon, making small but frequent and beautiful inosculations ; and it also inosculates over the condyle with the reflected branch of the ulnar artery. In short, the profunda superior turns down towards the back part of the arm, buries itself under the triceps muscle, supplies all the flesh of the triceps, and divides in the heart of that muscle into two branches, both of which go down to the elbow-joint, and inosculate ; the one, round the outer condyle with the radial artery ; the other, round the inner condyle with the ulnar artery.

## 2. ARTERIA PROFUNDA HUMERI INFERIOR VEL MINOR.

THE LESSER PROFUNDA, or the lower muscular artery, is so named because it resembles the former in almost all points. It is smaller, being not half the size (viz. of a crow-quill), and goes off, in general, about two inches lower down the arm. Its course, also, is exactly similar, except in this, that it is single, does not divide into two branches; it gives twigs to the muscles of the arm; runs down to the inner condyle, and after touching it, makes a sudden and serpentine turn, by which it gets upon the back part of the elbow-joint. Its chief inosculation is with the upper profunda, and with the recurrent interossea upon the back part of the joint.

Between the upper and lower profunda there generally is sent off that artery which is to nourish the bone. It is named ARTERIA NUTRITIA HUMERI; but is not of sufficient importance to be numbered among the main branches of the artery. The nutritious artery sends off small branches, or rather small twigs, to the brachialis, or that muscle which lies under the biceps and to the triceps; and it perforates the bone about its middle in one larger artery, and sometimes there are also one or two smaller ones.

## 3. RAMUS ANASTOMOTICUS MAJOR.

THE GREATER ANASTOMOSING ARTERY is one of three or four which anastomose round the elbow-joint: for as the humeral artery advances towards the bend of the arm, it begins about three inches above it, to give off sideways, and almost at right angles with the trunk, three or four small arteries, more or fewer, according to the size of the arm. Each of these sends its little twigs round the condyle, to inosculate with the arteries of the fore-arm both radial and ulnar. Among these one is distinguished for its size and importance; it is one of the largest of these arteries, and thence named ANASTOMOTICUS MAGNUS; it arises from the Humeral artery about three inches above the joint; it lies close by the side of the brachialis internus, and gives many branches to it and to the triceps; but it is chiefly expended in three branches, one of which turns backwards, and running up the arm gives branches to the muscles, and inosculates with the profunda: another goes downwards towards the middle of the bend of the arm, and gives branches to the pronator teres and the flexor digitorum; and then going deeper, it touches the capsule, and makes a beauti-

ful inosculation over the forepart of the joint with the radial recurrent or inosculating artery: another branch, the most important, and the chief termination of the artery, runs down betwixt the olecranon and the condyle, in the hollow where the ulnar nerve lies. It first contributes to that net-work of inosculations which covers the back of the joint over the olecranon; it inosculates very freely with the *recurrens ulnaris*; and it is this inosculation, that gives the artery its importance and its name. This is the channel through which the blood goes after the operation for the aneurism, as we know from preparations; and I have several times felt for it, and found it after the operation, while the arm was still very small, having been wasted by the disease and by the suppuration.

I have not, in describing these arteries of the arm, once mentioned the name of collateral artery; for it is a name which must be entirely dropped, because it has been much abused. *Sabbatier*, *Murray*, *Haller*, and all the French and German anatomists, have named the *arteriæ profundæ COLLATERAL ARTERIES*; because they lie alongside of the great artery, running along with it down the arm. *Douglas*, and the English anatomists and surgeons, have called the three or four short anastomosing branches near the elbow the collateral arteries; because, though they run off at right angles or obliquely from the trunk, yet they run parallel with each other. Dropping this name, then, we find no more than three arteries in the arm of any note: the upper or greater profunda, with its own branches; the lower or lesser profunda; and the great anastomosing artery.



#### OF THE ARTERIES OF THE FORE-ARM, VIZ. OF THE RADIAL, ULNAR, AND INTEROSSEOUS ARTERY.

THE place and condition of this artery at the bend of the arm is as interesting as where it lies in the axilla: for while bleeding is allowed, or is practised by low and ignorant people, operations at this point must be more frequent than at any other, and must be easy or successful only in proportion as the artery and all its relations are well understood.

The humeral artery still continues an undivided trunk, much lower than the bend of the arm; though we are accustomed to name that as the place at which it divides. The whole arm, it must be remembered, is covered with a fascia,



and that fascia lies over the artery ; but at the bend of the arm there is a peculiar fascia, or at least the round tendon of the biceps so strengthens the general fascia, by sending a broad expansion obliquely across the bend of the arm (which fascia is fixed into the condyle and down the edge of the ulna,) that we call this expansion peculiarly the tendon of the biceps, and say that the artery is at the bend of the arm covered and protected by the tendon of the biceps muscle. The condition then of the artery is shortly this : it comes from the inside of the arm, inclining all along towards the middle of the bend or folding of the fore-arm ; there without any particular ring or aperture for its admission, it passes under the aponeurosis of the biceps muscle ; for the aponeurosis of the biceps and of the arm in general are one continued sheath. When thus lodged behind the tendon, it lies in a deep hollow betwixt the flexors and extensors of the arm, or, in other words, betwixt the muscles of the upper and of the lower edge ; the tendon of the biceps covers this triangular hollow ; the floor or bottom of it is the coronary process of the ulna and the forepart of the elbow-joint, and there the artery lies imbedded in cellular substance, encircled by those veins which accompany the artery particularly, and which are thence named *venæ comites* ; and it carries along with it a nerve in diameter equal to itself, and this nerve is named the great radial nerve.

The artery does not divide immediately even after it has thus passed the bend of the arm, but goes down deep among the flesh of the fore-arm, and there divides ; the ulnar artery being lodged under the thick flesh of the pronator and flexor sublimis muscles, and the radial artery under the strong fleshy belly of the flexor radialis and of the supinators, not absolutely within their substance, but under cover of their fleshy bellies, which swell out into a great thickness at this part of the arm. The only part of the artery which is exposed, the point which we feel beating is that where the single and undivided trunk first begins to pass under the thicker fascia of the biceps muscle ; and there the artery is pushed forwards, raised, and made to appear superficial by the projection of the coronoid process and brachialis muscle, or, properly speaking, by the protrusion of the forepart of the elbow-joint. This is just before it sinks into the triangular hollow betwixt the muscles.

This artery is singular in one kind of *lusus naturæ*, which never happens, nor any thing similar to it, in the lower extremity, viz. that the trunk of the artery forks into two great branches high in the arm ; sometimes in the axilla, but oftener in the middle of the arm, or opposite to the pectoral muscle : and I have constantly observed, when this happened, that the

radial artery was, as it were, the accidental branch, and passed across the arm near the bend of the elbow, so as to traverse the ulnar or main artery; and that the radial artery passes quite on the outside of the fascia, which binds down the ulnar or main branch of the artery.

This short description involves many points which the surgeon should think of, and more than can be touched upon in this place. The following consequences certainly follow from this arrangement of parts.

First, The artery lying thus deep under the biceps, cannot be hurt by any skilful surgeon, though bleeding the very vein under which it beats, and at the most critical point; it is hurt, as far as I have observed, only by the rudest stroke of very ignorant fellows; I have seen in six cases a wound in it little less than a quarter of an inch in length. In one of the operations I found it absolutely transfixed; the blood had been poured out from the orifice behind; I felt with surprise the artery running over the tumour, not under it; and having opened the sac, I passed a probe through the artery from side to side.

Secondly, Since the artery divides only after it has gone deep, where its great branches are protected by the muscles of the fore-arm, the trunk only is wounded in bleeding; the branch is never wounded; and we cannot but be surprised that Hunter, Haller, Sharp, and others, who ought to have studied this point, believed it to be sometimes at least wounded in one of its branches; nor can we think, without surprise, of the arteries being so little understood in the time of Dr. Monro the Father, that he is forced to argue the propriety of doing the operation of aneurism from this fact, "That though it were dangerous to trust to the common anastomosis round the elbow, yet it sometimes happens, that the two branches of the radial and ulnar are set off in the axilla." This surely must have been but a cold assurance to the surgeon in those days, viz. that he was to trust chiefly to the chance of a *lusus naturæ* for the success of one of his greatest operations.

Thirdly, It must follow, since the artery lies behind the fascia, and is wounded through it, that the blood being poured out behind the fascia, must raise it into a hard, firm, and (in time) inelastic tumour, growing every day firmer and harder. If surgeons will but think of this, they will go through their operation more correctly. It makes a point of vast importance in the description of aneurism; since it gives outwardly the true character, and inwardly the true shape and appearance of the tumour, when the operation is begun, the outward incision being performed. Had it been but attended to rightly, what

noise and wrangling might it not have saved about the nature and names of the disease (yet still the older surgeons knew and described this piece of anatomy, though they made but a poor use of it,) and what idle and stupid descriptions might it not have prevented, such as we have never seen in surgical books till now, of diffused aneurism, and the operation for diffused aneurism; when in truth the first stroke of the knife shows it to be a tumour very different from that which such names, and such formal divisions, and old-fashioned descriptions must convey? The cup of an aneurism is the triangular hollow which I have described, and the bag of the tumour is the extended fascia.

Fourthly, The course of this double artery tempts me to believe, that in those few cases where the blood of an aneurism was truly diffused, where it was an ecchymosis, where the blood was not confined by the fascia, but poured out under the skin, and driven upwards to the shoulder, and downwards to the fingers, giving the whole arm the appearance of mortification; that in such rare cases, there must have been a high division, and that the preternatural artery had been wounded, for it lies above the fascia, it is lodged in no hollow, such as might receive its blood, nor covered by any membrane which might confine it; but at all events, I am persuaded that Hunter is wrong in suspecting that, since the pulse so seldom returns instantly, this preternatural artery and the true one must be often tied together: for if the preternatural artery were wounded, it would be a very diffused aneurism, under the skin and above the fascia; but the main artery would be found in its place, under the fascia, quite safe; whereas, if the true artery were wounded, the tumour would be under the true fascia, the preternatural artery would cross by the side of the tumour, or over it, and the wounded artery being at the bottom of its own tumour, the two arteries would be six inches apart. Besides, the necessity of supposing this is not so strong as Hunter believed; I have seen the pulse return during the dressing of the arm, when the dissection was so wide and free that I am sure there could be no *lusus naturæ*, but one artery dividing in the common place.

Fifthly, The close connection of the artery with the great radial nerve must always be considered in all wounds at the bend of the arm; and especially it constitutes a difficulty in the operation of aneurism, of which authors of great eminence have spoken far too lightly; and surgeons of character have tied it in with their great ligatures, as if for amusement, or that they might see what would ensue. But, as I have said on another occasion, "a man must show me either some positive

necessity for doing this, or some positive good consequences which will result from it, before I admit him to argue about the bad effects which may ensue." Will any man persuade me, after the case which I have just related, that it is good or harmless to tie in the largest nerve of the arm? We see by that case, that the ligature's remaining firm in its place for three months is one of the least of the ill consequences, and the others may easily be conceived. Of these ill consequences I have seen more than I will venture to tell.



THE humeral artery having left this most critical point at the bending of the arm, divides into three great branches, the radial, ulnar, and interosseous arteries; at least the ulnar gives off the interosseous so soon, and the interosseous is so large, and has so pointed a destination, that I take the privilege of describing the three branches apart. The ULNAR ARTERY, which we must regard as the continuation of the main artery, makes its way through the thickest flesh of the fore-arm, goes along the ulnar edge of the arm, appears again from under the flesh, about three or four inches above the wrist; it goes down to the root of the little finger, and gives the chief arches in the palm of the hand, and all the arteries of the fingers, saving only the inner side of the fore finger. The radial artery goes off like a branch from the ulnar, or, in other words, the ulnar seems to continue in the course of the main artery, while the radial goes off to one side; it makes its appearance as a superficial artery much higher in the fore-arm than the ulnar does; its chief branch turns backwards over the wrist, or root of the thumb, and it gives all the arteries of the thumb and fore finger, as the ulnar does of the other fingers. The interosseous, again, is truly a branch from the ulnar; it comes off where the ulnar lies deepest; it runs along the interosseous membrane, whence its name; it belongs to the deep muscles of the arm; it scarcely passes the wrist, or at least mounts but a very little way along the back of the hand.

These are the greatest divisions of the artery; but before entering upon these, it will be well to set apart and describe one particular set of arteries, viz. the recurrents; both because they belong in a peculiar manner to the joint, and because the recurrents, from whichever of the great arteries they come, still serve the same office, viz. of inosculating with these from the above joint; though, after all, this part of their office at-



tracts our attention, chiefly because we depend upon these inosculations for our success in operations for aneurism, though unquestionably the chief use of these arteries is to supply the joint and adjacent parts ; and their inosculations are but a secondary office.

#### ARTERIÆ RECURRENTES.

THE recurrent arteries are small arteries corresponding with the anastomosing arteries from above. They turn quickly backwards almost as soon as they are clear of the main arteries from which they arise : they encircle the whole joint, for they are no less than four, or sometimes five, in number ; one from the radial, two from the ulnar, and one from the interosseous artery.

#### RECURRENS RADIALIS ANTERIOR.

THE ANTERIOR RECURRENT of the RADIAL artery is the first branch which it sends off, excepting a small branch to the supinator and skin. The place where the radial recurrent is to be found, is deep in the hollow betwixt the brachialis internus or muscle of the arm, and the extensor radialis or first muscle of the fore-arm, viz. that which constitutes its outer edge.—The recurrent lies upon the fore part of the joint, where the outer condyle is : the muscles which lie over this recurrent artery, or near it, are the two flexors of this wrist, the supinator longus, and the biceps, and these receive its first branches ; and one of its branches runs down along the tendon of the supinator. Its next branches go less regularly to the other muscles of the fore-arm, as to the pronator teres, and to the flexors of the fingers : it has one SUPERFICIAL ANASTOMOSING artery, whose anastomoses are not upon the naked joint ; but, on the contrary, the branch mounts along the fore part of the brachialis internus muscle, and inosculates under the biceps with the lesser or lower profunda. A second anastomosing branch goes deeper ; it passes through the flesh or belly of the brachialis, and anastomoses with the ramus anastomoticus major from above. A third anastomosing branch is the chief branch ; it lies deeper still upon the forepart of the joint, in the hollow which I have lately mentioned : it runs up under the belly of the supinator, along the fore part of the shoulder-bone, where it inosculates with the upper profunda humeri, and chiefly with its greater branch called spiral artery ; which turns round the bone, and ends here over the outer condyle.

This is the *recurrens anterior* of the radial artery ; but none of these branches have I ever seen or felt to be enlarged after operations for aneurism. The success of that operation depends entirely upon the arteries next to be described, viz. the ulnar recurrens, which are always two in number ; but sometimes these two recurrens go off in one branch from the ulnar : in which case, viz. of a single recurrent coming off from the ulnar, it divides immediately into two branches, and the one takes the fore and the other the back part of the joint.

#### RECURRENS ULNARIS ANTERIOR.

THE ANTERIOR RECURRENT of the ULNAR artery goes off the first of the branches, immediately before it gives off the interosseous, and where the artery lies deep in its triangular hollow. This anterior artery passes up under cover of the pronator teres, lies close upon the fore part of the inner condyle, and is of importance, not only by its own size, but also by its anastomosing with the ramus anastomoticus major, which is the largest of the arteries from above.

#### RECURRENS ULNARIS POSTERIOR.

THE POSTERIOR RECURRENT of the ULNAR artery is often a branch of the anterior one, coming off with it in one common trunk. When it comes off apart, it arises a little lower ; it is a larger and stronger artery, i. e. it makes as full inosculations, goes farther, and gives more branches to the muscles. This posterior recurrent arises from the ulnar at that place where it perforates the bellies of the flexor muscles ; it also dives through betwixt the two bellies of the flexor muscles of the fingers, it thus gets round the condyle, for these two muscles arise together, from the condyle : the artery gives many branches both to the pronator and flexor muscles, and to the periosteum, and capsule of the joint ; it then lodges itself in the deep hollow which is betwixt the olecranon and the condyle, where the ulnar nerve lies (that nerve which we feel so benumbed when we strike the inner side of the elbow.) The artery stretching upwards along the bone, meets a similar descending branch from the upper profunda, and inosculates with it. As far as we yet know, the whole weight of the business in saving the arm after aneurisms depends upon these two arteries. In Mr. White's preparation it is the anterior branch which is enlarged, inosculating with the anastomoticus major over the

fore part of the inner condyle. In a preparation which I have, it is the posterior artery which runs tortuous and enlarged behind the inner condyle : but I must add to the authenticity of this preparation, by noticing, that I have several times felt distinctly, after successful operations for the aneurism, that it was this posterior artery that was enlarged.

#### RECURRENS INTEROSSEA.

THE RECURRENT of the INTEROSSEOUS artery is the first of its branches, though sometimes this recurrent rises from the ulnar a little above the interosseous. This artery going to the middle and back part of the joint is very constant ; it first sends one smaller branch forwards towards the root of the brachialis internus muscle, which inosculates over the fore part of the joint with the ramus anastomoticus magnus, and with the ulnar and radial recurrens ; but these inosculations and this anterior branch are of small importance. The chief branch goes through that lacerated-like hole which is in the upper end of the interosseous ligament ; and the artery having passed through this hole, and got to the back of the joint, it runs for two inches upwards along the back of the olecranon, contributing greatly to form, by its inosculations with both branches of the profunda superior, that net-work of arteries which covers all the back part of the joint, and which belongs chiefly to the joint, to the capsule, and to the bones which form the joint.

From these anastomosing branches which belong to all the three arteries, we now return to describe the general course of the three great arteries ; and first of the radial.

#### ARTERIA RADIALIS.

THE RADIAL ARTERY is properly the first branch of the ulnar ; it goes off from it at a pretty obtuse angle in the bend of the arm : it passes under the pronator muscle, emerges from under it above the middle of the arm, follows the long tendon of the supinator, and runs under it down to the root of the thumb ; it is at the root of the thumb only that it divides into its great branches : and a clear proof that in its course down the fore-arm it gives off none but small and irregular muscular branches, is this, that it preserves almost an equal diameter in all its progress from the elbow to the wrist.

This is the artery which lies naked upon the radius at the wrist, where we feel the pulse. It lies more superficial, less

imbedded in muscles, than the ulnar artery ; for six inches above the wrist there is to be felt nothing but the naked artery, the sharp tendon of the supinator, and the bone. The radial artery, as to its course down towards the wrist, is direct ; but with regard to itself, it is tortuous, with short and gentle wavings. Of its branches, as it moves down the fore-arm, there is not one that is worthy to be named. First it gives a branch to the supinator, and to the extensors of the carpus ; then it gives the radial recurrent, already described ; then having gone a little deeper among the muscles, it repeats its branches to the supinator and extensors ; but being deep, it gives also twigs to the pronator and to the flexor radialis, in-osculating with the interosseous arteries. Next the radial artery, emerging from among the thickest of the muscles of the fore-arm, becomes superficial, touches the naked radius, and runs along it, with the belly of the flexor pollicis below it and the long tendon of the supinator above it. Here are no muscles lying on the outside of it, nothing but the tendon ; and therefore all its twigs are downwards to the flexor pollicis, upon which it lies ; the flexor digitorum, which lies next to that ; and to the flexor radialis and the palmaris longus. Next it gives deeper branches, viz. to the pronator quadratus ; and also it gives small twigs, which accompany the several tendons along the naked bone. Arrived at the wrist, it does not divide, as authors have represented, into two branches, viz. a palmar and a dorsal artery, but quite the reverse ; the radial artery passes on undivided to the root of the thumb, and there divides into three great branches ; one to the thumb, one to the fore-finger, and one to the palm of the hand : it does indeed, while it is passing the wrist, give two considerable branches, one to the palm, and one to the back of the hand ; yet they are but branches.

#### ARTERIA SUPERFICIALIS VOLÆ.

THE first branch, then, of the radial artery; after arriving at the wrist, is that which goes across the palm of the hand, and may be named the SUPERFICIAL artery of the PALM. It goes off just where the main artery is about to turn over to the back of the hand ; it passes in general through the flesh of the thumb, going under the root of ABDUCTOR BREVIS POLLICIS. This artery we generally find dividing into three branches : the first is a more superficial branch, which crosses the palm of the hand, and gives its twigs to the skin, palmar aponeurosis, annular ligament, and all the tendinous parts about the



joint : the second is a larger and more important branch ; it is the middle branch of these three ; it goes deep ; and having given several branches to the muscles about the root of the thumb, and to one or two of the interossei muscles, it makes a large inosculation with the great palmar arch, which seems to be indeed the chief tendency of the whole artery : the third branch is less regular than the others ; it mounts along the root of the thumb, and belongs to its outer edge.\*

The next branches of the radial artery are very small and nameless twigs, which go to the naked part of the wrist, to the tendons, ligaments, and the bones ; and then comes the artery opposite to this artery of the palm, viz. the artery of the back of the hand.

#### ARTERIA DORSALIS CARPI.

THE ARTERY of the BACK of the HAND comes off from the radial, just after it has turned over the root of the thumb. It takes its course directly across the back of the hand, over the carpal bones ; and by its frequent inosculations with branches from the ulnar artery, and with the interosseous arteries, it makes beautiful net-works across all the naked part of the back of the hand. After this beautiful net-work, it sends twigs forwards, which lie close upon the bones, go to the muscles which lie betwixt the bones. The muscles are named interossei, and these twigs are named after them.

The first interosseous artery is large, long, goes up in a direct course to the fork betwixt the fore and mid fingers, and plunges into the cleft of the digital artery at right angles with it. The dorsalis manus gives then a second twig like this, and then a third ; named the first, second, and third interosseous arteries : but they are all smaller than the first, and all the three communicate with the arteries from the palm.

Before the final division of the radial artery† into its three branches, it gives a third artery, or, as often happens, two arteries, to the back of the thumb.

\* This branch anatomists have thought fit to call *ARTERIA ULNARIA RADIALIS POLLICIS*, which involves such a complication of contradictions, that, upon reading it, one would naturally turn to the tables of errata. The artery is called radialis, because it comes from the radial artery ; and ulnaris pollicis, because it goes upon the ulnar side of the thumb.

† Notwithstanding the inconsistency of retaining the name of radial artery, after the artery has passed the wrist, and begun to run along the thumb, I venture to sacrifice verbal accuracy, and would make much greater sacrifices to obtain a clear arrangement.

## ARTERIA DORSALIS POLLICIS.

THE small artery, or the two small arteries which, from going along the back of the thumb, are named *arteriæ dorsalis pollicis*, come off either along with, or immediately after, the *dorsalis carpi*. When there are two, they run both along the back of the thumb, one on one side, the other on the opposite side; that which runs along the outer edge of the thumb passes through under the tendons, and is rather shorter: that which inclines to the inner side of the thumb is rather longer. These small arteries on the back inosculate round the edges of the thumb with the great artery on the inner side; which is next to be described.

The radial artery having advanced to the wrist, turns quick round the wrist, over the head of the radius, and under the tendons of the thumb; it gives immediately after that the little arteries for the back of the thumb; it then mounts along the thumb in that hollow which is by the side of the metacarpal bone of the thumb, till it arrives at the cleft betwixt the thumb and fore-finger. There it divides into three great arteries; one to the inner side of the thumb, very large; another to that side of the fore-finger which is next the thumb, which branch is much smaller; and one which exceeds these in importance, for it dives down into the palm of the hand, forms what is called the deep arch of the palm; and which, having crossed the palm, forms on the side next the middle finger that inosculature betwixt the upper and lower arches which is so much celebrated.

## ARTERIA RADIALIS INDICIS.

THE artery of the fore-finger proceeding from the radial artery is the first and smallest of these three branches. It goes off at the root of the metacarpal bone of the fore-finger, goes up along its interosseous muscle, and runs along all the edge of the fore-finger next the thumb, inosculating with the artery of the opposite edge, which comes from the ulnar arch; it sends off twigs at its root, which inosculate with the small dorsal arteries of the thumb; and it gives a branch to the *abductor indicis*.

## ARTERIA MAGNA POLLICIS.

THE CHIEF ARTERY of the THUMB rises along its metacarpal bone, a single artery, and there splits commonly, I think, into three smaller branches. Two of these run along the fore-part of the thumb up to its extremity, and inosculate there; the one running along the radial, the other along the ulnar side, till they meet at the point. These are, as it were, counterparts of the dorsal arteries, but greatly larger, the thumb being naked on the back, but fleshy where it looks towards the palm. Another branch of the arteria pollicis is one which turns across to the palm of the hand, and makes a smaller and more superficial inosculatation with the palmar arch.

## ARTERIA PALMARIS PROFUNDA.

THE third branch of the radial artery, and that by which it ends, immediately succeeds the artery of the thumb. It crosses the palm of the hand so as to form the deep arterial arch, or the radial arch of the palm; it lies under the aponeurosis, and all the tendons and muscles close upon the metacarpal bones. Having gone its circle so as to complete the arch, and having arrived at the root of the little finger, or rather lower, near the pisiform bone, it turns backwards with a sudden serpentine turn, and enters into the side of the ulnar arch, so as to make a complete inosculatation.

This deep palmar arch gives out many arteries; but as it lies close upon the bones, they are all of the smallest order of arteries, and go only to the bones, and to the joints, of the carpus and metacarpus. Those branches again which run upwards, give little arteries to the interossei muscles, to the lumbricales, to the long tendons, and to the interstice of each bone. Small twigs are sent through to the back of the hand, which are named arteriæ perforantes, and which inosculate with the dorsalis carpi, or artery of the back of the wrist; they also inosculate with the arteries of the fingers.



## ARTERIA ULNARIS.

THE ULNAR ARTERY, both from its size and its direction, is to be considered as the continued trunk. It dives downwards

and backwards into the triangular hollow which has been described, till it touches the interosseous membrane: it first gives off a small branch to the pronator teres and common origin of the flexor muscles, before it passes through them: sometimes it gives off here the recurrent, which should come from the interosseous artery: in which case that branch, as it passes backwards through the interosseous membrane, is named *interossea posterior suprema*. Next the ulnar gives off the proper interosseous artery, which is named *INTEROSSEA COMMUNIS*, because both the anterior and posterior arteries are branches of it. Then the ulnar artery, lodged deep under all the muscles which go off from the inner condyle, as the *palmaris*, *pronator teres*, *flexor ulnaris*, &c. perforates one of them, viz. the *flexor digitorum*. But though it passes through betwixt the upper and lower flexor, it does not, like the radial, appear immediately as a superficial artery; it shows itself only about three inches above the wrist. The ulnar artery, running along by the tendon of the *flexor carpi*, turns over the wrist at the pisiform bone; it then forms the superficial arch of the palmar arteries, and supplies all the fingers, as the radial supplies the thumb.

The arteries which the ulnar gives out after it passes through the muscles, and before it arrives at the wrist, are merely muscular branches, extremely variable in size and number. To enumerate these would be but to repeat the names of all the muscles which lie upon the flat part of the fore-arm.

As the radial sends a branch over the back of the hand, named *dorsalis radialis*, so does this send a branch round the back of the little finger named *dorsalis ulnaris*.

#### ARTERIA DORSALIS ULNARIS.

THE *DORSALIS MANUS ULNARIS* is a small branch which goes off from the ulnar artery as it advances towards the wrist. The ulnar artery goes forwards towards the pisiform bone, while this little artery turns off about two inches below, passes under the tendon of the *flexor ulnaris*, and round the head of the ulna, to the back of the hand; it then goes upwards along the back of the little finger, where it ends. It gives branches as it passes along to the *pronator quadratus*, to the *extensor ulnaris*, to the joints about the lower part of the wrist, and especially to the joining of the radius with the ulna; and it finishes on the back of the hand by arteries given to the tendons and capsule, by inosculations with the *rete* which is formed



upon the back of the wrist, by the radial artery, and by giving the dorsal artery of the little finger.

Next the ulnar artery, before it begins its arch, gives small branches to the flexor tendons and fore part of the wrist ; others to the pisiform bone, to the annular ligament, and to the palmaris cutaneus, and then branches to the flexor, abductor, and adductors of the little finger ; or, in other words, to all that mass of muscular flesh which surrounds the root of the little finger ; and still before it begins to bend into an arch, and just beyond the pisiform bone, it gives off that branch which may be called *ARTERIA PALMARIS PROFUNDA*.

#### *ARTERIA PALMARIS PROFUNDA.*

The description of this artery is shortly this : it is but a small artery ; it comes off a little lower than the pisiform bone ; it often gives the last lateral artery of the little finger ; it then turns downwards and backwards with a large circle, passes through betwixt the two heads of the flexor digiti minimi ; by this it gets into the deepest part of the palm, and there joins itself with that palmar branch of the radial artery which comes off at the root of the thumb ; and by this inosculation the deep palmar arch is completed.

The ulnar artery having now arrived at the root of the metacarpal bones, forms a great arterial arch across the palm of the hand, which is named the *SUPERFICIAL PALMAR ARCH* ; and this arch gives out the arteries for the fingers after the following order : it does not give off two arteries to each finger, one for each side, because it does not lie at the root of the fingers, but lower down : but instead of this it sends out three single arteries ; each of these goes to the cleft betwixt two of the fingers ; and when arrived at the roots of the fingers, these branches divide uniformly and regularly into two branches ; of which one goes up along the side of one finger, while the other goes up the opposite side of the next finger ; and thus all the fingers are supplied each with two arteries, one running along either edge of each finger. To number them according to the fingers, one, two, three, were mere drudgery, and waste of time ; and to name and describe them were an absolute abuse, since they are so uniform in all points : it is sufficient to observe, that a long and slender artery runs along each edge of each finger ; that generally at each joint or division of the finger the two arteries make arches to meet each other across the hollow where the tendons lie, supplying the tendons and ligaments at the same time ; and that the fork of each digital

artery receives a branch from the deeper arch of the palm.— That the arteries are each accompanied with corresponding nerves, one for each side of each finger ; for the ulnar nerve accompanies the ulnar artery down the fore-arm, and branches along with it in the palm into the form of an arch, with three branches ; which three branches are afterwards divided like the arteries, each into two twigs at the roots of the fingers.

The superficial palmar arch finishes with a small branch, which makes another inosculation at the root of the thumb with that superficial palmar branch which comes off from the artery of the thumb, near the place where the artery of the fore-finger also comes off.

#### ARTERIA INTEROSSEA.

THE INTEROSSEOUS ARTERY is, after the radial and ulnar, the last of the arteries of the fore-arm. It is but a branch of the ulnar ; it arises from the ulnar just where it lies in the very deepest part of the arm, touches the interosseous ligament.— This artery is named *INTEROSSEA COMMUNIS*, because of two lesser interosseous arteries into which it divides. First, the *interossea communis* divides about an inch below the elbow into the *interossea anterior* and *interossea posterior* : next, the *interossea posterior* gives off the posterior or interosseous recurrent. That artery is already described ; and I proceed to describe now the course of the two interosseous arteries.

First, The anterior interosseous artery is the continued trunk, for it goes straight forwards, and is larger ; while the posterior interosseous is smaller, turns out of the straight course to perforate the membrane, and is exhausted before it reaches the wrist.

The anterior interosseous artery lies flat upon the fore part of the interosseous membrane ; is larger than a crow-quill, or about half the diameter of the radial artery. As it goes down the fore-arm, it gives branches to all the muscles ; it gives the nutritious arteries of the radius and ulna ; it goes forwards, and, ending in small branches under the annular ligament of the wrist, it makes beautiful net-work and anastomoses over the capsular joints of the carpus.

Secondly, The posterior interosseous artery turns through the interosseous ligament about two inches below the elbow-joint. It instantly gives off the interosseous recurrent ; which being very large, the artery seems to be divided into two equal branches, of which one is the recurrent, turning upwards towards the elbow-joint ; the other is the posterior interosseous

itself, running downwards, and distributing its branches among all the great bellies of the extensor muscles which lie on the outside of the fore-arm.

Thirdly, There is something like a second interossea posterior; for the anterior interosseous artery sends off, about four inches above the wrist, another artery, but much smaller, which perforates the interosseous membrane; might be called a second posterior interosseous; though it is rather to be reckoned among those smaller twigs which, coming off from the anterior interosseous, and perforating the ligament, go through it to the extensor muscles, and are named PERFORATING ARTERIES, being from about four to seven in number.



### CHAP. III.

## THE ARTERIES OF THE THORAX, ABDOMEN, AND PELVIS.



### ARTERIES OF THE THORAX.



#### AORTA THORACICA.

THE aorta from the arch (where the subclavians and carotids go off) bends downwards and backwards, and touches the left side of the spine. The two membranes called pleura of the right and left side meet in the middle to form the mediastinum; but as they do not meet immediately, they leave a triangular space, the basis of which triangle is the spine; the sides are the two membranes of the pleura, inclining towards each other; and there, in the interstice betwixt them, the aorta is lodged, and along with it lies the œsophagus, which runs downwards towards the stomach. The thoracic duct,

which is passing upwards to the subclavian vein, and the vena azygos, which returns the blood of the thorax, and brings it into the descending cava ; these parts are all involved in cellular substance, and inclosed in this triangular space betwixt the two membranes.

The aorta, as it goes thus downwards beside the spine, gives the following branches : first, As it lies immediately behind the root of the lungs, it gives small arteries which nourish the proper substance of the lungs, the bronchial arteries : secondly, As it lies by the side of the œsophagus, it supplies it with small twigs, the œsophageal arteries : thirdly, The aorta, as it moves downwards through the thorax, gives off a small and regular artery to the interstice of each rib as it passes it ; and these are the INTERCOSTAL ARTERIES.

The BRONCHIAL arteries are always three, and sometimes four, in number. Their office is not to contribute to the oxydation of the blood ; that office belongs peculiarly to the pulmonary artery, while the small bronchial arteries are for nourishing the proper substance of the lungs ; for which end they attach themselves immediately to the trachea, and follow its branches, twisting round them through all the substance of the lungs.

#### 1. ARTERIA BRONCHIALIS COMMUNIS.

THE COMMON BRONCHIAL ARTERY, so named because it gives branches to both sides of the lungs, arises highest from the fore part of the aorta ; it gives two branches, one to the right side of the lungs, and one to the left ; the right branch gives an artery to the œsophagus, and sometimes the whole of the right branch goes to that part.

#### 2. ARTERIA BRONCHIALIS DEXTRA.

THE RIGHT BRONCHIAL ARTERY sometimes, like the common bronchial, comes off from the aorta ; but very often it comes off from the upper intercostal artery. It goes round the right branch of the trachea, and belongs to that side of the lungs alone : but it gives, notwithstanding, some branches to other parts, especially to the œsophagus, to the back of the pericardium, and to the posterior mediastinum, or membrane which strides across the aorta.



## 3. ARTERIA BRONCHIALIS SINISTRA.

THE LEFT BRONCHIAL ARTERY comes off along with the bronchialis communis from the fore part of the aorta ; it goes to the left side of the lungs, and also affords small branches to the œsophagus and neighbouring parts.

## 4. ARTERIA BRONCHIALIS INFERIOR.

OFTEN there is a fourth bronchial artery, which we would call BRONCHIALIS INFERIOR, or the LOWER BRONCHIAL ARTERY, because it comes off lower than these, commonly about the place of the fifth rib. It goes to the back of the heart, where the pulmonic vein of the left side expands into the auricle, and taking the pulmonic vein as a conductor, creeps backwards along it into the substance of the lungs.

These bronchial arteries are the least regular in all the body, coming off usually from the aorta, but sometimes from the mammary, and often from the upper intercostal artery ; sometimes also they arise from the intercostals of the aorta. But from one or other of these sources we usually have three or four bronchial arteries, which are so named from their belonging to the branches of the trachea or bronchiæ.

Ruysch, who first discovered this artery, and Sylvius de la Boe and others who followed Ruysch, and used his words in describing the artery, explained its office truly : they said it was for nourishing the substance of the lungs. But this sensible opinion was disputed by many physicians of very great reputation ; who maintained that it was quite disproportioned to the size of the lungs, and that it nourished the trachea only ; and they gave a most whimsical reason for believing all this. The lungs they considered as made of very coarse stuff, which the half elaborated blood of the right ventricle and pulmonic artery might serve ; while the harder and more perfect substance of the trachea required a more perfect and finer blood.

## 5. ARTERIÆ ŒSOPHAGÆ.

THE ŒSOPHAGAL ARTERIES are generally five or six in number. They are small twigs which come off from the aorta below the bronchial arteries ; they encircle the œsophagus, and make anastomoses with each other ; and very generally

they pass off from the œsophagus to the posterior mediastinum, or that double membrane under the interstice of which the aorta lies. These secondary arteries, along with very small twigs which come off from the aorta itself, some anatomists choose to describe apart under the title of posterior mediastinal arteries.

## 6. INTERCOSTALES INFERIORES.

THE LOWER INTERCOSTAL ARTERIES are nine or ten in number, according to the number of ribs which are not supplied by the upper intercostal artery (for the upper intercostal, which comes downwards from the subclavian artery, supplies usually the intercostal spaces of the two first ribs,) but sometimes of three, and sometimes of one only. The aorta, in its course down the back, gives out, as it passes each vertebra, one artery for each rib; as it goes down along the loins it still gives off an artery at the interval of each vertebra; in the thorax they are named INTERCOSTAL, and in the loins the LUMBAR arteries.

The right intercostals are longer, because they have to mount over the ridge of the vertebræ; the left ones are shorter, because the aorta lies on that side of the spine: the intercostals often give small twigs to the œsophagus and mediastinum; but besides these, each intercostal artery gives three principal branches.

1. By the head of each rib it gives a small artery, which belongs entirely to the spine, and this artery sends one twig to the substance of each vertebra; another twig goes to the sheath or dura mater of the spinal marrow; the third, following each intercostal nerve backwards, enters into the substance of the spinal marrow itself.

2. Each intercostal gives next a larger artery, which perforates near the head of each rib, and passes through to the back, and supplies the longissimus dorsi, latissimus dorsi, sacro-lumbalis, and all the great muscles of the back, which have indeed no other source whence they can derive arteries; and though these are apparently small for so great a mass of muscular flesh, that smallness is compensated for by their frequency.

3. The intercostal artery proceeds, after giving these branches, along its proper intercostal space, where it gives an immense number of small arteries to the intercostal muscles; and as each artery passes round the thorax along the ribs, it splits into two branches; one attaches itself to the lower edge

of the rib above it, where there is a sort of groove to receive it, that is, the larger artery, and the artery which is to be feared in wounds or operations; the other attaches itself to the upper sharp edge of the lower rib, where there is no groove; this of course is the smaller branch, much less important in all respects. These two accompanying each rib, run round the circle of the thorax to its fore part, and inosculate with the mammary and epigastric arteries.



## § 2. ARTERIES OF THE ABDOMEN.

### AORTA ABDOMINALIS.

THE aorta descends into the belly under that arch which is formed by the legs of the diaphragm. It passes along the left side of the spine; but now, upon emerging into the abdomen it inclines nearer to the middle of that ridge which is formed by the vertebræ. The flat and tendinous legs of the diaphragm not only stride over the aorta, so as to form an arch apparently for its protection; but the uppermost part of the crura turns flat under it, so as to embrace it. No vein goes along with the aorta; for the cava, which returns all its blood, leaves it a little above the pelvis, and inclines towards the right side, that it may enter into the right side of the heart, which it does by passing under the liver.

But the aorta has other very important connections; for as one of its first arteries is the great artery of the intestines, of course the root of the mesentery (the membrane which conducts the arteries of the intestines) lies over the aorta; and as the mesentery conducts the lacteals from the intestines, of course the meeting of the lacteals and of the lymphatics, or, in other words, the beginning of the thoracic duct, is at the side of the aorta. Again, as the great nerves which come down from the breast into the abdomen are destined chiefly for the viscera, they have no other way of reaching the viscera than by taking the direction of the several branches which the abdominal aorta gives out. There are three great branches; the celiac, the superior mesenteric, and the inferior mesenteric arteries. Of course there are three great plexus of nerves; the celiac plexus, the superior mesenteric plexus, and the inferior mesenteric plexus. As these net-works all come from

the greater net-work which covers the aorta itself, that plexus is named, from its great size and from its many radiated nerves, the solar plexus; and the semilunar form of the two great nerves which supply the whole, gives them the name of semilunar ganglions.

These connections of the aorta, deduced in this general way, will be easily understood; will show the importance of studying this point, where there are so many intricate parts; and will explain also the necessity of mentioning this group of difficult parts at once.

The aorta then passes from the thorax into the abdomen, through betwixt the legs of the diaphragm; the beginning of the thoracic duct lies a little below this point, and the duct itself runs up by the side of the aorta; the great Splanchnic nerve, or that which goes to the bowels, attaches itself as soon as it enters the abdomen to the side of the aorta, and swells out into the semilunar ganglion or knot: so that the semilunar ganglion of each Splanchnic nerve lies along each side of the aorta; the smaller nerves which the ganglions give out meet across the root of the abdominal aorta, to form the solar plexus; and next the cœliac and mesenteric plexus arise chiefly from that solar one.

The aorta, thus connected, having come out into the abdomen, the first branch which it gives off naturally is a small one to the diaphragm as it passes under it. The next branch which it gives off is the most important of all, viz. the cœliac artery; and it supplies the stomach, the liver, and the spleen, because they lie in the upper part of the abdomen. Next it gives a great artery to the intestines, which is named the superior mesenteric artery; for it goes to the intestines which lie within the abdomen. And, lastly, it gives off a great artery, which is named lower mesenteric; because it supplies chiefly the lower part of the great intestines, and most especially the rectum, where it goes down into the pelvis.

Then the aorta divides into the two iliac arteries, and of course has no longer the name of abdominal aorta.

#### ARTERIE PHRENICÆ.

THE diaphragm has in nine of ten bodies two arteries named the PHRENIC ARTERIES; one going to the right side, the other to the left. The varieties of this artery are too great almost to be mentioned; but, however, these are the chief: generally the phrenic arteries are two small arteries arising from the aorta, one going to the right side, another to the left; often



there is one artery going off from the fore part of the aorta, and dividing immediately into two arteries, right and left ; sometimes one arises from the aorta itself, another from the cœliac artery ; sometimes the cœliac artery, which has properly but three branches, has a fourth added, which is the phrenic artery ; sometimes there are three phrenic arteries, sometimes even four ; and the diaphragm, it is always to be remembered, receives often smaller branches from the intercostal and lumbar arteries, or from the capsular arteries, besides those which it gets from the thorax along with its nerve coming along the pericardium.

These varieties being mentioned, the history of the regular phrenic arteries may be very short. One goes round the right side of the diaphragm, and the other round the left, with very little variety. First the phrenic artery crosses what is called the fleshy part of the crus diaphragmatis of its own side, and goes bending along to what is called the ala or wing of the diaphragm, and gives a great many arteries in all directions into these fleshy sides of the diaphragm ; the artery then turns round, and encircles the great central tendon, where the two phrenic arteries begin to turn round : they give one branch particularly large to the fleshy sides of the diaphragm, which arise from the ribs ; then bending round the central tendon, they spread all their remaining branches forwards upon the central tendon, and upon that part of the muscle which arises from the sternum, and meet in large inosculations with each other. One branch often pierces the diaphragm, goes into the pericardium where it is attached to the diaphragm, and unites with that artery which comes down along with the phrenic nerve, the comes nervi phrenici.

But still it is to be remembered, that the phrenic arteries, before they enter into the diaphragm, give small arteries to the capsulæ renales, and to the œsophagus and neighbouring parts ; the œsophagean branch running upwards into the thorax, to inosculate with the upper arteries of the œsophagus.



### § 3. OF THE ARTERIES OF THE STOMACH, LIVER, AND SPLEEN.

THE upper part of the abdomen is occupied entirely by the stomach, liver, and spleen ; the stomach in the middle, the liver on the right hand, and the spleen on the left. The cœliac

artery supplies all these parts ; it rises up from the fore part of the aorta a short thick artery encircled by the lesser arch of the stomach ; and immediately splits into three branches, of which the middle branch goes to the stomach, the left goes to the spleen, the right goes to the liver ; and thus we have all the branches of the cœliac artery neatly and simply arranged.

#### ARTERIA CÆLIACA.

THE CÆLIAC ARTERY is so important, that its place and connections must be more minutely described. It arises from the fore part of the aorta, just at that place where the aorta is closely embraced by the crura diaphragmatis, and over the eleventh vertebra of the back ; it juts directly forwards, almost at right angles from the aorta, and is encircled by the lesser arch of the stomach ; the artery standing up betwixt it and the diaphragm. The cœliac trunk, then, is so placed as to be surrounded by these parts ; it has the œsophagus on the left hand ; the lobulus spigelii, or lobulus papillaris of the liver, on the right hand ; it has the lesser arch of the stomach making its turn under it ; and it has the diaphragm above, and the pancreas running across below ; it is covered by the delicate web of the omentum, named omentum minus, which goes from the lesser arch of the stomach to the liver and to the spine.

Now this short jutting out or stump we call the trunk of the cœliac artery ; or we call it axis arteriæ cœliacæ, for there is no other artery of the body that divides like it : the stump, which is less than half an inch in length, serving as an axis, from which the three great branches, viz. to the stomach, liver, and spleen, go off all at once, in a tripod-like form ; one upwards, one to the right, and one to the left. The hepatic, which goes to the right, is largest in the child, because of the great bulk of its liver ; the splenic, which goes to the left, is larger in the adult ; the gastric is almost always the smallest of the three.

#### 1. ARTERIA CORONARIA VENTRICULI.

THE CORONARY ARTERY of the STOMACH is the central artery of the tripod. When it belongs entirely to the stomach, it is smaller than the splenic or hepatic arteries : but when it gives (as often it does) a branch to the liver, it is the largest of the three. This gastric artery, or coronary artery of the stomach, is generally the smallest, not very much larger than a

crow-quill; it rises upwards, and turns a little towards the left side, because the pyloric orifice of the stomach is there.

Before it reaches the pyloric orifice of the stomach, it divides itself into two great branches; one going round the cardiac orifice of the stomach, and the other returning along the lesser arch.

#### CORONARIA SUPERIOR VENTRICULI.

THE branch which belongs to the cardiac orifice of the stomach attaches itself to the œsophagus, just where it emerges from the diaphragm, and is joined to the stomach: the artery turns round the œsophagus, passes first under and behind it, and then turns round and appears on the fore part, or rather on the left side, of the stomach, to spread over it. In the middle of this turn it gives off an artery which runs backwards along the œsophagus, takes directly the line of the œsophagus, runs up with it into the thorax a considerable way, inosculates with the upper œsophagean arteries, and though a small branch, it is long, and seldom wanting. The second branch is a continuation of the same artery encircling the cardia, sending its arteries down over the large and bulging part of the stomach, somewhat in the form of a crown. As the spleen is attached to this end of the stomach, this artery inosculates with what are called the vasa brevia, or short vessels coming from the spleen; and so it ends, having the name of CORONARIA SUPERIOR VENTRICULI.

The second branch of the coronary returns along the lesser arch of the stomach; it is so connected with the last that it may be called *ramus coronariæ dextra*, though properly it is not a branch, but the continued trunk of the gastric artery. As the first branch turns round behind the œsophagus, this stops and turns to the lesser arch of the stomach, touches it just at the cardiac orifice, *i. e.* at the root of the œsophagus; turns with a gentle turn round the lesser arch of the stomach, bending as the arch bends, giving its branches down both forwards and backwards over each side of the stomach. As it runs along the stomach it is sensibly exhausted by these arteries, so that it arrives very small at the lower or pyloric orifice of the stomach; there it turns over from the stomach upon the small gut in such a way as to belong to the pylorus or union of the gut with the stomach; and though small and trivial, it has an appropriated name, *ARTERIA PYLORICA SUPERIOR*, and thus the gastric artery ends.

But sometimes, as has been mentioned in the general de-

scription, the gastric artery sends a branch to the liver ; yet, in that case, the order of these arteries already enumerated, is in no degree disturbed ; the artery running along the œsophagus, the artery running round the cardia and in form of a crown, the artery returning along the lesser arch, are still the same ; only, after giving off this last artery, the trunk of the gastric goes off from the stomach, continues its course towards the liver, and passes into it.

## 2. ARTERIA HEPATICA.

THE HEPATIC ARTERY goes off from the celiac axis, where it almost touches the point of the spigelian lobe. The pancreas covers the root of the hepatic artery ; it then turns a little forwards, and rising somewhat upwards at the same time, it passes under the pylorus, *i. e.* under the stomach and duodenum ; it passes behind the omentum minus and biliary ducts ; it arrives at the porta where the great vena portæ enters the liver, and where the biliary ducts come out ; it passes betwixt the biliary ducts and the vein ; and having divided a little before into two great branches, these now enter into the right and left lobes of the liver. In this place it is inclosed along with all the other vessels in that sheath of cellular substance which is called the capsule of Glisson.

Thus the artery finally terminates near the liver in two great branches, right and left ; but before it does so, it gives, as it passes the stomach, duodenum, pancreas, very important branches to these parts. Before it gives these more important branches, it gives small twigs to the vena portæ and to the head of the pancreas ; then it gives off the great artery which is the source of these lesser arteries (to the pylorus, pancreas, and duodenum,) viz. the ARTERIA DUODENO-GASTRICA, which, soon after it goes off from the hepatic artery, divides into two chief branches. One turns backwards along the duodenum to the stomach, and from supplying the stomach and epiploon, is named GASTRO-EPIPLOIC ARTERY. The other, turning downwards along the duodenum, gives at the same time arteries to the pancreas, and so is named ARTERIA PANCREATICO-DUODENALIS. The trunk which divides into these two arteries may be described thus : the duodenum begins from the pylorus ; the pancreas pours its liquor into the duodenum ; and therefore the head of the pancreas is attached to the duodenum : this marks the point at which the trunk of the ARTERIA DUODENO-GASTRICA goes off ; for it rises at right angles from the hepatic : it lies behind the lower end of the stomach just



between the pylorus and pancreas ; there it splits into its two great branches, viz. to the duodenum and to the stomach.— But besides these two great branches there are subordinate arteries, which must be enumerated together with them.

One artery goes off to the upper and back part of the duodenum over the biliary ducts ; next go off small arteries to the duodenum of still less importance, and nameless ; and at the same place small twigs are often given to the pancreas.

The first which is distinguished or regular, or has a name, is the PYLORICA INFERIOR, the lower pyloric artery. It goes off from the PANCREATICO-DUODENALIS almost as soon as it touches the duodenum ; there are sometimes two or more pyloric arteries going off at this point ; they encircle the pylorus with delicate branches ; and at the same time turn obliquely upwards, to receive inosculation from the upper pyloric, which comes from the artery of the stomach.

The next artery to be distinguished by a peculiar name is one which goes off directly opposite to this, belongs to the pancreas, and is named, from its running transversely across the pancreas, the TRANSVERSE PANCREATIC ARTERY. It is a neat small branch, which passes under the pancreas, runs along its back part, gives its arteries into the substance of the pancreas from side to side ; and yet is not exhausted till it has run along more than two thirds of the length of this long gland.

The next branch is that from which the whole artery has its name : for the artery having given off the lower pyloric artery, and the transverse artery of the duodenum, turns downwards, bending according to the circle which the duodenum makes, lying in the hollow side of that circle just as other mesenteric arteries lie along their proper intestines. In all this circle it gives continual arteries outwards to the duodenum ; it gives also frequent arteries inwards to the pancreas. From these two connections this branch is peculiarly named ARTERIA PANCREATICO-DUODENALIS. It ends in inosculation with the mesenteric artery.

At the place where the pancreatico-duodenalis turns downwards, the other great branch turns backwards and upwards to reach the stomach. It is so great that it must be considered as the continuation and ultimate part of the artery. It goes to the stomach and epiploon, and thence is named gastro-epiploic artery.

The course of the gastro-epiploic artery is along the lower part of the stomach, and is most beautiful ; it makes a broad sweep round all the greater arch of the stomach ; it lies in that line where the great omentum comes off from the stomach ; it

sends many and large branches upwards upon the stomach, both on its fore and on its back surfaces; it sends opposite branches, very frequent and considerable, down into the web of the omentum or epiploon; it runs along the stomach till it meets with a similar branch from the splenic artery; and the inosculation between them is so large and perfect, that we cannot tell where the one artery ends or the other begins. This branch from the hepatic artery is named the right artery of the stomach, or the right GASTRO-EPIPLOIC ARTERY, while that from the splenic artery is the left.

Besides this great artery to the duodenum and stomach, the hepatic artery, before it plunges into the liver, gives another branch, but small; it is named pylorica superior hepatica,

#### PYLORICA SUPERIOR HEPATICA.

THE PYLORICA SUPERIOR HEPATICA is so named to distinguish it from that upper pyloric artery which comes down from the stomach, and sometimes it is called GASTRICA vel CORONARIA MINOR. It comes off from the hepatic just before it divides, or immediately after from the left hepatic. It turns backwards at an acute angle to the lesser arch of the stomach, and having given small twigs to the omentum minus, it goes directly to the pylorus, inosculating with its upper and lower arteries.

#### HEPATICA SINISTRA.

THE hepatic artery, now advanced to within about two inches of the liver, divides into its two great arteries. Both go to the porta of the liver; but the one belongs to the right lobe, the other belongs to the left. The artery which belongs to the left lobe of the liver is smaller, and when there is an hepatic artery from the stomach it is very small; it mounts over the vena portæ, and enters into the liver at the fossa umbilicalis; its branches within the liver go chiefly to the left lobe, lobulus spigelii, and anonymous lobe.

#### HEPATICA DEXTRA.

THE right branch of the hepatic artery passes under the biliary ducts, enters along with them into the right lobe of the

liver, and before it does so it gives off the *arteria cystica*, or artery of the gall-bladder, one of the most beautiful little arteries in the body. The cystic artery branches over the gall-bladder betwixt its coats, in the form of a coronary artery, and having made a beautiful tree of branches over the gall-bladder, it passes off from it, and goes to the substance of the liver.

#### ARTERIA SPLENICA.

THE SPLENIC ARTERY is one of the most remarkable in the human body. The spleen is tied down to the left side of the diaphragm by a proper ligament ; it is also connected with the greater or bulging end of the stomach by processes of the omentum and by vessels. The splenic artery, the largest branch of the *cœliac*, as large as a goose-quill, turns off from the *cœliac* trunk almost at right angles, and runs a foot in length across the abdomen to get to the spleen. It is in all this course exceedingly tortuous : it runs along the upper edge of the pancreas (which also lies across the abdomen,) and gives arteries to it ; when it approaches the spleen, it gives off that great artery which returns along the lower border of the stomach, and when it actually arrives at the spleen, it divides into a great many branches, which enter by the concave surface of the spleen, and plunge into its substance.

The branches then, of the splenic artery, are these ; 1. It gives a great artery to the pancreas named *PANCREATICA MAGNA*, which passes to the right under the pancreas, and belongs chiefly to the head of the pancreas, or that rounded end which is next to the duodenum. Though named *magna*, it is a variable artery, and of little importance. 2. All along, as the splenic artery is passing to the left by the border of the pancreas, it sends short branches into it. They are named *PANCREATICÆ PARVÆ*, or small *PANCREATIC* ARTERIES. 3. It often sends small arteries upwards to the back part of the stomach named *POSTERIOR GASTRIC* ARTERIES. 4. The *GASTRO-EPIPLOICA SINISTRA*, or the left gastro-epiploic artery, is a very large and principal branch of the splenic artery. It arises under the stomach a little beyond the left or larger head of the pancreas ; it makes a large arch, and then turns with a serpentine turn towards the stomach, returns along the lower border of the stomach within the doubling of the omentum, and gives its arteries upwards to the stomach and downwards upon the omentum, so much like those of the right gastro-epiploic artery, that when they meet in the middle of the great

arch of the stomach, and inosculate, we cannot distinguish where either of them ends ; the chief difference is, that some of the epiploic branches of this artery are particularly large.—

5. The *VASA BREVIA* are a set of three or four arteries which the splenic gives off just before it enters into the spleen ; and as the artery lies close to the stomach, these arteries which go to the great bulging of the stomach are exceedingly short, and are thence named *vasa brevia*. The artery ends by eight or ten branches, which plunge into its substance. Sometimes we see the artery pass, almost undivided, or divided into one or two branches only, into the bosom or sinus of the spleen.

These are all the arteries of the stomach, liver, and spleen, the viscera which fill the upper region of the abdomen.



## OF THE ARTERIES OF THE INTESTINES.

### OF THE UPPER AND LOWER MESENTERIC ARTERIES.

THE bowels are so disposed within the abdomen, that the largest of them, viz. the colon, the great intestine, encircles all the others. It begins on the right side in a blind sac called the *caput coli*, or head of the colon : it goes upwards, and crosses the belly, so as to support the stomach, and separate the stomach, liver, and spleen, from the small intestines : it descends again into the pelvis at the left side, forming the rectum ; and all the small intestines hang by their mesentery in the central part of the abdomen, surrounded by this great intestine ; and the arteries lie within the two lamellæ of the mesentery or supporting membrane of the intestines, so that they are called mesenteric arteries ; and they follow the intestines in the order in which I have named them.

The *GREAT OR SUPERIOR MESENTERIC ARTERY* gives its first branches to the *caput coli* ; its next branch to the middle of the colon under the stomach ; the thousand turns of the small intestines next absorb all its other branches. The *LOWER MESENTERIC ARTERY* which gives no branches to the small intestines, attaches itself to the left side, and especially to the lowest part of the colon, and goes down with the rectum into the pelvis, and ends there. This, then, may serve as a general plan or arrangement for the intestines and for the two mesenteric arteries.



## 1. MESENTERICA SUPERIOR.

IT is not surprising that the UPPER MESENTERIC is the largest of all the abdominal arteries. It arises from the aorta, where it is still betwixt the legs of the diaphragm, and not more than half an inch below the cœliac artery. The cœliac and mesenteric arteries lie close upon each other; only we are less sensible of their nearness by the axis cœliacæ jutting perpendicularly forwards, and by the trunk of the mesenteric running very obliquely downwards, and by the head of the pancreas lying immediately over the mesenteric and hiding its root. The trunk of the mesenteric artery passes under the pancreas, then through the mesocolon or mesentery of the colon, then into the proper mesentery of the small intestines. It turns first to the left; and then, by a second gentle bending, it turns again towards the right side of the abdomen. It runs very low into the abdomen before it gives out any branches; and then it gives them off in the following order.

From the right side it gives branches to the great intestines, of which there are three chief arteries; but from the left side, where it gives arteries to the small intestines, it gives innumerable branches, very large, and so inosculated with each other, that they form a sort of mesh or immense plexus in the mesentery before they go onwards to the guts. The undivided trunk of the artery is very large and long; the gentle curvature of it from left to right gives it the form of an Italic *f*; the prodigious size of that mesh or plexus of vessels which goes to the great intestines is such as to carry the artery down to the left ilium or flank where the caput coli or conjunction of the ilium with the colon lies.

It is from the convex of this gently bending arch, and from the right or outer side of the artery, that the following arteries to the great intestines go off.\* The COLICA MEDIA to the middle of the great intestine, the COLICA DEXTRA to the right side of the great intestine, the ILEO-COLICA to the joining of the ilium with the caput coli or beginning of the great intestine.

## COLICA MEDIA.

1. THE MIDDLE COLIC ARTERY passes along in the doubling *i. e.* betwixt the two lamellæ of the mesocolon. It goes

\* Often before giving off its greater arteries, the mesenteric gives to the pancreas several small arteries; and to the duodenum two or three, which are sometimes named under the title of the duodenales inferiores.

with a circular sweep upwards towards that part or corner (as we may call it) of the colon which lurks under the liver : but before it touches the intestine, and generally at the distance of about three or four inches from it, this artery divides into two great branches ; one turning backwards, along the right side of the colon, inosculates with the colic arteries ; the other, more like the continued trunk, turns upwards, bending according to the curvature of the arch of the colon, which supports the stomach ; and having rounded the concave of this arch, and arrived at the left side, it there makes a great inosculature with the left colic artery, which is a chief branch of the lower mesenteric ; and so completes the great mesenteric arch, one of the most celebrated inosculations in the whole body, that of the circle of Willis hardly excepted.

#### COLICA DEXTRA.

2. THE RIGHT COLIC ARTERY is enumerated as a distinct artery, chiefly for the sake of plainness ; for though sometimes it arises apart from the general mesenteric trunk, yet in ninety-nine of one hundred bodies it proceeds from the upper or middle colic artery. It is a very large branch ; it is set off from the colica media at a very acute angle ; it moves along the right side of the colon, inclining also a little upwards towards the liver ; it also splits when it approaches the gut into two branches ; one turning towards the upper side to inosculate with the middle colic artery, the other turning downwards towards the ilium or flank to inosculate with the ileo-colic artery.

#### ARTERIA ILEO-COLICA.

3. THE ILEO COLIC ARTERY arises about an inch lower than the last. It is a long, small, and slender artery compared with the two last ; which are short, stumpy, and with contorted angles. This artery goes to the place where the small intestines end, and the great ones begin ; of course the membrane which holds the intestines at this corner (I mean in the right haunch) changes its name from MEZZO-COLON (in the middle of the colon) to mesentery, or MEZZO-ENTERON, (in the middle of the intestines) ; and of course the ileo-colic artery runs down, not along the mesocolon, but along the mesentery. It goes directly down towards the joining of the ilium with the colon ; it ends in three regular branches ; one passes straight onwards to the junction of the ilium and colon, splits

into two branches, one going over the fore and the other over the back part of the caput coli, and having a very curious correspondence with the valve within, so that it might be called *ARTERIA VALVULÆ COLI*. While this branch goes straight forwards over both sides of the caput coli, another branch runs backwards along the colon, and inosculates with the right colic artery, and another runs downwards along the ilium, and inosculates with the common branches of the mesenteric artery. It is from these two branches, which diverge like the rest of the colic arteries, that this is called *ILEO-COLICA*. Even the appendix vermiformis has its little mesentery tying it down to the caput coli, and from the back of the caput coli a little artery runs down upon that mesentery to the appendix, passing along the whole length of that process.

From this point all the remaining arteries of the *mesenterica superior* go to the small intestines ; and they are so undistinguished, and so prodigiously numerous, that no branches can be described or named ; there is nothing but a great network of arteries to describe. The first or radical branches which go to the small intestines, are thick, large, short, and vary from twelve to fifteen or twenty in number. But it is not these that make this vast appearance of a net-work ; these twelve branches are first joined to each other, as it were mouth to mouth, forming one great confluence of arterial arches : from these, secondary branches arise, and they unite again in like manner, and make a second row of arches ; from the union of these still other arteries arise, and make a third, or fourth, and even a fifth, row of arches, before any arteries go to the intestines ; till at last the proper arteries of the intestines go out in straight lines from the last arch, and spread upon the coats of the intestines. In short, the mesentery has a very intricate and matted appearance ; from the redoubling of these arches, which are more and more numerous as the artery proceeds lower, till the last of the twelve radical branches makes an arch, which serves the ilium or lowest of the small intestines, and inosculates with the *ILEO-COLIC ARTERY*.

## 2. MESENTERICA INFERIOR.

THE LOWER MESENTERIC ARTERY is that which is named by Haller the left colic artery, because it goes only to the left side of the colon. It arises from the fore part of the aorta, below the two emulgent arteries, *z. e.* pretty low down. It goes off rather from the left side of the aorta ; it goes off very obliquely, and keeps close to the left side of the aorta for a great

way ; and when it has descended as low as the bifurcation of the aorta ; it gives off its great branch to the left side of the colon, viz. the LEFT COLIC ARTERY ; and then turning down over the iliac artery of the left side, it descends into the pelvis, along with the rectum, and ends there.

1. Its first branch is the ARTERIA COLICA SINISTRA. The lower mesenteric has run a considerable length, has passed as low as the bifurcation of the aorta, before this branch is given off. This artery soon divides into three large branches ; the trunk itself is short and stumpy, the branches go off like those of the other side, at very acute angles : first, One branch ascends towards the angle of the colon, under which the spleen lies, and there divides itself into two branches ; one keeping closer to the intestine, nourishes it ; the other keeping more to the middle of the mesocolon, or broad membrane of the colon, meets the branch of the upper mesenteric, and completes with it the mesenteric arch, being indeed the larger and more important artery of the two. Secondly, Another branch goes directly across to the right side of the colon, and when it approaches the gut splits, as usual with the colic arteries, into two lesser branches, one turning upwards and the other downwards. Thirdly, The third branch of this left colic artery goes obliquely downwards to that part of the gut which lies in the hollow of the left haunch-bone, and which forms the turn named sigmoid flexure of the colon ; and the membrane of the colon is here so fast braced down to the loins that this artery gives twigs to the loins inosculating with the lumbar arteries.

## 2. ARTERIÆ HÆMORRHOIDALES.

THE INTERNAL HÆMORRHOIDAL ARTERY is one of immense size ; it is just the trunk of the lower mesenteric artery descending into the pelvis ; it is often as large as a writing quill ; it applies itself closely to the back part of the rectum ; it arrives at it by turning in obliquely over the pelvis, and under the rectum, and passes down its whole length quite to the anus. It encircles the rectum completely on each side with its large branches, which meet again upon the fore part of the gut, and its branches lower down in the pelvis inosculate with the middle hemorrhoidal artery, and sometimes with those of the bladder and womb. This is the artery which prevents us from operating when a fistula in ano has gone deep by the back of the rectum : and which has given occasion to the establishing of something like a general rule in surgery, that one should not



operate when the fistula is more than two or three inches deep. It is the last of the arteries belonging to the loose and floating viscera.



### Of the ARTERIES of the FIXED VISCERA of the ABDOMEN.

THE fixed viscera are, the capsulæ renales ; the kidneys ; the fat ; and the testicles, which in the child lie within the abdomen. Of the arteries belonging to these parts, those of the kidney and testicle are the only regular ones.

#### ARTERIÆ CAPSULARES.

THE capsulæ atrabiliaræ are two small bodies of a triangular form, of thick walls and small cavities, filled in general with a black and bilious-looking liquor. The ancients thought this the atrabilis, and named them the capsulæ atrabiliaræ : the moderns, from seeing them placed immediately above the kidney, and observing no apparent connection but with that gland, have named them capsulæ renales. They lie then above the kidney, are like the kidney surrounded with fat, have straggling arteries from various sources, but none regular nor important.

First, They have very generally some small branches from the phrenic arteries. These are the highest of the capsular arteries ; they touch the uppermost point of this glandular-like but unknown body. They are named the upper CAPSULAR ARTERIES. Secondly, They often have small arteries from the aorta peculiar to themselves, which come off about the root of the upper mesenteric artery, go to the fat and glands, and play over the vena cava (at least those of the right side do,) and go to the middle parts of the gland, whence they are named CAPSULARES MEDIÆ. Thirdly, they have their last arteries sent upwards to them from the emulgent artery, or artery of the kidney. They are named the lower CAPSULAR ARTERIES.

#### ARTERIÆ RENALES.

THE two RENAL or EMULGENT ARTERIES, the two arteries of the kidneys, go off from the sides of the aorta, midway be-

twixt the upper and lower mesenteric arteries. Each goes to its kidney almost at a right angle, arching a little over the bulging belly of the *psoas* muscle. The aorta is still a little inclined to the left side, and so the left emulgent is shorter, and mounts over its accompanying vein; while the right kidney, being further off from the aorta, and somewhat lower, on account of the liver being on that side, the right artery is longer, and is covered by its emulgent vein. When the emulgent artery, which is short and very thick, arrives at the concave edge of the kidney, it is divided into three or four large branches, which surround the pelvis, or beginning of the ureter; plunge into the substance of the kidney, and inosculate and make arches with each other. Then they, in supplying the kidney within its substance, form circles and arches over the roots of the *papillæ uriniferæ*, or secreting parts of the kidney, the vessels being thus distinct from the glandular part; the vascular part, being outermost, is called cortical; the secreting, being innermost, is named the tubular part.

Before the emulgent arteries enter into the substance of the kidney to be thus distributed, they usually give off small arteries, as has been already mentioned, to the lower part of the *capsula renalis*, to the upper part of the ureter, and to the fat surrounding the kidney.

#### ARTERIA SPERMATICA.

THE SPERMATIC ARTERY, or artery of the testicle, is one of the most singular, both for its extreme smallness and great length, and for its important office. It arises on each side from the lateral parts of the aorta, a little above the lower mesenteric artery. The left spermatic artery rises somewhat higher, and often comes from the emulgent artery; it descends from the aorta almost in the same line with itself; it crosses the *vena cava*, and meets its accompanying vein upon the surface of the *psoas* muscle: it then forms the spermatic chord, and passes out through the abdominal ring; before it goes down into the testicle, it gives out many very small twigs. First, It gives small twigs to the fat of the kidneys; secondly, It gives small branches to the ureters; thirdly, Small twigs to the peritoneum; and lastly, Small twigs to nourish the spermatic chord itself. When it has passed through the ring, it soon after divides into many small arteries for the several parts of the testicle, four or five in number; two of which go to the *epididymis*, and two others, particularly large, go to the testicle; the largest of these branches turns round

the testicle in a beautiful and serpentine form, waving along the upper part of the testicle, viz. just under the epididymis, and sending beautiful coronary branches downwards all over the semicircle or convex surface of the testes.

These are the chief arteries, viz. those of the kidney and testicle. Those of the renal capsule I hold to be so irregular, that they hardly deserve the short description which I have given of them. The following classes of small and irregular arteries are equally insignificant; for few authors have been at the pains to enumerate the arteries going to the fat of the kidney; and none (except Murray) have been at the pains to gather together into one class or description the trifling arteries of the ureter.

#### ARTERIE ADIPOSEE.

THE ARTERIES of the FAT of the kidney are extremely small but numerous. The upper arteries come from the capsule and diaphragmatic arteries which are above the kidney; the middle arteries of the fat come from the renal artery itself, from the spermatic or even from the aorta; the lower arteries come from the colic arteries, and one from the spermatic, which comes off below the kidney, and turns up towards its lower end.

#### ARTERIE URETERICEE.

THE ARTERIES of the URETER, as it is a long canal, come off from various parts which it passes. Its upper arteries are from the renal artery itself, before it enters the kidney: and also from the capsulars and spermatics. The middle arteries of the ureter are more particular and more important: they arise either from the aorta itself, or from the iliac artery, where the ureter crosses it: and they run far, both upwards and downwards, along the canal. The lowest arteries of the ureter arise from those of the bladder itself.

#### ARTERIE LUMBARES.

THE LUMBAR ARTERIES are those which succeed to the intercostal arteries, and which run parallel with them; performing the same office in the loins which the intercostals do in the thorax, viz. nourishing the spine and muscles.

The lumbar arteries arise from the sides of the abdominal aorta. The first arteries go off at right angles; the lower ones are a little inclined downwards. The right ones are longer, because they have to rise over the spine. The arteries of both sides, as soon as they have left the spine, sink under the psoas muscle, and go onwards behind it, round the side, till they terminate in the lateral muscles of the abdomen. The uppermost lumbar artery is large; and as it runs along the lowest rib but one, it of course gives arteries both to the transverse or innermost muscle of the belly, and also to the diaphragm, which indigitates with it in consequence of their both taking their origin from the same ribs. The two lower lumbar arteries are small, and begin to inosculate with the lesser arteries about the top of the pelvis.

Each lumbar artery gives out like each intercostal two chief arteries: 1. One which goes to the spine, and which, splitting into two, gives a larger twig to the vertebra itself; and a smaller one, which enters the sheath, traces the nerve backwards, and passes into the spinal marrow. 2. A muscular branch, which is also divided; for one branch of it supplies the psoas muscle, and then runs round within the muscles of the abdomen; while the other pierces the back, and supplies the sacro-lumbalis, longissimus dorsi, and other muscles of the loins.



## ARTERIES OF THE PELVIS.

THE aorta divides into two great arteries, named iliac from their beginning in the loins. The two iliac arteries move downwards to the brim of the pelvis, where they meet the veins of the lower extremity ascending to form the cava, and also a vast plexus of lymphatics from the legs and pelvis, which twist round the arteries and veins. The two iliac veins lie upon the inner sides of the two arteries; and since these veins meet on the right side of the aorta to form the cava, of course the right iliac crosses the trunk of the cava. This bifurcation of the aorta is much higher than the pelvis; it begins upon the fourth vertebra of the loins, so that the abdominal aorta is in truth extremely short, and the iliac arteries go off at such an angle, that they diverge very gradually; so that when they arrive at the top of the pelvis, they are just over the joining of the haunch-bone with the sacrum: and it is but a very little below



again that they divide into their two great branches ; the one named the external iliac, which passes straight forwards into the thigh ; the other, the internal iliac, which dives immediately down into the pelvis to supply the internal parts ; and this is the artery which must be first described.

#### ARTERIA SACRA MEDIA.

THIS bifurcation of the aorta gives off just one artery, which proceeds exactly from the fork ; and being in the middle, it is a single or azygous artery, which has not a fellow. It is small, long, very regular, and passes down so correctly in the middle of the bone, that it is named the MIDDLE SACRAL ARTERY. It is about the size of a crow-quill ; passes directly over the middle of that projecting point which is named the promontory of the sacrum ; it descends expressly in the middle of the bone, quite to the point of the os coccygis. At the place of each vertebra (for the sacrum consists of vertebræ now united together,) it gives off cross branches, which go across the body of the sacrum to inosculate with the lateral sacral arteries. Besides these, it gives arteries to the substance of the bone, and not unfrequently small arteries to the rectum. This artery ends near the point of the os coccygis in a forked or double inosculatation with the lateral sacral arteries of each side.

#### ILIACA INTERNA.

THE INTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY is of vast size ; it not only supplies all the parts within the pelvis, but sends out by the several openings of the pelvis those great arteries which supply both the private parts, and the immense mass of muscle which surrounds the haunch. Thence the necessity and the usefulness of arranging them under two classes : first, of the lesser arteries which go to parts within the pelvis, as to the loins, to the sacrum, to the bladder, and to the womb ; and secondly, those infinitely larger arteries which go out through the several openings of the pelvis, and go to the hips, the haunch, and the private parts.

This artery we cannot describe in the adult, without attending to its condition and function in the child ; for it is that indeed which gives it the peculiar form which we have to describe ; and which especially gives it that arch downwards, from the convexity of which all the great branches go off.

For in the child, the internal iliac or hypogastric artery is extremely large: first it turns down into the pelvis with a large circle; then it goes close to the side of the bladder very low into the pelvis; then it begins to rise again by the side of the bladder, out of the pelvis, and going along by the urachus (which is a tube or ligament rather leading upwards from the bottom of the bladder,) it goes out by the navel, forming the umbilical artery. Now this sudden turn by the side of the bladder makes the artery convex downwards, i. e. towards the parts which it has to supply. The artery keeps this same form in the adult; both in the child and in the adult all the great branches come off from the back of this arch.

---

### ORDER FIRST.

THE branches of the hypogastric or internal iliac artery, which remain within the pelvis.

#### 1. ILEO-LUMBALIS.

THIS artery is so named, because it so resembles the lumbar arteries that it might be mistaken for the last of them; and because it belongs equally to the haunch-bone and to the loins. It goes off from the outer side of the iliac artery, about an inch below the bifurcation; it is about the size of the lumbar arteries, or a little larger; it turns in behind the iliac artery, and passes under the psoas muscle; its trunk is short, for it splits immediately into its iliac and lumbar branches. The lumbar branch goes off betwixt the last vertebra of the loins and the inner end of the ilium, and goes directly upwards; it gives its branches about the psoas muscle. The iliac branch setting off from the same point, runs straight outwards, lodges itself under the edge or crista ilii, and supplies the iliacus internus muscle by a superficial branch; and it nourishes the bone by a deeper branch, which lies close in the hollow of the haunch.

#### 2. ARTERIÆ SACRÆ LATERALES.

THE LATERAL ARTERIES of the SACRUM are very generally three or four in number. Sometimes we find one general ar-

tery coming off from the iliac, or from the ileo-lumbar artery, running down all the side of the sacrum, and giving off the lateral sacral arteries ; but much more frequently we find three distinct arteries coming off from the sides of the iliac artery, which run across the sacrum in the following manner, to inosculate with the middle sacral artery : first, each lateral sacral artery has one large branch, which runs along the fore part of the sacrum, runs along the naked bone, and inosculates with the middle sacral artery : secondly, another branch, still larger, dives into each of the sacral holes, which not only nourishes the nerves, and the sheath of cauda equina, and the bone itself by one branch, but penetrates by another branch through the posterior sacral hole, and supplies the periosteum, the great ligaments which join the ilium to the sacrum, and the root also of the sacro-lumbalis, and glutæal muscles. From these two branches (viz. to the spine and to the posterior muscles,) and from the regularity of these five arteries (going from some artery or other into each sacral hole,) they may be resembled to the intercostal and lumbar arteries, to whose office and plan they have succeeded.

#### ARTERIA HYPOGASTRICA.

THE HYPOGASTRIC ARTERY is the umbilical artery, of great size and importance in the child ; and even in the adult it still remains, in this sense at least, that though the fore part of it (where it turns up by the side of the bladder) is closed, even that part is still known by a round ligamentous substance, into which it is converted, which we easily trace up to the navel, where the artery meets its fellow of the other side.

This artery is even in the adult body pervious down to the side of the bladder, where in Man it gives one long and slender artery, sometimes two, which go to the sides of the bladder ; and in Women, small arteries to the womb, sometimes to the rectum ; but these branches are quite irregular in number and size.

#### ARTERIÆ VESICALES.

THE ARTERIES of the BLADDER are extremely irregular both in number and size ; for it is to be considered, that the bladder being a round body placed amidst great arteries, and being itself membranous, and needing but few or but small branches, it gets them from various sources. Very generally

the hypogastric, just before it closes into a ligament, sends one or more small arteries downwards and forwards to the neck of the bladder, at that part where the vesiculæ seminales lie ; and of course the vesiculæ and the prostate gland get small twigs from this artery of the bladder ; sometimes also the bulb of the urethra has a small artery from it.

#### ARTERIE HÆMORRHOIDALES.

THE arteries of the rectum are all named hæmorrhoidal arteries. The upper hæmorrhoidal artery is the great branch of the lower mesenteric continued to the pelvis. The middle hæmorrhoidal artery is one which sometimes comes from the hypogastric artery, but very often from the pudic artery, inso-much as to be reckoned among its regular branches. The lower, or the external hæmorrhoidal artery, almost always is a branch of the pudic artery, or that artery which goes to the penis. Two great arteries, one going to the rectum and another to the womb, are the last which the hypogastric gives off before it degenerates into a ligament.

#### ARTERIA HÆMORRHOIDEA MEDIA.

THE middle hæmorrhoidal artery is not a large branch. Often we do not find it, but other arteries supplying its place ; sometimes again it is so large as to give off both the uterine and the lateral sacral arteries ; but in general it is small. It comes off from the hypogastric opposite to the glutæal artery (presently to be described ;) it touches the rectum below its middle, and descends curling and winding chiefly along its fore part quite to the anus ; and often it gives, as it runs betwixt the rectum and bladder, arteries to the bladder, prostate gland, and vesiculæ seminales. It is this artery also which in Women gives small branches to the vagina.

#### ARTERIA UTERINA.

THE womb has four arteries, two from each side ; the uppermost that which enters by the upper corners of the womb ; comes from the aorta, corresponds with the spermatic in Man, runs along the broad ligament towards the ovaria. The lower artery of the womb, and the largest, comes from the hypogastric, enters the womb, where it is connected with the



vagina, and runs upwards along the sides of the womb to meet the spermatic ; and it sends also at the same time branches downwards into the vagina, and forwards upon the bladder, where it adheres to this part of the womb.

This uterine artery arises from the hypogastric beside the origin of the hæmorrhoidal artery, and when it enters the womb it becomes very tortuous.

These, then, are the chief arteries of the rectum, bladder, womb, vesiculæ seminales, and other parts within the pelvis.



## ORDER SECOND.



### OF THE ARTERIES WHICH GO OUT FROM THE PELVIS TO THE HAUNCHES, HIPS, AND PRIVATE PARTS.

IN this second class or order there are just four great arteries ; one which goes over the back of the haunch-bone to the glutæal muscle, named glutæal artery ; one going downwards over the tuber ischii to the hip, named the Ischiadic artery ; one which goes out of the pelvis, returns into it again, and passes out a second time by the root of the penis, named the Pudic artery ; and one which passes out through the thyroid hole into the deep muscles at the top of the thigh, named Thyroid artery. All these larger arteries go off from the convex of that arch which the hypogastric forms, and move backwards and downwards, in order to escape from the pelvis, either by the sciatic notch or below.

Let it be remembered, that the iliac artery forks just at the meeting of the ilium and sacrum ; that the great sacro-sciatic notch is formed by this joining of the ilium and sacrum, and is just under the junction of these two bones : that the glutæal artery passes out by this sacro-sciatic hole ; and that of course it is the first, as well as the greatest, of those three arteries which turn backwards out of the pelvis.

#### ARTERIA GLUTÆA.

THE GLUTÆAL ARTERY goes off from the internal iliac immediately after the lateral sacral arteries. It is exceedingly

large, thick, and short, within the pelvis, for it immediately turns over the bone ; the turn which it makes over the naked bone is backwards and upwards ; it instantly divides itself into a great lash of vessels, which spread in every direction, supply the two glutæal muscles, and turn and ramify upon the back of the haunch-bone, just as the great scapular arteries play over the surface of the scapula.

The pyriform muscle goes out from the pelvis at the same great opening with the glutæal artery, and the artery is further accompanied by the great sciatic nerve ; they pass together over the pyriform muscle betwixt it and the bone ; and when the glutæal artery is to give out its branches, it splits into two great branches at the edge of the glutæus medius muscle. By this splitting the glutæal artery is arranged thus : first, One great branch passes under the glutæus medius, of consequence it is naked upon the back of the ilium ; it sends one large and beautiful artery, which courses round the bone according to the line of the crista ilii, which supplies all the upper half of the haunch-bone with its nutritious arteries, and supplies of course all the upper half of the great or outermost glutæal muscle where it arises from the spine and dorsum of the ilium.— Another large branch, still belonging to this deeper artery, passes under the thickest part of the belly of the glutæus medius, lies upon the small fan-like muscle named glutæus minimus, and gives innumerable great branches to the middle and lesser glutæi muscles, and to the joint of the thigh-bone.

The other great branch of the glutæal artery slips in betwixt the glutæus major and the glutæus medius ; and as it lies betwixt these two great muscles, it gives a prodigious number of branches to each, but chiefly to the great glutæal muscle.

#### ARTERIA ISCHIADICA.

THE SCIATIC ARTERY is so named, because, instead of going upwards with this crooked turn towards the haunch, it goes obliquely downwards to the hip, in the direction of the main artery from which it comes. It comes off from the iliac about an inch lower than the glutæal, and is next to it in size ; almost equal when (as it often happens) the pudic artery is derived from it. The glutæal artery should be contrasted with it thus : the glutæal goes out above the pyriform muscle ; the sciatic goes out below it ; the glutæal turns upwards over the haunch-bone, the sciatic turns downwards along the hip ; the glutæal spreads its arteries wide with sudden and crooked angles ; the sciatic sends its arteries downwards in a gentle wa-

ving form, or almost straight ; and so numerous as to be compared with a lash of many thongs proceeding from one shaft.

Often the glutæal artery, before it passes out of the pelvis, gives small twigs to the rectum, to the bone, and to the pyriform muscle ; and in like manner the ischiadic, before it escapes from the pelvis, gives also trivial branches to the rectum, and to the pyramidal muscle.

The branches of so great an artery, ramifying merely among muscles, and among such a vast variety of muscles, can neither be named, nor are worth naming. All that is to be desired is, to know the trunk, and the general direction in which its greater branches go. Among these branches there are few remarkable.

First, The COCCYGEAL ARTERY turns quick backwards upon the sciatic ligaments, and lying under the glutæus magnus ; and passing along by the direction of the ligament, it arises at that part of the sacrum whence the ligament takes its rise ; and turning downwards upon the coccyx, and upwards upon the back of the sacrum, it inosculates with the sacral arteries through the posterior holes.—Secondly, Another branch, more remarkable for its office than its size, runs downwards along the sciatic nerve, supplying its coats and substance.—But the great branch of this artery sends a confused lash of arteries downwards, which give arteries, first to the glutæal muscles and pyriformis, and then downwards to all those muscles of the back of the thigh which arise about the knob or tuber of the ischium. In short, all its chief branches are muscular ; and the artery is remarkable for no other peculiarity than this, that its inosculation downwards with the reflected arteries of the thigh are so frequent, that these alone may save the limb in wounds of the femoral artery above its profunda, or that great branch which belongs to the thigh.

#### ARTERIA PUDICA COMMUNIS.

THE COMMON PUDIC ARTERY,\* or the artery of the external parts of generation, is the third great artery which goes out from the pelvis backwards. And there is in the course of this artery a peculiarity which is never fully explained ; and being unexplained, makes the succeeding description quite defective and lame : and it is this. The pudic artery (which

\* It is named often the circumflex pudic artery, the internal pudic artery, the middle pudic artery, the great pudic artery.

is nearly of the size of a writing quill) usually comes off as a branch from the sciatic artery; it goes out from the pelvis along with the sciatic artery through the lower part of the sciatic notch, under the lower edge of the pyriform muscle, over the upper sacro-sciatic ligament. But no sooner has it made its appearance along with the sciatic artery, and emerged from the pelvis, than it returns into the pelvis again; it does not go over the outside of the tuber ischii, and so down to the perinæum; but it just appears out of the pelvis, rises over the upper sacro-sciatic ligament, gives out a few branches, turns in again under the lower sacro-sciatic ligament, or rather under the spine or sharp point of the ischium, whence that ligament arises: it is now within the pelvis again; it lies flat against the inner surface of the ischium; it runs along by the direction of that bone till it approaches the symphysis pubis, where the root of the penis is. It there dives into the root of the penis, having just before given off that branch which goes to the perinæum. It is this long artery, running naked and unprotected along the whole inner side of the ischium, bending as the arch of the ischium and pubes bends, that is cut by ignorant lithotomists, which a broad gorget is sure to wound, and which can be safe only by our exchanging the gorget for the knife.

The branches of the pudic artery are chiefly these:—First, Before it proceeds out of the pelvis it usually sends branches inwards to the neck of the bladder, vesiculæ seminales, and prostate gland:—Secondly, When it emerges from the pelvis, and while bending over the sacro-sciatic ligament, it gives, like the sciatic artery, chiefly muscular branches; it gives twigs to the sacro-sciatic ligament and pyriform muscle; others go to the gemini muscles, and turn over them to the great trochanter, and to the hip-joint, reaching as far as the acetabulum: others spread over the tuber ischii, to which they give arteries, which go outwards along the three muscles of the thigh which arise from this point; and it sends inwards from this part an artery which encircles the verge of the anus, and belongs to the sphincter and levator ani muscles. This branch is named the LOWER OR EXTERNAL HÆMORRHOIDAL ARTERY: and other branches it sends forwards into the perinæum; but these are smaller and less regular arteries; they are not what are distinguished by the peculiar name of perinæal arteries.—This artery, like the ischiadic, ends every where in inosculation with the reflected arteries of the thigh.

Thirdly, The artery returning again into the pelvis, and running along under the flat internal surface of the ischium, gives off many small branches to the bladder, prostate gland, vesiculæ seminales, and rectum. But when it has reached



the perinæum, and is about to emerge from the pelvis a second time, and go into the root of the penis, it gives out three chief arteries ; one to the perinæum, one to the body of the penis, one to the back of the penis thus :

When the artery has approached nearly to the musculus transversalis perinæi, it splits into two branches ; one of which is the artery of the perinæum, the other is the proper artery of the penis.

#### ARTERIA PERINÆI.

THE ARTERY, of the PERINÆUM passes under the transversalis perinæi, and betwixt the accelerator and erector penis ; in short, it comes out from that triangular cavity which we cut into in lithotomy ; in which operation of course this branch cannot escape. The artery having escaped from this triangular cavity, runs forwards along the perinæum for two or three inches, according to the size of the subject, growing very sensibly smaller as it goes along. It is chiefly for supplying the skin and muscles of the perinæum ; and gives these branches : 1. When it has just come out from the triangular hollow, it gives off from its root one branch at right angles, which goes directly across the perinæum : it keeps the course of the transverse muscle ; it may be named ARTERIA TRANSVERSALIS PERINÆI, and ends about the sphincter ani. 2. It gives branches to the accelerator and erector muscles. 3. It gives branches to the scrotum ; and being continued along the corpus cavernosum of each side, it ends upon the tendinous sheath, which binds the corpora cavernosa. Thus ends the perinæal artery.

#### ARTERIA PENIS.

THE PROPER ARTERY of the PENIS is the continued trunk of the pudic artery. It is much larger than this perinæal branch ; is as big as a crow-quill ; it keeps still close to the bone, while the perinæal artery goes outwards ; it at last touches the symphysis pubis, and of course pierces the corpus cavernosum, just where it takes its rise from the leg of the pubes : and here it splits into two great branches ; one to the corpus cavernosum, and one to the back of the penis, or rather into three, since there is one also for the bulb of the urethra.

The bulb of the urethra is quite insulated in the perinæum, while the corpora cavernosa arise from the bone. Now, first.

as the artery of the penis is passing by the side of the bulb, it gives off an artery to the bulb sidewise, which in part plunges into the bulbous substance, and in part is scattered upon the accelerator, prostate gland, &c.

Secondly, The artery having risen to the place where the root of the corpus cavernosum is, gives off that artery, which runs small and delicate along all the back of the penis, till it ends at last in a branch which encircles the corona glandis.— This is named the *arteria dorsalis penis*.

Thirdly, The artery now plunges deep into the proper substance of the penis; the artery of each side goes into each corpus cavernosum at its root, and splits into two branches; these run chiefly along the septum, or partition betwixt the corpora cavernosa of each side. It is this artery which pours out blood so freely into the cells of the penis, and causes erection.

These three, the glutæal, the sciatic, and the pudic arteries, are the only ones which go out from the pelvis behind, and one only goes out by an opening on its fore part, viz. the obturator artery.

#### ARTERIA OBTURATORIA.

THE OBTURATOR ARTERY is so named from its passing through the thyroid hole. No artery is less regular in its origin; arising sometimes from the Iliac, sometimes from the Hypogastric, and not unfrequently from the root of the Epigastric artery: in which case it turns back again over the pubes, coming into the pelvis through the ring. But no artery is more regular in its destination; a large artery always passes through the thyroid hole; the thick muscles in the centre of the thigh cannot want it.

The obturator artery, arising from the iliac or hypogastric, runs along by the upper edge of the pelvis, by the lower edge of the psoas muscle, accompanied with the obturator nerve, which is to go through the hole along with it. Having arrived at the fore part of the pelvis, it slips through the oval hole by a very small opening, which is in the upper part of the tendinous membrane, which closes that hole, and which is consequently at the upper edge of the obturator internus muscle. The artery, before it passes out of the pelvis, often gives branches of considerable size downwards to the neck of the bladder, prostate gland, and vesiculæ; to the iliacus internus and psoas muscles, and to the lymphatic glands which lie upon them; and there is always a branch, which encircles the upper part

of the foramen thyroideum, lies close upon the bone, and gives its twigs upwards into the muscles of the belly.

After the artery has passed along with its nerve through the thyroid hole, it comes into the very heart or central part of the thigh. Almost all its branches are muscular; none are worth distinguishing by name; it is only the general tendency of the artery that needs to be explained. It divides into two chief branches, taking opposite directions. The first is deeper; it turns downwards and outwards towards the hip-joint. It performs three services here; it gives first arteries to the periosteum, to the capsule, and to the gland within the acetabulum; it gives also large branches to the obturator, quadratus, femoris, and all the great muscles which immediately surround the joint; it also forms very large and important anastomoses round the joint, with the sciatic and pudic arteries from the pelvis, and with the reflected arteries from the thigh.

The more superficial branch of the thyroid sends all its branches into the great muscles upon the inner side of the thigh coming from the pubes. Its chief branches are to the upper part of the triceps muscle; it sometimes gives branches even to the superficial muscles, as the gracilis and sartorius; always, at least, small twigs pass through these muscles to the skin of the thigh and to the scrotum. Of these two arteries, this superficial one encircles the inner edge of the thyroid hole, or that which is next the pubes, with one of its branches; while the deeper artery encircles the outer edge, or that which is next to the hip-joint, so that they meet upon the bone inosculating with each other.

## CHAP. IV.

## ARTERIES OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.



## ILIACA EXTERNA.

**T**HE EXTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY is that branch of the common iliac which descends under Poupart's ligament into the thigh. The internal iliac or artery of the pelvis parts from this within the pelvis at the joining of the ilium and sacrum. The external iliac passes down into the thigh, by bending along the upper edge or brim of the pelvis, directed by the lower edge of the psoas muscle, which also descends into the thigh. This great artery is accompanied by the anterior crural nerve; its corresponding vein lies by the side of it; the lymphatics of the thigh creep upwards along this artery into the pelvis; and when the artery descends into the thigh, it passes so over the bulging part of the acetabulum and head of the thigh-bone, that it is felt projecting there and beating with amazing force.

The projection by which the artery is thus thrown forwards is not merely the naked pelvis and the head of the femur; these parts are covered by the flesh and tendons of the psoas magnus and iliacus internus, which also come out from the pelvis to the thigh. The artery lies cushioned upon these muscles; the muscles dive very deep to get at the trochanter minor or posterior trochanter of the thigh-bone. The artery follows them; and thus it is plunged as it were into a deep cavity, assumes a new position, and this constitutes a second point of description.

The hollow in which the artery now lies may be compared with that of the bend of the arm. The artery now takes the name of femoral, lies deep in a hollow, surrounded by much fat and many glands; the cavity is covered with a very strong fascia, or tendinous sheath, which descends from the muscles of the belly over Poupart's ligament, and which is greatly strengthened at this point by the general fascia of the thigh. Here the femoral artery, instead of sending off less effectual branches from point to point as it moves downwards, and which could not have conveniently penetrated through all the thickness of the thigh, sends off one great branch, which



furnishes all the thigh without exception, whence it is named the muscular artery of the thigh. This great artery goes off from the femoral just like the uinar from the artery at the bend of the arm, *i. e.* very deep among the muscles, in the triangular cavity above described. Thence it is oftener named profunda than muscular artery.

The femoral artery having sent down this great branch, equal almost to itself in size, inclines outwards again, meets the inclined line of the sartorius and follows its oblique direction, assuming a new character; for now it becomes a second time quite superficial, is covered by nothing besides the strong fascia of the thigh and by the skin. It is felt beating along the line of the sartorius muscle; and by that line we apply the cushion of our tourniquet. It requires from our feeling only about two hands breadth, or a little more, above the joint of the knee; at which place it perforates the triceps or great muscle of the thigh, gets from the fore to the back part, or, in other words, forsakes the thigh to go down behind into the ham, where it exchanges its name for that of popliteal artery.

The popliteal artery, when it has got into the ham, meets with its corresponding nerve, which is of vast size; and the artery lies now flat upon the back part of the thigh-bone, passes down in a hollow formed betwixt its great condyles, lies flat upon all the back of the knee-joint, is enclosed by the two great hamstring muscles from above, and by the two great heads of the gastrocnemii muscles below. But although we say it is protected, yet in truth it is not tightly bound down by a fascia embracing it, but lies on the contrary so loose and unsupported among the cellular substance, that we have the most certain evidence of its being often racked and strained in sudden or awkward motions of the joint.

From the ham the artery descends into the leg, under the heads of the gastrocnemii muscles; and being lodged behind the great bulging, or head of the tibia, below the joint, it there divides into three great arteries. One passing down behind the tibia is named posterior tibial artery: one perforating the interosseous membrane goes down along the fore part of the tibia, is named tibialis antica; the third artery, passing down behind the fibula, is named the fibular or peronæal artery. These may be justly compared with the three arteries of the fore-arm; and as those meet in arches upon the palm of the hand, these meet and form similar arches on the sole of the foot.

Even from this slight and general description of this important artery, many conclusions may be deduced not indifferent

to the surgeon; for there are several points in the course of this artery very peculiarly marked.

First, It is thrown so forwards by the bulging of the pubes, where it forms the socket for the thigh-bone, it beats so strongly just under the rim of the belly, that we cannot, at least till we try, doubt of its being easily compressed. I see, indeed, that Acrel, in very desperate circumstances, when his ligatures had given way even before his eyes, and the arteries burst, and after the surgeons had been twice deluged with the blood of the femoral artery, thought that he had suppressed this artery, by resting on it with his thumbs. But indeed the poor patient, under these horrible circumstances, as Acrel justly calls them, must have fallen so faint and low, by a tedious alarming operation, and by the repeated bleedings, that any thing might have suppressed the pulse in the femoral artery, when that of the heart itself was well nigh gone.\* But this is one of the points in which it is the most necessary for every man to speak from his own experience. I have tried it in the most favourable circumstances in a slender young man; and when I thought myself sure of the point, behold the blood gushed out with a whizzing noise and prodigious force. I have seen others try it, and fail. It is perhaps not impossible to compress the femoral artery; but it is not an easy thing, and is an expedient never to be trusted where the life of a fellow-creature is immediately in danger.—Secondly, the strong covering of the fascia gives a peculiar form to the aneurism of the thigh; it keeps it flat, forces the blood to spread abroad into the surrounding parts; and this deep driving of the blood among the muscles, together with the great size of the sac, and the putrefaction of three or four pounds of blood, causes that gangrenous and sloughing condition of the parts, by which we are so often foiled in our best concerted operations, and after the artery has been well and fairly tied.—Thirdly, it is very obvious that the profunda might with more propriety be named the femoral artery, since it is the proper artery of the thigh; and though Heister, and some of the best among the old surgeons, spoke of this division as one which only sometimes took place, we know that a leg could no more be without a profunda than without what we call the femoral artery; and we also perceive, notwithstanding the doubts and fears of some modern surgeons, that when the femoral artery is wounded, it

\* “His in horrendis angustiis, cum nec nova ligatura, nec torcularis contractione hæmorrhagia sisti posset, in trunco ipso dum ex inguine prolabitur. pollicibus firmiter admotis, compressionem instituere plecuit, quo effluxus substitit.”

is after all only 'a wound of the artery of the leg.—Fourthly, The large branches which the profunda sends upwards round the haunch, inosculating with the sciatic and pudic arteries, and the branches which it sends downwards to the knee, inosculating round that joint with the arteries of the leg, make this branch of peculiar importance to the surgeon; for when the artery is wounded in the groin, above the profunda, this branch saves the thigh, by its inosculation round the haunch; and when the artery is wounded in the thigh, below the profunda, or in the ham, it saves the leg by its inosculation round the knee; and when the whole line of the femoral artery has been obliterated, it has saved the whole extremity, as I have elsewhere proved, by receiving the blood from the arteries round the haunch, and conveying it down to the arteries below the knee, being thus an intermedium betwixt the internal iliac artery and the arteries of the leg, capable of forming a new line of circulation behind the thigh when that before is shut up.—Nor should it be forgotten, that the aneurism on the fore part of the thigh may be from the profunda; and then the femoral artery which lies before it may be cut across by a rash or ignorant surgeon.

Fifthly, The place of the femoral artery passing through the triceps muscle is next to be observed, for these reasons.—At that point it lies close upon the bone; and as this happens exactly at that distance above the knee at which we usually amputate, we expect in such amputations to find the great artery close by the bone. As the artery is at this point tied down by the tendon of the triceps, and is in fact passing through a tendinous ring, it sometimes happens that when we have cut near this, but not upon it, the flesh shrinks in such a way that even this great artery, though it bleeds, is not easily found; but one stroke of the scalpel, running along the bone, cuts the tendon up, and exposes the artery with open mouth.—This single point makes all the difference betwixt an aneurism of the thigh and of the ham; it is peculiarly necessary to mark this, in order to ascertain the extent of the disease before beginning an operation. Nothing can have a worse appearance than that which has actually happened, viz. a surgeon beginning that operation in the ham, which he should have attempted rather on the fore part of the thigh: and being forced to change his ground, and to begin a second operation on the fore part of the thigh, or, what is worse, to cut up the tendon, and follow the diseased artery to the fore part of the thigh, cutting, in short, first longitudinally betwixt the hamstrings, and, after an hour's working perhaps, cutting crosswise to reach the fore part of the thigh.

6thly, Is it not a matter of very high importance to study the ham still more carefully than the axilla, since the artery is so often hurt at this place by rude motions of the joint? For it is a narrow cavity; the artery lies close upon the joint and bones; and when it is allowed to remain long in a diseased state, enlarging and dilating the ham, we perform in the end a hopeless operation; or, if we had hopes when we began our operation, they are all over before it is ended: for the parts are found to be diseased, the bones carious, the joint spoiled: there is no hopes even of present safety, and of the ligature holding, and much less any expectation of a permanent cure.—Often the greatest surgeons have been contented to finish such an operation by cutting off the limb!

7thly, When the artery has gone down beyond the ham, and seems lodged safely under the gastrocnemii muscles, still it is not safe; it is bended tense over the back of the joint; it is pressed by the gastrocnemii stretching over it; and their violent action has often been such, as to have torn the artery with a tumour so immediate, and with such excruciating pain, that the surgeon has been constrained in a manner to cut off the limb even upon the spot.

8thly, Very often we are obliged to decide, whether a tumour of the thigh or a tumour of the ham can be cut away only by our knowledge of these arteries. How often the anterior arteries of the leg are cut by workmen, and how much they are exposed to the stroke of the adze or axe, every practical surgeon must know: but the mischances that open arteries are quite unthought of. I have known a man standing carelessly by his scythe, which was set upright, the blade along the ground, and the shaft resting upon his arm, cut the artery behind the outer ankle so as to form (when the wound healed) a large, livid, and strong beating aneurism, ready to burst, and requiring immediate operation.

The epigastric artery is in danger in operations for hernia. The femoral artery is the subject of frequent operations; the popliteal aneurism is a disease of this artery in the ham; and even the simple operation of amputating either the limb itself, or tumours in the thigh or ham, requires a perfect knowledge of all these arteries.

But although no formal operation affected these lesser arteries, yet the main artery itself is so exposed, and so superficial where it runs down the thigh, that it is wounded in a hundred various ways. It is very singular how often it has been wounded by one particular accident, viz. the dropping of a pair of scissars, and with a sudden instinctive effort clapping the knees together to catch them. It has been wounded once or twice

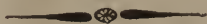


by a shoemaker clapping his knees thus together to catch his sharp-pointed paring-knife. One of my pupils lay three months in London, uncertain whether his femoral artery was wounded : for he had in this way caught his pen-knife, the point of which had run into his thigh, and wounded some great artery. It has been cut across by balls ; it has been wounded even by a single slug ; it has been uncovered by wounds which yet did not touch its coats, and has in consequence dilated into an aneurism. I have known a boy stab another with a pen-knife in the thigh, and strike so critically as to open the artery with a wound like that of a lancet. My friend Mr. Harkness gave me the privilege of dissecting an aneurismal limb which he was obliged to cut off ; and in which the artery was (if I may use such an expression) broken or torn across the upper end of the thigh-bone, which had been broken by a fall about three weeks before.

All these accidents must come upon the surgeon very suddenly ; and if they come upon him unprepared, all is in a moment lost. I once saw a fine young fellow die from this alarm of the attendants and confusion of the surgeon. He was a tall, stout, young man, who was sitting at table with his companions eating bread and cheese, taking his glass, and telling his tale. He had in his hand a sharp-pointed table knife, which he happened to hold dagger-wise in his hand, and in the height of some assertion or oath he meant to strike the table, but the point missed, and slanted over the table ; he had stabbed himself in the femoral artery, and with one gush of blood he fell to the ground. When I came, I found the young man stretched out upon the floor ; he was just uttering his last groan ; the floor was deluged, all slippery, and swimming with blood. The wound was covered with a confused bundle of clothes, which I instantly whirled off ; and in that moment two gentlemen, who had been first called, and who had both run off for tourniquets (because tourniquets are used to stop bleedings,) returned ; and had the unhappiness to see that the hole was no bigger than what I could close, and had actually shut up with the point of my thumb ; and which, had it been shut and put together with a good compress, would have healed in three days, forming a large beating aneurism within, allowing time for a deliberate operation.

In short, to enumerate the variety of accidents which may affect this artery would be impossible ; but surely from the little that I dare venture to say in this place, it must seem one of the largest, the most exposed, and most dangerous, and by all this the most important, artery in the body ; and from these

previous hints and general descriptions, the value of the several branches which are now to be enumerated will be more easily felt and understood.



## BRANCHES OF THE FEMORAL ARTERY.



### ABOVE THE GROIN.

THE FEMORAL ARTERY above the groin, that is, just before it passes from under Poupart's ligament, gives off two very singular arteries, which turn backwards and never appear in the thigh; the one, going upon the fore part of the belly on the inner side, is the epigastric artery; the other, turning backwards along the inner surface of the haunch-bone, is named *circumflexa iium*.

### ARTERIA EPIGASTRICA.

THE EPIGASTRIC ARTERY, so named from its running up along the belly, goes off from the inner side of the femoral artery about an inch before it passes out into the thigh.

The epigastric, when first given off, turns downwards with a full round turn till it touches Poupart's ligament. The peculiarity of its course here must be very carefully attended to. The femoral artery lies at the very outer margin\* of the opening, called the crural arch. The Fallopiian ligament forms the upper line of the crural arch. The epigastric artery moves inwards and downwards with the Fallopiian ligament, running along its lower edge; then it crosses the opening called the abdominal ring, behind the ring, and also behind the spermatic cord which passes through the ring; then it mounts by the border of the transverse muscle, and gets to the rectus muscle of the belly; but it is pretty high before it touches the side of the rectus, and lying on the outside of the peritoneum, and on the inner surface of the rectus-muscle, and keeping in the di-

\* Viz. that end of the slit or arch which is nearest to the haunch-bone.

rect line of the rectus muscle near its centre, or rather nearer the outer edge of the muscle, and inclining inwards, it mounts from the groin to a little below the borders of the thorax, when it inosculates very freely with the internal mammary artery.—These are the inosculations which were mentioned, page 213. Through its whole course this artery is so large as to make its wounds important: we should know where to stop it in wounds; we should remember to avoid it in opening or extirpating tumours. I have seen some confusion and much loss of time during an operation, from not attending to this. The main artery must be remembered; its branches are of little value. The only branches which it is at all necessary to mention are, first, one small twig, which it sends downwards along the spermatic cord; soon after entering under the abdominal muscle, it gives off a large branch almost equal to the artery itself, which goes directly towards the navel, and ends there. This branch goes obliquely across the muscle, while the main artery follows the general line of the muscle, and gives branches on every side to the rectus, transversalis, obliquus; in short to all the muscles of the abdomen, and spreads its last branches very freely about the lower border of the chest.

#### ARTERIA CIRCUMFLEXA ILIUM.

THE CIRCUMFLEX ARTERY of the HAUNCH is named CIRCUMFLEXA from its turning directly backwards, and ILIUM from its passing along the hollow of the haunch-bone.

It is smaller than a crow-quill; it goes off from the outside of the femoral artery opposite to the epigastric, or rather a little lower; exactly at that point where the outer end of the Fallopian ligament begins in the haunch-bone. It runs backwards in a curved line along the hollow of the haunch-bone, curving along with the crista ilii, or ridge of the ilium, under which it lies. Its line is along the most naked part of the bone, where the internal iliac muscle begins on one hand, and the transverse muscle of the belly on the other; in short, it runs along all the upper edge of the internal iliac muscle, quite round almost to the lumbar spine, where it joins the ileo-lumbar artery by small inosculations; for at this place the reflected iliac artery, which grows gradually and sensibly smaller, is almost spent. There are no remarkable branches which deserve to be described or even to be named, unless it be one which goes off early, near the head of Poupart's ligament, and gives branches to the ligament, to the sartorius muscle which arises at the same point of the haunch-bone, and to the edge of the iliac

muscle. And as it runs along betwixt the iliac muscle on the one hand, and the transverse of the belly on the other, it gives many branches downwards to the internal iliac and psoas muscles, and to the substance of the bone ; and upwards it gives three or four branches into the abdominal muscles, which go so far along the belly as to inosculate with all its other arteries.



#### BELOW THE GROIN.

THESE last branches, viz. the epigastric and reflected iliac arteries, I ascribe to the internal iliac ; for the artery is still within the abdomen, or at least not without the arch of the thigh.

The femoral artery, until it gets down into the hollow which I have described, gives no branches, or none with which I would choose to confound the description of the profunda or great artery of the thigh. The branches which the femoral gives off before that are only small twigs to the fat, glands, skin, or private parts ; but one or two of those to the private parts are sometimes large.—First, twigs go out along the femoral ligament, and terminate in the skin.—Secondly, twigs go to the fat, and lymphatic glands of the groin.—Thirdly, there ascends a small branch, sometimes towards the origin of the sartorius, to the middle glutæal muscles, and to the beginning of the fascia lata.—Fourthly, Of those branches which go across the upper part of the thigh to the genitals, and which are named PUDICÆ EXTERNÆ to distinguish their branches from those of the pudica communis, there are usually three. The uppermost is scattered about the fat of the pubes. The middle one goes across the heads of the triceps ; it is longer and larger than the others ; it goes to the side of the scrotum and penis in Men ; in Women it is large, and runs into the labium pudendi. The lower one of the three goes to the lower parts of the scrotum, and to the skin of the thigh near it.

#### ARTERIA PROFUNDA FEMORIS.

THEN comes off the profunda femoris, the DEEP or MUSCULAR ARTERY of the THIGH. It arises from the femoral artery about four inches below the groin, more or less according to the size of the subject. It turns off from the femoral artery



with a bulging, which looks backwards and towards the outside of the thigh. It lies deep in the triangular cavity, upon the face of the *iliacus internus* and *pectinalis* muscles. It presently gives off two great arteries, which turn upwards along the joint; one round the outer side, the other round the inner side, of the joint. Then it passes downwards, turns in behind the femoral artery, sinking deeper and deeper towards the back parts of the thigh. It passes down along the face of the *triceps* muscle; and as it moves along its fore part, it sends through three or four great arteries to the back part, which are called the perforating arteries of the thigh. And lastly, the profunda itself, or its last branches, passes through the *triceps*; and this last branch is named *perforans ultima vel descendens femoris*.

#### ARTERIA CIRCUMFLEXA EXTERNA.

THE CIRCUMFLEX ARTERY, which goes to the outside of the hip-joint, proceeds from the very highest point of the profunda. It takes its course outwards, passing under the *sartorius*, *fascialis*, and head of the *rectus*: it runs over the tendinous head of the *vastus internus*, where that muscle takes its rise from the outer trochanter: it divides very early into the following branches—First, Branches go to the inner side, to the internal iliac muscle, upon which this artery lies; and round it they bend over the lesser trochanter, making inosculation with the internal circumflex artery.—Secondly, an artery goes in the opposite direction, viz. outwards, to the iliac muscle, the *sartorius*, the head of the *rectus*, the *fascialis*, and round to the glutæal muscles.—Thirdly, it sends many lesser branches upwards and forwards into the heads of those muscles which I have just enumerated, and which lie immediately over the artery.—Fourthly, it sends large branches round the root of the great trochanter, some of them going into the hollow above the trochanter; others keeping so low as the root of the trochanter, where the greater glutæus is inserted.—Fifthly, The most important of all its branches is a very long one, which it sends directly downwards under the *rectus*, or betwixt it and the *vastus internus* muscle. This artery is divided into two great branches, which run down the whole length of the thigh, somewhat resembling in their shape the *PROFUNDA HUMERI*: they are named the greater and lesser descending branches of the circumflex artery, and they inosculate in a most particular manner with a large anastomosing branch from the femoral artery. The larger branch of this artery emerges

from betwixt the rectus and vastus externus, a little above the knee, to inosculate with one of the articular arteries of the knee. Its smallest branch inosculates with the anastomosing branch of the femoral artery. The two anastomoses seem to be the chief use of these two long arteries, though they do also send some branches to the muscles.

But to give a more simple notion of this circumflex artery, it should be described thus. It is divided into three chief branches : 1st, A descending branch, which goes down to the knee-joint ; 2nd, A transverse branch, which crosses the upper part of the thigh, and turns round the neck of the thigh-bone ; 3dly, It sends a less important branch up upon the dorsum ilii.

#### ARTERIA CIRCUMFLEXA INTERNA.

THE INTERNAL CIRCUMFLEX ARTERY is a thick short artery, which goes off opposite to the ball of the thigh-bone ; and as the external one goes round the great trochanter, this goes round the lesser trochanter. It is a smaller artery ; it has not so many muscular branches ; it keeps closer to the joint ; it goes off from the inner side of the profunda, just opposite to the circumflexa externa, or a little lower, but never more than an inch lower ; it passes over the insertion of the psoas muscle, and under the belly of the pectinalis ; it attaches itself then to the lesser or inner trochanter, and goes round the neck of the thigh-bone round the joint, and is expended on the muscles at the back of the joint, as the quadratus femoris, gemini, &c.

The artery having turned towards the inside, the muscles which lie there are the triceps gracilis, &c. The first branches, therefore, which this artery gives off before it passes under the pectinalis, are to the triceps and gracilis. After having passed under the pectinalis, and while it is turning round the root of the lesser trochanter, it gives branches to the pectinalis and triceps ; and especially it gives to the capsular ligament of the hip-joint an artery which is named articularis acetabuli.

The artery now lying upon the pelvis, under the neck of the thigh-bone, divides itself into two chief arteries ; one goes upwards and forwards along the triceps, till it ends at last round the symphysis pubis. The chief muscular twigs of this branch are given to the triceps, and to the obturator muscles ; it is this branch which inosculates so freely with the branches of the obturator artery ; it is a twig of this artery which enters into the cavity of the hip-joint, by that breach which is in the

inner edge of the acetabulum ; and this branch entering then by its proper hole, goes to the gland in the bottom of the socket, or chiefly to it. The other branch turns away in the opposite direction, viz. backwards betwixt the little and the great trochanter, turning round the neck of the thigh-bone. It gives branches also to the triceps and obturator, inosculating with the obturator artery. But its chief branches are towards the other side, as to the capsule of the hip-joint, to the neck of the thigh-bone, to the quadratus femoris. It is this artery which gives most of those branches about the roots of the trochanters named trochanteric arteries ; and it is from this artery that many branches go backwards along the tuber ischii, to unite with those of the sciatic and pudic arteries.

#### OF THE PERFORATING ARTERIES.

THE two first perforating arteries are very large ; the two next perforating are smaller and less regular ; the fifth perforating artery is just the termination of the profunda. But still it must be understood, that these perforating arteries are extremely irregular in place, size, and number, as indeed all muscular arteries must be ; and that there are, besides the greater perforating arteries, many like them in this part of the thigh, though not distinguished by name.

#### ARTERIA PERFORANS PRIMA.

THE FIRST PERFORATING ARTERY is the largest branch of the profunda, bigger than both the articular arteries joined. It arises from the profunda, just under the lesser trochanter, betwixt the pectinalis and triceps brevis ; and perforates the triceps about an inch below the trochanter, and close upon the thigh-bone. Here the artery lies under the lower edge of the glutæus, and close by the origin of the biceps, semi-tendinosus and semi-membranosus muscles, the three muscles which form the hamstrings ; and the chief division of the artery is into one great branch, going upwards along the glutæus, and another going downwards along the flexor muscles. First, the artery which goes upwards turns over the glutæus, spreads innumerable branches about the great trochanter ; and meeting with the trochanteric branches of the arteriæ reflexæ, make a most beautiful inosculation, or rather net-work of inosculations, over the trochanter. Another transverse branch of this upper artery turns quite round the lower part of the trochanter,

and round the thigh ; among the flesh of the vastus internus ; and a third branch of the same artery meets in inosculation with the lower branches of the sciatic artery.

The lower or descending branch of the perforans prima goes down along the three flexor muscles of the leg, viz. the biceps, semi-tendinosus, and semi-membranosus ; nourishes their fleshy bellies, and plays over their surface in beautiful network.

#### ARTERIA PERFORANS SECUNDA MAGNA.

THE SECOND OR GREAT PERFORATING ARTERY is a much larger and more important branch of the profunda than this first, at least it is so when the other perforating branches are wanting, and when this, as often happens, represents the continued trunk of the artery : but I shall describe it as a second perforating artery, to be succeeded by others.\* The second perforating artery comes off from the profunda, about two inches lower than the first ; it passes through betwixt the first and second heads of the triceps, or through the flesh of the second ; and turning obliquely downwards and backwards, close by the thigh-bone, it passes into the cellular interstice betwixt the flexor muscles of the opposite sides, i. e. betwixt the bellies of the hamstring muscles, and ends there.

Before it passes through the triceps, it gives branches to the triceps, and vastus, and to the great trochanter, and to the thigh-bone. Its two chief branches, after it perforates the triceps, are, first, one great transverse branch, which goes directly across below the tendon of the glutæus, and gives one great branch up upon the glutæus, and another to the vastus externus, making inosculations with the reflected arteries of the joint. Secondly, Its descending branch goes down in the hollow betwixt the great hamstring muscles, and its branches go into both muscles, but chiefly into the biceps, and in these the artery is exhausted.

#### ARTERIA PERFORANS TERTIA.

THE THIRD PERFORATING ARTERY comes off about a finger's breadth lower than the former ; it makes a gentle waving

\* My reason for saying this is, that sometimes there are but two perforating arteries, while there are often five which need to be described.



turn inwards before it pierces the triceps ; and after having perforated the triceps, it gives its branches to both the hamstring muscles, but chiefly to the semi-tendinosus.

#### ARTERIA PERFORANS QUARTA.

THE FOURTH PERFORATING ARTERY may be regarded as the last, or as the termination of the profunda, though sometimes there is a fifth. It perforates again still lower, about a finger's breadth below the last, through the flesh of the triceps magnus. Its first branch, while on the fore part of the triceps, is the nutritia magna femoris, or proper nutritious artery of the thigh-bone ; and after it perforates the triceps, it gives its arteries to the two hamstring muscles, but more especially to the biceps ; and so this last branch of the profunda ends.

But this minute description of any important set of arteries never presents any clear idea to the reader's mind, nor any knowledge which he can easily retain. I expect rather to do so by one short description.

The title of PERFORATING ARTERIES is one which comprehends all the great muscular branches of the profunda, except the two reflex arteries belonging to the joint. They vary in number, as all muscular branches must do, and are proportioned in size and number to the bulk of the thigh. The profunda passes down along the fore part of the triceps, while it is giving off these arteries ; they must, of course, perforate the triceps before they can get to the back part of the thigh. When they do perforate, they come into a great muscular interstice or hollow, which is formed by the hamstring muscles of opposite sides, by the biceps on one side, and by the semi-membranosus and semi-tendinosus on the other. It is to these two great muscles of the back part of the thigh that the branches of all the perforating arteries are chiefly directed. Each perforating artery succeeds another at about the distance of an inch or more ; each successively coming out into this interstice at a lower and lower point. Each artery gives branches to the triceps, &c. before it perforates, and to the hamstring muscles, &c. after it has come into the hollow. The two first perforating arteries are the only arteries which are large and absolutely certain ; the third is always very much smaller ; the fourth is generally the termination of this great artery ; the fifth perforating artery is rare.

Such a general idea as this of their size and value, and situation in the very heart or deepest part of the thigh (for the profunda turns backwards from the very first, and all its

branches keep the same direction,) is of more importance than a particular knowledge of every branch of each perforating artery ; a thing really unattainable, since they vary more in their ultimate branches than almost any other arteries in the whole body ; for they have more space, and a greater mass of irregular muscle to wander in, and produce varieties.

#### ARTERIA FEMORALIS.

THOUGH the profunda is plainly the artery of the thigh, yet from the ignorance of anatomists and surgeons (who never knew till about twenty years ago that there was more than one great artery) the superficial artery has been named the artery of the thigh.

The femoral artery makes a spiral or serpentine turn round the whole thigh. It appears first on the fore part ; it turns obliquely round to the inner side, following the lower edge of the sartorius muscle ; it passes through the triceps, after it has got about two-thirds down the thigh, by which it gets into the ham, and its spiral turn is completed. It lies deep where it is giving off the profunda ; it rises then, and is superficial all along the middle of the thigh ; and when it has advanced two-thirds down the thigh, it again gets too deep to be felt ; but all along it is covered by the thick strong fascia of the thigh.—Through the whole of this course it gives no one branch out that is of any considerable importance. They are all muscular arteries, very small, nearly of one size, nameless, and undistinguished, going into the muscles of the fore part of the thigh ; or if any are distinguished, it is only by their relation to other arteries, when the trunk gets low enough to make anastomoses with the arteries of the joint.

The nameless muscular branches of the Femoral artery, go, in one word, to all the muscles on the fore part of the thigh ; to the rectus, sartorius, vasti, gracilis, and triceps ; to the glands, fascia, fat, and skin ; and it thus continues giving successive branches to each of these long muscles as it passes the several points of them.

There is no distinguished branch till, having arrived within two hands' breadth of the knee-joint, it gives out (just where it is about to pass through the tendon of the triceps) a larger branch named (like a similar branch of the humeral artery) *RAMUS ANASTOMOTICUS MAGNUS*.

This branch goes out from the inner side of the femoral ar-

tery just where it is about to perforate the triceps ; it passes into the flesh of the vastus internus ; it first sends smaller branches to the vastus internus and sartorius, and through the interstice of these two muscles to the skin of the knee. But having penetrated into the fleshy belly of the vastus internus, this artery, which is itself very short and thick, sends out its slender inosculating branches : one goes downwards along the tendon of the great triceps ; and when the tendon of that muscle stops above the inner condyle, this artery goes forwards over the condyle, makes a net-work upon it, joining the numberless inosculation with the articular arteries from below, and gives twigs also into the joint. The other branches of this ramus anastomoticus tend all forwards and upwards to join the descending branches of the reflexa externa, which come down along the rectus muscle.

There are two other arteries lying close upon the joint, remarkable enough to deserve a name, and they are called perforating arteries ; not perforating like the branches of the profunda, to get deeper among the flesh ; but perforating so as to get out from the cavity of the ham upon the surface of the thigh again.

The UPPER PERFORATING ARTERY arises from the inner side of the popliteal artery, just after it has perforated the triceps ; but it must not be accounted a popliteal branch, because it immediately perforates the triceps muscle again. It gives branches to the semi-tendinosus, semi-membranosus, and sartorius ; in short, it turns its branches towards the muscles on the inner side of the knee, and is a smaller artery.

The LOWER OR SECOND PERFORATING ARTERY goes off nearly opposite to this. It is a much larger artery. In order to escape from the ham, it perforates the shorter head of the biceps, or outer hamstring muscles. It first crosses the ham at its very upper point, and within the substance of the triceps ; it then perforates the shorter head of the biceps flexor-cruris ; it then emerges upon the thigh by the belly of the vastus externus muscle. Before it passes across the ham, it gives a branch to the semi-membranosus : while it is passing through the flesh of the biceps, it gives a lower nutritious artery to the lower and back part of the thigh-bone ; after it perforates the biceps all its branches are to the flesh of the biceps and vastus externus, and its extreme branches are spent in inosculation with the descending branch of the reflex or articular artery of the hip-joint.

But these branches, which are the last of the femoral artery, are extremely irregular. There is no artery from the profun-

da downwards worth naming, not even those which I have just described.\*

### POPLITEAL ARTERY.

THE artery having passed through the ring or tendon of the triceps which is formed for it, or rather having passed betwixt the triceps and the bone, lies flat against the flat part of the thigh-bone as deep as possible in the cavity of the ham. There, as no muscles are lodged, it can give no muscular arteries of any importance; none but trivial ones to the hamstrings or to the heads of the gastrocnemii. In its whole length from the place of its perforating the triceps tendon to its great division, which is under the longer head of the *solæus* muscle, it gives none but articular arteries, i. e. small arteries to the knee-joint, which are no less than five in number, and encircle it in all directions.

First, The popliteal artery sends off from each side two muscular branches, not deserving a particular name nor description; the one goes to the biceps or muscle of the outer hamstring, the other to the semi-tendinosus and sartorius, or inner hamstring muscles.

Then come off the arteries of the joint, which are thus arranged; 1. The upper arteries coming off above the joint are three in number; one turning round the inner side of the joint, and one round the outer side, and one in the middle; whence it is named *azygous*, as having no fellow. 2. The arteries below the joint are two only in number; one to the inner side, and one to the outer side, of the joint; and these directions of the arteries settle both the order of description and also their names.

### ARTERIA ARTICULARIS SUPERIOR EXTERNA.

THAT upper articular artery which comes off above the knee, and which turns round the outer side of the joint, arises from the popliteal artery above the outer condyle; its trunk is

\* "Confiteri tamen oportet, binos ultimos ramos in distribuendis suis surculis infinite ludere, ita ut descriptione ad quod cunque cadaver adaptata vix, ac ne vix quidem comprehendi possint. Ex repetitis tamen meis dissectionibus id pro-certe habeo, duos vel tres, quos perforantes appellare vellem, exoriri, hos trunculis suis ad externum latus præcipue confecti cumque recte vasculoso genu jungi, nutritiant inferiorem ex iisdem gigni, et ramos insuper nunc pauciores, nunc numerosiores, communicantes ad flexores cum profunda clevari." *Arvidson*, p. 36.



like all these arteries about the joints, short and stumpy ; but its branches long and slender. It passes under the flesh of the biceps : it appears again at the edge of the vastus externus : one branch plunges into the vastus externus, mounts upwards, and besides supplying the muscle, inosculates with the long descending branch of the reflexa externa ; while another branch turns as directly downwards over the face of the outer condyle, and spreads beautifully over the side of the joint, inosculating in many net-works with the corresponding artery from below.

#### ARTERIA ARTICULARIS SUPERIOR INTERNA.

THE UPPER ARTICULAR ARTERY of the INNER side goes off in like manner over the inner condyle, pierces the tendon of the triceps, where it is implanted into the condyle, and passing under the edge of the vastus internus, turns towards the fore part of the knee, proceeds towards the patella, and covers chiefly the inner side of the joint with its net-work of inosculations ; its little twigs slip in under the great lateral ligament, and under the sides of the patella to the cavity of the joint itself. It inosculates like the outer artery with the lower arteries of its own side.

#### ARTERIA ARTICULARIS MEDIA.

THE MIDDLE OR AZYGOUS ARTICULAR ARTERY usually arises from the back part of the popliteal artery, but sometimes from one or other of those last described ; but this branch, at all events, is seldom wanting. It runs down behind the main artery upon the back part of the joint, into the great hollow betwixt the condyles ; and all its branches are expended upon the back of the capsule, the posterior crucial ligament, the semilunar cartilages, and the fat about the back of the joint.

#### LOWER ARTICULAR ARTERIES.

THE lower articular arteries are more slender, longer, run downwards very low, and return upwards with a very sudden angle.

## ARTERIA ARTICULARIS INFERIOR EXTERNA.

THE external ARTICULAR ARTERY below the KNEE goes off from the popliteal at the middle or centre of the joint, turns downwards along with the popliteal artery for a considerable way; it passes under the heads of the small plantar muscle and the outer head of the gastrocnemius, and having passed through, encounters the head of the fibula, and passes above it to the side of the joint, spreading its branches towards the patella.

In the ham this artery gives muscular branches to the heads of the muscles, as of the gastrocnemius, soleus, plantaris, and the popliteal muscle, that muscle which lies obliquely across the ham. When it reaches to the side of the joint, it passes under the external lateral ligament; and several of its branches, besides their external anastomoses, go into the cavity of the joint, one of which within the joint is especially large.

## ARTERIA ARTICULARIS INFERIOR INTERNA.

THE INTERNAL ARTICULAR ARTERY below the knee is larger than the external one. Like it, it bends downwards, passes under the inner head of the gastrocnemius muscle, crosses behind the head or rather neck of the tibia, on the inner side of the knee. It first gives arteries to the back of the joint; then it communicates downwards with a large recurrent artery from the tibialis antica; it inosculates upwards with the articularis superior interna; it contributes (as all the other articular arteries do) to the forming of that profuse network of arteries which is spread over the whole of the capsule of the knee-joint. It sends also, like the others, certain twigs, which creep under the internal lateral ligament, and go into the cavity of the joint along the borders of the semilunar cartilages.

Those who write on aneurisms of the ham talk much of these arteries. They compare them with the recurrences of the arm; and think, when they see five articular arteries, that it is a sure sign that at such a point all is safe; when really these arteries cannot be of the smallest service. They are all destroyed by the long compression of the popliteal aneurism, or are ingulphed in the bag of the aneurism. If they ever appear, it is not as inosculating arteries, ensuring the safety of the limb; but as small branches bursting into the sac, embarrass-

ing the operator, and confounding every thing, sometimes filling the sac a-new with blood, after all was thought to be quite safe, and the patient laid in bed.

Before the popliteal artery passes under the head of the solæus, it gives two long arteries, which run down upon the two heads of the gastrocnemii muscles. It often also sends small twigs to the head of the solæus, and to the popliteal and plantar muscles.



## OF THE THREE ARTERIES OF THE LEG AND FOOT.

THE three arteries are, the tibialis antica, going on the fore part of the leg; the tibialis postica, passing deep along the back part of the leg; and the peronea, which is the smallest and least regular artery of the leg, and which has its name from passing down behind the fibula.

The popliteal artery divides below the ham, under the longer head of the solæus muscle, into two arteries, the tibialis antica, and tibialis postica. The tibialis postica continues its natural direction downwards under the solæus muscle, and behind the tibia.

### ARTERIA TIBIALIS ANTICA.

THE TIBIALIS ANTICA makes a sudden turn forwards, perforates the interosseous membrane just under the lower edge of the popliteal muscle; passes out towards the fore part of the leg, betwixt the heads of the tibia and fibula: but still it does by no means become a superficial artery; on the contrary, it lies deep betwixt the heads of the tibialis anticus and the extensor of the toes; and is covered here with a very strong fascia. It is only about six inches above the ankle that the leg grows tendinous and naked; there this anterior artery can be felt beating: it lies betwixt the tendons of the tibialis anticus muscle and that of the extensor of the toes; it passes down along with these tendons, through the annular ligament, and over the bones of the tarsus; it sends one branch across the foot, another forward to the great toe: but the artery itself dives betwixt the first and second metatarsal bone in the middle of the foot, and so gets to the sole, where it ends in anastomosis with the back arteries.

There is here something like a posterior recurrent artery ; for the tibial artery, before it passes out of the ham, gives a small branch which ascends towards the back part of the joint, and is distributed to the heads of the bones. viz. the tibia and fibula, and to the origin of some of the muscles.

#### ARTERIA RECURRENS.

THERE is here an ANTERIOR RECURRENT, larger than any in the arm, and much resembling the recurrens interossea. It is a branch which comes off from the fore part of the tibial artery, instantly after it has perforated the interosseous membrane ; it turns immediately upwards under the flesh of the tibialis anticus ; it gives many muscular branches, some to the head of the tibialis, others to the upper part of the extensor digitorum, and branches go round the head of the fibula to the origin of the long peronæus muscle. One branch goes directly upwards, and spreads all over the lower part of the knee-joint, mixing its branches in the common vascular network.

The tibialis antica gives no other branch of importance, or which should be named, even from the place of this recurrent quite down to the ankle-joint ; for this, like the radial, or femoral, or any long muscular artery, continues giving off branches from either hand to the muscles betwixt which it runs, of equal size nearly, and all equally unimportant. The tibial artery, then, as it runs down the fore part of the leg, gives branches to the Tibialis Anticus on one hand ; to the Common Extensor of the toes on the other hand ; and to the Extensor of the great toe, which is the last of the three muscles that occupy the fore part of the leg. It also gives little arteries to the tibia, to the fibula, and to the interosseous membrane which lies betwixt them ; but still it arrives unexhausted at the fore part of the ankle-joint.

But before it crosses the joint (which it does by passing obliquely along with the tendon of the great toe,) it gives out two malleolar arteries, i. e. two arteries, one to the outer, and one to the inner ankle.

#### ARTERIA MALLEOLARIS INTERNA.

THE ARTERY of the INNER ANKLE goes off just where the head of the tibia begins to bulge. It turns over the inner ankle in many small branches ; some mounting upwards along the



tibia, but more going downwards over the inner side of the joint, i. e. over the tibia or inner ankle over the astragalus, and some down as low and as far backwards as the heel-bone.

#### ARTERIA MALLEOLARIS EXTERNA.

THE ARTERY, of the OUTER ANKLE goes off a little lower down. It sends smaller branches upwards round the outer ankle, which go to the *Peronæus Brevis* muscle, to the joint, and to the common extensor of the toes, inosculating round the outer ankle with the fibular arteries. But its chief branch descends along the fore part and outer side of the foot, gives twigs to the short extensor of the toes, and ends in inosculations with the tarsal arteries, or arteries belonging to the fore part of the foot.

The arteries which belong to the fore part of the foot are usually three in number : one goes off from the tibial artery a little above the ankle-joint, and is named *Arteria Tarsea*, because it crosses the foot over the bones of the tarsus. To this succeeds a second about the distance of half an inch from it, and which crosses the foot at the place of the metatarsal bones ; it is named *Arteria Metatarsea* : and the one or other of these gives the interosseous arteries, accordingly as the one or the other is small or wanting. The third is that remarkable branch which goes forwards along the great toe, whence it is named *Arteria Halucis*.

#### ARTERIA TARSEA.

THE TARSEAL ARTERY, which is sometimes of a very considerable size, almost equal to the *tibialis* itself, comes off a little below the ankle, upon the fore part of the foot. It lies upon the second rank of the tarsal bones ; it passes under the head of the *extensor brevis* of the foot ; it crosses the foot obliquely, so as to end in the *abductor* muscle of the little toe, and in inosculations with the arches of the sole of the foot.

This branch gives small inosculating arteries upwards, which first give branches to the joint, and then join with the external malleolar and peroneal arteries. Next it gives branches to the bones and joints of the tarsus, which it lies upon ; as the cuboid and cuneiform bones, and their joints. Thirdly, It gives small arteries to the bellies of the *extensor brevis*, where it lies under it.

But its greatest arteries are the interosseous arteries, which

it sends along the interstices betwixt the metatarsal bones.— These interosseous arteries are three in number ; they run along in that interstice which holds the interosseous muscles ; and when they arrive at the end of that furrow, or, in other words, at the place of the forking of the toes, each interosseous artery turns down to the sole of the foot, and goes into the fork of each digital arch, on the lowest side of the toes. Sometimes these arteries give also small dorsal arteries to the backs of the toes.

The tibial artery having proceeded along the tarsal bones, and arrived at the lower heads of the metatarsal bones, and having first given off some trivial branches to the joints of the foot on its inner side, and to the bones and muscles about the root of the great toe, next gives off a metatarsal artery.\*

#### ARTERIA METATARSEA.

THE ARTERY of the METATARSUS or instep goes off at the head of the first metatarsal bone. It bends across the roots of the metatarsal bones to the root of the little toe ; and it distributes branches to the tendons of the peronæi muscles, and ends in the abductor of the little toe, and in the skin over the outer edge of the foot. But sometimes it is a larger and more important artery ; for when the tarsal artery is small or wanting, this metatarsal one gives off the interossei, and supplies its place.

#### DORSALIS EXTERNA HALUCIS.

THE third branch is the ARTERY of the BACK of the GREAT TOE. This artery is of very considerable size ; it gives no muscular branches, because it lies upon the bony part of the foot ; it runs all along the metatarsal bone which supports the great toe ; and it ends at the forking of that toe in two great branches ; one the dorsal artery of the great toe, which goes along it to the point ; another to the side of the toe next the great toe, which it also runs along, somewhat like the forking arteries of the thumb and fore-finger.

The anterior tibial artery ends here (i. e. where it gives off the artery of the great toe.) By sinking in betwixt the meta-

\* N. B. Betwixt the tarsal and metatarsal artery, there is usually a small branch going outwards to the outer edge of the foot, i. e. in the same direction with both these arteries, but very small.

tarsal bones of the great toe and of the toe next to it, and going directly into the arches of the sole of the foot, it produces a great and important anastomosis, similar to that of the radial and ulnar arteries.

#### ARTERIA TIBIALIS POSTICA.

THE POSTERIOR TIBIAL ARTERY is so named from its passing along the back part of the tibia. The anterior tibial artery passes through the interosseous membrane only at the lower edge of the popliteal muscle : this artery comes off from the general trunk at the upper edge of the popliteal muscle, and passes obliquely towards the inside of the tibia, to take its place behind that bone. Its whole situation and general course is this : it lies over the tibialis posticus and flexor muscles : it lies under the bellies of the gastrocnemius and solæus ; it turns round the inner ankle close upon the bone. Having passed the lower head of the tibia, it goes down along the inside of the heel-bone, in its deep arch, upon which the body is supported ; it divides at the heel-bone, and advances along the sole of the foot in two great branches ; one running along the sole, next the outer edge of the foot ; the other along the inner edge of the foot ; whence they are named external and internal plantar arteries. From this arch the artery gives branches to all the toes, and so it ends.

This posterior artery is chiefly a muscular one, at least in its course down the leg ; and though it gives many branches as it passes along, there are hardly any worthy of being described : and from the knee to the ankle-joint there is one only which needs be distinguished by name, viz. the artery which nourishes the tibia.

First, The tibialis postica often gives arteries to the heads of the gastrocnemii muscles ; next it gives off the ARTERIA NUTRITIA TIBIÆ, which begins a little below the lower edge of the popliteal muscle, runs downwards along the interosseous ligament, gives muscular branches to the popliteus, solæus, and tibialis posticus, and then sends the nutritious artery into the great hole in the middle of the tibia. It gives many branches to the periosteum of the tibia, and to the interosseous membrane all down the leg, and it ends near the lower end of the tibia in inosculation with the peroneal artery.

Other nameless muscular arteries succeed to this, going to the tibialis posticus, to the flexor communis, and to the flexor of the great toe. When the artery arrives near the ankle-joint, it gives many small twigs to the periosteum, tendons, sheaths, and bursæ mucosæ behind the ankle ; and then passing in the

very deepest part of the ankle, under the annular ligament, and betwixt the tibia or process of the inner ankle and the heel-bone, it adheres closely to the bones and capsule of the joint ; and there gives a great many little tortuous arteries, making net-works over this joint and its bones, as over the other joints already described. But especially two delicate arteries go out at this hollow at the side of the heel-bone : one forwards towards the side of the ankle-joint, the other downwards and backwards over the heel-bone, which ramify very profusely and very beautifully.

The artery now lying deep under the abductor magnus of the great toe, which arises from the heel-bone, forks into its two great branches, the external and internal plantar arteries.

#### ARTERIA PLANTARIS INTERNA.

THE INTERNAL PLANTAR ARTERY is much the smaller branch, not to be compared in importance (though their names are contrasted) with the external plantar artery ; and it is named internal, because as it runs along the sole of the foot it keeps to the inner edge, viz. that to which the great toe belongs. It comes off under the head of the abductor of the great toe, and under the belly of that muscle, and close upon the bone ; its branches run forwards, quite up to the root of the toe, all along its metatarsal bone. The internal plantar artery has in general four branches, which all run pretty nearly in the same direction, viz. straight forwards.

It gives, while under the head of the abductor, small branches, which go backwards to the joint, its capsule, and tendons, and some into the spongy substance of the heel-bone ; some also to the short flexor of the foot, and to the massa carnea. But its four greater and more regular branches are these :

The first lies nearer the inner edge of the foot ; is the largest and most considerable ; it runs along under the inner border of the abductor ; it goes quite up to the ball of the great toe, and unites with the proper artery of the toe. As it goes along it gives small twigs to the periosteum and bone.

The second resembles the former, except that it does not come off so early by two inches ; it is of course shorter, but it passes along in the same direction, only a little distant from the first, lying along the middle of the metatarsal bone. It also advances up to the root of the great toe, and runs also into the proper artery of the great toe (which comes from the external plantar branch,) so as to enlarge and strengthen it.



The third lies still nearer to the centre of the foot, and deeper among the muscles. It runs the same general course, viz. along the side of the metatarsal bone up to the ball of the great toe, and ending like the others in the artery of the great toe ; but as it lies deeper, it gives branches to the short flexor, to the tendons, and to the inner surface of the aponeurosis plantaris, forming a sort of superficial arch.

From these three arteries, much of the skin on the sole of the foot has its branches.

The fourth and last branch of the plantaris interna, is one which goes down deep into the centre of the foot ; it lies close upon those ligaments which bind together the bones of the tarsus, and under all the tendons, except those of the tibial muscles which are like ligaments to the bones. Its destination is chiefly to the tarsal joints and capsules ; its inosculations with the external plantar artery can be of no importance.

#### PLANTARIS EXTERNA.

**X** THE EXTERNAL PLANTAR ARTERY is the great artery of the sole of the foot, from which the arches of the foot and the inosculations with the anterior tibial artery are formed.

It turns outwards towards the outer edge of the foot ; it runs its great circle round by the metatarsal bone of the little toe ; and its plantar arch, or the arch of the sole of the foot, passes over the middle of all the other metatarsal bones. It receives the anterior tibial artery under the middle of the metatarsal bone of the great toe. It is this great curve of the artery turning round in the sole of the foot that we name the plantar arch ; and it is from it that all the proper arteries of the toes arise, expressly after the same order in which the fingers receive their arteries.

The great or external plantar artery lies deep, but not upon the naked bones like the former. It passes through betwixt the heads of the short flexor and massa carnea ; it turns its first turn outwards, till it gets under the flexor and abductor of the little toe ; then it turns inwards towards the centre of the foot, and lies under the tendons of the long muscles, and over the metatarsal bones and their interosseous muscles.

First, it sends a large branch backwards to the heel-bone, which belongs entirely to that spongy bone, forms, like all such arteries, a sort of net-work over all the surface of the bone ; it first touches the bone under its extreme point, or that which rests upon the ground ; and it goes branching over it so high as to inosculate round the ankle with twigs of the tibialis anti-

ca ; it gives branches also hereabout to the great ligament of the heel-bone. The external plantar artery next gives branches to those muscles betwixt which it lies imbedded, viz. the *massa carnea* and *flexor brevis* ; then advancing to the side of the *flexor digiti minimi*, it gives out two or three branches, which first go into the flesh of the abductor and flexor of the little toe, and then turning over the edge of the foot, terminate in inosculation with the arteries of the fore part of the foot and in the skin.

It then begins from the root of the metatarsal bone of the little toe to form that great circle which is named the arch of the foot, and which gives out two ranks of arteries : first, of interosseous arteries going to the spaces betwixt the metatarsal bones upon which the toes stand ; and, secondly, the proper arteries of the toes themselves.

The first of these arteries proceeding from the tarsal arch is a small one, the artery of the little toe. It begins at the lower head of the metatarsal bone, lies under the flexor and abductor muscles, gives branches to these muscles and to the skin, and to the bone itself ; it runs up the outer edge of the little toe, and this is immediately succeeded by the first interosseous artery ; which lies deeper, passes along the first interosseous space, gives branches to the bones and interosseous muscle, and inosculates betwixt the toes with the branches of the anterior tibial artery.

The next artery is properly the first of the great arch. It is what is called the *RAMUS DIGITALIS*, or proper artery of the toes. It is a long artery, runs over the interosseous space lying upon the interosseous muscles ; it advances to the root of the little toe, and like those of the fingers divides into two branches, one to the inner side of the little toe, and the other to the side of the toe next it.—A second and a third *DIGITAL ARTERY* go out in the same manner, and split at the roots of the toes into two branches, and with so little variety that it is needless to describe each part.

In the interstices of each of these arteries lie two or three small perforating arteries, which perforating betwixt the metatarsal bones inosculate with the interosseous arteries which lie on the fore part of the foot.

But the great external plantar artery, while it is giving out these arteries alternately, i. e. large branches to the toes, and smaller twigs to the interosseous muscles, and some smaller still which go off from the concave part of the arch, and go into the sole of the foot to the ligaments and joints ; the great artery goes still onwards, and completes its arch at the middle of that metatarsal bone which supports the great toe. There,

a little behind the ball of the great toe, it receives the *tibialis antica*, which perforates from the fore part of the foot. This completes the arch of the anterior and posterior arteries, and permits the blood to pass, according to the pressure or other accidents, in either direction; and this union strengthens and enlarges the artery of the plantar arch so much, that it is not exhausted by the many branches which it has given off, but gives at this point the largest artery of all, viz. the artery which supplies the great toe and one side of the toe next it. This artery of the great toe is the very last or extreme branch of the aortic system. It very closely resembles the great artery of the thumb; it gives out three chief branches, viz. one to each side of the great toe, and one to the inner side of the toe next it. This *ARTERIA POLLICIS PEDIS* sometimes seems to proceed entirely from the perforating branch of the anterior tibial artery; at other times it arises fairly from the plantar arch.

#### ARTERIA PERONEA.

THE FIBULAR ARTERY, or the third artery of the leg, which is much smaller than these two, is to be regarded rather as a branch of the anterior tibial artery; and in its course and connections, and its being exhausted nearly by the time it reaches the ankle-joint, it greatly resembles the interosseous of the fore-arm, which stops below the wrist, or passes it only with small and extreme branches.

Where the *tibialis antica* passes through the interosseous ligament, the *arteria peronea* breaks off from it, almost of equal size with itself, and passes down behind the fibula, whence it has its name. It arises near the head or origin of the *tibialis posticus* muscle, and accompanies that muscle down to the ankle-joint, lying betwixt it and the flexor of the great toe.

This is entirely a muscular artery for supplying those deeper parts which the other arteries do not supply. Its branches, like those of all muscular arteries, are extremely irregular; its chief branches are to the *solæus*, to the *peronæi* muscles, to the *tibialis posticus*, to the flexor of the great toe. Several little arteries turn round the fibula from point to point, going to the fore part of the leg. All the way down the leg, it is giving off repeated branches to the same muscles; and in this course it gives some little arteries, which pierce through the interosseous membrane, and also gives the nutritious artery of the fibula.

When it approaches the ankle-joint, the fibular artery gives

off an anterior branch, which perforates the interosseous membrane, passes through betwixt the tibia and fibula nearly where they are joined ; it turns downwards over the outer side of the ankle, by the extensor pollicis and peronæus brevis tendons. This is named *PERONEA ANTERIOR*, though it is an artery of little importance. Its branches are given not to muscles, for this is a naked and bony part of the foot ; but are expanded upon the lower heads of the tibia and fibula, and upon the os cuboides. They nourish the tendons, ligaments, and bursæ of the outer ankle ; they end in inosculation with the malleolar artery, from the tibialis anterior, and with the tarsal artery.

#### ARTERIA PERONEA POSTERIOR.

As this *ANTERIOR FIBULAR ARTERY* branches over the fore part of the outer ankle, the *POSTERIOR FIBULAR ARTERY* passes deep behind the same ankle, and is just the continuation of the main artery ; which having passed down behind the acute angle of the fibula, sinks into that deep hollow which is behind it upon the side of the heel-bone. Behind the tibia the artery makes large inosculation with the posterior tibial artery, and gives many branches to the tendons. Branches also turn round the ankle, making a net-work of vessels upon it, and inosculating with the anterior tibial artery. It continues to give the same small arteries to the outer ankle, to the peronæi tendons, to the outer side of the heel-bone, and to the abductor of the little toe. It ends usually in that muscle, and in inosculation with that branch of the external plantar artery which turns backwards upon the heel-bone and ramifies upon it so beautifully.

These are the last branches of the three great arteries of the leg and of the aortic system.

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.







